BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 30

The History of Leo the Deacon

Leo the Deacon · Nikephoros Phokas

ΛΕΟΝΤΟΣ ΔΙΑΚΟΝΟΥ ΙΣΤΟΡΙΑ ΠΕΡΙ ΠΑΡΑΔΡΟΜΗΣ ΠΟΛΕΜΟΥ

The History of Leo the Deacon

With Nikephoros Phokas' Skirmishing

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

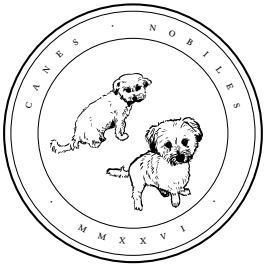


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 30 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows C. B. Hase's text,
Leonis Diaconi Caloensis Historiae libri decem et Liber
de velitatione bellica Nicephori Augusti (Bonn, 1828)

The History set from the Wikisource keying of Hase's text

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text is Hase's, with his capitals and punctuation; the Skirmishing, which he prints a chapter to a paragraph, is paragraphed by the press. ∗∗∗ marks a gap Hase notes. The margins give his chapter numbers.

CONTENTS

LEO THE DEACON

BOOK I

I · The Expedition to Crete 11
II · The Siege 22

BOOK II

III · Leo Phokas Against Chambdas 33
IV · The Town Taken 44
V · The Death of Romanos and the Plot of Joseph 55

BOOK III

VI · Nikephoros Proclaimed 63
VII · The March on Constantinople 74
VIII · Nikephoros Emperor; the Cilician War 84

LEO THE DEACON

(continued)

BOOK IV

IX · The Fall of Tarsus 95
X · Discontent in the City; Disaster in Sicily 108
XI · The Syrian Campaign 120

BOOK V

XII · Sphendosthlavos Invades Mysia 128
XIII · Antioch Taken; the Plot 138
XIV · The Murder of Nikephoros 147

BOOK VI

XV · John Tzimiskes Emperor 157
XVI · The Patriarchs and the Rus 167
XVII · Bardas Skleros Against the Rus 180

BOOK VII

XVIII · The Revolt of Bardas Phokas 188
XIX · The End of the Revolt 200

BOOK VIII

XX · The March to Preslav 214
XXI · The Capture of Preslav 226

LEO THE DEACON

(continued)

BOOK IX

XXII · Before Dorystolon 237
XXIII · The Rus at Bay 246
XXIV · Victory and the Peace 255

BOOK X

XXV · The Eastern Campaign; the Patriarchs 266
XXVI · The Comet and the Wars After John 276
XXVII · The Death of John 288

NIKEPHOROS PHOKAS

I · Preface; Watch-Posts and Spies 301
II · Raids and the Shadowing of the Enemy 314
III · Following the Raiders 328
IV · The Baggage-Train and the Raiders 337
V · Ambushes in the Passes 351
VI · When the Horse Leaves the Foot 360
VII · Safety and the Baggage 371
VIII · Against a Great Army 380
IX · Decoys; the Army and Its Rights 391
X · Invading Their Land; Sieges 401
XI · Divided Forces and the Return 414
XII · The Night Battle 424

LEO THE DEACON

ΛΕΟΝΤΟΣ ΔΙΑΚΟΝΟΥ ΙΣΤΟΡΙΑ

The History

BOOK I

I · THE EXPEDITION TO CRETE

Leo explains why he writes history: portents, earthquakes, and wars so great that many expect the end of the world. He names himself, Basil's son, from Kaloe by the springs of the Kaystros. After Constantine Porphyrogennetos dies, his son Romanos resolves to avenge Gongyles' disastrous expedition against Arab Crete and sends Nikephoros Phokas, Domestic of the Schools and commander of the eastern armies. Nikephoros lands his army by ladders from the ships, routs the Cretans, and shuts them in their town; but a reconnoitering company under Pastilas gives itself to luxury and is ambushed and cut down.

Εἴπερ ἄλλο τι τῶν ἀγαθῶν τὸν βίον ὀνίνησι, τούτου 1
if-indeed other anything of-the goods the life benefits than-this
οὐχ ἧσσον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μᾶλλον ἡ ἱστορία, ἐπωφελές
not less but even more the history beneficial
τι πρᾶγμα πεφυκὸς καὶ λυσιτελές. ποικίλας γὰρ καὶ
a thing being-by-nature and profitable varied for and
παντοδαπὰς ἀπαγγέλλουσα πράξεις, καὶ ὅσας ἡ φορὰ
manifold reporting deeds and as-many-as the motion
τοῦ χρόνου καὶ τῶν πραγμάτων κυλίνδειν εἴωθεν, ἡ
of-the time and of-the affairs to-roll is-wont the
προαίρεσις δὲ μάλιστα τῶν κεχρημένων τοῖς πράγμασι,
choice and most-of-all of-those having-dealt with-the affairs
τὰς μὲν ἀσπάζεσθαι καὶ ζηλοῦν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις
the(-ones) indeed to-welcome and to-emulate for-the men
νομοθετεῖ, τὰς δὲ ἀποδιοπομπεῖσθαι καὶ ἀποτρέπεσθαι·
it-prescribes the(-ones) and to-reject and to-turn-from
ὡς μὴ λάθωσιν ἀβουλήτως τὰ μὲν ὀνησιφόρα καὶ
so-that not they-escape-notice unwillingly the indeed beneficial and
λῴονα προηκάμενοι, τοῖς δὲ ἀπευκταίοις καὶ βλαβεροῖς
better having-let-go on-the and abominable and harmful

ἑαυτοὺς περιπείραντες. ἐπεὶ οὖν λυσιτελὲς ἡ ἱστορία μετὰ
themselves having-impaled since then profitable the history with
τῶν ἄλλων βιωφελῶν χρῆμα τελεῖν ὡμολόγηται, ἅτε
the other life-benefiting thing to-be-counted it-is-agreed as
τὰ θνητὰ ἀναβιώσκειν ἢ ἀνηβάσκειν παρεχομένη,
the mortal(-things) to-revive or to-grow-young-again providing
καὶ μὴ ἐῶσα τοῖς τῆς λήθης βυθοῖς παρασύρεσθαί
and not allowing by-the of-the oblivion depths to-be-swept-away
τε καὶ συγκαλύπτεσθαι· διὰ ταῦτα, πολλῶν ἐν τῷ
both and to-be-covered-over because-of these-things many in the
κατ᾽ ἐμὲ χρόνῳ πραγμάτων ἐξαισίων καὶ ἀλλοκότων
in my time events extraordinary and strange
καινοτομηθέντων, καὶ φοβερῶν κατ᾽ οὐρανὸν δειμάτων
having-been-newly-wrought and fearful in heaven portents
ἐπιφανέντων, καὶ σεισμῶν ἀπίστων κινηθέντων, σκηπτῶν
having-appeared and earthquakes incredible having-been-stirred thunderbolts
τε κατενεχθέντων, καὶ ὑετῶν λάβρων καταῤῥαγέντων,
both having-been-hurled-down and rains violent having-burst-down
πολέμων τε συῤῥαγέντων, καὶ στρατευμάτων πολλαχοῦ
wars both having-broken-out and armies in-many-places
τῆς οἰκουμένης ἐπιδραμόντων, καὶ πόλεων καὶ χώρων
of-the inhabited-world having-overrun and cities and lands
μεταναστάντων, ὡς πολλοῖς δοκεῖν, ἀλλοίωσιν ἄρτι τὸν
having-moved so-that to-many to-seem alteration now the
βίον λαβεῖν, καὶ τὴν προσδοκωμένην δευτέραν κατάβασιν
life to-take and the expected second descent
τοῦ Σωτῆρος καὶ Θεοῦ ἐπὶ θύραις ἐγγίζειν· ἔδοξέ μοι,
of-the Savior and God at doors to-draw-near it-seemed-good to-me
μὴ οὕτω φρίκης μεστὰ καὶ θαύματος ἄξια πράγματα
not so of-shuddering full and of-wonder worthy events
σιγῇ παραδραμεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ εἰς τοὐμφανὲς ἀνειπεῖν, ὡς
in-silence to-pass-by but into the-open to-proclaim so-that

εἶναι παίδευμα καὶ τοῖς ὕστερον· εἴ γε μὴ δεδογμένον
to-be lesson also for-those later if at-least not decreed
εἴη τῇ προνοίᾳ, αὐτίκα καὶ καταπόδας τὸ βιωτικὸν
it-be by-the providence at-once and forthwith the life's
πορθμεῖον ἐν τῷ τῆς συντελείας ὅρμῳ ἐλλιμενίζειν, καὶ
ferry in the of-the consummation harbor to-bring-to-port and
τὸ σχῆμα τοῦ κόσμου παραγαγεῖν. ἀλλά μοι εἴη
the fashion of-the world to-bring-to-an-end but to-me may-it-be
τὸν ὑπὲρ ἐμὲ τοσοῦτον ἆθλον ἐπανῃρημένῳ, μὴ δεύτερον
the beyond me so-great contest having-taken-up not second
τῆς προθυμίας δραμεῖν, ἀναλόγως δὲ τοῦ μεγέθους τῶν
to-the eagerness to-run proportionately and to-the greatness of-the
συμβεβηκότων ἱκέσθαι, καὶ ταῦτα δεόντως ἐπεξηγήσασθαι.
events to-attain and these-things fittingly to-set-out-in-full
ἡ μὲν οὖν ἱστορία κατὰ τὸ ἐνὸν ἐμοὶ λεχθήσεται
the indeed then history according-to the possible for-me will-be-told
κατὰ μέρος· ὁ δὲ ταῦτα συντάξας Λέων εἰμὶ
in detail the(-one) and these-things having-composed Leo am
Βασιλείου υἱός· πατρὶς δέ μοι Καλόη, χωρίον τῆς Ἀσίας
of-Basil son homeland and to-me Kaloe place — of-Asia
τὸ κάλλιστον, παρὰ τὰς κλιτῦς τοῦ Τμώλου ἀνῳκισμένον,
the most-beautiful beside the slopes of-the Tmolus settled
ἀμφὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Καϋστρίου ποταμοῦ, ὃς δή, τὸ
about the springs of-the Kaystros river which indeed the
Κελβιανὸν παραῤῥέων καὶ ἥδιστον θαῦμα τοῖς ὁρῶσι
Kelbianon flowing-past and most-sweet wonder to-those seeing
προκείμενος, ἐς τὸν τῆς κλεινῆς καὶ περιπύστου Ἐφέσου
lying-before into the of-the famous and renowned of-Ephesus
κόλπον πελαγίζων ἐσβάλλει. ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τὴν τῶν κοινῶν
gulf spreading-into-a-sea empties but to the of-the common
πραγμάτων ἰτέον διήγησιν, περὶ πλείστου τὸ ἀληθίζειν
affairs one-must-go narrative about most the to-speak-truth

ποιουμένοις ὡς μάλιστα, ὅτι καὶ τοῦτο τῇ ἱστορίᾳ τῶν
making as most because also this to-the history than-the
ἄλλων μᾶλλον ἁρμόττει. φασὶ γὰρ καὶ οἱ τὸν λόγον
others more befits they-say for also those in-the speech
σοφοί, ῥητορικῇ μὲν προσήκειν δεινότητα, ποιητικῇ δὲ
wise to-rhetoric indeed to-belong cleverness to-poetry and
μυθοποιΐαν, τῇ δὲ ἱστορίᾳ ἀλήθειαν. ὅσα μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ
fable-making to-the and history truth as-many-as indeed then in
τὸν χρόνον τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Κωνσταντίνου υἱοῦ Λέοντος,
the time of-the emperor of-Constantine son of-Leo
ᾧ Πορφυρογέννητος ἡ ἐπίκλησις, ἐπισυμβέβηκε
to-whom Porphyrogennetos the surname have-befallen
πράγματα (οὗ καὶ γεννωμένου καὶ τελευτῶντος κομήτην
events of-whom both being-born and dying comet
λέγεται φανῆναι κατ᾽ οὐρανόν, τὴν ἐκείνου καὶ γέννησιν
is-said to-have-appeared in heaven the his both birth
προδηλοῦντα καὶ ἀποβίωσιν), παρήσειν μοι δοκῶ·
foreshowing and death to-pass-over to-me I-seem
ἀποχρώντως γὰρ ἄλλοις ἱστόρηται. τὰ δὲ τούτων
sufficiently for by-others it-has-been-recorded the(-things) but of-these
ἐχόμενα, καὶ ὅσα ὀφθαλμοῖς καὶ αὐτὸς τεθέαμαι (εἴπερ
following and as-many-as with-eyes also myself I-have-beheld if-indeed
ὀφθαλμοὶ ὦτων πιστότεροι, καθ᾽ Ἡρόδοτον), τὰ δὲ
eyes than-ears more-trustworthy according-to Herodotus the(-things) and
καὶ πρὸς τῶν ἰδόντων ἠκρίβωσα, ταῦτα καὶ δώσω γραφῇ.
also from those having-seen I-ascertained these-things also I-will-give to-writing

2 Ἄρτι κατὰ τὸν Νοέμβριον μῆνα, τῆς γ′ ἰνδίκτου, ἐν
just in the November month of-the 3 indiction in
τῷ ,ςυξζ′ ἔτει, τοῦ ῥηθέντος αὐτοκράτορος Κωνσταντίνου
the 6467 year the mentioned emperor Constantine
τὸν βίον μετηλλαχότος καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἐκεῖσε κατάπαυσιν
the life having-exchanged and to the there rest

ἀναλύσαντος, τὴν αὐτοκρατορίαν διέπειν ἀρχὴν
having-departed the imperial to-administer rule
Ῥωμανὸς ὁ ἐκείνου υἱὸς ἐγχειρίζεται, ἤδη τὴν τῶν
Romanos the his son is-entrusted-with already the of-the
μειρακίων παραλλάττων ἡλικίαν καὶ πρὸς ἄνδρα τὸν
youths passing age and to man the
τέλειον μετασκευαζόμενος· ἀνὴρ τἆλλα μὲν ἐπιεικής,
full being-changed a-man in-other-respects indeed fair
εὐπρόσωπός τε καὶ εὐόμιλος καὶ τὴν ὥραν ἀριπρεπής,
handsome both and affable and in-the bloom most-distinguished
καὶ παντοδαπῆς καλοκαγαθίας ἀνάπλεως, εὐμενής τε καὶ
and of-every-kind nobility full gracious both and
χρηστὸς πρὸς ἅπαν τὸ ὑπήκοον, ἐπτοημένος δὲ νεωτερικαῖς
kind to all the subject(-people) excited but by-youthful
ἡδυπαθείαις καὶ παιδιαῖς, τοὺς δὲ ἐρεθίζοντας πρὸς ταῦτα
luxuries and games those and inciting to these-things
κατὰ τὴν βασίλειον ἑστίαν, ὡς οὐκ ὤφελεν, ἐπαγόμενος.
in the imperial hearth as not he-ought drawing-in
τούτῳ τῷ αὐτοκράτορι Ῥωμανῷ εἰς ἔννοιαν ἦκε, τὴν τῶν
to-this the emperor Romanos into thought came the of-the
Ἀραβιτῶν Κρητῶν δυναστείαν, τραχηλιῶσαν καὶ κατὰ
Arab Cretans dominion swaggering and against
Ῥωμαίων φονικὸν πνέουσαν, τῇ τοῦ κρείττονος ῥοπῇ
Romans murderous breathing by-the of-the stronger inclination
ἐκποδὼν ποιήσασθαι. καὶ γὰρ τῷ ἐξ ὑπογυίου τοῖς
out-of-the-way to-make and for by-the from recently to-the
Ῥωμαίοις συμβεβηκότι ἀτυχήματι ἀμέτρως γαυρουμένη, τὰ
Romans having-befallen misfortune immoderately exulting the
παράκτια τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐπικρατείας ἐληΐζετο μάλιστα.
coastal(-parts) of-the Roman dominion it-was-plundering most
ὅπως δὲ τὸ πταῖσμα Ῥωμαίοις συμβέβηκεν, ἐπιτροχάδην
how and the disaster to-Romans has-happened briefly

ἐρῶ. Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, μὴ στέγων τὴν τῶν
I-will-tell Constantine the emperor not bearing the of-the
Κρητῶν ὕβριν καὶ τὰς λαθραίους ἐπιδρομάς, στρατιὰν
Cretans insolence and the secret raids army
ἀξιόμαχον συνειλοχὼς καὶ τριήρεις ἐξαρτύσας πυρφόρους
fit-for-battle having-gathered and triremes having-equipped fire-bearing
μάλα συχνάς, κατὰ τῆς Κρήτης ἔστελλεν, ὡς αὐτοβοεὶ
very many against — Crete was-sending as at-the-first-shout
τὴν νῆσον αἱρήσων. ἀλλ᾽ ἀνανδρίᾳ καὶ ἀπειρίᾳ τοῦ
the island going-to-take but by-cowardice and inexperience of-the
στρατηγοῦ, τομίου θαλαμηπόλου τελοῦντος, καὶ ἀνδραρίου
general eunuch chamberlain being and of-a-manikin
σκιατραφοῦς ἐκ τῆς τῶν Παφλαγόνων ὡρμημένου
shade-reared from the of-the Paphlagonians originating
(Κωνσταντῖνος ὄνομα τούτῳ, Γογγύλης ἐπίκλησις), εἰ καὶ
Constantine name to-him Gongyles surname if even
τῷ τῶν Πατρικίων ἀριπρεπεῖ ἀξιώματι ἐσεμνύνετο,
with-the of-the Patrikioi most-distinguished dignity he-was-honored
ἅπασα ἡ λεχθεῖσα στρατιά, πλὴν ὀλίγων ἀνδρῶν,
all the said army except few men
κατεκόπη πρὸς τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ παραπώλετο.
was-cut-down by the barbarians and perished

3 Ταύτην τὴν ἧτταν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Ῥωμανὸς ἀνακαλέσασθαι
this the defeat the emperor Romanos to-recover
προθυμούμενος, Νικηφόρον τὸν Φωκᾶν, τοῖς μαγίστροις
being-eager Nikephoros — Phokas among-the magistroi
ἐνδιαπρέποντα καὶ τῶν τῆς Ἀνατολῆς στρατευμάτων
being-distinguished and of-the of-the East armies
κατάρχοντα (Δομέστικον τῶν σχολῶν Ῥωμαῖοι ἀρχὴν τὴν
commanding Domestic of-the scholae Romans office the
τοιαύτην ἐπιφημίζουσιν), ἄνδρα ῥέκτην τε καὶ δραστήριον,
such call a-man active both and energetic

ἀγαθόν τε τὰ πολεμικὰ καὶ τὴν ἰσχὺν ἀνυπόστατον,
good both in-the warlike(-things) and in-the strength irresistible
αὐτοκράτορα στρατηγὸν τῆς πρὸς τοὺς Κρῆτας μάχης
plenipotentiary general of-the against the Cretans battle
κεχειροτόνηκεν. οὗτος τοίνυν ὁ Νικηφόρος, τὴν τῆς Ἀσίας
appointed this-man therefore — Nikephoros the — of-Asia
στρατιὰν τῷ βασιλικῷ συνειλοχὼς κελεύσματι καὶ ναυσὶν
army by-the imperial having-gathered command and on-ships
ἐμβιβάσας, καὶ ταχυπλοήσας, πυρφόρους τε τριήρεις
having-embarked and having-sailed-swiftly fire-bearing and triremes
πλείστας ἐπαγόμενος (δρόμονας ταύτας Ῥωμαῖοι καλοῦσι),
very-many bringing dromons these Romans call
τῇ Κρήτῃ προσώρμισεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῆς ἀποβάσεως ἐδόκει
— to-Crete brought-to-anchor when and of-the landing it-seemed
καιρός, ἔδειξε πρακτικῶς, ἣν εἶχεν ἐμπειρίαν ἔργων
time he-showed practically which he-had experience of-works
πολεμικῶν. κλίμακας γὰρ ἐπὶ τῶν πορθμείων ἐπιφερόμενος,
warlike ladders for on the boats carrying
ταύτας ἐπὶ τὴν ἠϊόνα προσυφαπλῶν, τὴν στρατιὰν ἔνοπλόν
these on the shore unfolding-before the army armed
τε καὶ ἔφιππον ἀπὸ τῆς ὑγρᾶς ἐπὶ τὴν ξηρὰν μετεβίβαζε.
both and mounted from the wet to the dry he-transferred
τῷ δὲ καινῷ καὶ ἀλλοκότῳ τοῦ ὁράματος καταπλαγέντες
by-the and new and strange of-the sight astounded
οἱ βάρβαροι κατὰ χώραν ἔμενον ἰλαδόν, ἀδιάσπαστον
the barbarians in place remained in-a-mass unbroken
συντηροῦντες τὸν συνασπισμόν, καὶ τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
keeping the close-order and the of-the Romans
ὡς αὐτοὺς ἄφιξιν προσδεχόμενοι. ὁ δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
to them arrival awaiting the and of-the Romans
στρατηγὸς Νικηφόρος, τριχῇ τὴν φάλαγγα διατάξας,
general Nikephoros threefold the phalanx having-drawn-up

ἀσπίσι τε καὶ δόρασι ταύτην καταπυκνώσας, καὶ τὸ
with-shields both and with-spears it having-made-dense and the
ἐνυάλιον παιωνίσας, τὸ δὲ σταυρικὸν ἐγκελευσάμενος
war-cry having-sung the and of-the-cross having-ordered
προπορεύεσθαι τρόπαιον, ἀντιμέτωπος τοῖς βαρβάροις
to-go-before trophy facing the barbarians
ἐπῄει. δεινῆς δὲ μάχης ἀναῤῥαγείσης, καὶ δίκην
he-advanced dire and battle having-broken-out and in-the-manner
χαλάζης τῶν βελῶν καταφερομένων, οὐκ ἔμελλον
of-hail the missiles falling not they-were-going
ἐπὶ πολὺ διακαρτερεῖν οἱ βάρβαροι τὸν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
for long to-hold-out the barbarians the of-the Romans
δορατισμόν· ἀλλὰ τὰ νῶτα στρέψαντες καὶ τὴν φάλαγγα
spear-fighting but the backs having-turned and the phalanx
διαλύσαντες, ὡς εἶχον δρόμων, πρὸς τὸ σφῶν ἀπῄεσαν
having-broken as they-had at-a-run to the their-own went-off
ἔρυμα. οἱ δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι ἐφεπόμενοι, ἀμύθητον τούτων
stronghold the and Romans following-up indescribable of-them
φόνον εἰργάσαντο. τοιοῦτον μὲν ἡ πρώτη προσβολὴ καὶ
slaughter wrought such indeed the first assault and
διαμάχη πέρας αἴσιον τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἀπηνέγκατο. ἐπεὶ δέ,
fight end auspicious for-the Romans carried-off when and
ᾗπέρ μοι εἴρηται, τῷ σφετέρῳ τειχίσματι οἱ βάρβαροι
as by-me has-been-said in-the their-own fortification the barbarians
συνεκλείσθησαν, τὰς δυνάμεις συγκαλέσας ὁ στρατηγός,
were-shut-in the forces having-called-together the general
χάρακα πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος ἐπήξατο τῶν Κρητῶν· τὰς δέ γε
a-palisade before the town fixed of-the Cretans the and at-least
τριήρεις καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς φορτίδας εἰς εὐλίμενον ἐπίνειον
triremes and the remaining cargo-ships into well-harbored roadstead
ἀθρόας ἐλλιμενίζειν διεκελεύσατο, θαλασσοκρατεῖν τε, καὶ εἴ
all-together to-anchor he-ordered to-rule-the-sea both and if

που βαρβαρικὸν ὁρῷεν πορθμεῖον ἔκπλουν ποιούμενον,
somewhere barbarian they-should-see boat sailing-out making
τοῦτό τε ἐκδιώκειν, καὶ τῷ ὑγρῷ πυρὶ ἐκτεφροῦν.
this both to-pursue and with-the liquid fire to-reduce-to-ashes
ταῦτα ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς βουλευσάμενός τε καὶ συμπεράνας,
these-things to the exact having-planned both and having-settled
σπεῖραν λογάδων ἀνδρῶν τῷ στρατηγῷ Νικηφόρῳ, ᾧ
a-company of-picked men to-the general Nikephoros to-whom
τὸ ἐπίκλην Παστιλᾶς, ἐγχειρίζει, ὃς γενναῖος ὢν πολλοὺς
the surname Pastilas he-entrusts who noble being many
ἀνέτλη πολέμους· καὶ πλειστάκις μὲν ἥλω πρὸς τῶν
endured wars and very-often indeed was-captured by the
Ἀγαρηνῶν, τοσαυτάκις δὲ ἐκεῖθεν διέδρα· καὶ πολλὰς οὐλὰς
Hagarenes as-often and from-there escaped and many scars
ἐκ τῶν κατὰ πόλεμον χαλκοτυπιῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ προσώπου
from the in war metal-blows on the face
καὶ τῶν στέρνων προὐβάλλετο. τότε δὲ στρατηγὸς
and the chest displayed then and general
τῶν Θρᾳκησίων τελῶν, τὴν σπεῖραν παρειληφώς, ἐπὶ
of-the Thrakesioi being the company having-taken-over on
καταδρομὴν καὶ κατασκοπὴν τῆς νήσου ἐστέλλετο, πολλὰ
a-raid and a-reconnaissance of-the island was-sent much
τοῦ Νικηφόρου Φωκᾶ ἐπισκήψαντος, γρηγορεῖν τε καὶ
— Nikephoros Phokas having-enjoined to-be-watchful both and
νήφειν, καὶ μὴ πρὸς ῥᾳστώνην καὶ τρυφὴν ἀπιδεῖν,
to-be-sober and not to ease and luxury to-look
ὡς μή τι ἀνήκεστον πρὸς τῶν ἐναντίων αὐτοῖς
so-that not something incurable by the opponents to-them
καττυθῇ· καταδραμόντας δὲ τὸν χῶρον καὶ γενναῖόν τι
be-contrived having-overrun and the place and noble something
δεδρακότας, ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον θᾶττον παλινοστεῖν.
having-done to the camp quicker to-return

4 Ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐκ ἀκραιφνῆ τἀγαθὰ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις πέφυκε
but for not unmixed the-goods for-the men are-by-nature
παραμένειν ἀεί, ἀλλὰ τοῖς κακοῖς ἀναμέμικται· καὶ
to-remain always but with-the evils are-mixed and
παρέπεται τοῖς μὲν εὐτυχήμασι συμφοραί, ἀνῖαι δὲ ἡδοναῖς,
accompany the indeed successes misfortunes griefs and pleasures
μὴ ἐῶσαι καθαρᾶς τῆς δεδομένης εὐετηρίας ἀπόνασθαι.
not allowing pure the given prosperity to-enjoy
ὁποῖον δὴ καὶ τότε Ῥωμαίοις συμβέβηκεν. ἐπεὶ γὰρ τῇ
which-sort indeed also then to-Romans has-happened when for the
χώρᾳ προσέβαλον, καὶ τρυφὴν παντοδαπὴν εὗρον (εὐδαίμων
land they-reached and luxury of-every-kind found prosperous
γὰρ ἡ χώρα, καὶ ὡραίων καρπῶν καὶ χυμῶν ἰδέαις
for the land and of-ripe fruits and of-juices in-kinds
ἐπιεικῶς περιβρίθουσα, εὔβοτός τε καὶ εὔμηλος), δέον
fairly laden well-pastured both and rich-in-sheep it-being-needful
τὰς ἐπισκήψεις τοῦ στρατηγοῦ, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, διατηρεῖν,
the injunctions of-the general as the likely to-keep
οἱ δὲ παρὰ φαῦλον θέμενοι καὶ πολλὰ χαίρειν ταύταις
they but at naught having-set and much to-fare-well to-these
εἰπόντες, ἐπὶ ῥᾳστώνην ἀπέκλιναν καὶ τρυφήν. τούτων οἱ
having-said to ease turned-aside and luxury of-these the
βάρβαροι, τοῖς ἐπικαιροτάτοις καὶ ἀμφιλαφέσι τῶν ὀρῶν
barbarians in-the most-advantageous and thickly-wooded of-the mountains
ἐλλοχῶντες, τὸ ἀκόλαστον τεθεαμένοι καὶ ἀφύλακτον,
lying-in-ambush the licentiousness having-observed and unguardedness
τῶν δρυμῶν καὶ χηραμῶν ὑπεκδύντες καὶ ἐς φάλαγγα
from-the thickets and holes having-slipped-out and into phalanx
παραταξάμενοι καὶ συνασπίσαντες, κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐχώρουν.
having-drawn-up and having-locked-shields against them advanced
οἱ δέ, καίπερ ἀκροσφαλεῖς τῇ μέθῃ τελοῦντες
they but although tottering with-the drunkenness being

καὶ ἀκροχάλικες, ὅμως τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀντεπῄεσαν
and half-drunk nevertheless the barbarians went-against
καὶ ῥωμαλέως ἀντικαθίσταντο. ἄρτι δὲ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
and stoutly withstood just and the general
Παστιλᾶ εὐρώστως διαγωνιζομένου, καὶ τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων
Pastilas vigorously fighting-it-out and the of-the barbarians
διακόπτοντος φάλαγγα, ὁ ἵππος, εἰς ὃν ἐπωχεῖτο, βέλεσι
cutting-through phalanx the horse on which he-rode with-missiles
καὶ δορατίοις τὰ στέρνα τυπείς, ὀκλάσας διαπεφωνήκει.
and javelins in-the chest struck having-sunk-down died
ὁ δὲ Παστιλᾶς εὐπετῶς τοῦ ἵππου ἀναθορών, μέχρι
— *and Pastilas nimbly from-the horse having-leapt-up as-far*
μέν τινος τῷ φασγάνῳ τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἠμύνετο, καὶ
indeed some(-time) with-the sword those attacking warded-off and
πολὺν τῶν βαρβάρων φόνον εἰργάσατο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔξαιμός
much of-the barbarians slaughter wrought when and bloodless
τε καὶ καταβελὴς ἐγεγόνει, λειποθυμήσας παρὰ τὸ
both and pierced-with-arrows he-had-become having-fainted by the
μεταίχμιον ἔπεσε. τούτου πεσόντος εἰς φυγὴν οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι
no-man's-land fell this-one having-fallen into flight the Romans
ἀπέκλιναν, καὶ πρὸς τῶν βαρβάρων δίκην βοσκημάτων
turned and by the barbarians in-the-manner of-cattle
ἐναπεσφάττοντο, ὡς ἐκ τῆς εἰρημένης σπείρας ὀλιγοστοὺς
were-slaughtered so-that from the mentioned company very-few
ἀνασεσῶσθαι εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. τοῦτο τὸ πάθος ὁ
to-have-escaped into the camp this the disaster —
Νικηφόρος Φωκᾶς αἰσθόμενος καὶ πολλὰ τῆς ἀβουλίας
Nikephoros Phokas having-perceived and much for-the folly
καὶ ῥᾳθυμίας τοὺς πεσόντας μεμψάμενος, ἔτι τε τὸ
and indolence the fallen having-blamed further and the
παλίντροπον κατευλαβηθεὶς τῆς τύχης καὶ ἄστατον, ἔγνω
changeable having-feared of-the fortune and unstable he-resolved

μηκέτι διαμέλλειν καὶ τὸν καιρὸν κατατρίβειν, κἀντεῦθεν
no-longer to-delay and the time to-waste and-thence
ἄδειαν ἐνιέναι τοῖς βαρβάροις, ἐνέδρας καὶ λόχους τίθεσθαι,
license to-give to-the barbarians ambushes and snares to-set
καὶ εἰς φάλαγγα συστάδην ἀντικαθίστασθαι· ἀλλὰ παντὶ
and into phalanx in-close-fight to-stand-against but with-all
σθένει καὶ πάσαις μηχαναῖς διανύτειν τὸν πόλεμον.
strength and all devices to-carry-through the war

II · THE SIEGE

Nikephoros walls off the Cretans' town from the land and exhorts his officers against the barbarians, recalling Pastilas' fall. By night he surrounds a hill where forty thousand Arabs are gathering and destroys them; the heads are carried back in bags, impaled before the walls, and slung into the town, where the Cretans wail but will not yield. A day's assault meets desperate resistance, and Nikephoros resolves to starve the town while siege engines are built, wintering before it and drilling his army.

5 Οὕτω διαλύοντι τούτῳ καὶ γνωματεύοντι (ἦν γὰρ
thus deliberating to-this-man and judging he-was for
ἀγχίνους τε καὶ δραστήριος, ἐννοῆσαί τε τὸ ξυνοῖσον
shrewd both and energetic to-conceive both the advantageous
καὶ εἰς πέρας ἀγαγεῖν πάντων, ὧν ἴσμεν, ἐπηβολώτατος,
and to end to-bring of-all whom we-know most-successful
σώφρων τε καὶ μὴ εἴκων ἡδοναῖς· καὶ προσέτι δεινὸς
prudent both and not yielding to-pleasures and besides clever
τοὺς καιροὺς καὶ τὰ πράγματα εἰς δέον μεταχειρίσασθαι,
the occasions and the affairs to need to-handle
τὴν μέντοι ἰσχὺν καὶ ῥώμην ἀκαταγώνιστος· λέγεται
in-the however strength and might invincible it-is-said

γὰρ πρωταγωνιστοῦ τινος τῶν ἀλκιμωτάτων βαρβάρων
for champion a-certain of-the most-valiant barbarians
ἀντικαταστάντος αὐτῷ ποτε, τὸ δόρυ κατὰ τῶν στέρνων
having-stood-against him once the spear against the chest
τὸν Νικηφόρον ἰθύναντα καὶ ἀμφοτέραις ὡσάμενον, οὕτω
— Nikephoros having-aimed and with-both(-hands) having-thrust so
γενέσθαι σφοδρὰν τὴν ἀντέρεισιν, ὡς καὶ διαμπερὲς
to-have-become violent the counter-thrust that also right-through
τὸ δόρυ διελθεῖν, καὶ ἄμφω διατεμεῖν τὰ μέρη τοῦ
the spear to-have-passed and both to-have-cut the parts of-the
θώρακος), ἔννοια γοῦν ἐπῆλθεν αὐτῷ, κύκλῳ τὸ ἄστυ
breastplate thought at-any-rate came to-him round the town
περιελθεῖν καὶ ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς τοῦτο κατασκοπῆσαι, ἵνα
to-go-around and to the exact this to-reconnoitre so-that
ὅποι παρείκοι προσαγάγῃ τὸν πόλεμον. περιελθὼν
wherever it-might-allow he-might-bring-up the war having-gone-around
οὖν καὶ τὴν ἄλλως δυσέμβολον πεφυκὸς ἰδὼν καὶ
then and the otherwise hard-to-attack being-by-nature having-seen and
δυσπρόσοδον· ἐκ τοῦ θατέρου μὲν γὰρ πλευροῦ τὴν
hard-of-access from the one indeed for side the
θάλατταν εἶχε φρουρὰν ἀσφαλῆ, κατὰ θάτερον δὲ ἐπ᾽
sea it-had guard secure on the-other and on
ἀγχωμάλου καὶ ἰσοπέδου λίθου ἠρήρειστο, ἐφ᾽ ᾗ τὰ γεῖσα
level and even-surfaced stone it-was-founded on which the cornices
τεθεμελίωτο, τό τε δόμημα καινόν τι προὐβάλλετο καὶ
had-been-founded the and structure new something displayed and
ἀλλόκοτον· ἐκ χοὸς γὰρ καὶ τριχῶν αἰγείων καὶ ὑείων
strange from earth for and hairs of-goats and of-swine
συντεθειμένων καὶ ἐπιεικῶς συμπεπιλημένων ᾠκοδόμητο·
put-together and fairly pressed-together it-had-been-built
εὖρός τε τοσοῦτον ἔφερεν, ὅσον ἁμάξας δύο εὐπετῶς
breadth and so-much it-bore as wagons two easily

ἔχειν κατὰ τῶν ἐπάλξεων ἐναλλὰξ διοδεύειν περίδρομον,
to-be-able along the battlements crosswise to-pass round
ἐς ὕψος τε ἀποχρώντως ἦρτο· καὶ προσέτι ταφρεῖαι
to height and sufficiently it-had-been-raised and besides ditches
δύο ἐς εὖρος ὅτι μάλιστα καὶ βάθος ἱκνούμεναι πέριξ αὐτοῦ
two to breadth as most and depth reaching round it
ὠρωρύχατο. τοῦτο ἐχυρόν, ᾗπερ εἴρηται, καὶ δυσάλωτον
had-been-dug this strong as has-been-said and hard-to-take
ἀτεχνῶς καταμαθών, τοιοῦτόν τι ἀντιτεχνάζεται. ἀπὸ
simply having-learned such something be-counter-contrives from
τῆς πρὸς νότον τετραμμένης ῥηγμῖνος ἀρξάμενος οἰκοδομεῖν
the toward south turned surf-line having-begun to-build
μέχρι τῆς ἐπὶ θάτερα ἠϊόνος, τὸ διῆκον τῆς χέρσου
as-far-as the on other-side shore the stretch of-the dry-land
ἑρκίῳ διατειχίζει, καὶ πρὸς πόντον τὸ τῶν Κρητῶν
with-a-fence he-walls-across and toward sea the of-the Cretans
ἄστυ καθείργνυσιν, ὡς μὴ ἔχοιεν εὐπετῶς τῇ χέρσῳ
town he-shuts-in so-that not they-might-have easily to-the dry-land
προσεπιβαίνειν οἱ βάρβαροι, ὅτε καὶ βούλοιντο, ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ δὲ
to-go-onto the barbarians when even they-should-wish with him and
κεῖσθαι, πολεμητέα εἶναι, καὶ μή, ὁπότε καὶ τοῦτο δοκεῖ. τὸ
to-lie to-be-fought to-be and not whenever also this seems the
τοιοῦτον δὴ τειχίον θᾶττον συμπεράνας ὁ Νικηφόρος, ἐφ᾽
such indeed little-wall quickly having-completed — Nikephoros to
ἕτερον ἠπείγετο τρόπαιον, ὅπερ ὁ λόγος αὐτίκα δηλώσει.
another was-hastening trophy which the account presently will-show
παρὰ τὴν στρατήγιον σκηνὴν τοὺς ἐν τέλει συγκαλεσάμενος,
beside the general's tent those in office having-called-together
καὶ γεγωνοτέρᾳ χρησάμενος τῇ φωνῇ, ἔλεξε τοιάδε·
and louder having-used the voice spoke such-things

“Τὸ μὲν ὠμὸν καὶ θηριῶδες τῶν τῆς παιδίσκης ἐκγόνων, 6
the indeed cruel and bestial of-the of-the bondmaid offspring
τήν τε τούτων καταδρομὴν καὶ τὸν ἀνδραποδισμόν,
the both their raiding and the enslavement
ὅσα φονιωδῶς Ῥωμαίοις εἰργάσαντο (καὶ ταῦτα
as-many-as murderously to-Romans they-wrought and that
νῆσον παροικοῦντες τὴν ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῖς τεταγμένην, εἰ καὶ
an-island inhabiting the under them placed if even
μοχθηρίᾳ τύχης παρὰ τοῖς Ἀγαρηνοῖς ἐγεγόνει),
by-wickedness of-fortune in-the-hands-of the Hagarenes it-had-become
οἶομαι μηδένα λήσειν ὑμῶν. ἦ γὰρ οὐκ ἀνοίκητος μὲν
I-think no-one to-escape of-you truly for not uninhabited indeed
ἡ παράλιος πᾶσα σχεδὸν ἐκ τῆς τούτων ἀπαγωγῆς;
the coast all almost from the their carrying-off
οὐκ ἔρημοι δὲ τῶν νήσων αἱ πλείους τῇ τούτων
not desolate and of-the islands the most by-the their
καταδρομῇ; δι᾽ ἃ οὐκ ἠνέσχετο πάντως ἡ
raiding because-of which-things not endured altogether the
πρόνοια μέχρι καὶ τοῦ παντός, τοὺς ψεύστας, τὰ θηρία
providence as-far even of-the all the liars the beasts
τὰ κάκιστα, τὰς ἀργὰς γαστέρας, καταθοινεῖσθαι λαὸν
the most-evil the idle bellies to-feast-upon people
τὸν Χριστώνυμον· ἀλλὰ τῇ τοῦ κρατοῦντος ῥοπῇ ἡμᾶς
the Christ-named but by-the of-the ruling(-one) inclination us
ἐνταῦθα διεπεραιώσατο, ἑπταπλασίως αὐτοῖς ἀποδοῦναι τὸ
here brought-across sevenfold to-them to-render the
ἀνταπόδομα, ὃ ἀνηλεῶς ἡμῖν ἀνταπέδωκαν. τεκμήριον
requital which pitilessly to-us they-requited proof
δὲ τῶν λεγομένων ἡ προβᾶσα νίκη. ἄρτι γὰρ διαπόντιοι
and of-the things-said the past victory just for overseas
σχεδὸν τελοῦντες, καὶ μηδὲ τὴν ἐκ θαλάττης ναυτίαν
almost being and not-even the from sea sickness

ὁλοσχερῶς ἀποπτύσαντες, ἅμα τῷ ἐπιβῆναι τῆς νήσου
entirely having-spat-out at-once with-the to-set-foot on-the island
τῇ τοῦ κρείττονος ἀρωγῇ μαχαίρας ἔργον πλείστους τῶν
with-the of-the stronger aid of-the-sword work very-many of-the
βαρβάρων ἐθέμεθα· τοὺς δὲ περιλειφθέντας αὐτῶν ἀπονητὶ
barbarians we-made those and left of-them without-toil
τῷ ἄστει περιεκλείσαμεν. ἐκλιπαρῶ οὖν, συστρατιῶται,
in-the town we-shut-in I-entreat then fellow-soldiers
μὴ πρὸς ῥᾳστώνην ὑμᾶς ἀπιδεῖν καὶ τρυφήν· ἐξ ὑπογυίου
not to ease you to-look and luxury from recently
γὰρ ἡμῖν τοῦ πτώματος τὸ παράδειγμα. εἰ γὰρ τὰς ἐμὰς
for for-us of-the fall the example if for the my
ἐπισκήψεις σὺν τῷ Παστιλᾷ Νικηφόρῳ οἱ προκατασκοπεῖν
injunctions with — Pastilas Nikephoros those to-reconnoitre
σταλέντες τῆς χώρας ἐφύλαξαν, καὶ μὴ ἐς τρυφὴν καὶ
sent of-the land had-kept and not into luxury and
τὴν ἄλλην ἀπέκλιναν ἡδονήν, οὐκ ἂν τοιαύτῃ πανολεθρίᾳ
the other had-turned-aside pleasure not — in-such utter-ruin
ἀπώλοντο. νῦν δέ, τούτων ἀλογήσαντες, τῆς σφῶν
they-would-have-perished now but these having-disregarded of-the their-own
ἀβελτηρίας ἠνέγκαντο ἐπίχειρα. δεῖ οὖν τὸ τῶν
stupidity they-carried-off wages it-is-needful then the of-the
ἑταίρων πτῶμα εὐλαβηθέντας νήφειν τε καὶ προσέχειν,
comrades fall having-heeded to-be-sober both and to-attend
καὶ ὅλῃ σπουδῇ καὶ ῥώμῃ ἐξερευνῆσαι καὶ ἀνιχνεῦσαι
and with-whole zeal and strength to-search-out and to-track-down
τὰ ἐλλοχῶντα τῇδε βάρβαρα θηρία, καὶ τῶν χηραμῶν
the lurking here barbarian beasts and from-the holes
καὶ φωλεῶν ἐξερύσαντας ἀπωλείᾳ παραπέμψασθαι. μὴ
and dens having-dragged-out to-destruction to-dispatch not
οὖν νωθείᾳ καὶ μέθῃ προϊστάμεθα τὸν καιρόν, ἀλλὰ
then by-sluggishness and drunkenness let-us-throw-away the occasion but

Ῥωμαῖοι τελοῦντες τὸ νεανικὸν καὶ γενναῖον τῆς ἡμῶν
Romans being the youthful and noble of-the our
εὐγενείας παράστημα ἐν τοῖς ἀγῶσιν ἐπιδειξόμεθα.”
nobility spirit in the contests we-shall-display
Εἶπεν ὁ στρατηγός, καὶ δῆτα τὸ στράτευμα ἀνεθάῤῥησέ τε, 7
spoke the general and indeed the army took-heart both
καὶ ἐπεκρότησε, καὶ τῶν κουλεῶν τὰ ξίφη σπασάμενον,
and applauded and from-the scabbards the swords having-drawn
αὐθόρμητον ἦν ἕπεσθαι τούτῳ, καὶ πειθαρχεῖν, ὅποι καὶ
of-its-own-accord it-was to-follow him and to-obey wherever also
βούλοιτο. ὁ δὲ ἀτρεμεῖν τέως καὶ ἠρεμεῖν διεκέλευεν, ἕως
he-might-wish he but to-keep-still meanwhile and to-be-quiet ordered until
ἂν αὐτὸς ἐπισκήψῃ ἔργου ἔχεσθαι, ὁπηνίκα καὶ δεῖ.
— he-himself should-enjoin the-work to-take-up when also it-is-needful
ἄρτι δὲ τῶν νυκτῶν ἀωρὶ τὸ νεανικὸν καὶ ἀκμαῖον
just and of-the nights untimely the youthful and vigorous
διακριδὸν τοῦ στρατοῦ προσεταιρισάμενος, ἡσυχῇ ὑπεξῄει
selectively of-the army having-taken-as-companions quietly he-went-out
τοῦ χάρακος, ὡς μὴ αἴσθοιντο τὴν τούτων οἱ βάρβαροι
from-the palisade so-that not should-perceive the their the barbarians
ἄπαρσιν, καὶ δεινόν τι τῇ καταλειφθείσῃ στρατιᾷ
departure and dire something against-the left-behind army
σκαιωρήσοιντο. ἐξελθὼν δὲ τοῦ χάρακος, καὶ μέρος
should-contrive having-gone-out and from-the palisade and part
τῆς χώρας καταδραμών, ἐπεὶ πρὸς τῶν ἐζωγρημένων
of-the land having-overrun when from the captured
ἀνέμαθεν, ἐπί τι γεώλοφον στρατιὰν βαρβάρων ὡσεὶ
he-learned on a-certain hill army of-barbarians about
μυριάδων τεττάρων ἀθροίζεσθαι, ὡς ἂν ἐξ ἐφόδου
of-myriads four to-be-gathering so-that — from attack
ἀπροόπτως τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐπέλθῃ, καὶ τῆς τε νήσου
unforeseen on-the Romans it-might-come and from-the both island

τούτους ἀπελάσῃ, καὶ τοὺς σφετέρους τῆς τοῦ ἄστεος
them might-drive and the their-own from-the of-the town
ἀπαλλάξῃ καθείρξεως. τούτων ἀκηκοὼς ὁ στρατηγὸς
might-free shutting-in these-things having-heard the general
καὶ τὸν ἑφεπόμενον τῶν λογάδων στρατὸν πανημέριον
and the following of-the picked army all-day
διαναπαύσας, πρὸς ἑσπέραν βαθεῖαν ἀπάρας καὶ ἡγεμόνας
having-rested toward evening deep having-set-out and guides
τῶν τόπων ἰθαγενεῖς ἄνδρας ἀνειληφώς, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ
of-the places native men having-taken since also the
σεληναῖον φῶς ὑπέλαμπε, πεπληρωμένης τῆς μήνης οὔσης,
of-the-moon light shone-beneath full the moon being
συντείνων ἔσπευδε, μηδὲν τάχους ἀνιείς· καὶ δὴ κυκλόθεν
straining he-hastened nothing of-speed relaxing and indeed all-around
τὸν γεώλοφον περιεστοίχισεν, ἵνα βαθὺν οἱ βάρβαροι
the hill he-surrounded where deep the barbarians
ὕπνον ἐκάθευδον. κἄπειτα τὰς σάλπιγγας ἐπηχῆσαι καὶ τὰ
sleep slept and-then the trumpets to-sound and the
τύμπανα παταγῆσαι ἐγκελευσάμενος, διὰ τοῦ γεωλόφου
drums to-beat having-ordered through the hill
ἐχώρει. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι, τὸν ψόφον τῶν ὅπλων αἰσθόμενοι,
he-advanced the and barbarians the clash of-the arms having-perceived
ψιλοὶ καὶ ἀπαράσκευοι ὄντες, καὶ τῷ ἀπροόπτῳ τῆς
unarmed and unprepared being and by-the unforeseen of-the
ἐφόδου καταπλαγέντες, εἰς φυγαδείαν ἀπέκλιναν. ἀλλ᾽
attack astounded into flight turned but
οὐκ ἦν ἀπαλλάξαι, τῆς ὑπωρείας ἁπάσης κατεχομένης
not it-was to-get-away the foothills all being-held
τῇ Ῥωμαϊκῇ φάλαγγι. ἀκονιτὶ οὖν ἐν μικρᾷ χρόνου
by-the Roman phalanx without-dust then in small of-time
ῥοπῇ τὸ τῶν τεττάρων μυριάδων τῶν βαρβάρων ἡβηδὸν
moment the of-the four myriads of-the barbarians to-a-man

παραπώλετο πλῆθος, ἔργον γεγονὸς αἰχμῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς. ἀλλὰ
perished multitude work become of-spear Roman but
τῷ τοιούτῳ καινῷ τροπαίῳ ἕτερον ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐξήρτυε
to-the such new trophy another the general prepared
τρόπαιον. τοῦ γὰρ πεσόντος πλήθους τὰς κάρας ἐκτεμεῖν
trophy of-the for fallen multitude the heads to-cut-off
διωρίσατο, καὶ ταύτας ταῖς πήραις ἐνθέντας μετακομίσαι
he-ordered and these in-the bags having-put to-carry
πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον· μισθὸν δὲ τῷ κάραν κομίζοντι
to the camp pay and to-the(-one) a-head bringing
δίδοσθαι διεβεβαιοῦτο ἀργύριον. τοῦτο τὸ δόγμα ἀσμένως
to-be-given he-assured silver this the decree gladly
δεξάμενος ὁ στρατός, καὶ μάλιστα τὸ τῶν Ἀρμενίων στίφος,
having-received the army and most the of-the Armenians band
τὰ βαρβαρικὰ ἐναπέτεμε κάρηνα καὶ ταῖς πήραις ἀπέθεντο.
the barbarian cut-off heads and in-the bags put-away
ἐννύχιόν τε ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀφίκετο κατὰ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
by-night and the general arrived at the camp
Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἄρτι τοῦ φωσφόρου τὸν ὁρίζοντα 8
on-the and next-day just the light-bringer the horizon
παραμείβοντος καὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ πόλου μεταβαίνοντος
passing and to the of-the vault going-on
ἄντυγα, ἐπὶ τῶν δοράτων περιπείρειν τὰς τῶν βαρβάρων
rim on the spears to-impale the of-the barbarians
κάρας προσέταττεν, ἐπιστίχως τε παρὰ τὸ τειχίον, ὃ
heads he-ordered in-rows and along the little-wall which
αὐτὸς ἐδείματο, καταπηγνύειν αὐτά· τὰς δὲ καὶ διὰ
he-himself had-built to-fix them some and also by
τῶν πετροβόλων ὀργάνων ἐπὶ τῷ ἄστει ἐκσφενδονᾶν.
the stone-throwing engines on the town to-sling
τοὺς δὲ Κρῆτας, τὴν ἐπίστιχον τῶν δοράτων τάξιν καὶ
the and Cretans the in-rows of-the spears line and

τὰς ἐπ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐμπεπαρμένας κάρας ἀθρήσαντας, τὰς
the on them impaled heads having-beheld those
δὲ κατὰ τὸ ἄστυ ἐκσφενδονωμένας καὶ ταῖς ἐπάλξεσι
and against the town slung and against-the battlements
προσαρασσομένας τοῦ ἄστεος, καὶ ταύτας τῶν ὁμοεθνῶν
dashing of-the town and these of-the kinsmen
καὶ συγγενῶν εἶναι ἀκριβῶς ἐπιφρασαμένους, φρίκη μὲν
and relatives to-be exactly having-perceived shuddering indeed
ἐκ τοῦ εὐθέος καὶ ἀλλοίωσις ᾕρει φρενῶν, καὶ παρὰ
from the straight(-way) and alteration seized of-minds and at
τὴν οἰκτρὰν καὶ ἀπροσδόκητον ὄψιν ἐπεπήγεσαν. ἐντεῦθεν
the pitiable and unexpected sight they-stood-fixed thence
ἀνδρῶν οἰμωγαί, καὶ κωκυτὸς τῶν γυναίων ἠκούετο,
of-men wailings and sbrieking of-the women was-heard
καὶ σχῆμα τὸ ἄστυ κατεῖχεν ἁλώσεως, ὀλοφυρομένων
and appearance the town held of-capture lamenting
ἁπάντων καὶ ἀποκλαιομένων τὰ φίλτατα. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς
all and bewailing the dearest(-ones) but even so
οὐκ ἔμελλεν αὖθις Ῥωμαίοις εἶξαι καὶ σπείσασθαι· τῷ
not it-was-going again to-Romans to-yield and to-make-terms in-the
ἐρυμνῷ δὲ πίσυνοι τοῦ σφετέρου πτολίσματος, παρέθηγόν
strength but trusting of-the their-own town they-whetted
τε τὰς προθυμίας, καὶ καθωπλισμένοι τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
both the zeal and fully-armed the of-the Romans
παρετηροῦντο ῥοπήν, ἵν᾽, εἴ τις ἐπήει, ἀμύνοιντο.
watched onset so-that if anyone attacked they-might-ward-off
ὁ δὲ στρατηγός, τῇ σάλπιγγι σημήνας τὸν πόλεμον,
the and general with-the trumpet having-signaled the war
ἐῤῥωμενέστερόν τε διακινδυνεύειν ἐγκελευσάμενος, τῷ τείχει
more-vigorously and to-hazard having-ordered to-the wall
προσῆγε τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ δῆτα τῆς μάχης ἀναῤῥαγείσης
led-up the army and indeed the battle having-broken-out

ἦν ὁρᾷν ἔργα χειρῶν καὶ τόλμης γιγνόμενα ἔμπλεα,
it-was to-see deeds of-hands and of-daring happening full
πολλαχῇ τῶν δοράτων ἀκοντιζομένων, καὶ τῶν βελῶν
in-many-ways the spears being-hurled and the missiles
δίκην χειμερίων νιφάδων ἐκπεμπομένων, καὶ θαμινὰ τῶν
in-the-manner of-wintry snowflakes being-sent-out and thickly the
λίθων τῶν πετροβόλων ὀργάνων ἀφιεμένων, καὶ ταῖς
stones of-the stone-throwing engines being-let-fly and against-the
ἐπάλξεσι προσαρασσομένων. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι καὶ αὐτοὶ
battlements dashing the but barbarians also themselves
τῆς ἀνάγκης κατεπειγούσης ῥωμαλέως ἀντηγωνίζοντο, ἐκ
the necessity pressing stoutly fought-back from
τοῦ τείχους τε ἀμυνόμενοι καὶ ἀντιτοξεύοντες, καὶ πελέκεις
the wall both defending and shooting-back and axes
ἄνωθεν ῥιπτοῦντες, καὶ ταλαντιαίους λίθους ἐπαφιέντες·
from-above hurling and talent-weight stones letting-fly
καὶ οὐδὲν ὅ τι παρεῖτο τούτοις τῶν εἰς τὸ πολεμεῖν
and nothing what — was-neglected by-them of-the for the fighting
ἀμυντηρίων, καὶ οὐχ ἧττον ἀντέδρων, ὧν ἔπασχον.
defenses and not less they-did-in-return than-what they-suffered
ὁ γὰρ προφανὴς κίνδυνος καὶ ἡ τῆς σωτηρίας ἀπόγνωσις
the for manifest danger and the of-the safety despair
παρεκρότει τούτους ὑπὲρ δύναμιν ἀγωνίζεσθαι, καὶ τοῖς
urged them beyond strength to-fight and the
δυσμενέσι παραβόλως ἀντικαθίστασθαι.
enemies recklessly to-withstand
Νικηφόρος δέ, ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατηγός, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸν 9
Nikephoros and the of-the Romans general since also the
περίβολον τοῦ ἄστεος ἐχυρόν τε ἀτεχνῶς ἑώρα, καὶ τὴν
circuit-wall of-the town strong both simply he-saw and the
ἄλλως δυσέμβολον καὶ ἀνάλωτον (οὐ γὰρ ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς
otherwise hard-to-attack and impregnable not for from assault

εὐεπίβατος ἦν, εἰς ὕψος ὅτι πλεῖστον ἠρμένος, καὶ δυσὶ
easy-to-mount it-was to height as most raised and with-two
ταφρείαις διεζωσμένος εἰς βάθος ὀρωρυγμέναις ἀνάλογον),
ditches girded to depth dug proportionately
καὶ τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀπόγνωσιν καὶ ἀντίστασιν τὸ μέτρον
and the of-the barbarians despair and resistance the measure
ἐκβαίνουσαν· ἔγνω, μὴ θανατῶσι καὶ ἀπονενοημένοις
exceeding he-resolved not with-courting-death and desperate
ἀνδράσι συμπλέκεσθαι κάτωθεν, καὶ ἀνηνύτοις ἐπιχειρεῖν,
men to-grapple from-below and impossible(-things) to-attempt
ὑψόθεν τε βάλλεσθαι, καὶ τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἐς οὐδὲν δέον
from-above both to-be-struck and the Roman to no need
διαφθείρειν παράταξιν· τῷ δὲ λιμῷ παραδώσειν τὸ
to-destroy array to-the and famine to-hand-over the
ἄστυ, ἕως ἂν τὰς ἑλεπόλεις καὶ ὅσα εἰς τειχομαχίαν
town until — the siege-engines and as-many-as for wall-fighting
ἐξεύρηται ὄργανα δεόντως ἐπισκευάσοιτο. ταύτῃ τοι
are-devised engines fittingly he-should-prepare thus indeed
καὶ τὸν πόλεμον ἀναβάλλεται, καὶ τῇ σάλπιγγι τὰς
also the war he-postpones and with-the trumpet the
στρατιωτικὰς ἀνακαλεσάμενος φάλαγγας, ἐς τὸν χάρακα
military having-recalled phalanxes to the palisade
ἀπεφοίτα. καὶ τοῦτον κυκλόθεν ἑρκίῳ καὶ ταφρείᾳ
withdrew and this all-around with-a-fence and ditch
ἱκανῶς ὀχυρώσας, τόν τε στρατὸν διεγύμναζε, καὶ ταῖς
sufficiently having-fortified the both army he-exercised and by-the
καθ' ἡμέραν μελέταις πολλὴν τὴν ἐμπειρίαν ταῖς φάλαγξιν
per day practices much the experience for-the phalanxes
ἀπετίθετο, καὶ τὰς ἑλεπόλεις ἐκλογῇ τεχνιτῶν ἐτεκταίνετο,
stored-up and the siege-engines by-selection of-craftsmen was-building

ἐκδρομάς τε καὶ ἀκροβολισμοὺς ἐκ τοῦ παρείκοντος
sallies both and skirmishes from the opportunity
ἐποιεῖτο, καὶ αὐτόθι πανσυδὶ πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος διεχείμαζεν.
he-made and there in-full-force before the town wintered

BOOK II

III · LEO PHOKAS AGAINST CHAMBDAS

While Nikephoros winters in Crete, Chambdas, leader of the Arabs beside Cilicia, raids Roman Asia. Romanos sends Nikephoros' brother Leo, Domestic of the West, who has just destroyed an army of Huns from beyond the Ister. With a small force Leo will not fight in the open; he exhorts his men to wait in ambush in the mountain passes. When the Arabs, laden with booty, crowd into a defile, he falls on them. Chambdas escapes only by scattering his gold on the path, and Leo returns to triumph in Constantinople.

Ὁ μὲν δὴ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατηγὸς Νικηφόρος ἐς τὴν 1
the indeed truly of-the Romans general Nikephoros into the
τῶν Κρητῶν νῆσον, ᾗπέρ μοι εἴρηται, ἤδη τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν
of-the Cretans island as by-me has-been-said already the Roman
περαιωσάμενος δύναμιν, καὶ τῶν ἰθαγενῶν βαρβάρων
having-carried-across force and of-the native barbarians
ἐν τῇ συστάδην μάχῃ τοὺς μὲν παρανάλωμα μαχαίρας
in the close-quarters battle some indeed spoil of-the-sword
ἀπεργασάμενος, τοὺς δὲ περιλειφθέντας ἀπονητί τε καὶ
having-made the and left without-toil both and
ἀκαρῆ τῷ ἄστει συγκλείσας, αὐτόθι τε διεχείμαζε, καὶ
in-a-moment in-the town having-shut-in there both he-wintered and
τὸν στρατὸν ὁσημέραι τῷ πολεμεῖν ἐξεπαίδευεν. ἐν τούτῳ
the army daily in-the to-fight trained in this
δὲ Χαμβδᾶν, ὁ τῶν τῆς Κιλικίας προσοίκων Ἀγαρηνῶν
and Chambdas the of-the — of-Cilicia neighboring Hagarenes

ἀρχηγός, ἀνὴρ ἀγχίνους τε καὶ δραστήριος, ἐμπειρίᾳ
leader a-man shrewd both and energetic in-experience
τε πολέμων ἐκ νεότητος ἁπάντων τῶν ὁμοεθνῶν
both of-wars from youth all the fellow-tribesmen
ἀδηρίτως ὑπερτερῶν, ἐπεὶ τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς ᾔσθετο δυνάμεις
indisputably surpassing when the Roman he-perceived forces
ἔκπλουν καὶ ἄπαρσιν ποιουμένας κατὰ τῶν Κρητῶν,
sailing-out and departure making against the Cretans
ἔγνω πρὸς αὑτοῦ τὸν καιρὸν εἶναι, ἀδεῶς τε τῆς
he-judged for himself the occasion to-be fearlessly both the
ἀνατολῆς καταδραμεῖν, ὁπόσον ἡ Ῥωμαϊκὴ διέπει ἀρχή,
east to-overrun as-much-as the Roman administers rule
καὶ τοῦτο ληΐσασθαι ἀναιμωτί, καὶ πλοῦτον συναγεῖραι
and this to-plunder without-bloodshed and wealth to-gather
πλεῖστον, καὶ κλέος ἀείμνηστον ἀπενέγκασθαι. καὶ δῆτα
very-much and fame ever-memorable to-carry-off and indeed
τὸ ἀκμαῖον καὶ νεανικὸν τῶν Ἀράβων καὶ Ἀγαρηνῶν
the vigorous and youthful of-the Arabs and Hagarenes
συναλίσας, κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐπικρατείας ἐχώρει, πᾶν
having-collected against the Roman dominion advanced all
τὸ παραπίπτον κατεμπιπρῶν καὶ λείαν τιθέμενος. ὁ δὲ
the coming-in-his-way burning and booty making the and
αὐτοκράτωρ Ῥωμανός, τὴν ἔφοδον τούτου αἰσθόμενος καὶ
emperor Romanos the attack his having-perceived and
τὴν ὕπαιθρον καὶ βιαίαν καταδρομήν, Λέοντα τὸν Φωκᾶν,
the open and violent raid Leo — Phokas
ὁμαίμονα τοῦ Νικηφόρου τελοῦντα, καὶ τῶν τῆς Εὐρώπης
brother — of-Nikephoros being and of-the — of-Europe
στρατιωτικῶν καταλόγων κατάρχοντα (Δομέστικον δύσεως
military rolls commanding Domestic of-(the)-west
Ῥωμαῖοι τὴν τοιαύτην ἀρχὴν ὀνομάζουσι), τῷ Χαμβδᾶν
Romans the such office call — to-Chambdas

ἀντίξουν ἐκπέμπει· ἄνδρα γενναῖον καὶ νεανικόν, φρενήρη
opponent sends-out a-man noble and youthful sensible
τε διαφερόντως, καὶ τὸ ξυνοῖσον ἐν περιστάσεσιν
both exceedingly and the going-to-be-advantageous in crises
ἐπιφράσασθαι πάντων, ὧν ἴσμεν, ἐπιβολώτατον· ᾧ
to-discern of-all whom we-know most-successful with-whom
θεία τις, οἶμαι, κατὰ τὰς μάχας συνεμάχει ῥοπή, ἅπαν
divine a-certain I-think in the battles fought-alongside inclination all
τὸ ἀντίπαλον καταστρεφομένη καὶ τιθεῖσα ὑπόσπονδον.
the opposing subduing and making subject-by-treaty
Πολλῶν γὰρ αὐτῷ συῤῥαγέντων πολέμων παρὰ τὸν 2
many for to-him having-broken-out wars during the
τῆς στρατηγίας καιρόν, οὐδέποτε τοῦ ἀντικαθισταμένου
of-the generalship time never from-the opponent
ἀπῆλθε μειονεκτῶν, ἀλλ᾽ ἀεὶ τὸ πλέον τῆς νίκης
he-came-away worsted but always the greater of-the victory
ἀποφερόμενος. τῷ τοι καὶ Σκυθικῆς στρατιᾶς τὸν
carrying-off therefore indeed also Scythian army the
Ἴστρον περαιωθείσης τὸ κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ (Οὔννους τὸ
Ister having-crossed the at that time Huns the
ἔθνος κατονομάζουσιν), ἐπεὶ μὴ οἷός τε ἦν ὁ στρατηγὸς
nation they-name since not able — was the general
Λέων ἐξ ἀντιπάλου ταύτῃ συμπλέκεσθαι, ὑπεράριθμον
Leo from opposing(-strength) with-it to-grapple numberless
ἐπαγαλλομένης τὸ πλῆθος τῆς φάλαγγος, σπανίζουσαν
exulting-in the multitude of-the phalanx scant
αὐτὸς καὶ οὐκ ἀξιόμαχον ἴλην στρατιωτῶν ἐπαγόμενος,
he-himself and not fit-for-battle troop of-soldiers bringing
ἔγνω μὴ ἐς προῦπτον κίνδυνον φέρων ἐνσεῖσαι αὑτόν τε
he-resolved not into manifest danger rushing to-hurl himself both
καὶ τοὺς συνεπομένους, λαθραίως δὲ μᾶλλον τοῖς Σκύθαις
and those following secretly but rather on-the Scythians

ἐπιπεσεῖν, καί τι γενναῖον δρᾶσαι καὶ ἀνδρικόν, καὶ
to-fall and something noble to-do and manly and
δόξαν εὐκλεᾶ σφετερίσασθαι. ἄρτι γοῦν διὰ τῶν
glory famous to-win just at-any-rate through the
δρυμῶν κρύβδην παραδραμών, καὶ τὴν ἔπαυλιν τῶν
thickets secretly having-run-past and the encampment of-the
Οὔννων ἐξ ἀπόπτου περιαθρήσας, καὶ τὸ πλῆθος ἐς
Huns from a-distant-view having-surveyed and the multitude to
τὸ ἀκριβὲς κατασκοπήσας, ἀωρὶ τῶν νυκτῶν τριχῇ
the exact having-reconnoitred at-dead-hour of-the nights threefold
διαιρήσας τὴν φάλαγγα, ἐπῄει τοῖς Σκύθαις, καὶ
having-divided the phalanx he-advanced-on the Scythians and
τοσοῦτον φόνον αἰφνίδιον εἰσπεσὼν ἐν μικρᾷ καιροῦ ῥοπῇ
so-much slaughter sudden having-fallen-in in small of-time moment
ἀπειργάσατο, ὡς εὐαριθμήτους ἐκ τοῦ ἀμυθήτου πλήθους
he-wrought so-that easily-counted from the indescribable multitude
διαφυγεῖν. τοῦτον τὸν στρατηγὸν Λέοντα Ῥωμανὸς ὁ
to-escape this the general Leo Romanos the
αὐτοκράτωρ εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν διεβιβάσατο, εἴ πως ἀλλὰ τάς
emperor into — Asia transferred if somehow at-least the
τε τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιδρομὰς ἀναστείλειε, καὶ τὰς ἀναίδην
both of-the barbarians raids he-might-check and the shamelessly
τολμωμένας ἀναχαιτίσοι ἐπαγωγάς. ὁ δὲ στρατηγός, ἐπεὶ
dared he-might-rein-in invasions the and general when
τῆς Εὐρώπης ἀπάρας τὴν Ἀσίαν κατείληφε, καὶ τὸ αὔθαδες
— from-Europe having-set-out — Asia reached and the arrogance
καὶ ἀτέραμνον τοῦ Χαμβδᾶν ἠνωτίζετο, καὶ νεὼς καὶ
and harshness — of-Chambdas heard and temples and
κώμας πεπυρπολημένας ἑώρα, καὶ φρουρίων κατασκαφάς,
villages burned he-saw and of-forts demolitions
ἐρημίαν τε τῶν κατοίκων καὶ βιαίαν ἀπαγωγήν, ἔγνω,
desolation both of-the inhabitants and violent carrying-off he-resolved

μὴ ἐς προῦπτον κίνδυνον ἐνιέναι τὴν στρατιάν, μηδὲ τῷ
not into manifest danger to-send the army nor with-the
βαρβαρικῷ εἰς τοὐμφανὲς ἀντιπαρατάττεσθαι πλήθει, πολλὰς
barbarian into the-open to-be-arrayed-against multitude many
μὲν ἐπανῃρημένῳ νίκας, ταῖς δὲ παρ᾽ ἐλπίδα γαυριῶντι
indeed having-won victories in-the and beyond hope exulting
τύχαις, μυριανθρώπους τε καὶ ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς καθωπλισμένας
fortunes countless-manned both and to the exact fully-armed
ἐπιφερομένῳ τὰς φάλαγγας· καὶ μάλιστα εὐαρίθμητόν
bringing-on the phalanxes and most easily-counted
τε τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ οὐκ ἀξιόχρεων αὐτὸς ἐπαγόμενος,
both the army and not adequate he-himself bringing
κατεπτηχυῖάν τε τὰς τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν εὐημερίας καὶ τὰ καθ᾽
having-cowered both the of-the Hagarenes successes and the by
ἑκάστην τρόπαια· κατειληφέναι δὲ μᾶλλον τὰ ἐπικαιρότατα
each(-day) trophies to-seize but rather the most-advantageous
καὶ κρημνώδη τῶν χώρων καὶ προλοχίζειν κατὰ ταῦτα, καὶ
and precipitous of-the places and to-lay-ambush along these and
τὰς διεξόδους ὑποτηρεῖν· ὑπαντιάζειν τε τοῖς βαρβάροις
the passes to-watch to-meet both the barbarians
ἐν τοῖς ἐπισφαλέσι καὶ ἀμφιταλάντοις τῶν ἀταρπιτῶν,
in the dangerous and teetering of-the paths
καὶ καρτερῶς ἀγωνίζεσθαι, ὁπηνίκα καὶ διοδεύοιεν.
and stoutly to-fight when also they-should-pass-through
Οὕτω δὴ γνωσιμαχήσαντι καὶ βουλευσαμένῳ τῷ 3
thus indeed having-reconsidered and having-deliberated to-the
στρατηγῷ Λέοντι ἐπῆλθε, καὶ λόγοις ὑπαλεῖψαι τὴν
general Leo it-occurred both with-words to-anoint the
στρατιὰν καὶ παραινέσεσιν ἐπιῤῥῶσαι, κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων
army and with-exhortations to-strengthen against the barbarians
ἡνίκα δέοι χωρεῖν, καὶ θαῤῥαλεωτέραν ἐργάσασθαι
when it-should-be-needful to-advance and bolder to-make

πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. Διαναστὰς οὖν ἐπὶ τοῦ πλήθους καὶ
for the war having-stood-up then before the multitude and
μικρὸν ἐπισχών, τοιαύτην εἰσηγεῖτο παραίνεσιν· "Ἅπαν
a-little having-paused such he-introduced exhortation all
μὲν τὸ καθ' ὑμᾶς στῖφος εἰδὼς ἄριστον, ὦ συστρατιῶται,
indeed the among you band knowing best O fellow-soldiers
αὐτουργόν τε τὰ πολέμια, καὶ τακτικῆς ἐμπειρίας
practiced both in-the warlike(-things) and of-tactical experience
ὑπόπλεον, ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀσίαν ὁ κοινὸς ἀμφοτέρων δεσπότης
full to — Asia the common of-both master
καὶ βασιλεύς, κάμνουσαν ἤδη καὶ ἐπὶ γόνυ κεκλιμένην
and emperor laboring already and on knee bowed
ταῖς τοῦ Χαμβδᾶν καταδρομαῖς τε καὶ προνομαῖς, ἐμοὶ
by-the — of-Chambdas raids both and foragings to-me
τὴν τῆς ἡγεμονίας ἐγχειρίσας ἀρχήν, διεβίβασε. παραινῶ
the of-the command having-entrusted office transferred I-exhort
τοίνυν καὶ συμβουλεύω, οὐχ ὅπως γενναίως ἀντιτάξοισθε
therefore and counsel not how nobly you-will-array-yourselves
τοῖς ἐχθροῖς (οἶμαι γὰρ μὴ δεῖσθαι λόγων ὑμᾶς
against-the enemies I-think for not to-need words you
ἐναγόντων ἐς εὐτολμίαν, οἷς ἐξ ἁπαλῶν ἀνδρία μετὰ
leading-on to boldness in-whom from tender(-years) bravery with
τόλμης ἐξήσκηται)· ἀλλ' ὡς ἂν ἄριστα βουλευσάμενοι
daring has-been-trained but how — best having-planned
καταγωνίσοισθε τὸν ἐχθρόν. πόλεμος γὰρ οὐ τοσοῦτον
you-may-overcome the enemy war for not so-much
ἐξ ἀντιπάλου κατορθοῦσθαι ῥοπῆς εἴωθεν, ὅσον εὐβουλίας
from opposing to-be-won force is-wont as of-good-counsel
προνοίᾳ καὶ τροπαίων ἐπαγωγῇ ῥᾳδιουργουμένῃ κατὰ
by-foresight and of-trophies by-the-leading achieved-with-ease in
καιρόν. τὴν μὲν οὖν παράταξιν τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἴστε σαφῶς,
season the indeed then array of-the enemies you-know clearly

ὅση διὰ τῶν τῇδε πεδίων ἐκκέχυται, ὡς πολλή τέ
how-great through the here plains has-been-poured-out how great both
ἐστι καὶ ἀριθμὸν ὑπερβαίνουσα· τὴν δὲ καθ᾽ ὑμᾶς στρατιὰν
it-is and number exceeding the but among you army
γενναίαν μὲν καὶ νεανικὴν τῇ τε ῥώμῃ καὶ τοῖς φρονήμασι
noble indeed and youthful in-the both strength and in-the spirits
καὶ αὐτὸς εἶναί φημι· πλήθει δὲ καὶ ταῖς φάλαγξιν οὐκ
also myself to-be I-say in-number but and in-the phalanxes not
ἂν φαίη τις ἀξιόμαχον. δεῖ οὖν Ῥωμαίους ὄντας
— would-say anyone fit-for-battle it-is-needful then Romans being
μεμηχανῆσθαί τε καὶ βεβουλεῦσθαι δεόντως, ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις
to-have-contrived both and to-have-deliberated fittingly in the straits
ἐξευρίσκειν τὰ πρόσφορα, αἱρεῖσθαί τε πρὸ τῶν δεινῶν
to-find-out the useful(-things) to-choose both before the dangers
τὰ ξυμφέροντα. μὴ οὖν ἀλογίστῳ φορᾷ καὶ παραβόλοις
the advantageous(-things) not then with-reckless impetus and with-rash
τολμήμασιν εἰς προῦπτον αὐτομολήσωμεν ὄλεθρον. τόλμα
darings into manifest let-us-go-over destruction daring
γὰρ ἀχαλίνωτος ἐς κίνδυνον εἴωθε συνωθεῖν, ἡ δὲ μετὰ
for unbridled into danger is-wont to-push the but with
λογισμοῦ μέλλησις διασώζειν οἶδε τοὺς κεχρημένους αὐτῇ.”
reasoning delay to-preserve knows-how those using it
“Παραινῶ τοιγαροῦν, ἄνδρες, μὴ διακινδυνεύειν πρὸς 4
I-exhort therefore men not to-run-the-risk against
τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπὶ τόπων τῶν πεδεινῶν ἀκαθέκτοις
the barbarians in places the level with-unrestrained
ὁρμήμασιν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπὶ τῶν ἐρυμνῶν ἐλλοχῶντας τουτωνὶ
rushes but in the strong lying-in-ambush of-these
χωρίων τὴν ἐκείνων ὑπομένειν ἄφιξιν καὶ διάβασιν·
places the their to-await arrival and passage
τηνικαῦτα δὲ τούτοις ἐῤῥωμενέστερον ἐπιτίθεσθαι καὶ
then and on-them more-vigorously to-set-upon and

γενναίως ἀντικαθίστασθαι. ταύτῃ γὰρ οἶμαι (σὺν Θεῷ
nobly to-stand-against thus for I-think with God
φάναι) κρατήσειν τε τῶν ἐχθρῶν, καὶ τὴν λείαν
to-say to-prevail-over both of-the enemies and the booty
ἅπασαν τῶν ὁμοφύλων πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀνασώσασθαι. τῷ
all of-the kinsmen to us to-recover by-the
γὰρ ἀπροσδοκήτῳ τῶν ἐπιδρομῶν δουλοῦσθαι εἴωθε τὰ
for unexpectedness of-the attacks to-be-enslaved is-wont the
πολέμια, καὶ ταῖς αἰφνιδίοις ὑπεξελάσεσι τὰ ὑπέραυχα
hostile(-things) and by-the sudden charges the boastful
καὶ ἀλαζονικὰ πέφυκε φρονήματα θραύεσθαι. τήν τε
and arrogant are-by-nature spirits to-be-broken the both
οὖν ἡλικιῶτιν ἀρετὴν διατηροῦντες καὶ τὴν σύντροφον
then of-your-age virtue preserving and the inborn
πρὸς τοὺς ἀγῶνας εὐγένειαν, τοῖς ἐναντίοις ὑπαντιάζετε,
for the contests nobility the enemies meet
ὅτε σημήνω ταῖς σάλπιγξι." τοιαύτην μὲν ὁ στρατηγὸς
when I-signal with-the trumpets such indeed the general
τὴν παραίνεσιν ἐξηγήσατο· ὁ δὲ στρατὸς ἠλάλαξέ τε
the exhortation set-forth the and army raised-the-war-cry both
καὶ ἐπεκρότησε, καὶ ὡς τὰ κράτιστα ὑποθεμένῳ ᾗ ἂν
and applauded and as the best(-things) having-proposed wherever —
ἡγοῖτο ἕπεσθαι προθύμως ἦν. ἐνέδραις οὖν διειλήφει
he-might-lead to-follow eagerly it-was with-ambushes then he-had-occupied
τὴν ὁδόν, ἀποτόμους τὰς ἀκρωρείας προβαλλομένην,
the road sheer the ridges putting-forth
κρημνώδεις τε καὶ σηραγγώδεις ὡς τὰ πολλά, τὰς
precipitous both and full-of-hollows as the most the
ὑπωρείας δὲ βαραθρώδεις τε καὶ ἀμφιλαφεῖς πρέμνων
foothills and ravine-like both and thickly-wooded with-stumps
τε καὶ παντοδαπῶν ἰδέαις φυτῶν. ταύτῃ προλοχίσας
both and of-every-kind with-kinds of-plants there having-laid-ambush

ὁ στρατηγὸς καθῆστο, τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων προσμένων
the general sat the of-the barbarians awaiting
ἐπήλυσιν. ὁ δὲ Χαμβδᾶν, τῷ τε πλήθει τῶν ἑφεπομένων
approach — and Chambdas in-the both multitude of-the followers
καὶ ταῖς φάλαγξι σοβαρευόμενος καὶ γαυρούμενος, τῇ τε
and in-the phalanxes swaggering and exulting in-the both
τῶν λαφύρων πλησμονῇ καὶ τῇ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀπαγωγῇ
of-the spoils abundance and in-the of-the captives carrying-off
ἐπαιρόμενός τε καὶ βρενθυόμενος, πολλὰς κατὰ θάτερα
being-elated both and puffed-up many on the-other-side
τὰς ἐπεξελάσεις ἐποιεῖτο, ἐφ᾽ ἵππου θηλείας καὶ μέγεθος
the sallies he-made on horse a-mare both in-size
καὶ δρόμον ὑπερφυοῦς ἐποχούμενος, καὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς πη
and in-speed extraordinary riding and of-the army here
μὲν οὐραγῶν, πὴ δὲ προοδεύων, καὶ τὸ δόρυ σείων,
indeed bringing-up-the-rear there and going-ahead and the spear brandishing
καὶ ταῖς αὔραις μεθιείς, εἶτ᾽ αὖθις μεθέλκων πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
and to-the breezes letting-go then again drawing-back to himself
κραδαινόμενον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν ἱππήλατον ὁδὸν διελθὼν
quivering when and the horse-riding road having-passed-through
ταῖς δυσχωρίαις προσέβαλλε, καὶ τοῖς στενωτάτοις καὶ
to-the rough-places he-came and in-the narrowest and
ἀνωμάλοις συνειληθέντες τῶν τόπων οἱ βάρβαροι τὴν
uneven having-been-crowded of-the places the barbarians the
φάλαγγα διελύσαντο, καὶ ὥς πη ἐνὸν ἦν ἑκάστῳ,
phalanx broke-up and as somehow possible it-was for-each
κατὰ κρημνώδη διήεσαν, τηνικαῦτα ταῖς σάλπιγξι
over precipitous(-ground) they-went-through then with-the trumpets
τὸ ἐνυάλιον ὑποσημήνας ὁ στρατηγὸς καὶ τῶν λόχων
the war-cry having-signaled the general and from-the ambushes
διαναστήσας τοὺς ἀμφ᾽ αὐτόν, ὑπηντίαζε τοῖς βαρβάροις.
having-raised those about him he-met the barbarians

Καὶ πάντες ἐπὶ τῶν ξιφῶν εἶχον τὰς δεξιάς, καὶ ταῦτα
and all on the swords had the right(-hands) and these
σπασάμενοι ἐπιστροφάδην ἔκτεινον τὸ ἀντίπαλον κεκμηκὸς
having-drawn turning-about they-killed the opposing(-force) exhausted
τῇ ὁδοιπορίᾳ, ἀκμῆτες αὐτοὶ τούτῳ πελάζοντες. καὶ
by-the journey unwearied themselves to-it drawing-near and
κἂν καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Χαμβδᾶν ἥλω μικροῦ πρὸς τῶν
even also himself — Chambdas was-captured nearly by the
Ῥωμαίων δορυάλωτος· εἰ μή, τὴν ἄλλως ἀγχίνους ὢν
Romans captured-by-the-spear if not the otherwise shrewd being
κἂν τοῖς ἀπόροις ὀξὺς ἐννοῆσαι τὰ δέοντα, τὸν ὃν
even-in the straits sharp to-perceive the needful(-things) the which
ἐπεφέρετο ἄργυρον καὶ χρυσὸν χύδην ἐπὶ τῆς ἀταρπιτοῦ
he-was-carrying silver and gold in-heaps on the path
διασπείρειν προσέταξεν· ᾧ καὶ περισπάσας τὴν τῶν
to-scatter he-ordered by-which also having-diverted the of-the
Ῥωμαίων ὁρμήν, ἀσχοληθέντων τῇ τοῦ χρυσοῦ συλλογῇ,
Romans rush busied with-the of-the gold gathering
μετ᾽ ὀλίγων ὑπασπιστῶν μόγις τὸν τοιοῦτον διαπέφευγε
with few shield-bearers barely the such escaped
κίνδυνον. λέγεται δὲ τοσοῦτον αὐτουργηθῆναι φόνον τοῦ
danger it-is-said and so-much to-have-been-wrought slaughter of-the
βαρβαρικοῦ πλήθους πρὸς τῶν Ῥωμαίων κατὰ τουτονὶ
barbarian multitude by the Romans in this-here
τὸν πόλεμον, ὡς πολλαχοῦ τῶν χώρων ἐκείνων σωρείας
the war that in-many-places of-the lands those heaps
ἀνθρωπείων ὀστῶν ὁρᾶσθαι μέχρι καὶ νῦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ
of-human bones to-be-seen as-far even now when and
τοιούτοις τροπαίοις καὶ στρατηγήμασι τὴν πολυάνθρωπον
with-such trophies and stratagems the populous
πληθὺν τῶν βαρβάρων ὁ στρατηγὸς ἠγωνίσατο καὶ
host of-the barbarians the general fought-down and

διέφθειρε, καὶ τὸ ὑψαύχενον τοῦ Χαμβδᾶν καὶ τετυφωμένον
destroyed and the high-necked — of-Chambdas and puffed-up
εἰς ἀγεννῆ καὶ ἄνανδρον δειλίαν καὶ φυγαδείαν κατέσπασε
into ignoble and unmanly cowardice and flight dragged-down
καὶ συνέκλεισε, τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν συναγηοχὼς καὶ τὴν λείαν
and shut-in those about him having-gathered and the booty
ἐπισυνάξας, ὅση τε ἦν βαρβαρική, καὶ ὁπόση Ῥωμαϊκὴ
having-collected as-much-as both was barbarian and as-much-as Roman
ἐκ τῆς προνομῆς τοῖς βαρβάροις συνήθροιστο, ταύτης
from the foraging by-the barbarians had-been-collected of-this
τὸ πλεῖστον τῇ στρατιᾷ διένειμε· καὶ τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους
the most to-the army he-distributed and the captives
ἐφοδιάσας ἐπὶ τὰ σφῶν ἤθη ἀποτρέχειν ἐξέπεμπε·
having-provisioned to the their-own homes to-run-back he-sent-off
τοὺς δὲ τῷ πολέμῳ ληφθέντας πέδαις ἀσφαλισάμενος
those and in-the war taken with-fetters having-secured
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, ἐπαιώνιζεν ἐπινίκια, καὶ τῇ προνοίᾳ
of-the Hagarenes he-sang victory-hymns and to-the providence
τὰς εὐχαριστηρίους ἐσπένδετο προσευχάς, καὶ πρὸς τὴν
the thanksgiving poured-out prayers and to the
αὐτοκράτορα δυναστείαν ἠπείγετο, θριαμβεύσων εἰς τὸ
imperial power he-hastened going-to-triumph into —
Βυζάντιον. ὁ δὲ στρατὸς ἐν κρότοις εἶχε τὸν στρατηγόν,
Byzantium the and army with applause had the general
ἀγάμενοι τοῦτον ὡς τὸ εἰκός, καὶ ἄνδρα ἐπιφημίζοντες, οἷον
admiring him as the likely and a-man calling such-as
μὴ φέρειν ἄλλον τὴν τότε γενεάν, καὶ τῆς εὐτυχίας αὐτὸν
not to-bear another the then generation and for-the good-fortune him
ἐξεθείαζον, κατὰ ῥοῦν αὐτῷ προχωροῦντα τὰ τῶν πολέμων
they-deified with stream for-him advancing the of-the wars
ὁρῶντες ὡς μάλιστα. ὁ δὲ κατειληφὼς τὸ Βυζάντιον,
seeing as most he and having-reached — Byzantium

ἐπεὶ μετὰ πλείστης ὅτι λείας καὶ μυρίων δορυαλώτων
when with very-much as-could-be booty and countless spear-captured
Ἀγαρηνῶν εἰσῄει, ὑπεδέχθη τε ὑπὸ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
Hagarenes entered was-received both by the emperor
Ῥωμανοῦ φιλοτίμως, καὶ πὶ τοῦ θεάτρου θριαμβεύσας,
Romanos lavishly and-in the theater having-triumphed
τῷ πλήθει τῶν ἀνδραπόδων καὶ τῶν λαφύρων τοὺς
with-the multitude of-the slaves and of-the spoils the
θεωμένους ἐξέπληξεν· ἀμοιβάς τε καὶ τιμάς, ἀναλογούσας
beholders astounded rewards both and honors proportionate
τοῖς πόνοις, παρὰ τοῦ κράτους ἀπείληφεν. ἀλλ᾽ οὕτω μὲν
to-the labors from the sovereign he-received but thus indeed
ὁ στρατηγὸς Λέων τὴν Ἀσίαν ἔσωσε, καταγωνισάμενος
the general Leo — Asia saved having-overcome
τὸν Χαμβδᾶν, φυγάδα τε καὶ ἀλήτην ἀπεργασάμενος.
— Chambdas fugitive both and wanderer having-made

IV · THE TOWN TAKEN

In spring Nikephoros assaults the Cretans' town, and a courtesan who jeers from the battlements is shot down. Sappers undermine the wall, prop it, and fire the props, and two towers collapse. The Cretans flee through the lanes, and Nikephoros rides in to stop the slaughter of those who surrender. The town is plundered, a fort named Temenos is built, and Nikephoros triumphs in Constantinople and takes over sixty Arab forts.

6 Νικηφόρος δὲ ὁ Φωκᾶς, ὁ τοῦ ῥηθέντος Λέοντος
Nikephoros and — Phokas the of-the mentioned Leo
σύναιμος (δεῖ γὰρ ἀνακεφαλαιωσάμενοι τὸν λόγον
brother it-is-needful for having-recapitulated the account
καθ᾽ εἱρμὸν πρόσω τῆς ἱστορίας χωρεῖν), ὡς τῇ τῶν
in sequence forward of-the history to-go when to-the of-the

Κρητῶν πελάσας ἐκεῖ διεχείμαζε, καὶ τόν τε στρατὸν
Cretans having-approached there he-wintered and the both army
τὰ πολεμικὰ διεγύμναζε, καὶ τὰς ἑλεπόλεις ἐτεκταίνετο,
in-the warlike(-things) trained and the siege-engines built
ἐπείπερ κατὰ νοῦν αὐτῷ πάντα προὐκεχωρήκει, ἄρτι
since according-to mind for-him all had-gone-forward just
τοῦ ἦρος ἐκ τῆς χειμερινῆς τροπῆς ἠρέμα προκύπτοντος,
the spring from the wintry solstice gently peeping-forth
τὸν περὶ αὑτὸν καθοπλίσας στρατὸν καὶ εἰς βαθεῖαν
the about himself having-armed army and into deep
παραταξάμενος φάλαγγα, τάς τε σάλπιγγας ἐπαυλήσας
having-drawn-up phalanx the both trumpets having-sounded
καὶ τὰ τύμπανα παταγήσας κατὰ τοῦ ἄστεος ἤλαυνεν.
and the drums having-beaten against the town he-drove
ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὁ στρατηγὸς τὴν ἴλην κατὰ μέτωπον
in which and the general the squadron at front
ἐκρατύνετο, καὶ εἰς πλαίσιον τὰς δυνάμεις συνέταττε,
was-strengthening and into a-square the forces was-arranging
γύναιον ἑταιρικόν, ἀκκιζόμενόν τε καὶ θρυπτόμενον,
a-woman of-the-courtesan-sort simpering both and giving-herself-airs
ἰταμὸν ἐπιεικῶς τυγχάνον καὶ ἀναιδές, τῶν προμαχεώνων
bold fairly being and shameless from-the battlements
προκύπτον, γοητείας ἐποιεῖτό τινας καὶ ἐπῳδάς. λέγεται
leaning-out spells made certain and incantations it-is-said
γὰρ κατόχους εἶναι Κρῆτας μαντείαις καὶ βωμολοχίαις
for possessed to-be Cretans by-divinations and buffooneries
καὶ πλάναις, πρὸς τῶν Μανιχαίων καὶ τοῦ Μωάμεθ
and delusions from the Manichaeans and — Mohammed
παρειληφότας ἀνέκαθεν. οὐ ταύτῃ δὲ μόνον τὸ ἰταμὸν
having-received from-of-old not thus but only the bold
ἐκεῖνο γύναιον τὸ ἀναιδὲς καὶ ἀκόλαστον ἐπεδείκνυτο·
that woman the shamelessness and licentiousness displayed

ἀλλὰ καί, τὸν χιτωνίσκον παρὰ τὸ μέτριον ἀνασεσυρκὸς
but also the little-tunic beyond the measure having-pulled-up
καὶ ἀπογυμνοῦν τὰ μέρη τοῦ σώματος, ἐς τὸν στρατηγὸν
and baring the parts of-the body at the general
ἐπέσκωπτεν ἐπαρώμενον. καὶ δή τις τῶν εὐστόχων
she-jeered cursing and indeed one of-the good-shot
τοξοτῶν, τὴν νευρὰν ἐντεινάμενος, βάλλει τὸ ἀκόλαστον
bowmen the string having-stretched strikes the licentious
γύναιον, καὶ χαμαιῤῥιφὲς τῶν πύργων κατήνεγκε,
woman and thrown-to-the-ground from-the towers brought-down
διαῤῥαγὲν αὐτίκα, καὶ τὸ ψυχίδιον ἀποφυσῆσαν, καὶ
shattered at-once and the wretched-little-soul having-breathed-out and
τίσιν τῆς ὕβρεως τὸν οἰκτρὸν ἐπισπασάμενον ὄλεθρον.
as-penalty of-the insolence the pitiable having-drawn-on destruction
ἄρτι δὲ τῆς μάχης καρτερᾶς ἀναῤῥιπισθείσης, χρόνον
just and the battle fierce having-been-fanned time
μέν τινα ἀντεῖχον οἱ Κρῆτες, ἐκ τῶν τειχῶν ἐκθύμως
indeed some held-out the Cretans from the walls ardently
ἀγωνιζόμενοι, καὶ πολλοὺς τῶν Ῥωμαίων τιτρώσκοντες.
fighting and many of-the Romans wounding
7 Ὁ δὲ στρατηγός, τοῦτο καταμαθών, τὰς ἀφετηρίους
the and general this having-learned the launching
θᾶττον παρήγαγε μηχανάς, καὶ βάλλειν τοὺς βαρβάρους
quickly brought-up engines and to-strike the barbarians
ἐκέλευε. καὶ πρὸς τούτοις τοῖς τείχεσι προσεπέλασε τὴν
ordered and to these the walls brought-near the
ἑλέπολιν· κριὸν Ῥωμαῖοι τὸ τεχνούργημα ὀνομάζουσι, τῷ
siege-engine ram Romans the contrivance name by-the
δίκην κριοῦ προτομῆς τὸν σίδηρον ἀπεικάζεσθαι, ὃς
in-the-manner of-ram's head the iron to-be-likened which
ἐνηρμοσμένος ὢν τῇ δοκῷ παίει τὸν δόμον τοῦ ἄστεος.
fitted being to-the beam strikes the structure of-the town

τῶν δὲ πετροβόλων βάρη θαμινὰ τῶν λίθων ἐπαφιέντων,
the and stone-throwers weights thickly of-the stones letting-fly
εὐπετῶς οἱ βάρβαροι ἀνεστέλλοντο· καὶ τοῦ κριοῦ τοῖς
easily the barbarians were-driven-back and the ram to-the
τείχεσιν ἐγχριμφθέντος καὶ κραταιῶς ταῦτα τύπτοντος,
walls having-been-brought-close and mightily these striking
ἄνδρες ὑποδύντες τὴν ταφρείαν συχνοί, λιθοτόμα ὄργανα
men having-slipped-under the ditch many stone-cutting tools
φέροντες, καὶ ἀνορύττειν ἐκεῖθεν ἀρξάμενοι, ἐξεκόλαπτον
carrying and to-dig-up from-there having-begun hollowed-out
ἠρέμα, καὶ τὴν λίθον διέκοπτον, ἵνα τοῦ τείχους ἡ βάσις
gently and the stone cut-through where of-the wall the base
ἠρήρειστο. παρὰ τυχὸν δὲ ψαμμῶδες ταύτῃ τὸ μέρος ἡ
had-been-founded by chance and sandy there the part the
λίθος λαχοῦσα ὑπεῖκέ τε καὶ ἐνεδίδου ὡς μάλιστα.
stone having-happened-to-be gave-way both and yielded as most
ὁ δὲ κριὸς τύπτων οὐκ ἀνίει τὸ ἔρυμα, καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν
the and ram striking not let-go the fortification and by little
διασπῶν τὴν οἰκοδομίαν, ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς συμπεπιλημένην
tearing-apart the masonry to the exact compressed
οὖσαν καὶ δυσαπόσπαστον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ γεῖσα, ᾗπερ
being and hard-to-tear-away when and the cornices where
διώρυττον οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦτο ταχθέντες, ἐκκρεμῆ καὶ ὑπόκενα,
dug those for this assigned overhanging and hollowed-beneath
ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἐξειργάσαντο, ὀρθοστάδην ξύλοις ὑπήρειδον,
as the likely had-made upright with-timbers they-propped
ὕλην τε ταχυδᾳῆ καὶ αὖον συννήσαντες καὶ πῦρ
material both quick-burning and dry having-heaped-together and fire
ἐνιέντες, τῆς διώρυχος ὑπεξήεσαν. τῆς δὲ φλογὸς
putting-in from-the tunnel they-went-out the and flame
ἀναφθείσης καὶ τῶν στηριγμάτων ἀνθρακωθέντων, δύο
having-been-kindled and the props having-been-charred two

πύργοι ὁμοῦ τῷ διαμέσῳ τούτων δομήματι τοῦ τείχους
towers together with-the between them structure of-the wall
ἐξαπιναίως ἀποῤῥαγέντες, ὑφίζανόν τε, καὶ ὑπωλίσθαινον,
suddenly having-broken-away sank both and slid-down
καὶ πρὸς τοὔδαφος κατεφέροντο. οἱ δὲ Κρῆτες, τῷ καινῷ
and to the-ground were-borne-down the and Cretans by-the novelty
τοῦ ὁράματος θαμβηθέντες, ἐπ᾽ ὀλίγον χρόνον τὴν μάχην
of-the sight astounded for a-little time the battle
ἐξέκλιναν, τῷ τεραστίῳ καταπλαγέντες τοῦ πράγματος.
shunned by-the portentousness thunderstruck of-the event
εἶτ᾽ αὖθις τὸν τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας καὶ δουλείας ὑπολογισάμενοι
then again the of-the captivity and slavery having-reckoned
κίνδυνον, εἰς ἀῤῥαγῆ παράταξιν συνηθροίζοντο, καὶ διὰ
danger into unbreakable array gathered and through
τῶν κατεριπωθέντων τειχῶν τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν διαβαίνουσαν
the fallen-down walls the Roman crossing
φάλαγγα ἐῤῥωμενέστατα ὑπεδέχοντο, δαιμονίως τε
phalanx most-vigorously they-received wondrously both
διηγωνίζοντο, περὶ ψυχὴν κινδυνεύοντες. ἄρτι δὲ πολλῶν
fought-it-out for life risking just and many
ἀναιρεθέντων, ἐπεὶ πρὸς τοσαύτην ἀνανταγώνιστον ῥοπὴν
having-been-killed when against such irresistible force
οὐχ οἷοί τε ἦσαν ἀντικαθίστασθαι (ἐπέβρισαν γὰρ
not able — they-were to-withstand bore-down for
αἱ δυνάμεις κατόπιν, καὶ ὠθισμὸς ἀνυπόστατος ἦν),
the forces from-behind and pushing irresistible was
εἰς φυγὴν τρέπονται, χωροῦντες διὰ τῶν στενωπῶν·
to flight they-turn going through the narrow-lanes
Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ ἐφεπόμενοι τούτους ἀνῄρουν ἀνηλεῶς. οἱ
Romans and following them killed pitilessly those
δὲ περιλειφθέντες καὶ ὅσους οὐκ ἔφθη ἐκθερίζειν ὁ
and left and as-many-as not had-first to-mow-down the

πόλεμος, τὰ ὅπλα ῥίψαντες εἰς ἱκετείαν ἐτράποντο.
war the arms having-thrown-away to supplication turned
ὅπερ ὁ στρατηγὸς θεασάμενος, τὸν ἵππον κεντρίσας καὶ
which the general having-beheld the horse having-spurred and
τὸν δρόμον ἐπιταχύνας, εἰσήλαυνέ τε καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν
the run having-quickened rode-in both and of-the soldiers
τὴν ὁρμὴν ἀνετείχιζε, μὴ κτείνειν ἀναπείθων τοὺς τὰ ὅπλα
the rush walled-off not to-kill persuading the the arms
ῥίψαντας ἄνδρας, μηδὲ κατὰ ψιλῶν καὶ ἀόπλων
having-thrown-away men nor against light-armed and unarmed
ὠμῶς καὶ ἀπανθρώπως χωρεῖν, ἀπανθρωπίας λέγων εἶναι,
cruelly and inhumanly to-go of-inhumanity saying to-be
τὸ ὑπεῖξαν καὶ γεγονὸς ὑποχείριον διαφθείρειν ἤδη καὶ
the having-yielded and become subject to-destroy already and
ἀποκτιννύειν ὡσπερεὶ πολέμιον. τούτοις τοῖς λόγοις μόλις
to-kill as-if enemy with-these the words barely
ἐπέσχεν ὁ στρατηγὸς τῆς στρατιᾶς τὴν μιαιφόνον ὁρμήν.
checked the general of-the army the bloodthirsty rush
Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ κράτος ἥλω ἡ πόλις, τὰ πρωτόλεια 8
when and by force was-taken the city the first-fruits
ὑφελὼν ὁ στρατηγός, καὶ τὸ ἀκμαῖον τῶν αἰχμαλώτων
having-taken-off the general and the vigor of-the captives
ἀνδραποδισάμενος, διειληφώς τε ταῦτα καὶ εἰς ὃν
having-enslaved having-divided both these and into which
ἔμελλε κατάγειν θρίαμβον διατηρήσας ὡς μάλιστα, τὰ
he-was-going to-lead triumph having-kept as most the
λοιπὰ τοῖς στρατιώταις προνομεύειν προτέθεικεν. οἱ δὲ
rest to-the soldiers to-plunder he-set-out they and
διὰ τῶν δωμάτων χωροῦντες πολλὰς καὶ πολυτελεῖς
through the houses going many and costly
ἐκαρποῦντο τὰς ὠφελείας. πλεῖστον γὰρ καὶ ἀνεξάντλητον
reaped the gains very-much for and inexhaustible

τῶν Κρητῶν λέγεται πόλιν ἔνδον τὸν ὄλβον παρακατέχειν,
of-the Cretans it-is-said city within the wealth to-keep-back
ἐπὶ συχνὸν οὐχ ἥκιστα εὐημερήσασαν, εὐμενοῦς τε καὶ
for long not least having-prospered kindly both and
μειλιχίου πειραθεῖσαν τῆς τύχης, καὶ μηδέν τι τῶν
gentle having-experienced of-the fortune and nothing at-all of-the
ἀπευκταίων καθυπομείνασαν, ἃ ἡ παλίντροπος τῶν
abominable(-things) having-endured which the changeable of-the
χρόνων φορὰ ὡσανεί τινας κῆρας ἐπικυλίνδειν εἴωθε·
times course as-if certain dooms to-roll-on is-wont
μάλιστα δὲ πειρατικαῖς καὶ λῃστρικαῖς κεχρημένην
most and with-piratical and robber having-used
ἐκπλεύσεσι, τῶν γαιῶν ἀμφοτέρων ληΐσασθαι τὰ παράκτια,
sailings-out of-the lands both to-plunder the coastal(-parts)
κἀκ τῶν τοιούτων ἐπιτηδευμάτων ἀποθησαυρίσαι πλοῦτον
and-from the such practices to-store-up wealth
ἀμύθητον. ἀλλὰ τοῦτον μὲν τὸν τρόπον ἥλω τὸ
untold but this indeed the manner was-taken the
ἄστυ καὶ πρὸς τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἐλήφθη χειρῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ
town and by the Roman was-taken hands when and
τὰ ἔνδον ἐκκεκόμιστο ἅπαντα, τὸν περίβολον ὁ
the within(-things) had-been-carried-out all the circuit-wall —
Νικηφόρος κατασκάπτειν διακελεύεται· τοῦ δὲ πολλαχῆ
Nikephoros to-demolish orders the and in-many-places
κατεριπωθέντος, ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν αὖθις ἀπῆγε τὴν
having-been-thrown-down to the land again he-led-away the
δύναμιν. ἀνδραποδισάμενός τε ταύτην καὶ ληϊσάμενος,
force having-enslaved both it and having-plundered
καὶ τὸ ἀντίξουν ἅπαν ἀναιμωτὶ παραστησάμενος,
and the opposing(-force) all without-bloodshed having-reduced
ἐπί τινα λόφον ὑψηλὸν καὶ ἀνάντη, οὐκ ἀπωτάτω
to a-certain hill high and steep not farthest

τοῦ κατεριπωθέντος ἄστεος ὑπερκείμενον, ἴεται, καὶ
from-the thrown-down town lying-above he-goes and
παμπληθεὶ τειχίον οἰκοδομεῖν ἐγκελεύεται. ἀνεπισφαλὴς
with-the-whole-host a-little-wall to-build orders secure
γὰρ ὁ χῶρος ἐδόκει, καὶ πρὸς ἔρυμα καρτερός, κρημνοῖς
for the place seemed and for fortification strong with-precipices
τε διερῥωγὼς καὶ φάραγξιν ἀποτόμοις ἑκατέρωθεν, κἀκ
both broken and with-ravines sheer on-both-sides and-from
τῆς κορυφῆς ἀεννάους ἀναδιδοὺς πίδακας, καὶ τοῖς ὕδασι
the summit ever-flowing sending-up springs and with-the waters
τούτων καταῤῥεόμενος. τοῦ δὲ ἐρύματος ἀσφαλέστατά τε
of-these flowing-down the and fortification most-securely both
καὶ στερεώτατα ἐξεργασθέντος, στρατιὰν ἀξιόχρεων τῷ
and most-solidly having-been-wrought army adequate in-the
χώρῳ ἐγκατοικίσας, Τέμενος τὸ ἄστυ ὠνόμασε, καὶ τὴν
place having-settled Temenos the town he-named and the
νῆσον ἐξημερώσας ἅπασαν, Ἀρμενίων τε καὶ Ῥωμαίων καὶ
island having-tamed all of-Armenians both and of-Romans and
συγκλύδων ἀνδρῶν φατρίας ἐνοικισάμενος, καὶ πυρφόρους
of-motley men clans having-settled and fire-bearing
τριήρεις ἐς φυλακὴν ταύτης καταλιπών, αὐτὸς τὴν
triremes for guard of-it having-left he-himself the
λείαν καὶ τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἀνειληφώς, ἀνέπλει πρὸς
booty and the captives having-taken sailed to
τὸ Βυζάντιον. μεγαλοπρεπῶς τε παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
— Byzantium magnificently both by the emperor
Ῥωμανοῦ ὑποδεχθείς, θρίαμβον ἐπὶ τοῦ θεάτρου κατήνεγκε,
Romanos having-been-received triumph in the theater led-in
παντὸς συναθροισθέντος τοῦ δήμου, καὶ τὸ πλῆθος καὶ τὸ
all having-gathered the people and the multitude and the
κάλλος τῆς λείας θαυμάζοντος. ἑωρᾶτο γὰρ χρυσὸς καὶ
beauty of-the booty admiring was-seen for gold and

ἄργυρος παμπληθής, καὶ νόμισμα βαρβαρικὸν ἀπέφθου
silver in-abundance and coin barbarian of-refined
χρυσοῦ, πέπλοι τε χρυσόπαστοι, καὶ τάπητες ἁλουργοί, καὶ
gold robes both gold-spangled and carpets purple and
παντοδαπὰ κειμήλια, εἰς ἄκρον τέχνης ἐξειργασμένα, χρυσῷ
of-every-kind treasures to height of-art wrought with-gold
καὶ λίθοις μαρμαίροντα· πανοπλίαι τε, καὶ κράνη, καὶ ξίφη,
and stones sparkling full-armors both and helmets and swords
καὶ θώρακες ἀληλιμμένα χρυσῷ, ἔγχη τε καὶ ἀσπίδες καὶ
and breastplates anointed with-gold spears both and shields and
τόξα παλίντονα ἀριθμὸν ὑπερβαίνοντα (εἶπεν ἄν τις
bows back-bending number exceeding would-have-said — anyone
ἐκεῖσε παρατυχών, τῆς βαρβάρου γῆς τὸν ἅπαντα πλοῦτον
there happening-by of-the barbarian land the all wealth
συγκομισθῆναι τότε κατὰ τὸ θέατρον), τοσαῦτα τὸ
to-have-been-brought-together then in the theater so-great the
πλῆθος ἐτύγχανον, ὡς μιμεῖσθαί τινα ποταμὸν ἀφθόνως
multitude they-were that to-imitate some river abundantly
εἰσρέοντα. τούτοις εἵποντο καὶ οἱ ἀνδραποδισθέντες
flowing-in these followed also the enslaved
βάρβαροι, εἰς πολυάριθμον πληθὺν συναγόμενοι.
barbarians into numerous host gathered

9 Θριαμβεύσαντι δὲ τῷ Νικηφόρῳ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ δήμου
to-having-triumphed and — to-Nikephoros and by the people
θαυμαστωθέντι παντός, ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Ῥωμανὸς δωρεάς
having-been-admired all the emperor Romanos gifts
τε φιλοτίμους δωρεῖται, καὶ τὴν τῆς Ἀσίας αὐτῷ
both lavish gives and the — of-Asia to-him
ἐγχειρίζει ἀρχήν. ὁ δέ, τὴν τοῦ Δομεστίκου τιμὴν καὶ
entrusts command he and the of-the Domestic honor and
αὖθις ὑποζωσάμενος, τὸν βόσπορόν τε περαιωθείς, καὶ
again having-girded-on the bosporus both having-crossed and

τὰς δυνάμεις ἀγηοχώς, καὶ εἰς φάλαγγα δυσάντητον καὶ
the forces having-collected and into phalanx hard-to-face and
δυσεκβίαστον παραταξάμενος, ἤει διὰ τῆς τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν
hard-to-force having-drawn-up went through the of-the Hagarenes
γῆς. οἷς τὴν ἔφοδον ἐνωτισθεῖσι τοῦ Νικηφόρου, οὐκ
land to-whom the attack having-heard — of-Nikephoros not
ἀνεκτὸν ἐδόκει κατὰ χώραν τε μένειν, καὶ λόχους
bearable it-seemed in place both to-remain and ambushes
καθίζειν, ἐξ ἀντιστάσεώς τε διαμάχεσθαι· ἐκτρέχειν τε
to-set from resistance both to-fight-it-out to-run-out both
πρὸς τὰ φρούρια, καὶ τὰς ἐπιδρομὰς ἐκ τῶν ἐρυμάτων
to the forts and the raids from the strongholds
ἀποτροπιάζεσθαι, ἀκροβολιζομένους κατὰ τὸ ἐγχωροῦν.
to-avert skirmishing as the possible
δεινῶς γὰρ ἐδεδοίκεισαν κατὰ συστάδην διαγωνίζεσθαι πρὸς
terribly for they-had-feared in close-combat to-fight against
ἄνδρα καρτερικὸν καὶ ἰσχυρογνώμονα. ὁ δὲ σκηπτοῦ
a-man enduring and strong-willed he and of-a-thunderbolt
δίκην τὴν περίχωρον ἐπεβόσκετο, δῃούμενος μὲν
in-the-manner the surrounding(-land) grazed-upon ravaging indeed
τὰς ἀρούρας, μυριανθρώπους δὲ κώμας ἀνδραποδιζόμενος.
the fields countless-manned and villages enslaving
ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἐν ποσὶ πυρὸς καὶ μαχαίρας ἔργον πεποίητο,
when and the in feet of-fire and of-sword work he-had-made
τοῖς φρουρίοις προσβάλλει, ὧν αὐτοβοεὶ τὰ πλεῖστα
the forts he-attacks of-which at-the-first-shout the most
ἑάλω. ὅσα δὲ τούτων ἐρυμνὰ τοῖς τείχεσι καὶ τῷ
were-taken as-many-as and of-these strong with-the walls and with-the
πλήθει τῶν ἔνδον ἐτύγχανον, τούτοις ἀντεπῆγε τὰς
multitude of-the within(-men) happened-to-be against-these he-brought-up the
μηχανάς, καὶ ἀκήρυκτον ἐπέφερε πόλεμον, ἐκθύμως τοῖς
engines and implacable brought war ardently those

ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀγωνίζεσθαι προτρεπόμενος. εὐείκτως δὲ τοῖς
under him to-fight urging readily and to-the
κελεύσμασι ἐκείνου πᾶς τις ἐπείθετο. ἦν γὰρ οὐ λόγοις
commands his every one obeyed he-was for not by-words
μόνον ἐπαγωγός τε καὶ πιθανὸς πρὸς τὸ εὔψυχον, ἀλλὰ
only persuasive both and convincing for the courage but
καὶ τοῖς ἔργοις αὐτοῖς, ἐκτόπως ἀεὶ ἀγωνιζόμενος πρὸ
also by-the deeds themselves extraordinarily always fighting before
τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ κίνδυνον τὸν ἐπιόντα ὑποδεχόμενος,
the phalanx and danger the coming receiving
καὶ κραταιῶς ἐκκρουόμενος. ᾑρηκὼς οὖν καὶ καταβαλὼν
and mightily repelling having-taken then and having-cast-down
ἐν εὐαριθμήτῳ καιρῷ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ὑπὲρ τὰ ἑξήκοντα
in easily-counted time of-the Hagarenes over the sixty
φρούρια, καὶ λείαν ὅτι πλείστην συνεκφορήσας, καὶ νίκην
forts and booty as most having-carried-off and victory
ἐπιφανεστάτην καὶ οἵαν οὐκ ἄλλος ἀναδησάμενος, ἐκεῖθεν
most-illustrious and such-as not another having-bound-on from-there
τὴν δύναμιν ἀνελάμβανε, καὶ κατὰ τὰ σφῶν ἔστελλεν
the force took-up and to the their-own sent
ἤθη, ἀμύθητον τὸν πλοῦτον ἀθροίσασαν· αὐτὸς δὲ πρὸς
homes untold the wealth having-gathered he-himself and to
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἔθει, τῶν πόνων τὰ γέρα ληψόμενος.
the emperor ran of-the labors the prizes going-to-receive

V · THE DEATH OF ROMANOS AND THE PLOT OF JOSEPH

On the march Nikephoros hears that Romanos has died, after a hunt in Lent, of a riding spasm or, as more suspect, of hemlock from the women's quarters; his infant sons Basil and Constantine are left with their mother Theophano. Suspecting the eunuch Joseph, the parakoimomenos, Nikephoros thinks of revolt but, lacking troops, postpones it and triumphs in the city; when Joseph plans to blind him, he goes to the Great Church and the patriarch Polyeuktos. The patriarch brings him before the senate, which, against Joseph's will, makes him general of Asia on his oath to plot nothing against the children.

Ἄρτι δὲ μεσοῦντι τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν τῷ στρατηγῷ φήμη
just and halfway-through the journey to-the general report
τις ὑπηντίαζε, τὴν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκδημίαν τοῦ ἄνακτος
a-certain met the from-here departure of-the lord
Ῥωμανοῦ διαγγέλλουσα. ὁ δέ, τῷ ἀπροσδοκήτῳ τῆς φήμης
Romanos announcing he and by-the unexpectedness of-the report
ἐκταραχθείς, ἐπέσχε τε τὴν διαπορείαν, καὶ κατὰ χώραν
troubled checked both the march and in place
ὑπέμενε. λέγεται δὲ τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον ἐκπλῆσαι τὸν βίον
remained it-is-said and this the way to-have-ended the life
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Ῥωμανόν. ἐπειδὴ παρειληφὼς τὴν ἀρχὴν
the emperor Romanos since having-taken-over the rule
ἐπιεικῆ τε καὶ μέτριον αὑτὸν καὶ εὐεργετικὸν τῷ ὑπηκόῳ
fair both and moderate himself and beneficent to-the subject(-people)
παρείχετο, ὑποδύντες τινὲς καὶ μετελθόντες τὸν ἄνθρωπον,
he-showed having-crept-in some and having-courted the man
μοχθηροί τε καὶ δοῦλοι γαστρὸς καὶ τῶν ὑπὸ
wicked both and slaves of-belly and of-the(-things) under
γαστέρα, διαφθείρουσι τὸν καλοκἀγαθὸν τρόπον τοῦ νέου,
belly corrupt the noble character of-the young-man
τρυφὴν ὑποτιθέντες καὶ ἀκόλαστον ἡδονήν, διεγείροντές
luxury suggesting and licentious pleasure rousing

τε πρὸς ἀλλοκότους ἐπιθυμίας τούτου τὴν ὄρεξιν. ἐντεῦθεν
and to strange desires his the appetite thence
παρὰ τὸν καιρὸν τῶν νηστειῶν, ἃς πρὸς κάθαρσιν
during the time of-the fasts which for purification
ψυχῶν καὶ ποδηγίαν τῶν κρειττόνων ἐξεῦρον ἄνδρες
of-souls and guidance to-the better found-out men
θεοφορούμενοι, παρειληφότες τὸν Ῥωμανὸν οἱ λοιμοί, ἐπὶ
God-inspired having-taken — Romanos the pests to
θηρείαν ἐλάφων ἴενται, ἐν δυσβάτοις ἐλαύνοντες ὄρεσιν.
hunting of-deer go in hard-to-traverse driving mountains
ἐκεῖθέν τε ἀναζεύξαντες τὸν αὐτοκράτορα συγκομίζουσι
from-there and having-returned the emperor they-bring-back
περιημεκτέοντα καὶ τὰ ἐπιθανάτια πνέοντα. καί τινες μὲν
in-agony and the death-throes breathing and some indeed
ἐκ τῆς ἀκαίρου φασὶν ἱππασίας σπασμὸν ἐγγενέσθαι τούτῳ
from the untimely they-say riding spasm to-have-arisen in-him
περὶ τὰ καίρια. ὡς δὲ ἡ τῶν πλειόνων ὑπόνοια ἔχει,
in the vital(-parts) as but the of-the more suspicion holds
κώνειον αὐτὸν πεπωκέναι πρὸς τῆς γυναικωνίτιδος. εἴτε
hemlock him to-have-drunk from the women's-quarters whether
δὲ ἐκείνως, εἴτε καὶ οὕτως, ἀμείβει τὸν βίον ὁ Ῥωμανὸς
and that-way or also this-way exchanges the life — Romanos
τὴν τῆς ἡλικίας ἐλαύνων ἀκμήν, τρεῖς ἐνιαυτοὺς πρὸς πέντε
the of-the age driving prime three years with five
μησὶ τὴν αὐτοκράτορα διϊθύνας ἀρχήν. τούτου δὲ ἐξ
months the imperial having-directed rule he and from
ἀνθρώπων γεγονότος, τὴν τῆς βασιλείας ἀρχὴν παρά τε
men having-gone the of-the empire rule from both
τοῦ πατριαρχοῦντος Πολυεύκτου καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς
the patriarch Polyeuktos and the senatorial council
οἱ ἐκείνου παῖδες Βασίλειος καὶ Κωνσταντῖνος, νήπιοι
the his sons Basil and Constantine infants

κομιδῇ τελοῦντες καὶ τιθηνούμενοι, μετὰ Θεοφανοῦς τῆς
quite being and being-nursed with Theophano the
μητρὸς ἐγχειρίζονται· ἥτις ἐξ ἀσήμου μὲν γένους φυεῖσα,
mother are-entrusted-with who from obscure indeed family born
κάλλει δὲ καὶ σώματος ὥρᾳ πασῶν τῶν τότε γυναικῶν
in-beauty but and of-body in-bloom all the then women
ὑπερφέρουσα, Ῥωμανῷ συνηρμόσθη τῷ αὐτοκράτορι. ὁ
surpassing to-Romanos was-joined the emperor —
δὲ Νικηφόρος (αὖθις γὰρ πρὸς τὸν εἱρμὸν ἐπάνειμι τῆς
and Nikephoros again for to the sequence I-return of-the
διηγήσεως) τὴν μεταβολὴν τῆς μεγίστης ἀρχῆς διενωτισθείς,
narrative the change of-the greatest rule having-heard
παντοδαπός τις ἦν, ἄλλοτε ὑπ᾽ ἄλλων λογισμῶν
of-every-sort a-certain he-was at-one-time by other thoughts
διαταραττόμενος. τὸ γὰρ ἄπιστον τῶν πραγμάτων καὶ
troubled the for untrustworthiness of-the affairs and
τὸ παλίντροπον τῆς τύχης καὶ ἄστατον οὐκ εἴα τὸν
the changeableness of-the fortune and instability not allowed the
ἄνθρωπον ἀτρεμεῖν, ὑπειδόμενον μάλιστα τὴν τοῦ Ἰωσὴφ
man to-be-at-rest suspecting most the — of-Joseph
δυναστείαν, ὅς γε ἐκτομίας ὢν καὶ μάλιστα παρὰ τὴν
power who at-least eunuch being and most in the
βασιλείαν ἑστίαν δυνάμενος (τῷ τοῦ παρακοιμωμένου γὰρ
imperial hearth being-powerful with-the of-the parakoimomenos for
ἀξιώματι ἐσεμνύνετο), δυσμενῶς τῷ Νικηφόρῳ διέκειτο.
dignity he-prided-himself hostilely — to-Nikephoros was-disposed
Ἔγνω γοῦν αὐτίκα νεωτερίζειν· ἀλλὰ δύναμιν ἐκ 11
he-resolved at-any-rate at-once to-make-revolt but force from
τοῦ παρατυχόντος ἀποχρῶσαν οὐκ ἐπαγόμενος (τὰ
the chance sufficient not bringing the
γὰρ στρατεύματα πρὸς τὰς σφῶν ἐνεγκαμένας αὐτοῦ
for armies to the their-own native(-lands) he

προστεταχότος ἀπῄεσαν), ἐδεδοίκει τὸν τοσοῦτον ἀγῶνα
having-ordered went-off he-feared the so-great contest
τέως ἐπαποδύσασθαι. ἔδοξεν οὖν ὑπερθέσθαι τὸν
meanwhile to-strip-for it-seemed then to-postpone the
νεωτερισμόν· εἰσελάσαντι δὲ εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον,
revolt (for-him)-having-driven-in and into — Byzantium
καὶ κατάγοντι τὸν θρίαμβον, εἴγε τὴν στρατιὰν οἱ
and leading the triumph if-indeed the army those
κρατοῦντες αὐτῷ ἐγχειρίσοιεν (ᾔδει γὰρ αὐτοῦ περιόντος
ruling to-him should-entrust he-knew for him surviving
μὴ ἂν ἄλλον καρτερῆσαι πρὸς τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων
not — another to-endure against the of-the barbarians
ἀντίστασιν παρατάττεσθαι)· ἀναλαβεῖν τε τὰς δυνάμεις,
resistance to-be-arrayed to-take-up both the forces
καὶ λελογισμένως καὶ ἀνεπισφαλῶς ὑπὲρ τῶν ὅλων
and deliberately and securely for the whole
διαγωνίσασθαι. οὕτω δὴ γνωματεύσας καὶ βουλευσάμενος
to-fight-it-out thus indeed having-judged and having-deliberated
πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον ἴεται· ἀσμενέστατά τε ὑπὸ τοῦ δήμου
to — Byzantium goes most-gladly both by the people
καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου δεχθείς, καὶ ὅσην ἐπήγετο λείαν
and the senate received and as-much-as he-brought booty
θριαμβεύσας, καὶ τῷ δημοσίῳ ταμείῳ τὸν βαρβαρικὸν
having-triumphed and in-the public treasury the barbarian
πλοῦτον καταθέμενος, ἐφ' ἑστίας ἡσύχαζεν. ὁ δὲ Ἰωσὴφ
wealth having-deposited at hearth he-kept-quiet — but Joseph
(ἐδεδοίκει γὰρ τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον τοῦ Νικηφόρου
feared for the in — Byzantium — of-Nikephoros
διατριβήν, μή τι κατὰ τοῦ κράτους νεωτερίσειε,
stay lest something against the sovereignty he-might-revolt
μάλιστα τοῦ στρατιωτικοῦ ἐκτόπως αὐτὸν στέργοντος
most the military extraordinarily him loving

καὶ τοῦ δήμου θαυμάζοντος, διά τε τὰ τρόπαια καὶ τὰ
and the people admiring because-of both the trophies and the
κατὰ πολέμους ἀνδραγαθήματα) ἐπὶ τὸ ἀνάκτορον τοῦτον
in wars deeds-of-valor to the palace him
ἐκαλεῖτο, εἴ πως αὐτὸν ψιλὸν τῆς δυνάμεως ἀπειληφὼς
summoned if somehow him stripped of-the force having-got
τῶν τε ὄψεων στερήσῃ καὶ ὑπερορίᾳ παραπέμψῃ.
of-the both eyes he-might-deprive and to-exile might-send
ἀλλὰ τὸ κακοῦργον καὶ περιπόνηρον τοῦ Ἰωσὴφ ὁ
but the malice and utter-wickedness — of-Joseph the
στρατηγὸς συνιεὶς (δραστήριος γὰρ ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς ἦν,
general understanding energetic for to the exact he-was
καὶ καταστοχάσασθαι κακοτροπίαν ἀνδρὸς προχειρότατος),
and to-guess (the)-malignity of-a-man most-ready
ἐς τὴν μεγάλην ἐκκλησίαν φοιτᾷ, καὶ τῷ ἱεραρχοῦντι
to the great church goes and with-the high-priest
Πολυεύκτῳ εἰς λόγους ἐλθών, ἀνδρὶ τήν τε θείαν καὶ
Polyeuktos into words having-come a-man the both divine and
ἀνθρωπίνην φιλοσοφίαν εἰς ἄκρον ἐκμελετήσαντι, καὶ βίον
human philosophy to height having-practiced and life
αἱρετισαμένῳ ἐκ νεότητος μοναδικόν τε καὶ ἄσκευον, καὶ
having-chosen from youth monastic both and unencumbered and
παῤῥησίαν ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον κεκτημένῳ, ἣν οὐχ ἡ φύσις
frankness beyond man having-acquired which not the nature
ἐνεποίει αὐτῷ μόνον, τομίᾳ γε ὄντι καὶ ἐς ἔσχατον γῆρας
produced in-him only eunuch at-least being and to extreme old-age
ἐλάσαντι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ ἀκτησία, καὶ τὸ ἀνεπίληπτον, καὶ τὸ
having-come but also the poverty and the blamelessness and the
λιτὸν τοῦ βίου καὶ ἀπέριττον· τούτῳ δὴ τῷ Πολυεύκτῳ,
simplicity of-the life and plainness to-this indeed — Polyeuktos
ἐπεὶ εἰς λόγους ἦλθεν ὁ Νικηφόρος, "καλάς γε", ἔφη,
when into words came — Nikephoros fine at-least he-said

“παρὰ τοῦ τῶν βασιλείων κατάρχοντος τῶν τοσούτων
from the of-the palace ruler of-the such
ἀγώνων καὶ πόνων καρποῦμαι τὰς ἀμοιβάς· ὅς γε τὸν
contests and labors I-reap the rewards who at-least the
ἀλάθητον καὶ μέγαν ὀφθαλμὸν λήσειν οἰόμενος, τὰ Ῥωμαϊκά
unescapable and great eye to-escape thinking the Roman
μοι πλατύνοντι ὅρια ταῖς τοῦ κρείττονος εὐοδώσεσιν,
for-me widening boundaries with-the of-the stronger prosperings
οὐκ ἐνάρκησε σκαιωρήσασθαι θάνατον, μηδέπω μηδὲν εἰς
not shrank to-contrive death never-yet nothing against
τὸ κοινὸν πλημμελήσαντι, συνεισενεγκόντι δὲ μᾶλλον
the commonwealth having-offended having-contributed and rather
ὅσα μή τις τῶν νῦν τελούντων ἀνδρῶν, καὶ τοσαύτην
as-much-as not anyone of-the now being men and so-much
μὲν χώραν τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν πυρὶ καὶ μαχαίρᾳ δῃωσαμένῳ,
indeed land of-the Hagarenes with-fire and sword having-ravaged
τηλικαύτας δὲ πόλεις ἐκ βάθρων κατεριπώσαντι. ἐγὼ δὲ
so-great and cities from foundations having-thrown-down I and
ἠξίουν, τὸν συγκλητικὸν ἄνδρα ἐπιεικῆ τε εἶναι καὶ μέτριον,
thought-fit the senatorial man fair both to-be and moderate
καὶ μή τινα δυσμεναίνειν, καὶ ταῦτα μάτην, ἀπέραντα.”
and not anyone to-bear-ill-will and these-things vainly endlessly

12 Τούτων τῶν ῥημάτων ὁ πατριάρχης ἐνωτισθείς, καὶ
these the words the patriarch having-heard and
τὴν προθυμίαν ἀναφλεχθείς, εἰς τὰ βασίλεια εἰσελαύνει,
the zeal having-been-inflamed into the palace drives-in
τὸν Νικηφόρον ἔχων συνεφεπόμενον· καὶ τὴν σύγκλητον
— Nikephoros having following and the senate
εἰσκαλέσας, “οὐ δίκαιον,” ἔφη, “τοὺς ὑπὲρ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς
having-called-in not just he-said those for the Roman
εὐετηρίας ἑαυτῶν ἀφειδήσαντας, καὶ πόνους καὶ κινδύνους
prosperity themselves having-not-spared and labors and dangers

καθυπομείναντας, εὐγνώμονάς τε καὶ μετρίους ἑαυτοὺς
having-endured reasonable both and moderate themselves
παρεχομένους πρὸς τὸ ὁμόφυλον, προπηλακίζειν καὶ ἀτιμοῦν,
showing toward the kindred to-insult and to-dishonor
κυδαίνειν δὲ μᾶλλον καὶ ταινιοῦν. εἰ οὖν πείθεσθέ μοι τὰ
to-glorify but rather and to-crown if then you-obey me the
λῴονα συμβουλεύσοντι, τὴν ἐμὴν αὐτίκα γνώμην ἐρῶ.
better(-things) going-to-counsel the my at-once opinion I-will-tell
δεῖ Ῥωμαίους ὄντας ἡμᾶς, καὶ θείοις ῥυθμιζομένους
it-is-needful Romans being us and by-divine being-ordered
προστάγμασι, τὰ νεογνὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Ῥωμανοῦ
commands the newborn of-the emperor Romanos
τέκνα, ἐπεὶ πρὸς ἡμῶν καὶ τοῦ δήμου παντὸς ἀνερρέθησαν
children since by us and the people all they-were-proclaimed
αὐτοκράτορες, εἰς τὴν προγονικὴν τιμὴν συντηρεῖν καὶ σέβας
emperors in the ancestral honor to-keep and reverence
ἀπονέμειν, οἷον καὶ τοῖς προγόνοις αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὰ
to-render such-as also to-the ancestors their since and also the
βαρβαρικὰ φῦλα ληΐζεσθαι τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν οὐκ ἀπέχονται
barbarian tribes to-plunder the Roman not refrain
γῆν, συμβουλεύω, τὸν ἄνδρα τουτονὶ (τὸν Νικηφόρον
land I-counsel the man this-here — Nikephoros
ὑποδεικνύς), ἀγχίνουν τε ὄντα καὶ ἀγαθὸν τὰ πολέμια,
pointing-out shrewd both being and good in-the warlike(-things)
καὶ νίκας ὅτι πλείστας ἐπανῃρημένον, ὃ καὶ αὐτοὶ
and victories as most having-won which also yourselves
συνομολογεῖτε, καὶ τοῦτον τῶν ἄλλων ἐκθειάζετε μάλιστα,
agree and him than-the others you-extol most
ὅρκοις κατασφαλισαμένους μή τι κατὰ τοῦ κράτους
with-oaths having-secured not something against the sovereignty
καὶ τῆς βουλῆς μελετῆσαι ἀβούλητον, ἀνειπεῖν αὐτοκράτορα
and the council to-plan unwelcome to-proclaim plenipotentiary

στρατηγόν, καὶ τὰς τῆς Ἀσίας δυνάμεις ἐγχειρίσαι αὐτῷ,
general and the — of-Asia forces to-entrust to-him
ὡς ἀμύνοιτο καὶ ἀναχαιτίζοι τῶν ἀλλοφύλων τὴν
so-that he-might-ward-off and might-rein-in of-the foreigners the
ἔφοδον. ταύτην γὰρ αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Ῥωμανός, ἔτι
attack this for to-him also the emperor Romanos still
βιούς, ἐνεχείρισε τὴν τιμήν, καὶ τελευτῶν ἐν ταῖς διαθήκαις
living entrusted the honor and dying in the testaments
ὡρίσατο, μὴ μετακινεῖν τῆς τοιαύτης στρατηγίας
ordained not to-remove from-the such generalship
εὐγνωμονοῦντα τὸν ἄνθρωπον." ταύτην ἀνειπόντος τοῦ
being-well-disposed the man this having-spoken the
πατριάρχου τὴν γνώμην, ἐπεψήφιζέ τε ἡ βουλή, συνήνει
patriarch the opinion voted and the council agreed
δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ παρακοιμώμενος Ἰωσήφ, οὐχ ἑκών, τῇ
and also himself the parakoimomenos Joseph not willing by-the
δὲ ῥοπῇ τῆς συγκλήτου ἐκβιαζόμενος. καὶ δὴ ὅρκοις
but weight of-the senate being-forced and indeed with-oaths
φρικωδεστάτοις τὸν Νικηφόρον ἐμπεδωσάμενοι, μή ποτε
most-awful — Nikephoros having-bound not ever
περιόντων τῶν νεογνῶν παίδων καὶ βασιλέων ἀπαίσιόν
surviving the newborn children and emperors ill-omened
τι κατὰ τοῦ σφῶν κράτους βουλεύσασθαι· ἐπομοσάμενοι
something against the their sovereignty to-plan having-sworn
δὲ καὶ αὐτοί, μηδένα τῶν ἐν τέλει ἀπεναντίας τῆς ἐκείνου
and also themselves no-one of-those in office contrary to-the his
γνώμης μετακινεῖν, ἢ πρὸς μείζονα ἐπαναβιβάζειν ἀρχήν,
opinion to-remove or to greater to-promote office
μετὰ δὲ καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ διασκέψεως κοινῇ γνώμῃ διευθύνειν
with and also the his consideration by-common opinion to-direct
τὰ τοῦ κοινοῦ, αὐτοκράτορα στρατηγὸν τῆς Ἀσίας
the(-affairs) of-the commonwealth plenipotentiary general — of-Asia

τοῦτον ἀνακηρύξαντες τόν τε σύλλογον διαλύουσι, καί,
him having-proclaimed the both assembly dissolve and
τῶν βασιλείων ἀπάραντες, ἐφ' ἑστίας ἀπῄεσαν ἕκαστοι.
from-the palace having-departed to hearths went-off each

BOOK III

VI · NIKEPHOROS PROCLAIMED

Joseph, afraid of Nikephoros, writes to John Tzimiskes offering him the throne if he will send Nikephoros to him a prisoner. John shows his cousin the letter and urges him to strike first. At Caesarea, at dawn at the start of July, the officers surround Nikephoros' tent with drawn swords and acclaim him emperor. He pleads the deaths of his wife and his son Bardas, but accepts and puts on the red sandals.

Ἤδη δὲ τοῦ ἦρος μεσοῦντος, καὶ τοῦ φωσφόρου πρὸς 1
already and the spring being-at-mid and the light-bringer toward
τὸν ἀρκτικὸν πόλον ἠρέμα ὑπανακάμπτοντος, καὶ περὶ
the arctic pole gently turning-back and around
τὸν ταῦρον τὴν διφρείαν ἐλαύνοντος, τοῦ Βυζαντίου
the Bull the chariot driving — from-Byzantium
ἀπάρας ὁ Νικηφόρος ἐπὶ τὴν καταντιπέραν τῆς Ἀσίας
having-set-out — Nikephoros to the opposite — of-Asia
χώραν καταίρει· καὶ πρὸς τὴν Καππαδοκῶν ἀφικόμενος
land crosses and to the of-Cappadocians having-come
(Τρωγλοδῦται τὸ ἔθνος τὸ πρόσθεν κατωνομάζετο, τῷ ἐν
Troglodytes the nation the formerly was-named by-the in
τρώγλαις καὶ χηραμοῖς καὶ λαβυρίνθοις, ὡσανεὶ φωλεοῖς καὶ
holes and caves and labyrinths as-if dens and
ὑπιωγαῖς, ὑποδύεσθαι), καὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἐκεῖσε πηξάμενος,
underground-passages to-creep-in and the tent there having-pitched

πανταχόσε διαγράμματα ἔστελλε, τὸν στρατὸν πανσυδὶ ὡς
everywhere dispatches sent the army in-full-force to
αὐτὸν συνεγείρων καὶ ἐκκαλούμενος. ἐν ᾧ δὲ συνήρχετο
himself rousing and calling-out in which and were-assembling
τὰ στρατεύματα, τοὺς ἀμφ' ἑαυτὸν ἐξήσκει τὰ πολέμια,
the armies those about himself he-trained-in the warlike(-things)
καὶ τὸν θυμὸν ἔθηγε, καὶ ἐπερῥώννυε ταῖς καθ' ἡμέραν
and the spirit whetted and strengthened by-the per day
μελέταις, καὶ τὴν ἐνόπλιον ἐξεπαίδευε περιδίνησιν, θαμὰ ταῖς
practices and the armed trained-in wheeling often to-the
σάλπιγξιν ἐγκελευόμενος ἐπηχεῖν, καὶ τὰ τύμπανα παταγεῖν,
trumpets ordering to-sound and the drums to-beat
καὶ ἀλαλάζειν τὰ κύμβαλα, ἐφ' ἵπποιν τε ὑπεράλλεσθαι, καὶ
and to-clash the cymbals on horses both to-leap-over and
τόξοις βάλλειν κατὰ σκοπόν, καὶ ἀκοντίζειν εὐστοχώτατα·
with-bows to-shoot at a-mark and to-throw-javelins most-accurately
καὶ οὐδὲν ὅ τι παρεῖτο τούτῳ τῶν πρὸς τὸ πολεμεῖν
and nothing what — was-neglected by-him of-the for the to-fight
ἐξευρημένων. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐξεπαίδευε τὸν στρατόν,
devised in which and the general trained the army
καὶ τὴν ἄφιξιν τῆς λοιπῆς στρατιᾶς ἐξεδέχετο (δεδογμένον
and the arrival of-the remaining army awaited resolved
γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ, κατὰ τοῦ Χαμβδᾶν καὶ τῶν Ταρσέων
for it-was for-him against — Chambdas and the Tarsians
ἐκστρατεύειν ὡς μάλιστα), ὁ παρακοιμώμενος Ἰωσήφ, τὸ
to-march as most the parakoimomenos Joseph the
τοῦ Νικηφόρου μεμεριμνημένον καὶ λελογισμένον ἐννοῶν,
— of-Nikephoros thoughtfulness and calculation considering
καὶ προσέτι τὸ ἀνδρικὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ γενναῖον παράστημα,
and besides the manly his and noble spirit
ὑπειδόμενός τε, μή πως τῆς στρατιᾶς συναλισθείσης
suspecting and lest somehow the army having-gathered

περὶ αὐτὸν νεώτερόν τι σκαιωρήσοιτο, ἐπάλλετό
around him new something he-might-contrive was-shaken
τε τὴν καρδίαν καὶ τῆς ἀβουλίας αὑτὸν κατεμέμφετο,
both in-the heart and for-the folly himself blamed
ὅπως ζωγρίαν κατέχων ὡς ἐν δικτύῳ αἱμάτων ἄνδρα οὐ
how alive holding as in a-net of-bloodshed a-man not
κατειργάσατο, ἀλλ᾽ ἔλαθε τοσαύτῃ πανοπλίᾳ τοῦτον
he-had-destroyed but he-had-unawares with-such full-armor him
ὀχυρωσάμενος. συννοίας οὖν ὑπόπλεως γεγονώς, ἠρεμεῖν οὐκ
having-armed of-anxiety then full having-become to-be-at-rest not
ἠνείχετο, ἀλλ᾽ ἀβίωτον τὸν βίον ἐτίθετο. ἀνασκοποῦντι δὲ
he-endured but unlivable the life he-made to-examining and
τούτῳ καὶ πολλοὺς διελίττοντι λογισμούς, τίνα τὸν τρόπον
to-this-man and many revolving thoughts what the way
τῆς τοσαύτης δυναστείας μετακινήσῃ τὸν στρατηγόν, μία
from-the such power he-might-remove the general one
τις ἐσῄει μηχανή, δι᾽ ἧς ᾤετο τὴν ἐκείνου ἀρχήν, ὡσεί
some came contrivance through which he-thought the his rule as-if
τινα πέλεκυν τῷ αὐχένι προσεπικειμένην, ἀποσκευάσασθαι.
some axe on-the neck lying to-get-rid-of
Τὸν Μαριανὸν οὖν εἰσκαλέσας, ἄνδρα μὲν τῷ τῶν 2
— Marianos then having-called-in a-man indeed with-the of-the
πατρικίων τετιμημένον ἀξιώματι καὶ τῶν Ἰταλικῶν
patrikioi honored dignity and the Italian
στρατευμάτων ἤδη κατάρξαντα, εὐρίπιστον δὲ τὴν ἄλλως
armies already having-commanded easily-fanned but — otherwise
καὶ θερμουργόν, ἐξεῖπε τὸ ἀπόῤῥητον, ἐν παραβύστῳ που
and hot-headed he-told the secret in corner somewhere
κοινολογησάμενος, καί, "εἴ μοι," φησί, "πεισθεὶς τὴν
having-conferred and if to-me he-says having-been-persuaded the
τῆς ἀνατολῆς ἀναδέξῃ ἀρχήν, αὐτοκράτορά σε θᾶττον
of-the east you-take-up command emperor you quickly

ἀποφανῶ, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν βασιλικῶν θρόνων ἐπαναβιβάσω.”
I-will-declare and on the imperial thrones I-will-raise-up
“εὐφήμει,” ἔφη πρὸς τὸν λόγον ὁ Μαριανός· “πίθηκον
hush he-said to the word — Marianos an-ape
διερεθίζων καὶ προτρεπόμενος καθωπλισμένῳ γίγαντι
provoking and urging an-armed giant
διαμάχεσθαι, ὃν οὐ μόνον τὰ πρόσοικα φῦλα πέφρικε
to-fight whom not only the neighboring tribes dread
τῶν ἐθνῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσα ἀνίσχων τε καὶ δυόμενος ὁ
of-the nations but also as-many-as rising both and setting the
ἥλιος ἐφορᾷ. ἀλλ’ εἰ δοκεῖ συνεισενεγκεῖν τινα γνώμην
sun looks-upon but if it-seems-good to-contribute some counsel
ἀμηχανοῦντι καὶ σκυθρωπάζοντι, αὐτίκα ἐρῶ. τὸν Ἰωάννην,
to-one-at-a-loss and sullen at-once I-will-say — John
ὃν κικλήσκουσι Τζιμισκῆν, οἶσθα τὸν ἄνδρα φιλότιμόν τε
whom they-call Tzimiskes you-know the man ambitious both
ὄντα καὶ λίαν φιλόνικον, καὶ ἀγαθὸν τὰ πολέμια· ὃν
being and very contentious and good in-the warlike(-things) whom
δεύτερον μετά γε τὸν στρατηγὸν ἡ στρατιωτικὴ φάλαγξ
second after at-least the general the military phalanx
τίθεται καὶ τιμᾷ. τὴν τῶν στρατευμάτων οὖν, εἰ δοκεῖ,
puts and honors the of-the armies then if it-seems-good
τούτῳ ἐπίτρεψον ἀντίληψιν· καί, οἶμαι, παραβολώτατος
to-this-man entrust charge and I-think most-reckless
ὢν ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ τολμητίας ἐπιεικῶς, ὑποστήσεται τὸ
being the man and daring fairly will-undertake the
ἐγχείρημα· καὶ ᾗ ἂν ἡγοῖτο, ἕψεται ἡ πληθύς, καὶ
enterprise and wherever — he-may-lead will-follow the host and
τὸ δοκοῦν σοι περαιωθήσεται. ἄλλως δὲ μὴ οἴου σὺ
the seeming to-you will-be-accomplished otherwise but not think you
κατασείειν πύργον ἀτίνακτόν τε καὶ ἀδιάσειστον.” ταύτην
to-shake tower unshakable both and unmovable this

δεξάμενος ὁ Ἰωσὴφ τὴν εἰσήγησιν, τοὺς ἐξ αἵματος
having-received — Joseph the suggestion those by blood
Νικηφόρῳ προσήκοντας, καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἀνημμένους αὐτῷ
to-Nikephoros related and the others attached to-him
τῶν ἀξιωμάτων τε παγανοῖ, καὶ εἰς ὑπερορίαν
from-the dignities both he-reduces-to-civilians and into exile
ἐκπέμπει· γραμματεῖον δὲ σφραγῖσιν ἐνσημηνάμενος τῷ
sends a-letter and with-seals having-sealed to-the
προῤῥηθέντι Ἰωάννῃ στέλλει ἐν τοῖς πατρικίοις τελοῦντι
aforesaid John sends among the patrikioi being
καὶ στρατηγοῦντι τῶν ἀνατολικῶν, ἀνδρὶ ῥωμαλέῳ καὶ
and commanding the Anatolikoi a-man strong and
νεανικῷ, καὶ τὴν ὁρμὴν δυσάντητον κεκτημένῳ καὶ
youthful and the attack hard-to-face having and
δυσεκβίαστον. ἡ δὲ τοῦ γραμματείου ὑφήγησις ταυτὶ
hard-to-force the and of-the letter purport these-here
διηγόρευε· "τὸ δύσνουν καὶ κακόηθες τοῦ Φωκᾶ ὑπειδόμενος,
declared the ill-will and malignity — of-Phokas suspecting
καὶ τὴν κακοῦργον σκέψιν, ἣν ἐκεῖνος τρέφει καθ' ἑαυτόν,
and the wicked design which he nurses by himself
ἐκκόψαι βουλόμενος, ἔγνων ἀνακαλύψαι τὸ ἀπόῤῥητον
to-cut-off wishing I-decided to-uncover the secret
τῇ περιφανείᾳ σου, εἴ πως τὴν ἐκείνου δυσκάθεκτον
to-the illustriousness your if somehow the his unrestrainable
ὁρμήν, σοῦ συνεργοῦντος, ἀναχαιτίσωμεν. βούλεται γὰρ
rush you working-with we-may-rein-in he-wishes for
ὅσον οὔπω τυραννήσειν, καὶ τὴν τῆς βασιλείας ἀρχὴν
all but to-make-himself-tyrant and the of-the empire rule
σφετερίσασθαι. ἀλλ' αὐτὸς τὴν ἔκσπονδον ἐκείνου ἐκκόπτων
to-appropriate but I-myself the truce-breaking his cutting-off
ὁρμήν, τὴν τῶν στρατευμάτων πρόνοιαν ἐξαυτῆς ἐκείνου
rush the of-the armies care forthwith from-him

μὲν ἀφαιροῦμαι, τῇ δὲ σῇ ἀνατίθημι ἐνδοξότητι. μετὰ
indeed I-take-away to-the and your I-assign glory after
μικρὸν δὲ σὲ καὶ εἰς αὐτὴν ἀναβιβάσω τὴν τῆς βασιλείας
a-little and you also to very I-will-raise the of-the empire
περιωπήν. σὺ δὲ τὸν ὑπέρμαχον καὶ ἀλαζόνα Φωκᾶν
height you and the champion and braggart Phokas
δεσμώτην ἀποφηνάμενος θᾶττον παράπεμψον ὡς ἡμᾶς."
prisoner having-declared quickly send to us

3 Τὸ τοιοῦτον οὖν γραμματεῖον ὁ Ἰωάννης ἀπειληφώς,
the such then letter — John having-received
ἀνειλήσας τε καὶ τὴν ἐν αὐτῷ πραγματείαν ἀναλεξάμενος
having-unrolled both and the in it business having-read-through
(τὴν τῆς ἀνατολῆς δὲ αὐτῷ δυναστείαν, καὶ αὖθις
the of-the east and to-him power and again
τὴν τῶν ὅλων ἀρχὴν καὶ διακατοχὴν τούτων, ὥς μοι
the of-the whole rule and possession of-these as by-me
ἤδη εἴρηται, κατεπηγγέλλετο ἡ γραφή, εἴ γε τῆς
already has-been-said promised the writing if at-least from-the
στρατιᾶς μετακινήσοι τὸν Νικηφόρον καὶ τοῦ πλήθους
army he-should-remove — Nikephoros and from-the multitude
ἀποσκευάσοιτο), τῶν τόπων ἀπάρας ἐν οἷς ἀνεστρέφετο,
should-get-rid-of from-the places having-set-out in which he-was-staying
ἠπείγετο πρὸς τὸν στρατηγόν. προελθὼν δὲ παρὰ τὴν
he-hastened to the general having-come and beside the
σκηνὴν τὴν στρατήγιον, καὶ αὐτῷ παρακαθισάμενος
tent the general's and beside-him having-sat-down
(ἀνεψιὸς γὰρ πρὸς μητρὸς ὁ Ἰωάννης τῷ Νικηφόρῳ
cousin for on mother's(-side) — John — to-Nikephoros
ἐχρημάτιζε), "σὺ μέν," ἔφη, "ὦ γενναῖε, βαθὺν ὕπνον
was you indeed he-said O noble-one deep sleep
καθεύδεις, καὶ ὑπὲρ τὸν Ἐνδυμίωνα, ὥς φασιν· ὁ δὲ
you-sleep and beyond — Endymion as they-say the and

τῆς βασιλικῆς κατάρχων αὐλῆς, ὁ χρηστὸς Ἰωσήφ,
of-the imperial ruler court the excellent Joseph
τὸν σὸν μανιώδει καὶ μιαφόνῳ ῥοπῇ κατεργάζεται
the your with-maniacal and bloodthirsty force works-out
θάνατον, καί, ὅσον τὸ ἐπ᾽ ἐκείνῳ, ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
death and as-much-as the on him the of-the Romans
ἀκαταγώνιστος ἐξείργασται στρατηγός, καὶ τὸ τούτου
unconquerable is-done-for general and the his
αἷμα ἐκκέχυται· καὶ ταῦτα παρ᾽ ἀνδραρίου (ὦ πόνοι,
blood has-been-poured-out and that by a-manikin O labors
καὶ μάχαι, καὶ ἀρετή) ἀμφιβόλου τε καὶ ἀνάνδρου,
and battles and virtue of-ambiguous both and unmanly
καὶ γυναίου τεχνητοῦ, καὶ πλείω τῶν ἐν τῇ
and of-a-woman artificial and more than-the(-things) in the
γυναικωνίτιδι δρωμένων εἰδότος μηδέν. ἀλλὰ διανάστα, ὦ
women's-quarters being-done knowing nothing but rise-up O
᾽τάν, εἰ δοκεῖ· καὶ γενοίμεθα τῶν ἡμῶν λογισμῶν, ὅπως
good-sir if it-seems-good and may-we-become of-the our thoughts so-that
μὴ ὡς ἀνδράποδα παραπολώμεθα, γενναῖον δέ τι καὶ
not like slaves we-may-perish noble but something and
ἀνδρικὸν ἐργασοίμεθα, ὡς ἂν γνῷ καὶ Ἰωσήφ, καὶ εἴ
manly we-may-do so-that — may-know also Joseph and if
τις ἄλλος εἴη τὰ ἐκείνου πρεσβεύων, μὴ πρὸς ἁπαλὰ
anyone else should-be the his(-interests) championing not against tender
καὶ σκιατραφῆ διαμιλλώμενοι γυναικάρια, πρὸς ἄνδρας δὲ
and shade-reared contending little-women against men but
ἀκαταγώνιστον κεκτημένους ἰσχύν, καὶ οὓς ἡ βάρβαρος
invincible having strength and whom the barbarian
φρίττει καὶ τέθηπε.᾽᾽ ταῦτα εἰπών, καὶ τῶν κόλπων
dreads and is-astounded-at these-things having-said and from-the bosom
τὸ γραμματεῖον ἐξενεγκών, τῷ στρατηγῷ ἐνεχείρισεν.
the letter having-brought-out to-the general handed

ὁ δὲ τοῦτο μετελθὼν καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῷ θυμοφθόρα καὶ
he and it having-gone-over and the in it soul-wasting and
θυμαλγῆ ἐπιγνούς, μικρὸν ἐπισχὼν καὶ λειποθυμήσας
heart-grieving(-things) having-learned a-little having-paused and having-fainted
(ἔτυχε γὰρ ἠρέμα νοσηλευόμενος τὸ σωμάτιον), εἶτ' αὖθις
he-happened for slightly being-ill the poor-body then again
ἀνενεγκὼν καί, "λέγε," φησίν, "ἀνδρειότατε, τί δεῖ
having-recovered and tell he-says bravest-one what it-is-needful
περὶ τούτου σκοπεῖν;" ὁ δέ, "καὶ αὖθις," ἔφη, "σκοπεῖν
about this to-consider he and also again he-said to-consider
λέγεις, πράττειν ὅ τι καὶ δεῖ; οὐκ ἐκνήψεις ὀψὲ
you-say to-do what — also is-needful not you-will-sober-up late
γοῦν, ὦ ἀγαθέ, οὐδὲ τὸν τοσοῦτον κάρον ἀποτινάξῃ τῶν
at-any-rate O good-man nor the such stupor you-will-shake-off from-the
ὀφθαλμῶν, ἀλλ' ἐν ἀφύκτῳ κινδύνῳ περιληφθέντας ἡμᾶς ὅ
eyes but in inescapable danger caught us what
τι καὶ δεῖ δρᾶν ἐρωτᾷς; περὶ τῶν ὅλων διακινδυνεύειν
— also is-needful to-do you-ask about the whole to-run-the-risk
φημί, τοσαύτην μὲν πανοπλίαν ἐπαγομένους, τοσαύτην
I-say such indeed full-armor bringing such
δὲ στρατιάν, ψυχῆς τε ἀνδρείᾳ σπαργῶσαν καὶ σώματος
and army of-soul both with-bravery swelling and of-body
ῥώμῃ φλεγμαίνουσαν. ἄτοπον γὰρ ἐμοὶ καὶ οὐ φορητὸν
with-strength burning absurd for to-me and not bearable
καταφαίνεται, ὑπὸ τομίου οἰκτροῦ ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονικῆς
appears by a-eunuch pitiable from the Paphlagonian
ἐρημίας τῇ πολιτείᾳ παρεισφθαρέντος, τοὺς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
wilderness into-the state having-crept-in-to-corrupt the of-the Romans
ἄγεσθαι στρατηγούς, καὶ τῇδε κἀκεῖσε παρέλκεσθαι τῆς
to-be-led generals and here and-there to-be-dragged by-the

ῥινός, ὡς ἀνδράποδα. ἀλλ᾽ ἔπου τὴν ταχίστην, εἴ γε
nose as slaves but follow the quickest if at-least
μὴ βούλῃ ζωγρίας ληφθεὶς τὰ πήματα δεινὰ πείσεσθαι.᾽᾽
not you-wish alive taken the sufferings dire to-suffer
Τοιαύτην ἀνειπόντος τοῦ Ἰωάννου παραίνεσιν, διανέστη τε 4
such having-spoken — John exhortation rose both
πρὸς ἀλκὴν ὁ Νικηφόρος, καὶ τὰ ὅπλα καθυποδὺς τὴν
to strength — Nikephoros and the arms having-put-on the(-road)
ἐπὶ Καισαρείας ἅμα τῷ Ἰωάννῃ ἠπείγετο πανστρατί·
to Caesarea together-with — John hastened with-the-whole-army
καὶ τηνικαῦτα πηξάμενος χάρακα τὴν στρατιὰν ὑπεδέχετο.
and then having-fixed a-palisade the army received
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐντὸς ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν ἅπαν τὸ τῆς Ἀσίας πρὸς
when and within few days all the — of-Asia to
αὐτὸν συνήθροιστο στράτευμα, ἡμέρας ἤδη διαφαυούσης,
him had-gathered army day already dawning
καὶ τῶν ἡλιακῶν ἀκτίνων ὑφαπλουμένων τῇ γῇ (Ἰούλιος
and the solar rays spreading-beneath on-the earth July
εἶχεν ἀρχήν), οἱ τὰς τοῦ στρατοῦ παρειληφότες ἡγεμονίας
had beginning those the of-the army having-taken-over commands
ἅμα τῷ στρατηγῷ Ἰωάννῃ τὰ ξίφη γυμνώσαντες καὶ
together-with the general John the swords having-bared and
τὴν στρατήγιον σκηνὴν κυκλωσάμενοι (προστεταγμένον δὲ
the general's tent having-surrounded commanded and
τοῦτο πρὸς τοῦ Ἰωάννου τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς
this by — John to-the generals and captains
ἦν, ὅς γε δεινὸν ἐποιεῖτο, εἰ ἄνδρας αἱμάτων ἀγεννὴς
it-was who at-least dreadful made(-it) if men of-blood ignoble
ἐκτομίας μετὰ νηπίων τιθηνουμένων καθυποτάσσοι, ᾗ
eunuch with infants being-nursed should-subdue as
ἂν αὐτῷ δεδογμένον εἴη), αὐτοκράτορα Ῥωμαίων καὶ
— to-him decided it-might-be emperor of-Romans and

κραταιὸν βασιλέα τὸν Νικηφόρον ἐφήμιζον, πολυχρόνιον
mighty sovereign — Nikephoros they-acclaimed long-lasting
κράτος αὐτῷ ἐπευχόμενοι. ὁ δὲ τὰ πρῶτα μὲν ἀπείπατο
power for-him praying he and the first indeed refused
τὴν τοιαύτην ἀρχήν, τὸ τοῦ ὕψους ἐπίφθονον εὐλαβούμενος,
the such rule the of-the height envied fearing
καὶ τὸν τῆς συνεύνου καὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ Βάρδα προϊσχόμενος
and the of-the wife and of-the son Bardas putting-forward
θάνατον, ὃς αὐτῷ τῆς ἡλικίας τὸ βιώσιμον ἕλκων, ἄρτι
death who to-him of-the age the fit-to-live drawing just
πυραυγεῖ τῷ ἰούλῳ περιαστράπτων τὴν γένυν, κατὰ
with-fiery the first-down flashing-around the cheek in
παιδιὰν οὐ πρὸ πολλῶν τῶν χρόνων πρὸς αὐτανεψιοῦ
game not before many of-the times by cousin
αὐτοῦ (Πλεύσης τὸ μειράκιον ὠνομάζετο) κοντῷ τὴν
his Pleuses the lad was-named with-a-pole the
βλεφαρίδα τιτρώσκεται· ὁ δὲ Πλεύσης, δείσας ἐπὶ
eyelid is-wounded — and Pleuses having-feared at
τῷ τραύματι, τὸν κοντὸν διαφίησι τῆς χειρός· τοῦ δὲ
the wound the pole lets-slip from-the hand of-the and
σαυρωτῆρος τῷ οὔδει ἐνερεισθέντος σφοδρὰν γενέσθαι
butt-spike on-the ground having-been-fixed violent to-be
συμβέβηκε τὴν ἀντέρεισιν, ὡς τὴν αἰχμὴν τὸ κρανίον
it-happened the counter-thrust so-that the point the skull
ἀντιτορήσασαν διαμπερὲς διελθεῖν, καὶ αὐθωρὸν ἄναυδον
having-pierced right-through to-pass and on-the-spot speechless
τὸν Βάρδαν τοῦ ἵππου καταπεσεῖν. τοιαύτην ὁ Νικηφόρος
— Bardas from-the horse to-fall such — Nikephoros
προτεινόμενος πρόφασιν παρῃτεῖτο τὴν ἀρχήν, καὶ Ἰωάννῃ
putting-forward pretext declined the rule and to-John
τῷ Τζιμισκῇ παρεχώρει τῆς τοιαύτης ἐπιβῆναι τιμῆς,
— Tzimiskes yielded the such to-mount honor

καὶ τῶν σκήπτρων ἀνθέξεσθαι. οὐκ ἠνείχετο δὲ τῶν
and the scepters to-hold-to not endured but the
τοιούτων λόγων οὔτε τις τῶν τοῦ στρατοῦ, οὔτε μὴν
such words neither anyone of-those of-the army nor indeed
αὐτὸς ὁ Ἰωάννης· ἀλλ' ὁμοθυμαδὸν αὐτὸν ἐπευφήμουν,
himself — John but with-one-accord him they-acclaimed
σεβάσμιόν τε καὶ βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων προσαγορεύοντες. ὁ
august both and emperor of-Romans addressing he
δὲ καταδέχεται τὴν ἀρχήν, καὶ τὸ ἐρυθρὸν πέδιλον, ὃ
and accepts the rule and the red sandal which
τῆς βασιλείας παράσημον μέγιστον πέφυκεν, ὑποδύεται,
of-the empire emblem greatest is puts-on
μικρὰ φροντίσας τῶν φρικωδεστάτων ὅρκων, οὓς πρός τε
little having-cared-for the most-awful oaths which to both
τὸν πατριάρχην Πολύευκτον κατέθετο καὶ τὴν σύγκλητον.
the patriarch Polyeuktos he-had-sworn and the senate
τὸ γὰρ ἀστάθμητον τῆς τύχης καὶ ἄδηλον, καὶ τὸ τοῦ
the for unstableness of-the fortune and uncertainty and the —
Ἰωσὴφ δυσμενές τε καὶ ἄσπονδον ὑπολογιζόμενος, ἠπείγετο
of-Joseph hostility both and implacability reckoning he-hastened
προτερήσειν τὴν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς κακοήθειαν, ἐν τῷ τὰ
to-anticipate the of-the man malignity in the the(-things)
κατ' αὐτὸν εὖ θέσθαι, καὶ ὡς οἷόν τε ἀσφαλίσασθαι.
concerning himself well to-settle and as possible — to-secure
τῷ τοι καὶ δεύτερα τὰ φθάσαντα τῆς ἑαυτοῦ
therefore indeed also second the having-preceded(-oaths) to-the his-own
σωτηρίας ἡγούμενος, παρὰ φαῦλον τὴν ὁρκωμοσίαν ἐτίθετο.
safety thinking at naught the oath-taking set
τοῦτον δὴ τὸν τρόπον τῆς βασιλείας ἀρχὴν ὁ Νικηφόρος
this indeed the way of-the empire rule — Nikephoros
ἀναδεξάμενος, τῆς σκηνῆς προῆλθεν, ἀκινάκην
having-taken-up from-the tent came-forth with-a-short-sword

διεζωσμένος καὶ δόρατι σκηριπτόμενος· ἐξ ἀπόπτου τε
girded and on-a-spear leaning from conspicuous both
καί τινος περιωπῆς κατὰ τὸ ὕπαιθρον στάς, ἔλεξε τοιάδε·
and some lookout in the open standing spoke such-things

VII · THE MARCH ON CONSTANTINOPLE

Nikephoros tells his soldiers he took the throne under compulsion and warns that the contest is now for the City itself. He makes John Tzimiskes Domestic of the East, seizes the straits, and writes to the patriarch Polyeuktos, to Joseph, and to the senate asking to be received. Joseph imprisons his envoy and holds the city with Marianos, Paschalios, and the Tornikioi; Nikephoros' brother Leo escapes by the sewers and his father Bardas takes sanctuary. Marianos is killed by a pot a woman throws from a roof; the parakoimomenos Basil arms three thousand men, sacks Joseph's house, and sends the fleet to Nikephoros. Joseph flees to the Great Church.

5 "Ὅτι μὲν οὐκ ἐφέσει τυραννίδος, ὦ συστρατιῶται, τόδε
that indeed not from-desire of-tyranny O fellow-soldiers this
τὸ σχῆμα τῆς βασιλείας ἀνείληφα, κατανάγκῃ δὲ ὑμῶν τοῦ
the form of-the empire I-have-taken-up by-compulsion but of-you the
στρατοῦ βιασθείς, μαρτυρεῖτέ μοι καὶ αὐτοί, οἵ γε καὶ
army forced bear-witness for-me also yourselves who at-least also
ἀποτροπιαζόμενόν τε τὴν τοσαύτην φροντίδα καὶ πρόνοιαν
me-averting both the so-great care and providence
τοῦ παντός, καὶ ἄκοντα κατηναγκάσατε δέξασθαι. ὅτι
of-the whole and unwilling compelled to-accept that
δὲ εὐνοίᾳ μᾶλλον ὑμῶν τε καὶ ἀσφαλείᾳ ἑαυτοῦ πρὸς
and from-goodwill rather to-you both and from-safety of-myself to
τὸν τοσοῦτον ἀγῶνα ἐπέδωκα ἐμαυτόν, εἰδέναι βούλομαι
the so-great contest I-gave myself to-know I-wish
πάντας ὑμᾶς. μαρτύρομαι δὲ τὴν τὸ πᾶν διευθύνουσαν
all you I-call-to-witness and the the whole directing

πρόνοιαν, ὡς πρόθυμός εἰμι, καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν ψυχὴν θεῖναι
providence that eager I-am even very the soul to-lay-down
ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν, καὶ οὐκ ἄν μέ τι τῶν ἀηδῶν
for you and not — me anything of-the unpleasant(-things)
τοῦ τοιούτου ἀπαγάγοι σκοποῦ. ἐπεὶ οὖν οὐκ ἠνέγκατε
from-the such would-lead-away aim since then not you-endured
τὴν τομίου ἔκσπονδον ἀπόνοιαν καὶ τὴν λυσσώδη καὶ
the of-a-eunuch truce-breaking madness and the raging and
ὀργῶσαν ἐκείνου αὐθάδειαν εἰς ἔργον χωρῆσαι, ἀλλ᾽ ὡσανεί
swelling his arrogance into deed to-go but as-if
τινα βαρυκάρδιον ἐπιστάτην ἀποσεισάμενοι, ἐμὲ βασιλεύειν
some heavy-hearted overseer having-shaken-off me to-reign
ὑμῶν ᾑρετίσασθε, ἐπὶ τῶν πραγμάτων δείξω σαφῶς,
over-you you-chose in the affairs I-will-show clearly
ὅτι τε ᾔδειν ἄρχεσθαι, καὶ νῦν ἄρχειν ἀνεπισφαλῶς
that both I-knew to-be-ruled and now to-rule securely
σὺν θεῷ ἐξεπίσταμαι. εὔνοιαν οὖν ἔχων ὥς τις φιλόπαις
with God I-understand goodwill then having as some child-loving
πατήρ, συμβουλεύω πᾶσιν ὑμῖν ὡς υἱοῖς φιλοπάτορσι, μὴ
father I-counsel all you as sons father-loving not
πρὸς ῥᾳστώνην καὶ τρυφὴν ἀπιδεῖν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐγρηγορέναι καὶ
to ease and luxury to-look but to-be-awake and
νήφειν, καὶ τὰ συμπίπτοντα εὐπρεπισμένως προσδέχεσθαι.
to-be-sober and the befalling(-things) in-good-order to-receive
τεκμαίρομαι γάρ, μὴ ἀναιμωτὶ διακριθῆναι τὰ πράγματα.
I-conjecture for not without-bloodshed to-be-decided the affairs
καὶ γάρ, ὅσον εἰς ἀνέφικτον ὕψος τῆς βασιλείας τὸ
and for as-much-as to unattainable height of-the empire the
κράτος ἀνέστηκε, τοσοῦτον καὶ ὁ φθόνος καὶ ὁ πόλεμος
power has-risen so-much also the envy and the war
περὶ αὐτὴν αὔξεται διαμιλλώμενα. οὐ πρὸς Κρῆτας οὖν
about it increases contending not against Cretans then

ὑμῖν ἡ πάλη, οὐδὲ πρὸς Σκύθας καὶ Ἄραβας, οὓς τῇ
for-you the wrestling nor against Scythians and Arabs whom by-the
σφῶν ἀρετῇ διεχειρισάμεθα, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
our valor we-dispatched but against the of-the Romans
πολιτείαν, καθ᾽ ἣν ἄκρατα πανταχόθεν εἰσρεῖ, καὶ
state into which unmixed(-things) from-every-side flow-in and
ἣν οὐκ ἔνι αὐτοβοεὶ ὥς τι τῶν φρουρίων
which not it-is-possible at-the-first-shout like some of-the forts
ἑλεῖν· θαλάσσῃ τε περιῤῥεόμενον καὶ εὐερκῆ οὖσαν,
to-take by-sea both being-flowed-around and well-fenced being
καὶ πυργώμασιν ἐρυμνοῖς περικλειομένην ἑκασταχοῦ, καὶ
and with-towers strong being-enclosed on-every-side and
ἡβῶντι λαῷ περιπλήθουσαν, καὶ χρυσῷ καὶ πλούτῳ καὶ
with-youthful people teeming and in-gold and wealth and
ἀναθήμασι πολλῷ τῆς οἰκουμένης διαφέρουσαν. δεῖ
offerings by-much of-the inhabited-world surpassing it-is-needful
οὖν τὸ γενναῖον ἀνειληφότας παράστημα, ᾧ κεχρημένοι
then the noble having-taken-up spirit which using
παρὰ τὰς μάχας τὸ ἀντίξουν ἅπαν κατηγωνίζεσθε, καὶ
in the battles the opposing(-force) all you-overcame and
ὑπὲρ τὸ ἐνὸν ἄρτι μᾶλλον κατὰ τῶν ἀντιπάλων χωρεῖν.
beyond the possible now rather against the opponents to-go
πέπεισμαι γὰρ ἕξειν ἐπὶ τουτονὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα συνεργὸν
I-am-persuaded for to-have for this-here the contest fellow-worker
καὶ τὸν κρείττονα. τὰς γὰρ σπονδὰς καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους
also the stronger(-one) the for treaties and the oaths
οὐχ ἡμεῖς, τὸ τοῦ Ἰωσὴφ δὲ διέφθειρε δυσμενές, ὃς
not we the — of-Joseph but destroyed hostility who
τοὺς ἐμοὺς ἀγχιστεῖς ἐπὶ προφάσει μηδεμιᾷ ὑπερορίᾳ
the my kinsmen on pretext none to-exile
παρέπεμψεν, ἐμοὶ δὲ τούτων εἰδηκότι μηδέν, ὠμῶς καὶ
sent to-me and of-these knowing nothing cruelly and

ἀφιλανθρώπως θάνατον ἐσκαιώρησε. τὰς δὲ ξυμβάσεις οὐχ
inhumanly death he-contrived the and agreements not
οἱ πρώτως ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα χωροῦντες διαλύειν εἰώθασιν,
those first to the arms going to-dissolve are-wont
ἀλλ᾽ οἱ ἐν σπονδαῖς τοῖς ὁμοφύλοις ἐπιβουλεύοντες. δόξαν
but those in treaties the kindred plotting-against glory
τε τὴν ἐμὴν ἀναλογιζόμενοι, ὑφ᾽ ἧς στρατηγούμενοι
both the my reckoning under which being-generaled
ὑπὲρ ἀριθμὸν κατωρθώσατε τρόπαια, καὶ τὴν σύντροφον
beyond number you-achieved trophies and the inborn
ὑμῶν εἴπερ ἄλλοτέ ποτε παραθήξαντες ἀρετήν, ἕπεσθε
your if-indeed at-another-time ever having-whetted virtue follow
ἀνεπιστρόφως, ᾗ ἂν ἡ πρόνοια ἡγῆται, καὶ αὐτὸς
without-turning-back where — the providence may-lead and myself
ὁρμῶ.”
I-set-out

Ταῦτα εἰς ἐπήκοον τῆς στρατιᾶς ὁ Νικηφόρος διεξελθὼν 6
these-things into hearing of-the army — Nikephoros having-gone-through
πάντων ἐπέῤῥωσε τὰ φρονήματα, καὶ προθυμίαν ἀδιήγητον
of-all strengthened the spirits and zeal indescribable
ἐνεστάλαξε ταῖς ψυχαῖς, ὡς οἴεσθαι μήτινα πολέμου
instilled into-the souls so-that to-think that-no of-war
ῥοπὴν ἐξ ἀντιστάσεως ἀνθαμιλληθῆναι τῷ τοιούτῳ
force from resistance to-contend-against to-the such
κινήματι. δαιμονίως γὰρ αὐτὸν ἔστεργε τὰ στρατεύματα,
movement wondrously for him loved the armies
καὶ πᾶς τις αὐτοῦ τοῖς αὐχήμασιν ἐσεμνύνετο. καὶ γὰρ
and every one of-him in-the glories took-pride and for
ἐν πολέμοις ἀναστραφεὶς ἐκ νεότητος, καὶ φοβερὸς
in wars having-been-raised from youth and fearsome
ἀναδειχθεὶς ἐν τοῖς κατὰ τάξιν καὶ μάχας ἀνδραγαθήμασιν,
having-been-shown in the in ranks and battles deeds-of-valor

οὐ μόνον τὴν ἀλκὴν ἄμαχος ἐτέλει καὶ περιδέξιος,
not only in-the strength unconquerable he-was and most-dexterous
ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν φρένα κατηρτυμένος καὶ τὴν παντοδαπὴν
but also in-the mind well-furnished and in-the every-kind
ἀρετὴν ἀπαράμιλλος. εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὴν τῶν Καισαρέων
virtue incomparable at-once then into the of-the Caesareans
ἐκκλησίαν νέων, ἐκεῖθεν ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἐπανέστρεφε, καὶ
church going from-there to the tent he-returned and
τὸν Ἰωάννην τῷ τοῦ Μαγίστρου τιμήσας ἀξιώματι,
— John with-the of-the Magistros having-honored dignity
Δομέστικον τῆς Ἀνατολῆς ἀνηγόρευσεν, ἐντάλματά τε καὶ
Domestic of-the East proclaimed injunctions both and
διατάγματα πανταχοῦ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἡγεμονίας ἐξέπεμπε,
decrees everywhere of-the Roman dominion he-sent-out
καὶ στρατηγοὺς προχειρισάμενος ἐπὶ τὸν Εὔξεινον, καὶ
and generals having-appointed to the Euxine and
τὰ παράκτια πάντα, καὶ Ἄβυδον ἔστελλεν, ἀπτέρῳ
the coastal(-parts) all and Abydos he-sent with-wingless
τάχει ἀπιέναι τούτοις ἐγκελευσάμενος· τοῦτο τάχα, ὡς
speed to-go-off them having-ordered this perhaps as
ἔοικε, προμηθούμενος, πρὸ τοῦ διαπτῆναι τὴν φήμην τῆς
it-seems taking-forethought before the to-fly-abroad the report of-the
ἀναῤῥήσεως, τῆς ὑγρᾶς τοὺς πορθμοὺς καὶ τοὺς πόρους
proclamation of-the sea the straits and the passages
προκατασχεῖν. οὕτω γὰρ ᾤετο κατὰ νοῦν αὐτῷ
to-seize-first so for he-thought according-to mind for-him
χωρήσειν τὰ πράγματα, καὶ μὴ ἐπινεμεσήσειν τὴν τύχην
to-go the affairs and not to-be-indignant the fortune
αὐτῷ, ἐπιμειδιᾶσαι δὲ μᾶλλον ἱλαρόν τι καὶ ἥμερον,
at-him to-smile but rather cheerful something and gentle
εἴ γε προτερήσοι τὴν τῶν ἐπικαιροτάτων χωρίων
if at-least he-should-anticipate the of-the most-advantageous places

κατάληψιν. ταῦτα ὁ Νικηφόρος διαπραξάμενος, καὶ εἰς
seizure these-things — Nikephoros having-accomplished and into
ἀῤῥαγῆ συνασπισμὸν καταπυκνώσας τὰς φάλαγγας, καὶ
unbreakable close-order having-made-dense the phalanxes and
ὁπλισμοῖς αὐτὰς εὐερκέσιν ἀσφαλισάμενος, τῆς Καισαρείας
with-armor them well-fenced having-secured — from-Caesarea
ἀπάρας ἐπὶ τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἔτο· ἐπιστολήν τε χαράξας
having-set-out to the reigning(-city) went letter both having-written
καὶ Φιλοθέῳ τῷ Εὐχαΐτων ἐπισκόπῳ ἐγχειρίσας, πρός
and to-Philotheos to-the of-Euchaita bishop having-entrusted to
τε τῶν ἐκκλησιαστικῶν ἐπειλημμένον οἰάκων Πολύευκτον
both of-the ecclesiastical having-grasped helms Polyeuktos
ἔστειλε, καὶ Ἰωσὴφ τὸν τῶν τυραννείων κατάρχοντα,
he-sent and to-Joseph the of-the palace ruling
καὶ τὴν σύγκλητον. ὡς ἐν κεφαλαίῳ δὲ ταυτί πως
and the senate as in summary and these-here somehow
διαπήγγελλεν ἡ γραφή· δέξασθαί τε αὐτὸν αὐτοκράτορα,
announced the writing to-receive both him emperor
περιφρουρήσοντα καὶ εἰς αὔξησιν ἡλικίας σωμασκήσοντα
going-to-guard and into growth of-age going-to-train
τοὺς τοῦ ἄνακτος Ῥωμανοῦ παῖδας· καὶ προσέτι τὰ μέγιστα
the of-the lord Romanos sons and besides the greatest
τὴν πολιτείαν ὀνήσοντα, καὶ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἀρχῆς τὴν
the state going-to-benefit and of-the Roman rule the
ἐπικράτειαν αὐξήσοντα τοῖς κατὰ πολέμους ἀνδραγαθήμασιν.
dominion going-to-increase by-the in wars deeds-of-valor
εἰ δὲ μὴ τοῦτο βουληθεῖεν, αὐτοῖς μεταμελήσειν τῆς
if but not this they-should-wish for-them to-repent of-the
ἀβελτερίας μετέπειτα, ὁπηνίκα σιδήρῳ καὶ σφαγαῖς τὰ
stupidity afterward when with-iron and slaughters the

πράγματα διακρίνοιντο· καὶ καιρὸς οὐ μέτεστι δικαιολογίας
affairs should-be-decided and time not there-is of-pleading-justice
τοῖς αἱρετισαμένοις τῶν βελτιόνων τὰ χείριστα.
for-those having-chosen than-the better the worst

7 Ταύτην ὡσεί τινα ῥῆσιν ἀπὸ Σκυθῶν ὁ Ἰωσὴφ δεξάμενος
this as-if some speech from Scythians — Joseph having-received
τὴν γραφήν, καί, ὥσπερ ὕσπληγί τινι ἢ μύωπι τὴν καρδίαν
the writing and as-if by-a-goad some or by-a-gadfly in-the heart
βληθείς, τὸν μὲν ἐπίσκοπον πεδήτην ἀπέφηνεν, εἱρκτῇ
struck the indeed bishop prisoner declared to-prison
παραπέμψας· τὸν Μαριανὸν δέ, καὶ τὸν Πασχάλιον, καὶ
having-sent — Marianos and also — Paschalios and
τοὺς Τορνικίους, ἐν Πατρικίοις τελοῦντας καὶ θερμουργοὺς
the Tornikioi among Patrikioi being and hot-headed
πεφηνότας ἑταιρισάμενος, καὶ Μακεδονικὴν αὐτοῖς
having-shown-themselves having-taken-as-companions and Macedonian to-them
ἐγχειρίσας φάλαγγα, ἀντείχετο κραταιῶς, ἀποτειχίζων τῷ
having-entrusted phalanx held-out mightily walling-off —
Νικηφόρῳ τὴν εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον πάροδον. ἐν τούτοις οὖν
from-Nikephoros the into — Byzantium passage in these then
τῶν πραγμάτων ἠωρημένων, Λέων ὁ τοῦ Νικηφόρου
the affairs being-in-suspense Leo the — of-Nikephoros
σύναιμος, οὗ καὶ πρώην ὁ λόγος κατὰ παραδρομὴν
brother of-whom also formerly the account in passing
τὰ περὶ τὰς μάχας ἐπεξηγήσατο τρόπαια, εὐκαιρίας
the about the battles set-forth trophies opportunity
δραξάμενος (ἔτυχε γὰρ ἐπιχωριάζων τῷ Βυζαντίῳ)
having-grasped he-happened for staying — in-Byzantium
τῶν τινος βαναύσων ὑποδὺς ἀμπεχόνην καὶ διὰ
of-the of-one artisans having-put-on cloak and through
τῶν ὑπονόμων τοῦ τείχους ὑπολισθήσας, ἀκατίῳ
the underground-passages of-the wall having-slipped-out onto-a-skiff

προσεπιβάς, ἐπὶ τὸν Νικηφόρον ἀπέπλευσεν, αὐτοῦ που
having-gone-aboard to — Nikephoros sailed-off there somewhere
περὶ τὰ ἐν τοῖς Ἡρίοις ἀνάκτορα εἰσελάσαντα, καὶ τὸν
about the in — Hieria palace having-ridden-in and the
στρατὸν διατάττοντα. τότε καὶ Βάρδας, ὁ τούτων γενέτης,
army arranging then also Bardas the their father
ἐν τοῖς μαγίστροις τελῶν καὶ εἰς γῆρας βαθύτατον
among the magistroi being and into old-age deepest
ἐληλακώς, τὸν ἐκ τοῦ Ἰωσὴφ κίνδυνον ὑπειδόμενος, δέει
having-come the from — Joseph danger suspecting with-fear
περιληφθεὶς ἱκέτης ἱεροῦ τοῦ μεγάλου καθίστατο· ἀνὴρ
seized suppliant of-the-temple the great became a-man
ἐξ αὐτῆς ἥβης ἐν πολέμοις καὶ μάχαις ἀναστραφείς,
from very youth in wars and battles having-been-raised
κἂν τῷ τοῦ Δομεστίκου τῶν σχολῶν ἐπὶ συχνὸν
and-in the of-the Domestic of-the scholae for long
χρόνον ἐνδιαπρέψας ἀξιώματι. ὁ δὲ Μαριανὸς καὶ
time having-been-distinguished dignity — and Marianos and
ὁ Πασχάλιος τὴν τῶν Μακεδόνων σπείραν κατὰ τὰς
— Paschalios the of-the Macedonians company through the
ἀγυιὰς περιφέροντες, ἐμβρενθυόμενοί τε κενῷ κόμπῳ
streets carrying-around swaggering both with-empty boasting
καὶ ἐξυπτιάζοντες, νεώτερα ῥᾳδιουργεῖν οὐκ ἐνέλιπον·
and throwing-back-the-head new(-things) to-contrive not failed
ὡς ἐκμανέντα τὸν δῆμον πρὸς ἀλκὴν ἀπιδεῖν, καὶ
so-that driven-mad the people to strength to-look and
αὐτοῖς ἀντικαταστῆναι συστάδην εἰς μάχην, καὶ εἰς φυγὴν
them to-withstand in-close-fight into battle and into flight
ὕπαιθρον κατακλεῖσαι, ὡσεί τινα μειράκια ἁβροδίαιτα καὶ
open to-shut-in as-if some lads delicately-living and
μάχης ἀπείρατα. τηνικαῦτα λέγεται καὶ γύναιον σκεῦος
of-battle inexperienced then it-is-said also a-woman a-vessel

κεραμοῦν χοὸς ἀνάπλεον, τῶν πρὸς κηπείαν ἐπιτηδείων,
earthenware of-earth full of-the for gardening suitable(-things)
ταῖς χερσὶ τοῦ τέγους ἀράμενον ἀκοντίσαι κατὰ τοῦ
with-the hands from-the roof having-lifted to-hurl against —
Μαριανοῦ, καὶ τοῦτον κατὰ τοῦ κροτάφου βαλεῖν· οὕτω
Marianos and him on the temple to-strike so
δὲ καιρίαν γενέσθαι τὴν βολήν, ὡς καταγνύναι τε τὸ
and mortal to-have-been the blow that to-break both the
κρανίον καὶ προσαραχθῆναι αὐτῷ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον, καὶ
skull and to-be-dashed-out his the brain and
δευτεραῖον τὸν βίον ἀπολιπεῖν. ἐκ τούτου παῤῥησίαν ὁ
on-the-second-day the life to-have-left from this boldness —
Βασίλειος εἰληφώς, ὃς ἐκτομίας μὲν ἦν καὶ τῷ τοῦ
Basil having-taken who eunuch indeed was and with-the of-the
παρακοιμωμένου καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπὶ τῶν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
parakoimomenos also himself in the of-the emperor
Κωνσταντίνου καιρῶν ἐνδιέπρεψεν ἀξιώματι, νόθος υἱὸς
Constantine times was-distinguished dignity bastard son
ἐκ Σκυθίδος τῷ παλαιοτάτῳ αὐτοκράτορι Ῥωμανῷ
from a-Scythian-woman to-the very-old emperor Romanos
γεννηθείς, δραστήριος δέ, καὶ τὸ παριστάμενον αὐτῷ
born energetic and also the occurring to-him
εἰς ἔργον ἐξενεγκεῖν προμηθέστατος, ἅτε τὸ γένος ἔχων
into deed to-bring-out most-provident as the birth having
ἐπίμικτον· τότε δὲ διάφορός τε, καὶ ἄλλως δύσνους τῷ
mixed then and at-odds both and otherwise ill-disposed —
Ἰωσὴφ διακείμενος, τοὺς οἰκογενεῖς θώραξι καὶ μίτραις,
to-Joseph being the household(-slaves) with-breastplates and turbans
κράνεσί τε καὶ πέλταις, ὑσσοῖς τε καὶ ξίφεσι
with-helmets both and with-small-shields with-javelins both and with-swords
καθοπλίσας, ὑπὲρ τοὺς τρισχιλίους χρηματίζοντας, τῇ
having-armed over the three-thousand amounting to-the

οἰκίᾳ τοῦ Ἰωσὴφ καὶ τῶν αὐτῷ συνεργούντων ἅμα
house — of-Joseph and of-those with-him working-together together-with
τῷ δήμῳ ἐπιτίθεται. καὶ εἰς διαρπαγὴν καὶ προνομὴν καὶ
the people he-attacks and into plunder and pillage and
ἐρείπωσιν ταύτας περιστήσας ἐπὶ τὰ νεώρια ὥρμησεν,
demolition these having-reduced to the dockyards rushed
ἐκεῖθέν τε τὰς πυρφόρους τριήρεις, συνευδοκοῦντος τοῦ
from-there both the fire-bearing triremes consenting the
δήμου καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου, πρὸς τὸν Νικηφόρον ὁρμίσασθαι
people and the senate to — Nikephoros to-anchor
παρεσκεύασεν. ὧν ἐπιβὰς ἐξαυτῆς ὁ Νικηφόρος τῇ
he-prepared which having-boarded forthwith — Nikephoros to-the
τῶν Ἀβραμιτῶν, ἣν καὶ Ἀχειροποίητον ὀνομάζουσι,
of-the Abramites which also Not-Made-by-Hands they-name
προσέσχε μονῇ· ἐκεῖθεν τε τοὺς παραληψομένους ἑστίαν
put-in monastery from-there both those going-to-take-over hearth
ἐξέπεμψε τὴν βασίλειον. οὓς ὁ Ἰωσὴφ προσιόντας
sent-out the imperial whom — Joseph approaching
ἰδών, ὀρρωδήσας τε καὶ δέει ἀσχέτῳ ληφθεὶς (ἤδη
having-seen having-shuddered both and by-fear uncontrollable seized already
γὰρ οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φρουροὶ τῷ Νικηφόρῳ προσέθεντο),
for those about him guards — to-Nikephoros had-gone-over
καταλιπὼν τὰ βασίλεια δρομαίως εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν ἀφίκετο.
having-left the palace at-a-run into the temple came
ἦν οὖν ὁρᾶν τὸν πρὸ μικροῦ σοβαρὸν καὶ τὰς ὀφρῦς
it-was then to-see the before a-little haughty and the eyebrows
ᾐρκότα ὑπὲρ τὸ μέτωπον, ἱκέτην ἐλεινὸν καὶ αὐτὰς
having-raised above the forehead suppliant pitiable and very
κατεπτηχότα τὰς ἀκοάς, καὶ δεικνύοντα ἐν αὑτῷ, μηδὲν
cowering the ears and showing in himself nothing
τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων τελεῖν πάγιον ἢ ἀκίνητον, παλίντροπα

δέ τινα καὶ ὠκύμορα, καὶ δίκην κύβων τῇδε κἀκεῖσε
but certain and short-lived and in-the-manner of-dice here and-there
μεταῤῥιπτούμενα καὶ μεταπεττευόμενα. ἡ γοῦν τούτου
being-thrown-about and being-moved-like-game-pieces the at-any-rate his
πρὸς τὸ ἱερὸν προσφυγὴ τῷ τοῦ Νικηφόρου γενέτῃ Βάρδᾳ
to the temple refuge to-the — of-Nikephoros father Bardas
γέγονεν ἐκεῖθεν ἀπαλλαγὴ καὶ ἀνάσωσις ἐπὶ τὸν υἱόν.
became from-there release and safe-return to the son

VIII · NIKEPHOROS EMPEROR; THE CILICIAN WAR

Nikephoros enters by the Golden Gate on 16 August and is crowned by Polyeuktos in his fifty-first year; Leo describes his looks and strength. He makes his father Caesar, John Domestic of the East, his brother Leo Kouropalates, and Basil proedros. Urged by monks, he marries Theophano, and the patriarch, objecting that he is godfather to her children, is persuaded that the godfather was his father. He campaigns against Tarsus, which he cannot take, captures Adana, Anabarza, and more than twenty forts, and takes Mopsuestia by undermining two of its towers.

8 Ὁ δὲ Νικηφόρος, ἐπεὶ κατὰ τὸ δοκοῦν ἑαυτῷ
— and Nikephoros when according-to the seeming-good to-himself
τέλος ἐχώρει τὰ πράγματα, τὸ ἰδιωτικὸν περιελὼν καὶ
end went the affairs the private having-taken-off and
ἀποσφενδονήσας χιτώνιον, τὴν αὐτοκρατορικὴν καὶ βασίλειον
having-flung-away tunic the imperial and royal
ἐφεστρίδα ἐμπορπησάμενος, εἰς τὸ βασιλικώτερον ἑαυτὸν
cloak having-buckled-on into the more-royal himself
μετεσκεύασεν· ἵππου τε ἀγερώχου τῶν λευκῶν ἐπιβάς,
changed horse both proud of-the white having-mounted
φαλάροις κεκοσμημένου βασιλικοῖς καὶ τάπησιν ἁλουργοῖς,
with-trappings adorned royal and with-carpets purple

διὰ τῆς χρυσῆς πύλης εἰσήλαυνεν, ὑπὸ παντὸς τοῦ
through the golden gate he-rode-in by all the
δήμου καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει κροτούμενός τε καὶ γεραιρόμενος.
people and those in office applauded both and honored
ἑκκαιδεκάτην ὁ Αὔγουστος ἤλαυνε μήν, ἐπὶ τῆς ἕκτης
sixteenth the August was-driving month in the sixth
ἰνδίκτου, ἐν τῷ ͵χυο΄ ἔτει, ὅτε ταῦτα ἐπράττετο. ἄρτι δέ,
indiction in the 6470 year when these-things were-done just and
ἐπεὶ πρὸς τὸν τοῦ θείου περίπυστον σηκὸν εἰσεφοίτησε,
when to the of-the divine famous precinct he-entered
καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ τῶν ἱερέων πληρώματος ἀξιοχρέους τιμὰς
and by the of-the priests full-company worthy honors
ὑπεδέξατο, πρὸς τοῦ τὴν πατριαρχίαν ἰθύνοντος Πολυεύκτου
received by the the patriarchate directing Polyeuktos
τῷ βασιλικῷ διαδήματι στέφεται, ἓν καὶ πεντηκοστὸν
with-the imperial diadem is-crowned one and fiftieth
ἔτος τῆς ἡλικίας ἐλαύνων. τὴν δὲ ἰδέαν τοιόσδε τις ἦν·
year of-the age driving the and appearance such a-one he-was
ὄψις αὐτῷ πρὸς τὸ μέλαν πλέον ἢ τὸ λευκὸν ἀποκλίνουσα,
face to-him to the black more than the white inclining
κόμη δὲ βαθεῖα καὶ κυανῆ· ὀφθαλμοὶ μέλανες, ἐπὶ συννοίας
hair and thick and dark eyes black in thoughtfulness
πεφροντικότες, δασείαις ταῖς ὀφρύσιν ὑποκαθήμενοι·
pensive with-shaggy the eyebrows sitting-beneath
ῥὶς μέσως ἔχουσα λεπτότητος καὶ παχύτητος, ἠρέμα
nose moderately having of-thinness and thickness gently
συμπεραινομένη γρυπότητι· ὑπήνη σύμμετρος, ἀραιὰν παρὰ
ending in-bookedness beard proportioned thin along
τὰς γνάθους προβαλλομένη τὴν πολιάν· ἀγκυλεὸς τὴν ἡλικίαν
the jaws putting-forth the gray bent the stature
καὶ στιβαρός, εὐρύτατος τὸ στέρνον καὶ ὤμους ὡς μάλιστα,
and sturdy broadest the chest and shoulders as most

τὴν μέντοι ἀνδρείαν καὶ ῥώμην κατὰ τὸν θρυλλούμενον
the however courage and strength like the celebrated
Ἡρακλῆν· φρονήσει δὲ καὶ σωφροσύνῃ καὶ τῷ τὸ δέον
Heracles in-prudence but and in-self-control and in-the the needful
ἀνεπισφαλῶς ἐπιφράσασθαι, πάντων κατευμεγέθει τῶν κατ᾽
securely to-discern of-all he-surpassed the in
ἐκείνου τὴν γενεὰν γεγενημένων ἀνδρῶν. ταινιωθεὶς οὖν
that the generation born men having-been-crowned then
τῷ βασιλείῳ στέφει ἐπὶ τὴν βασίλειον αὐλὴν ἄνεισι,
with-the imperial crown to the imperial court goes-up
παρὰ τοῦ πλήθους καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει δορυφορούμενος, καὶ
by the multitude and those in office escorted and
δὴ παρελθὼν ἐπὶ θρόνον ἐκάθισε τὸν βασιλικόν. ἦν
indeed having-come on throne sat the imperial it-was
οὖν ὁρᾷν τὴν τύχην ἐνωραϊζομένην καὶ ἐπιγαννυμένην τοῖς
then to-see the fortune preening and exulting in-the
τελουμένοις, καὶ πάντα ἑαυτῆς τιθεῖσαν τὰ ἀνθρώπινα
things-done and all her-own making the human
πράγματα, καὶ μηδὲν τῶν φθαρτῶν μηδενὸς καθίστασθαι
affairs and nothing of-the perishable(-things) of-anyone to-become
ἴδιον. ὁ δέ, ἐπεὶ τῆς βασιλείας ἐπέβη, καὶ τῶν οἰάκων
own he and when the empire he-mounted and the helms
ἀσφαλῶς τε καὶ ἀδεῶς ταύτης ἀντείχετο, Βάρδαν μέν, τὸν
securely both and fearlessly of-it held Bardas indeed the
ἑαυτοῦ πατέρα, εἰς τὴν τοῦ Καίσαρος τιμὴν προεβίβασε·
his-own father into the of-the Caesar honor advanced
τὸν δὲ συναράμενον αὐτῷ Ἰωάννην κατὰ τὴν τοῦ
the and having-helped him John at the of-the
κινήματος ἀρχήν, ᾧ Τζιμισκῆς τὸ ἐπίκλην, Δομέστικον
movement beginning to-whom Tzimiskes the surname Domestic
Ἀνατολῆς καὶ Μάγιστρον ἀναδέδειχε. Λέοντα δέ, τὸν ἴδιον
of-(the)-East and Magistros appointed Leo and the own

σύναιμον, Κουροπαλάτην καὶ Μάγιστρον προβάλλεται· τὸν
brother Kouropalates and Magistros he-promotes —
δέ γε Βασίλειον, τὸν τὸν Ἰωσήφ, ᾗπέρ μοι ἐῤῥήθη,
and at-least Basil the(-one) — Joseph as by-me was-said
καταστασιάσαντα, εἰς τὸ τοῦ προέδρου κλέος ἀνεβιβάσατο.
having-overthrown into the of-the proedros glory raised
Αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν συνήθη προσεποιεῖτο ἀπαρεγχείρητον 9
himself and the customary pretended inviolate
σωφροσύνην διατηρεῖν, γυναικός τε συζυγίας ἐκκλίνων
self-control to-keep of-woman both union avoiding
καὶ κρεωφαγίαν ἀποδιοπομπούμενος. ἀλλ' οἱ τὸν μονήρη
and meat-eating rejecting but those the monastic
βίον μετιόντες καὶ αὐτοῦ τὸν τρόπον δῆθεν ῥυθμίζοντες
life pursuing and his the manner supposedly regulating
(ἐτίμα γὰρ διαφερόντως τοὺς μοναστάς), οὐκ εἴων τὸν
he-honored for exceedingly the monks not allowed the
ἄνδρα ἐμμένειν οἷς ἔκρινε, προὐτρέποντο δὲ καὶ
man to-abide in-what he-had-decided they-urged and also
συζυγίαν ἀσπάσασθαι καὶ κρεωφαγίαν μὴ ὥς τι
union to-embrace and meat-eating not as something
ἀπαίσιον ἀποφυγεῖν. Ἐδεδίεισαν γάρ, μὴ τρυφαῖς καὶ
ill-omened to-shun they-feared for lest to-luxuries and
κώμοις ἐπικλινής, ὡς εἰκός, γεγονὼς εἰς ἀλλοκότους
revels inclined as likely having-become into strange
ὑπολισθήσειεν ἡδονάς, ἃς εἴωθεν αὐτοσχεδιάζειν τὸ
he-should-slip pleasures which is-wont to-improvise the
αὐτοδέσποτον καὶ αὐτόνομον, ἐπειλημμένον δυνάμεως. ταῖς
self-ruling and independent having-grasped power to-the
τῶν μοναστῶν οὖν καταπειθὴς γεγονὼς εἰσηγήσεσι, τὸν
of-the monks then obedient having-become suggestions the
ἡλικιώτην μὲν καὶ συνειθισμένον βίον ἀπώσατο· τὴν
of-his-age indeed and accustomed life he-thrust-away the

δὲ τοῦ Ῥωμανοῦ ὁμευνέτιν, ἀριπρεπῆ ταῖς ὥραις καὶ
but — of-Romanos wife most-distinguished in-the bloom and
αὐτόχρημα τυγχάνουσαν Λάκαιναν, πρὸς γάμον ἠγάγετο,
in-very-truth being Laconian to marriage he-led
καὶ πρὸς τὸ τῆς κρεωδαισίας ἀπὸ τῆς κεκολασμένης
and to the of-the meat-feasting from the chastened
διαίτης μετεσκεύαστο τρυφηλότερον. ὑπεψιθυρίζετο δέ, μὴ
diet was-changed more-luxuriously it-was-whispered and not
ἔννομον συνδραμεῖν, παράλογον δέ πως τὸ συνοικέσιον,
lawful to-come-together irregular and somehow the marriage
ὡς ἀνάδοχον ἐκ τοῦ θείου λουτροῦ γεγονότα τὸν
as godfather from the divine bath having-become —
Νικηφόρον τῶν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Ῥωμανοῦ καὶ τῆς
Nikephoros of-the of-the emperor Romanos and —
Θεοφανοῦς παίδων. τῆς οὖν φήμης ἀπτέρῳ τάχει εἰς
of-Theophano children the then report with-wingless speed into
τὰς ἀκοὰς τοῦ ἱεραρχοῦντος Πολυεύκτου ἐνηχηθείσης,
the ears of-the high-priest Polyeuktos having-resounded
ἀπείργειν παντὶ σθένει τῶν ἱερῶν περιβόλων ἐπειρᾶτο
to-bar with-all strength from-the sacred precincts tried
τὸν ἄνακτα· ζήλου γὰρ θείου περίπλεως ὢν ὁ ἀνήρ, καὶ
the lord of-zeal for divine full being the man and
τὴν παντοδαπὴν γνῶσιν καὶ ἀρετὴν ἀπρόσιτος, διελέγχειν
the every-kind knowledge and virtue unapproachable to-rebuke
καὶ βασιλεῖς οὐκ ᾐσχύνετο. ὁ δὲ βασιλεύς, τὰ μὲν
even emperors not was-ashamed the and emperor partly indeed
τὸν ἀρχιερέα παραιτούμενος, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἀπολογούμενος,
the high-priest entreating partly and also defending-himself
μὴ ἀνάδοχον αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ βαπτίσματος τῶν παίδων
not godfather him from the baptism of-the children
εἶναι τῆς Αὐγούστης Θεοφανοῦς, ἀλλὰ Βάρδαν, τὸν
to-be of-the Augusta Theophano but Bardas the

αὐτοῦ γενέτην, οὕτω κατεδυσώπησε τὸν ἀρχιερέα καὶ
his father so put-to-shame the high-priest and
δεινῶς κατεκήλησεν, ὡς καθιλαρευσάμενος οἰκονομῆσαι
terribly charmed that having-become-gracious to-arrange
τὴν τῆς Αὐγούστης Θεοφανοῦς μετὰ τούτου συνοίκησιν.
the of-the Augusta Theophano with him cohabitation
ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ ῥοῦν ἐχώρησε τούτῳ τὰ πράγματα,
when and with stream went for-him the affairs
κόσμον βασιλικὸν συμφορήσας ἀμύθητον, τεμένη τε
adornment imperial having-collected untold estates both
γῆς εὐδαίμονος πολύπλεθρα, χυμῶν ἰδέαις καὶ καρπῶν
of-land fertile of-many-plethra in-kinds of-juices and of-fruits
πλήθει παντοδαπῶν περιβρίθοντα ἀφορίσας, Θεοφανοῖ
in-multitude of-every-kind laden having-set-apart to-Theophano
τῇ ὁμευνέτιδι καὶ βασιλίδι χαρίζεται. αὐτὸς δὲ παρὰ
the wife and empress he-bestows he-himself and at
τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν διαχειμάζων, ἀγῶσιν ἱππικοῖς καὶ
— *Constantinople wintering with-contests equestrian and*
παντοδαποῖς θεωρίοις, φιλοτησίαις τε τοῖς αὐτοκράτορσιν
of-every-kind spectacles with-banquets and the for-emperors
εἰθισμέναις, τοὺς ἐν τέλει φιλοφρονούμενος οὐκ ἀνίη·
customary those in office treating-kindly not ceased
ὅσον τε θεραπευτικὸν καὶ οἰκίδιον τούτῳ παρείπετο,
as-much-as both of-servants and household him accompanied
ἐξήσκει τὰ πολεμικὰ ταῖς καθ' ἡμέραν μελέταις ὡς
he-trained-in the warlike(-things) by-the per day practices as
μάλιστα, τόξον τε ἀνεπισφαλῶς ἐκτείνειν, καὶ τὸν ὀϊστὸν
most bow both securely to-stretch and the arrow
τῷ μαζῷ ἑρύειν, εὐστόχως τε βάλλειν κατὰ σκοπόν, καὶ
to-the breast to-draw accurately both to-shoot at a-mark and
δόρατα κραδαίνειν καὶ περιελίσσειν εὐπετῶς τῇδε κἀκεῖσε,
spears to-brandish and to-whirl easily here and-there

ξίφη τε εὐθυβόλως κατὰ τὸν ἀέρα περιστρέφειν, καὶ
swords both straight-aiming in the air to-whirl and
ἵππων κούφως ὑπεράλλεσθαι· ὡς ἐν καιρῷ τῶν ἀγώνων
horses lightly to-leap-onto so-that in time of-the contests
μὴ φαίνοιτο τῶν ἐναντίων μειονεκτοῦν· καὶ μάλιστα
not it-might-appear than-the opponents falling-short and most
προκινδυνεύειν ὀφεῖλον καὶ παρατάττεσθαι κατὰ φάλαγγα.
to-be-foremost-in-danger being-bound and to-be-arrayed in phalanx
10 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν τοῦ χειμῶνος κατήφειαν ἐαριναὶ τροπαὶ πρὸς
when and the of-the winter gloom vernal turnings to
γαληνιῶσαν μετεσκεύαζον ἱλαρότητα, ἐκστρατείαν κατὰ τῶν
calm changed cheerfulness campaign against the
Ἀγαρηνῶν παραγγείλας, τοῦ Βυζαντίου ἀπαίρει· καὶ τῇ
Hagarenes having-announced — from-Byzantium he-sets-out and in-the
Καππαδοκῶν ἐναυλιζόμενος χώρᾳ καὶ στρατιὰν συνειλοχὼς
of-Cappadocians encamping land and army having-gathered
ἀξιόμαχον, ἐπὶ τὴν τῶν Ταρσέων ἤλαυνεν, ἀνδρῶν ἀρετῇ
fit-for-battle to the of-the Tarsians drove in-men's valor
καὶ πλήθει καὶ μελέτῃ τῶν τακτικῶν τραχηλιῶσαν τότε καὶ
and multitude and practice of-the tactics swaggering then and
νεανιευομένην ὑπέραυχα, καὶ πλείστας ἀναφανδὸν ἐκδρομὰς
acting-youthfully boastfully and very-many openly sallies
ἀνελπίστους εἰσπράττουσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταύτῃ προσέσχε,
unexpected exacting when and to-it he-put-in
καρτερὸν πηξάμενος χάρακα καὶ κυκλόθεν διειληφώς,
strong having-fixed a-palisade and all-around having-encircled
ἐφρούρει παρακαθήμενος. οἱ δὲ ἔνδον Ἀγαρηνοί, δαψιλείᾳ
he-guarded sitting-by those and within Hagarenes in-abundance
τέως τῶν ἀναγκαίων ὄντες ὑπερκορεῖς, καὶ τῇ τοῦ
meanwhile of-the necessities being overfull and in-the of-the
πολίσματος τεθαρρηκότες ἐρυμνότητι (ἐς ὕψος γὰρ ἀμήχανον
town confident strength to height for impossible

ἠωρεῖτο τῶν περιβόλων τὸ δόμημα, διπλῇ περιελισσόντων
was-raised of-the circuit-walls the structure double winding-round
αὐτό· καὶ ταφρείᾳ κυκλόθεν διείληπτο, ἐς βάθος ὅτι
it and by-a-ditch all-around it-was-encircled to depth as
πλεῖστον καθικνουμένῃ, λίθων λευκῶν κατεσκευασμένῃ
most reaching of-stones white built
ξεστῶν, καὶ ἐς προμαχεῶνας συμπεραινομένῃ. εἶχε μὲν
polished and into battlements ending it-had indeed
καὶ τὸν Κύδνον τὸ ἔρυμα, κατὰ μέσον αὐτὸ διατέμνοντα,
also the Kydnos the stronghold through middle it cutting
ὃς ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν πηγῶν πολυχεύμων τις, ψυχρός τε
which from very the springs abundant a-certain cold both
καὶ διειδὴς περινάων πρόεισιν, ἀσφάλειαν οὐ μικρὰν τῇ
and transparent flowing-around goes-forth safety not small —
Ταρσῷ παρεχόμενος, καὶ γεφύραις τρισὶν ἔνδον τοῦ ἄστεος
to-Tarsus providing and with-bridges three within the town
διαζωννύμενος· ὅτε δὲ πόλεμος αὐτοῖς ἐπιβρίθει, κατὰ τῆς
being-spanned when and war on-them presses into the
τάφρου αὐτὸν ἀφιᾶσι καὶ ἐν ὥρᾳ μιᾷ πλημμυροῦσαν ταύτην
moat it they-let-go and in hour one flooding it
ἐργάζεται)· τούτοις τεθαῤῥηκότες οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτώθαζόν
it-makes in-these trusting the barbarians jeered
τε τὸν βασιλέα καὶ ὕβρεσιν αὐτὸν ἀδεῶς ἔβαλλον,
both the emperor and with-insults him fearlessly pelted
ἐκδρομάς τε καὶ ἐπεξελάσεις ποιούμενοι πλείστους τῶν
sallies both and charges making very-many of-the
Ῥωμαίων ἀπεκτίννυον. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ Νικηφόρος ἐφ᾽
Romans they-killed the and emperor Nikephoros for
ἱκανὸν ταύτῃ χρόνον προσδιατρίψας, ἐπείπερ ἀνηνύτοις
sufficient there time having-lingered since impossible(-things)
ἐπιχειρῶν ᾔσθετο, ἐκεῖθεν μεταναστάς τε καὶ παρεγκλίνας,
attempting he-perceived from-there having-moved both and having-turned-aside

τοῖς ἔγγιον αὐτῇ κατῳκισμένοις προσβάλλει φρουρίοις,
to-the nearer it settled attacks forts
καὶ Ἄδαναν μὲν καὶ τὴν Ἀνάβαρζαν, καὶ ἄλλα ὑπὲρ
and Adana indeed and — Anabarza and others over
τὰ εἴκοσι φρούρια αἱρεῖ αὐτοβοεί. κἄπειτα Μοψουεστίᾳ
the twenty forts takes at-the-first-shout and-then to-Mopsuestia
προσβαλών τε καὶ κυκλωσάμενος, ἐκθύμως ἐπολιόρκει,
having-attacked both and having-surrounded ardently besieged
ταῖς ἀφετηρίοις μηχαναῖς ἑκασταχοῦ ἀκροβολιζόμενος. οἱ
with-the launching engines on-every-side skirmishing those
δὲ ἔνδον καὶ αὐτοὶ γενναίως ἀντικαθίσταντο, πυρφόρα
and within also themselves nobly resisted fire-bearing
τε βέλη καὶ βάρη λίθων κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων βάλλοντες,
both missiles and weights of-stones against the Romans hurling
καὶ παντὶ σθένει ἐκ τῶν πύργων αὐτοὺς ἀμυνόμενοι.
and with-all strength from the towers them warding-off
11 Ὁ δὲ βασιλεύς, δραστήριός τε ὢν καὶ δεινὸς ἐν ἀμηχάνοις
the and emperor energetic both being and clever in impossible(-things)
πορίσασθαι μηχανήν, περιελθὼν καὶ καταστοχασάμενος
to-provide a-contrivance having-gone-around and having-guessed
τὸν χῶρον, ᾗπερ ἦν εὐεπιχείρητον, τῶν πύργων
the place where it-was easy-to-attack of-the towers
παραγαγὼν ἄνδρας ἀωρὶ τῶν νυκτῶν ἀνορύττειν ἠρέμα
having-brought-up men untimely of-the nights to-dig-up quietly
ἐνεκελεύσατο, ἀπὸ τῶν ὄχθων ἐναρξαμένους τοῦ ἐκεῖσε
he-ordered from the banks having-begun of-the there
παραῤῥέοντος Πυράμου τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ὡς μὴ αἴσθοιντο οἱ
flowing-past Pyramos the river so-that not should-perceive the
βάρβαροι, καὶ εἰς κενὸν ἀποβῇ τὸ τοιοῦτον ἐπιχείρημα.
barbarians and into empty should-turn-out the such enterprise
οἱ δὲ ἀνώρυττόν τε καὶ τὸν χοῦν τῷ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
they and dug both and the earth in-the of-the river

ἐκφοροῦντες παρέπεμπον ῥεύματι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ ἔργον
carrying-out sent-off stream when and the work
ἐξήνυστο, καὶ δύο τῶν πύργων μεταξὺ τοῦ συνδεδομένου
had-been-finished and two of-the towers between the joined
τούτοις τειχίσματος εἰς τὸ ἀκριβὲς διάκενοι γεγόνασι,
to-them fortification to the exact hollow became
καὶ ἐκκρεμεῖς ὄντες ξύλοις ᾐώρηντο, τῷ μὴ τὴν σφῶν
and overhanging being with-timbers were-held-up in-the not the their
διαλυθῆναι οἰκοδομήν· ἄρτι τῆς ἡλιακῆς ἀκτῖνος τὴν
to-be-dissolved structure just the solar ray the
περίγειον ὑπαυγαζούσης, κατὰ τὸ εἰθισμένον οἱ Ἀγαρηνοὶ
earth shining-upon according-to the custom the Hagarenes
λευχείμονες τῶν πύργων προκύψαντες, καὶ τὰ τόξα
white-robed from-the towers having-leaned-out and the bows
ἐντεινάμενοι, καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς παρασκευάσαντες μηχανάς,
having-stretched and the other having-prepared engines
ὕβρεσιν ἐδυσφήμουν τὸν ἄνακτα. ὁ δὲ τοῖς ὑπογείοις
with-insults reviled the lord he and to-the underground
ἐρείσμασι τῶν πύργων ἐνιέναι πῦρ διακελευσάμενος, αὐτὸς
props of-the towers to-put-in fire having-ordered himself
ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς καθωπλισμένος, ἐπῄει διατάττων τὰς
to the exact fully-armed advanced arranging the
φάλαγγας. ῥᾳδίως δὲ τῶν στηριγμάτων κατακαέντων,
phalanxes easily and the supports having-been-burned-down
ὅσον ἐκκρεμὲς ἦν τοῦ τείχους καὶ ὑπόκενον, κατασεισθὲν
as-much-as overhanging was of-the wall and hollowed-beneath having-been-shaken
εἰς γῆν κατεφέρετο, συγκατασπᾶσαν καὶ τοὺς ἐπιβεβηκότας
to earth was-borne-down dragging-down-with-it also those having-mounted
αὐτῷ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, ὧν οἱ πλείους συντριβέντες
it of-the Hagarenes of-whom the most crushed
αὐθωρὸν διαπεφωνήκασιν· οἱ δέ, ζωγρίαι πρὸς τῶν
on-the-spot died those and alive by the

Ῥωμαίων ληφθέντες, τὴν κατασχοῦσαν σφᾶς ἀπωδύροντο
Romans taken the having-seized them bewailed
τύχην. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ, ἐπεὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἐριπωθὲν
fortune the and emperor when the wall thrown-down
πάροδον τοῖς βουλομένοις παρείχετο, πανσυδὶ τῇ
passage to-those wishing provided in-full-force —
Μοψουεστίᾳ προσεπιβὰς ταύτην ἠνδραποδίσατο, καὶ τοὺς
Mopsuestia having-entered it enslaved and the
παραλειφθέντας βαρβάρους δουλείᾳ παρέπεμψεν. αὐτὸς δὲ
left barbarians to-slavery sent he-himself and
τὰ κάλλιστα τῆς λείας ὑπεξελών, καὶ τῷ βασιλικῷ ταμείῳ
the finest of-the booty having-taken-out and to-the imperial treasury
προσαναθείς, τὸν στρατὸν ἐκ τῆς ἁρπαγῆς τοῦ ἄστεος
having-dedicated the army from the plunder of-the town
ἀνακαλεσάμενος, ἐπεὶ ὁ ἥλιος τὸν τοξότην παρελαύνων
having-recalled when the sun the Sagittarius driving-past
μετέβαινε πρὸς τὸν αἰγοκέρωτα, καὶ τὸ τοῦ χειμῶνος
was-passing to the Capricorn and the of-the winter
δεινὸν ἐπετείνετο, ἐκεῖθεν διαναστὰς ἐπὶ τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν
dread was-intensified from-there having-risen to the Roman
ἐπικράτειαν ἀνήλαυνε. καὶ τῆς Καππαδοκῶν ἐπιβὰς
dominion drove-up and the of-Cappadocians having-reached
τὴν πληθύν, ὡς εἰκός, φιλοφρονησάμενος ἐκέλευσεν ἐπὶ
the host as likely having-treated-kindly ordered to
τὰ οἴκοι παλινδρομεῖν, μεμνῆσθαί τε αὖθις τῆς πρὸς
the at-home to-run-back to-remember both again of-the to
αὐτὸν ἐπανόδου τοῦ ἦρος προκύπτοντος, τὰς πανοπλίας
him return of-the spring peeping-forth the full-armors
ἐπισκευασαμένους, παραθηξαμένους τε τὰ ξίφη, καὶ τῶν
having-prepared having-whetted both the swords and of-the
ἵππων ἐπιμελησαμένους ὡς μάλιστα. οὕτως μὲν ἡ πληθὺς
horses having-taken-care as most so indeed the host

πρὸς οἶκον ἐχώρει. αὐτὸς δὲ ἅμα τοῖς ὑπολειφθεῖσιν
to home went he-himself and together-with the left-behind
αὐτοῦ τε διεχείμαζε, καὶ τὰ ἐς τὸν πόλεμον ἐξηρτύετο.
there both wintered and the for the war prepared

BOOK IV

IX · THE FALL OF TARSUS

Stung by his repulse, Nikephoros returns in spring against Tarsus. On the march he has a captain mutilated for sparing a soldier who threw away his shield. He crops the plain bare, routs the Tarsians who come out against him, and starves the city into surrender: its people may go into inner Syria with their bodies and clothing only, and the crosses they had taken from Roman armies are dedicated in a famous church. Mysian envoys demanding the customary tribute are struck on the cheek and sent back with a threat, and Nikephoros takes the Mysian border forts, but will not lead his army into their marshy, wooded country.

Τὸν μὲν δὴ τρόπον, ὃν εἴρηταί μοι, πρὸς τοῦ 1
the indeed truly way which has-been-said by-me by the
αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου ἥ τε Μόψου ἥλω ἑστία, καὶ
emperor Nikephoros the both of-Mopsos was-taken hearth and
τὰ πρόσοικα φρούρια ἐξ ἐφόδου ἠνδραποδίσθη. αὐτὸς
the neighboring forts from attack were-enslaved he-himself
δὲ κατὰ τὴν Καππαδοκῶν διαχειμάζων, ἤσχαλλέ τε
and in the(-land) of-Cappadocians wintering was-vexed both
καὶ ἤλυεν ἀνιώμενος, τῷ μὴ καὶ τὴν Ταρσὸν αἱρήσειν
and was-distraught grieving in-the not also — Tarsus going-to-take
αὐτοβοεί, ἀλλὰ ταύτης ἀποκρουσθῆναι ὡσπερεὶ βέλος
at-the-first-shout but from-it to-have-been-repulsed like missile
κωφὸν ἰσχυροτέρῳ προσπεσόν, μηδέν τι γενναῖον ἢ
blunt on-a-stronger having-fallen nothing at-all noble or

νεανικὸν ἐργασάμενος. καὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα προπηλακισμὸν καὶ
youthful having-done and the affair contumely and
ὕβριν ἄντικρυς ἐλογίζετο, καὶ ὄνειδον ἀνεξάλειπτον, εἰ
insult outright he-reckoned and reproach indelible if
Νικηφόρος ὢν ὁ Φωκᾶς, καὶ πρώην ἐν στρατηγοῖς
Nikephoros being — Phokas and formerly among generals
τελῶν, καὶ αὖθις ἀναῤῥηθεὶς Δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν,
being and again proclaimed Domestic of-the scholae
τοτὲ μὲν μυριάδας πόλεις κατέσκαψε καὶ δηώσας
at-one-time indeed myriads cities he-razed and having-ravaged
ᾐθάλωσε, τοτὲ δὲ εὐδαίμονας χώρας ἠνδραποδίσατο,
burned-to-ashes at-another-time and prosperous lands enslaved
καὶ μάχιμα ἔθνη τρεψάμενος ἐκ παρατάξεως ὑπήγετο,
and warlike nations having-routed from array subdued
μηδὲ ἀντοφθαλμεῖν ἐξισχύσαντα πρὸς τὴν τούτου ἀλκὴν
not-even to-look-in-the-face having-been-able against the his strength
καὶ τὴν ἀκαταγώνιστον ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὁρμήν· τὰ νῦν δέ,
and the invincible in the arms rush the now but
τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡγεμονίαν ἀνδρείᾳ ἀγχινοίᾳ παρειληφώς,
the of-the Romans rule by-bravery by-shrewdness having-taken-over
καὶ στρατὸν εἰς τετταράκοντα μυριάδας ἀριθμούμενον
and army to forty myriads numbering
ἐπαγόμενος, ἀπεκρούσθη τὴν ἄλλως σκιαμαχήσας.
bringing he-was-repulsed — in-vain having-shadow-fought
ἀπεκρούσθη δὲ οὐχὶ Βαβυλῶνος, ἣν ἡ Σεμίραμις ἑπτὰ
he-was-repulsed and not from-Babylon which — Semiramis with-seven
περιβόλοις ὠχύρωσεν· ἢ τῆς πρεσβυτέρας Ῥώμης, τὸ τῶν
circuit-walls fortified or of-the elder Rome the of-the
Ῥωμαίων σθένος ἥνπερ ἐπολίσατο· ἢ τῶν τῆς Ἰουδαίας
Romans might which-indeed founded or of-the — of-Judea
τειχῶν, ὧν τὸ ναστὸν ὕψος, ὡσὶν ἀκουόμενον, μῦθος
walls of-which the solid height by-ears heard a-myth

τάχα, τῆς ἀληθείας γεγυμνωμένος, τοῖς οὐχ ἑωρακόσι
perhaps of-the truth stripped to-those not having-seen
δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ Ταρσοῦ, εὐπεριγράπτου πόλεως, ἐφ' ἱππηλάτου
seems but from-Tarsus easily-circumscribed city on horse-riding
πεδίου συνῳκισμένης, τῶν ἐπηλύδων τε καὶ ἰθαγενῶν.
plain built-together of-the newcomers both and natives
ταῦτα δὴ ἀνελίττων καὶ γνωματεύων δυσφορῶν διετέλει,
these-things indeed revolving and judging being-indignant he-continued
καὶ ἀπαρηγόρητα δυσθυμῶν, εἰ Ταρσεῖς, τῶν προσοίκων
and inconsolably despondent if Tarsians the neighbors
αὐτοῖς ἔργον πολέμου γεγενημένων, καὶ δουλείαν ἐλευθερίας
to-them work of-war having-become and slavery for-freedom
ἀλλαξαμένων, ὁπόσοι τὸ τῆς μαχαίρας στόμα διέδρασαν,
having-exchanged as-many-as the of-the sword mouth escaped
αὐτοὶ μόνοι τῶν ἄλλων ἀπέλθοιεν, πλατύ που τῆς ἐκείνου
they alone of-the others should-come-away broadly somehow at-the his
ἀνδρείας ἐπικαγχάζοντες, καὶ τῆς πολεμικῆς ἐμπειρίας
bravery laughing and the military experience
καταμωμώμενοι. τῷ τοι καὶ τὰ ἐς τὰς μάχας τοὺς περὶ
finding-fault therefore indeed also the for the battles those about
αὑτὸν διεγύμναζεν ἀκριβῶς, καὶ τὴν τοῦ ἔτους ὥραν ἥστο
himself he-trained exactly and the of-the year season sat
προσεκδεχόμενος. ἦρος δὲ εὐθὺς διαλάμποντος, καὶ τῆς
awaiting of-spring and at-once shining-forth and the
χειμερινῆς δριμύτητος εἰς θερινὴν θάλψιν μετακιρναμένης
wintry sharpness into summer warmth being-tempered
ἐπιεικῶς, κατὰ τὸ προστεταγμένον αἱ δυνάμεις ἐπὶ τὸν
fairly according-to the commanded the forces to the
αὐτοκράτορα συνηγείροντο. ὁ δὲ ἀραρότως καθοπλίσας τὴν
emperor gathered he and firmly having-armed the

στρατιάν, συναγομένην ὑπὲρ μυριάδας τὰς τετταράκοντα,
army being-assembled over myriads the forty
τὸ σημεῖον διάρας ἐπῄει τὴν ἐπὶ τῆς Ταρσοῦ.
the standard having-raised advanced the to — Tarsus
2 Ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὴν πορείαν διήνυε, τῶν ψιλῶν τις
in which and the march he-was-accomplishing of-the light-armed a-certain
στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς τὴν δυσχωρίαν ὀκλάσας (ἔτυχε γὰρ
soldiers at the rough-ground having-sunk-down it-happened for
δι᾽ αὐλῶνος τὴν στρατιὰν βαθυτάτου, εἰς ἀπορρῶγας
through a-valley the army deepest into crags
καὶ σήραγγας κατακλειομένου, διαπορεύεσθαι), τὸν ὃν
and caves being-shut-in to-go-through the which
ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων ἔφερε θυρεόν, κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἀπέῤῥιψεν
on the shoulders he-carried shield along the road threw-away
ἀποφορτισάμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ παροδεύων ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῦτον
having-unburdened-himself when and passing-by the emperor him
τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς καθεώρακε, τῶν ἑπομένων τινὶ
with-the eyes saw of-those following to-someone
διᾶραι τὸν θυρεὸν ἐγκελεύεται· ἄρτι δὲ φθάσας πρὸς
to-lift the shield he-orders just and having-arrived at
τὴν καταγωγήν, ὑπὸ τίνα τῶν λοχαγῶν διηρευνᾶτο
the halting-place under which of-the captains he-searched
ταττόμενος ἂν εἴη ὁ διαμάχης καὶ κινδύνων χωρὶς
being-ranked — might-be he-who battle and dangers without
ἀποφανθεὶς ῥίψασπις καὶ τὸ ἴδιον ὅπλον ἀποβαλών.
having-shown-himself shield-thrower and the own weapon having-cast-away
ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐ διέλαθεν ὁ τοῦτο δεδρακώς, ἀλλὰ τὴν
when and not escaped-notice he-who this having-done but the
ταχίστην συνελαμβάνετο, βλοσυρόν τι τούτῳ καὶ λοξὸν
quickest was-caught grim something on-him and askance
ἀντωπήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς καί, "λέγε μοι," ἔφη, "ἀγεννέστατε
having-looked the emperor and tell me he-said most-ignoble-one

σύ, εἴ γε τις ἐπῆλθεν ἐξ ἀπόπτου πολέμου καταδρομή,
you if at-least any came from out-of-sight of-war raid
τίνι ἂν ἔρκει πρὸς ἀποτροπὴν ἐχρήσω τῶν δυσμενῶν,
what — fence for averting would-you-have-used of-the enemies
τὸν θυρεὸν ἀποβαλὼν παρὰ τὴν ἀταρπιτόν;" ὁ δέ,
the shield having-cast-away by the path he and
πεπηγὼς ὑπὸ τοῦ δέους, διέμενεν ἀχανής. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ
fixed by the fear remained speechless the and emperor
αἰκίαις καταξᾶναι τὸν αὐτοφονευτὴν ἑαυτοῦ τῷ λοχαγῷ
with-tortures to-flay the self-murderer of-himself to-the captain
ἐγκελεύεται, ἐκτεμόντι τε καὶ τὴν ῥῖνα θεατρίσαι κατὰ τὸ
orders having-cut-off and also the nose to-make-a-show in the
στρατόπεδον. Ἐκεῖνος δέ, εἴτε οἴκτῳ ληφθεὶς πρὸς τὸν
camp he but whether by-pity seized toward the
ἄνθρωπον, εἴτε καὶ δώρων ἐπιβολῇ χαυνωθείς, ἀσινῆ
man or also of-gifts by-the-imposition softened unharmed
διαφῆκε τὸν ἄνδρα. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ διϊόντα τοῦτον
let-go the man on-the and next-day going-about him
ὁ βασιλεὺς ἑωρακώς, τὸν λοχαγὸν εἰσκαλεῖ καί, "ὦ,"
the emperor having-seen the captain calls-in and O
φησίν, "ἀτέραμνε καὶ θρασυκάρδιε σύ, πῶς ἔτλης μὴ
he-says unbending and bold-hearted you how dared not
παραγαγεῖν εἰς ἔργον τὸ κελευσθέν; ἦ δοκεῖς πλεῖον
to-bring into deed the ordered truly do-you-think more
ἐμοῦ τουτουΐ κήδεσθαί σοι τοῦ στρατοῦ; εἰς παιδείαν ἐγὼ
than-me this-here to-care to-you of-the army for teaching I
τῶν λοιπῶν τὴν τοιαύτην διωρισάμην ἐκτῖσαι ποινὴν τὸν
of-the rest the such ordained to-pay penalty the(-one)
τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ὅπλον ἀποῤῥιψάμενον· ὡς μήτινες τὸ τούτου
the his-own weapon having-thrown-away so-that not-some the his
ἀμελὲς καὶ νωθρὸν μιμησάμενοι ταὐτὸ τοῦτο διαπράξοιντο,
carelessness and sluggishness having-imitated the-same this should-do

κἂν τῷ καιρῷ τῶν ἀγώνων γεγυμνωμένοι τῶν ὅπλων
and in-the time of-the contests stripped of-the arms
καταλαμβάνοιντο, καὶ οὐκ ἂν φθάνοιεν πρὸς τῶν
should-be-caught and not — they-would-be-slow by the
ἐναντίων ἀναιρούμενοι." σφοδρῶς οὖν αἰκίσας τὸν λοχαγὸν
opponents being-killed violently then having-tortured the captain
καὶ τῆς ῥινὸς ἀφελόμενος, δέος ἐνῆκε παντὶ τῷ στρατῷ,
and of-the nose having-deprived fear he-sent-into all the army
μηκέτι ἀμελῶς διακεῖσθαι περὶ τὸν οἰκεῖον ὁπλισμόν.
no-longer carelessly to-be-disposed about the own armor

3 Ἄρτι δὲ κατὰ τὴν περίχωρον γενόμενος τῆς Ταρσοῦ,
just and in the surrounding(-land) having-been — of-Tarsus
ἐνταῦθα στρατοπεδεύεται καὶ χάρακα κυκλόθεν πηξάμενος,
there he-encamps and a-palisade all-around having-fixed
καρτερῶς τά τε λήϊα καὶ τοὺς λειμῶνας, τοῖς ἄνθεσι καὶ
strongly the both crops and the meadows with-the flowers and
παντοίων δένδρων ἰδέαις κομῶντας, δηοῦν καὶ ἀποκείρειν
of-all-kinds of-trees with-kinds luxuriant to-ravage and to-crop
προσέταττεν, ὡς ἐξ ἀπόπτου ἡ διαμάχη τούτῳ εἴη,
he-ordered so-that from a-distance the fighting for-him might-be
καὶ μή τινα τοῖς βαρβάροις ἐξῇ ἐν τοῖς ἀμφιλαφέσι
and not any to-the barbarians might-be-possible in the thickly-wooded
χωρίοις λόχον ἐγκαθιστάνειν, καὶ τῇ Ῥωμαϊκῇ στρατιᾷ
places ambush to-set and on-the Roman army
ἐκ τοῦ ἀφανοῦς ἐπιτίθεσθαι. ἦν οὖν τὴν χώραν
from the unseen to-attack it-was-possible then the land
ἰδεῖν τὸν οἰκεῖον ὡραϊσμὸν ἀποβάλλουσαν· εὐδαίμων γὰρ
to-see the own beauty casting-off prosperous for
ἅπασα καὶ εὔβοτος καὶ φυτῶν ἰδέαις κατάκομος, ὅσα
all and well-pastured and of-plants with-kinds thickly-leaved as-much-as
οἶδε φέρειν ὀπώρας παντοίας χυμούς. Ταρσεῖς δὲ ταῖς
it-knows to-bear autumn-fruits of-all-kinds juices Tarsians and by-the

κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἤδη προβάσαις νίκαις ἐπαιρόμενοι, θρασεῖς
against Romans already past victories elated bold
τέως καὶ ἀγέρωχοί τινες ἐξητάζοντο, οὐκ ἠνείχοντό τε
meanwhile and haughty certain were-proved not they-endured and
κατέχειν ἐν ἑαυτοῖς τὸν θυμόν, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπεξιόντες τοῦ ἄστεος
to-hold in themselves the spirit but going-out from-the town
ἐς καρτερὸν ἐξ ἀντιπάλου παρεκροτοῦντο συνασπισμόν,
into strong from opposing were-roused close-order
τολμητίαι τινὲς καὶ θαῤῥαλεώτεροι τοῦ μετρίου πρὸ τῆς
daring certain and more-confident than-the moderate before the
τοῦ πολέμου πείρας ἀναδεικνύμενοι. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ
of-the war trial showing-themselves the and emperor also
αὐτὸς τὸν ἄλκιμον καὶ ῥωμαλέον τῆς στρατιᾶς ὑπεξῆγε
himself the valiant and strong of-the army led-out
τοῦ χάρακος, ἐν μεταιχμίῳ τε καθίστη τὰς φάλαγγας,
from-the palisade in (the)-no-man's-land and he-set the phalanxes
κατὰ μέτωπον μὲν τοὺς πανσιδήρους ἱππότας ἱστῶν,
at front indeed the all-iron horsemen setting
ἐξόπισθεν δὲ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας βάλλειν τοὺς
from-behind and bowmen and slingers to-shoot the
ἐναντίους προστεταχώς. εἰς τὸ δεξιὸν δὲ κέρας αὐτὸς
opponents having-ordered on the right and wing he-himself
εἱστήκει, μυρίανδρον ἱππέων ἴλην ἐπιφερόμενος κατὰ
stood ten-thousand-strong of-horsemen squadron bringing on
δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον Ἰωάννης, ᾧ τὸ ἐπώνυμον Τζιμισκῆς,
and the left John to-whom the surname Tzimiskes
τῇ τοῦ Δουκὸς τιμῇ σεμνυνόμενος, διηγωνίζετο, ἀνὴρ
with-the of-the Doux honor being-honored fought a-man
σφαδάζων τε τῷ θυμῷ, καὶ τολμητίας ἐκτόπως καὶ
quivering both in-the spirit and daring extraordinarily and
θερμουργὸς εἰ καί τις ἄλλος ἀποδεικνύμενος, εἰ καὶ
hot-headed if even anyone else showing-himself if even

τὸ σῶμα βραχύς τις ὑπὲρ τὸ μέτριον ἦν, κατὰ
the body short a-certain beyond the moderate he-was like
τὸν μυθολογούμενον Τυδέα τὸν μαχητήν· ἀλλά τις
the storied Tydeus the fighter but a-certain
ἡρωϊκὴ ἐνῆν ἀλκὴ καὶ ὁρμὴ ἐν τῷ μικροπρεπεῖ ἐκείνου
heroic was-in strength and rush in the paltry his
σώματι. τοῦ δὲ αὐτοκράτορος ἐγκελευσαμένου τὸ ἐνυάλιον
body the and emperor having-ordered the war-cry
ἐπαυλεῖν, ἦν ἰδεῖν ἀμηχάνῳ κόσμῳ τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς
to-sound it-was to-see in-extraordinary order the Roman
κινουμένας φάλαγγας, καὶ τὸ πεδίον ἅπαν τῇ αὐγῇ
moving phalanxes and the plain all with-the gleam
τῶν ὅπλων καταστραπτόμενον. οὐκ ἤνεγκαν τὴν τοσαύτην
of-the arms flashing not endured the such
ῥοπὴν οἱ Ταρσεῖς· τοῖς δὲ ὠθισμοῖς τῶν ἀκόντων καὶ
force the Tarsians by-the but thrustings of-the spears and
τοῖς ἀκροβολισμοῖς τῶν βαλλόντων ἐξόπισθεν βιαζόμενοι,
by-the skirmishings of-those shooting from-behind being-forced
ἐξαυτῆς ἔκλιναν εἰς φυγήν, καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ συνεκλείοντο
forthwith turned to flight and to the town were-shut-in
ἀκλεῶς, πλείστους τῶν οἰκείων παρὰ ταύτην ἀποβάλλοντες
ingloriously very-many of-the own-people in this losing
τὴν προσβολήν. δεινὴ δέ τις ὑπεισῄει τούτοις δειλία,
the attack dire and a-certain crept-in to-them cowardice
τηλικαύτην μετ' ἐμπειρίας ἀθρήσασι χωροῦσαν πληθύν.
so-great with experience having-beheld advancing host
τὸν περίβολον οὖν διειληφότες τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ τοῦτον
the circuit-wall then having-occupied of-the town and it
ταῖς ἀφετηρίοις κατοχυρωσάμενοι μηχαναῖς, διεκαρτέρουν
with-the launching having-fortified engines held-out
ἀπρόϊτοι, τὴν ἐπήλυσιν τῶν ἐναντίων ὑποδεχόμενοι.
not-coming-forth the approach of-the opponents awaiting

Νικηφόρος δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, ἐπεὶ δυσπρόσοδον ἀτεχνῶς 4
Nikephoros and the emperor since hard-of-access utterly
ᾔδει καὶ δυσέμβολον οὖσαν τὴν πόλιν, καὶ μὴ ἐξ
he-knew and hard-to-attack being the city and not from
ἐφόδου ἁλώσιμον, ἔγνω μὴ διακινδυνεύειν πολεμησείων
attack capturable he-resolved not to-run-the-risk eager-for-war
ἀβούλευτα, ἀλλὰ τῷ λιμῷ παραδώσειν, ὅς γε τῇ
ill-advisedly but to-the famine to-hand-over which at-least by-the
χαλεπῇ κατανάγκῃ καὶ ἄκουσαν παραστήσεται. τοῦτο δὴ
harsh compulsion even unwilling will-bring-over this indeed
βουλευσάμενος ἀκριβέσι φρουραῖς τὸ ἄστυ διέζωσε. Ταρσεῖς
having-planned with-exact guards the town he-girded Tarsians
δέ, ἕως μὲν οὔπω μὴ ἐμβαθύνας ὁ λιμὸς ὁλοτελῶς αὐτοὺς
and as-long indeed not-yet — having-deepened the famine wholly them
ἐξεπίεζεν, ἀπὸ τῶν πύργων ἀκοντίζοντες ἐς τοὺς Ῥωμαίους
pressed from the towers hurling at the Romans
ἔβαλλον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τούτους οἰκτρῶς ἐπεβόσκετο, καὶ ἀπορία
they-shot when and them pitiably it-fed-on and lack
τῶν ἀναγκαίων τὰ σώματα ἐλυμαίνετο, ἦν ἰδεῖν ἀμηχανίαν
of-the necessities the bodies ruined it-was to-see helplessness
δεινήν, καὶ χαλεπὴν σκυθρωπότητα, ἥτις κατεῖχε τὴν
terrible and harsh gloom which held the
πόλιν, ἐνερόχρωτάς τε τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ σκιᾶς εἰδώλων
city corpse-colored both the men and from-shadow of-phantoms
οὐδὲν διαφέροντας. τὸ γὰρ τοῦ λιμοῦ πάθος οἴκτιστον καὶ
nothing differing the for of-the famine suffering most-pitiable and
λίαν ὀλέθριον· ἐκτῆκον γὰρ τὸν ὄγκον τοῦ σώματος καὶ
very destructive melting for the bulk of-the body and
τὸ θερμὸν ἀποσβεννύον ψυχρότητι, ὡσανεὶ ὂν ἀράχνιον
the warm extinguishing with-cold as-if being spider-web
τοῖς ὀστέοις τὸ ἔλυτρον περιτείνεσθαι διατίθησι, κατὰ
on-the bones the covering to-be-stretched-around it-disposes by

μικρὸν ἐπιέναι τὸν θάνατον ἐκκαλούμενον. ἐπεὶ οὖν οὐχ
little to-come-on the death summoning since then not
οἷοί τε ἦσαν πρός τε τὸ ἄμαχον τοῦ λιμοῦ πάθος καὶ
able — they-were against both the invincible of-the famine suffering and
πρὸς τοσαύτην στρατιὰν διαμάχεσθαι, σπένδονταί τε τῷ
against such army to-fight-it-out they-make-terms both with-the
βασιλεῖ καὶ ὑπείκουσιν, ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν βουλόμενον ἐπὶ
emperor and yield on condition the(-one) wishing to
τὰ ἐνδοτέρω Συρίας ἀκωλύτως χωρεῖν. ὁ δέ, εἴξας
the inner of-Syria unhindered to-go he and having-yielded
καὶ τούτοις σπεισάμενος, θᾶττον ἐξιέναι τῆς πόλεως
and with-them having-made-terms quickly to-go-out from-the city
ἐκελεύσατο, τὰ σφῶν σώματα καὶ τῶν ἀναγκαίων μόνον
ordered the their-own bodies and of-the necessities only
περιφέροντες ἱματισμόν. οὕτω δὴ τὴν πόλιν αἱρεῖ, καὶ τῆς
carrying clothing thus indeed the city takes and of-the
λείας τὸ μὲν τῇ στρατιᾷ διανείμας εἰς ἀναρίθμητον
booty the indeed to-the army having-distributed into countless
πλοῦτον συναγόμενον, καὶ τοὺς σταυρικοὺς τύπους
wealth being-gathered and the cross-shaped figures
ἀνειληφώς, οὓς ἐκ χρυσοῦ καὶ λίθων ἐξειργασμένους κατὰ
having-taken-up which from gold and stones wrought in
διαφόρους μάχας, τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν δύναμιν τρέποντες, οἱ
various battles the Roman force routing the
Ταρσεῖς ᾐχμαλώτισαν, καὶ τὴν πόλιν ἀποχρώσῃ στρατιᾷ
Tarsians took-as-captives and the city with-sufficient army
κατασφαλισάμενος, πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἴετο. παραλαβὼν
having-secured to the reigning(-city) went having-taken-over
δὲ ταύτην, καὶ παρὰ τοῦ δήμου δεχθεὶς μεγαλοπρεπῶς, ἐν
and it and by the people received magnificently in
τῷ περιπύστῳ τε καὶ θείῳ σηκῷ τοὺς αἰχμαλωτισθέντας
the famous both and divine precinct the captured

σταυροὺς ἀναθείς, ταῖς τῶν ἵππων ἁμίλλαις καὶ τοῖς
crosses having-dedicated with-the of-the horses races and with-the
λοιποῖς θεωρίοις ἧστο τὸν δῆμον εὐφραίνων. φιλοθεάμονες
other spectacles sat the people cheering spectacle-loving
γὰρ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων Βυζάντιοι.
for than-the other men Byzantines
Ἄρτι δὲ περὶ ταῦτα σχολάζοντι ἄγγελοι τῶν Μυσῶν, 5
just and about these-things being-occupied envoys of-the Mysians
πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀφιγμένοι, τοὺς εἰθισμένους ἀπαιτεῖν ἔλεγον
to him having-come the customary to-demand said
φόρους τὸν ἀρχηγὸν ἑαυτῶν, ἐφ᾽ ᾧ καὶ αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὸν
tributes the leader of-themselves on which also them to the
αὐτοκράτορα στεῖλαι τὰ νῦν. ὁ δὲ θυμῶν παρὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς
emperor to-send the now he and with-wrath beyond the custom
πληρωθεὶς (ἰσχυρογνώμων γάρ τις ἦν, καὶ μὴ εὐείκτως
having-been-filled strong-willed for a-certain he-was and not easily
ὀργῇ ἁλισκόμενος), καὶ ἀνοιδήσας ὑπὲρ τὸ μέτριον,
by-anger caught and having-swelled beyond the measure
γεγωνοτέρᾳ τε χρησάμενος, ἤπερ εἴθιστο, τῇ φωνῇ,
louder and having-used than was-customary the voice
“δεινὰ Ῥωμαίοις,” ἔφη, “περιέστηκε νῦν, εἰ τοῖς ὅπλοις τὸ
dire to-Romans he-said has-befallen now if with-the arms the
ἀντίξουν ἅπαν καταστρεφόμενοι, ἔθνει Σκυθικῷ, πενιχρῷ
opposing all subduing to-nation Scythian poor
τε τὴν ἄλλως καὶ μιαρῷ, δίκην ἀνδραπόδων φόρους
both — otherwise and abominable in-the-manner of-slaves tributes
ἐκτίσουσι.” Βάρδαν δὲ τὸν αὑτοῦ γενέτην ἐπιστραφεὶς
they-will-pay Bardas and the his-own father having-turned-to
(ἔτυχε γὰρ συνεδριάζων αὐτῷ, Καῖσαρ ἀναδειχθείς),
it-happened for sitting-with him Caesar proclaimed
ἤρετο διαπορούμενος, “ὅ τι βούλοιτο τοῖς Μυσοῖς ἡ τῶν
he-asked being-at-a-loss what — should-mean for-the Mysians the of-the

φόρων, ἣν τῶν Ῥωμαίων αἰτοῦσιν, εἴσπραξις; οἰκέτην
tributes which from-the Romans they-ask exaction household-slave
ἆρά με γεγεννηκὼς λέληθας; καὶ ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
is-it me having-begotten have-you-escaped-notice and the of-the Romans
σεβάσμιος βασιλεὺς ἔθνει πενεστάτῳ καὶ μιαρῷ φόρους
august emperor to-nation poorest and abominable tributes
τελῶν ὑποκείσομαι;" ῥαπίζειν οὖν κατὰ κόρρης θᾶττον
paying shall-I-be-subject to-strike then on cheek quickly
τοὺς ἀγγέλους προσέταττε, καί, "ἄπιτε," ἔφη, "καὶ τῷ
the envoys he-ordered and go-away he-said and to-the
σκυτοτρώκτῃ καὶ διφθερίᾳ ὑμῶν ἄρχοντι ἀπαγγείλατε, ὡς
leather-gnawing and skin-clad your ruler report that
ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων κράτιστος καὶ μέγιστος βασιλεὺς ἐξαυτῆς
the of-the Romans mightiest and greatest emperor forthwith
τὴν σὴν μετελεύσεται χώραν, ἐντελεῖς σοι τοὺς φόρους
the your will-go-after land full to-you the tributes
ἀποδιδούς· ὡς μάθῃς, τρίδουλος ὢν ἐκ προγόνων,
paying so-that you-may-learn thrice-slave being from ancestors
δεσπότας τοὺς Ῥωμαίων ἡγεμόνας ἀνακηρύττειν, οὐχ ὡς
masters the of-Romans leaders to-proclaim not as
ἀνδράποδα τούτους φόρους αἰτεῖν." ταῦτα εἰπὼν τοὺς
slaves from-them tributes to-demand these-things having-said them
μὲν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτῶν χώραν ἀνατρέχειν ἐξέπεμπεν· αὐτὸς
indeed into the their-own land to-run-back he-sent-off he-himself
δὲ στρατιὰν ἀξιόμαχον συναγηοχώς, ἐχώρει κατὰ Μυσῶν·
and army fit-for-battle having-gathered went against Mysians
καὶ φρούρια μέν, ὅσα Ῥωμαίοις ὅμορα ἦν, εἷλεν ἐξ
and forts indeed as-many-as to-Romans bordering were he-took from
ἐπιδρομῆς. τὴν δὲ χώραν περισκεψάμενος, καὶ ταύτης τὸ
attack the and land having-surveyed and of-it the
ἀμφιλαφὲς καὶ κρημνῶδες ἰδὼν (ποιητικῶς γὰρ εἰπεῖν,
thickly-wooded and precipitous having-seen poetically for to-say

τῇ τῶν Μυσῶν χώρᾳ πάντη κακὸν κακῷ ἐστήρικται,
the of-the Mysians land everywhere evil on-evil is-set
καὶ τὴν ἀμφιλαφῆ καὶ λοχμώδη χώραν σηραγγώδης καὶ
and the thickly-wooded and bushy land cavernous and
κρημνώδης ἐκδέχεται, εἶτ' αὖθις ἐκείνην τελματώδης τε
precipitous receives then again that marshy both
καὶ σομφώδης· ὑδρηλὴ γὰρ ἐκτόπως ἡ χώρα, καὶ λίαν
and spongy watery for extraordinarily the land and very
ἀλσώδης, καὶ ὄρεσι δυσβάτοις ἑκασταχοῦ περικλείεται,
woody and by-mountains impassable on-every-side is-enclosed
παρὰ τὸν Αἷμον καὶ τὴν Ῥοδόπην κατῳκισμένη καὶ
by the Haemus and the Rhodope settled and
ποταμῶν τοῖς μεγίστοις περιῤῥεομένη)· ταύτην Νικηφόρος
by-rivers the greatest flowed-around this Nikephoros
ὁ βασιλεὺς θεασάμενος, οὐκ ᾤετο δεῖν δύναμιν τὴν
the emperor having-beheld not thought to-be-needful force the
Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἀσύντακτον δι' ἐπισφαλῶν χωρίων ἐξάγοντα,
Roman in-disorder through dangerous places leading-out
ὡσανεὶ βοσκήματα παρασκευάσαι κατακοπῆναι πρὸς τῶν
as-if cattle to-prepare to-be-cut-down by the
Μυσῶν. λέγεται γάρ, πολλάκις πταῖσαι Ῥωμαίους ταῖς
Mysians it-is-said for often to-have-stumbled Romans in-the
δυσχωρίαις Μυσίας, πανολεθρίᾳ περιπεσεῖν.
rough-places of-Mysia to-utter-ruin to-have-fallen

Nikephoros sends Kalokyres to lead the Rus against the Mysians. A mock battle in the hippodrome causes a deadly stampede, his brother Leo profiteers in grain, and the emperor walls in the palace. At Ascension a woman throws stones at him, and the author, then a student, marvels that he rides by unshaken. In Sicily Manuel is killed and Niketas captured, an earthquake destroys Claudiopolis, and a cloudburst floods Constantinople.

6 Ἔγνω οὖν, μὴ διὰ δυσεμβόλων καὶ περισφαλῶν χωρίων
he-resolved then not through hard-to-attack and dangerous places
διακινδυνεύειν. ὅθεν ἀναλαβὼν τὴν στρατιὰν πρὸς τὸ
to-run-the-risk whence having-taken-up the army to —
Βυζάντιον ἤλαυνε, καὶ Καλοκύρην ἐκεῖνον τῷ τῶν
Byzantium he-drove and Kalokyres that-one with-the of-the
πατρικίων τιμήσας ἀξιώματι, ἄνδρα ὁρμητίαν τὴν ἄλλως
patrikioi having-honored dignity a-man impetuous — otherwise
καὶ θερμουργόν, ἐς τοὺς Ταυροσκύθας ἐξέπεμψεν, οὓς
and hot-headed to the Tauroscythians sent whom
ἡ κοινὴ διάλεκτος Ῥῶς εἴωθεν ὀνομάζειν, ἐφ' ᾧ
the common dialect Rus is-wont to-name on-condition that
διανείμαντα τούτοις χρυσόν, ὃν αὐτῷ ἐνεχείρισεν, εἰς
having-distributed to-them gold which to-him he-entrusted to
κεντηνάρια πεντεκαίδεκα συγκεφαλαιούμενον, ἐς τὴν χώραν
centenaria fifteen amounting into the land
καταγαγεῖν τῶν Μυσῶν, ταύτην αἱρήσοντας. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν
to-lead of-the Mysians it going-to-take but — indeed
Καλοκύρης ἐς τοὺς Ταυροσκύθας ἠπείγετο· αὐτὸς δὲ παρὰ
Kalokyres to the Tauroscythians hastened he-himself and to
τὸ θέατρον ἀναβάς, ἱππικὸν ἀγῶνα καθῆστο τελῶν. καὶ
the theater having-gone-up horse contest sat holding and
δῆτα τοῖς περὶ αὑτὸν στρατιώταις ἐκέλευε, καταβάντας
indeed to-the about himself soldiers ordered having-gone-down

ἐπὶ τὸ στάδιον καὶ εἰς ἀντιπάλους ἀποκριθέντας φάλαγγας
onto the stadium and into opposing having-been-divided phalanxes
σπασαμένους τὰ ξίφη, κατὰ παιδιὰν ἐπαλλήλοις χωρεῖν,
having-drawn the swords in game against-each-other to-advance
καὶ ταύτῃ γυμνάσασθαι πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. Βυζάντιοι δέ,
and thus to-exercise for the war Byzantines and
πολεμικῶν ἔργων ἀγνῶτες τυγχάνοντες, τὴν τῶν ξιφῶν
of-warlike works ignorant being the of-the swords
καταπλαγέντες αὐγήν, καὶ τὴν ὁμόσε τῶν στρατιωτῶν
astounded gleam and the together of-the soldiers
ὁρμὴν καὶ τὸν πάταγον ὑποδείσαντες, ἐκδειματωθέντες δὲ
rush and the clash having-dreaded terrified and
τῷ καινῷ τοῦ θεάματος, εἰς φυγὴν ἐτράποντο καὶ πρὸς
by-the novelty of-the spectacle into flight turned and to
τὰς σφῶν οἰκίας ἀπέτρεχον. ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ὠθισμοῦ καὶ τῆς
the their-own houses ran-off from and the crush and the
ἀτάκτου φορᾶς οὐκ ὀλίγος φόνος συμβέβηκε, πλείστων
disorderly rush not small slaughter happened very-many
συμπατηθέντων καὶ ἀποπνιγέντων οἰκτρῶς. τοῦτο τὸ
having-been-trampled and suffocated pitiably this the
δρᾶμα μίσους ἀφορμή τις γέγονε Βυζαντίου πρὸς τὸν
drama of-hatred occasion a-certain became of-Byzantium toward the
αὐτοκράτορα. ταύτῃ παρείπετο καὶ τὸ τοῦ συναίμου
emperor to-this was-added also the of-the brother
αὐτοῦ Λέοντος καὶ Κουροπαλάτου πλημμελές· ὅστις τὸν
his Leo and Kouropalates offense who the
ἀνδρώδη καὶ στρατιωτικὸν αὐτοῦ βίον παρωσάμενος
manly and military his life having-thrust-aside
πρὸς τὸν ἀστικὸν καὶ φιλοκερδῆ μετετάξατο, ἥττων τε
to the urban and gain-loving changed-ranks weaker both
χρημάτων καὶ λημμάτων γενόμενος, σιτοδείαν εἰργάσατο
than-money and gains having-become scarcity-of-grain he-wrought

καὶ σπάνιν τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἀφιλάνθρωπον. ὀλίγου γὰρ
and dearth of-the necessities inhuman for-little for
τὸν σῖτον ὠνούμενος ἀπεδίδου πολλοῦ. καὶ ψιθυρισμὸς
the grain buying he-sold for-much and whispering
ἀνὰ τὸ ἄστυ ἐχώρει, καταβοώντων τῶν ἀστικῶν, εἰ
through the town went crying-out the townsmen if
τὰς τοῦ κοινοῦ συμφορὰς ἴδια κέρδη ποιήσειεν τῶν
the of-the commonwealth misfortunes own gains should-make of-the
αὐταδέλφων ἡ ξυνωρίς, ἐς τὴν κερδαίνουσαν συνωθοῦσα
brothers the pair into the profiting pushing
πήραν τὰ τῶν πολλῶν. καὶ γὰρ δὴ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
purse the(-goods) of-the many and for indeed also the emperor
φόρους τοὺς μήπω ἐπινοηθέντας ἀπαραιτήτως ἐκαινοτόμει,
tributes the never-yet devised implacably innovated
ἐς τὸ στρατιωτικὸν λέγων χρημάτων ὅτι δεῖσθαι συχνῶν,
for the military saying of-money that to-need much
καὶ τούτοις κατέτρυχε τὸ ὑπήκοον. λέγεται δέ, εἴτε
and with-these wore-out the subject(-people) it-is-said and whether
πρὸς τῶν τὰ μετέωρα περισκοπούντων τινός, εἴτε καὶ
by those the heavenly(-things) observing someone or also
τῶν μονάδα βίον ἐπανῃρημένων καὶ ἄζυγα, διενωτισθῆναι
of-those solitary life having-chosen and unwed to-have-been-told
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα, ὡς παρὰ τὴν βασίλειον ἑστίαν ἐκπλήσει
the emperor that in the imperial hearth he-will-end
τὸν βίον, ἀναιρεθεὶς παρὰ τῶν ὁμοεθνῶν. περιδεὴς οὖν
the life slain by the fellow-tribesmen very-fearful then
τῷ χρησμῷ γεγονώς, περίβολον ἐκ τοῦ θατέρου μέρους
by-the oracle having-become a-circuit-wall from the one part
τοῦ πρὸς θάλατταν ἐπικλινοῦς τῶν ἀνακτόρων τειχίζειν
the toward sea sloping of-the palace to-wall
ἀρξάμενος, κατὰ θάτερον πρὸς θάλατταν συνεπέρανε, καὶ
having-begun on the-other toward sea he-completed and

τεῖχος τὸ νῦν ὁρώμενον ὑψηλόν τε καὶ ὀχυρὸν ἐδομήσατο,
wall the now seen high both and strong built
καὶ τὴν βασίλειον ἑστίαν, ὡς ὑπετόπαζεν, ἠσφαλίσατο.
and the imperial hearth as he-surmised secured
Πρόκενσον δὲ κατὰ τὴν τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἀνάληψιν κατὰ 7
procession and at the of-the Savior Ascension according-to
τὸ εἰθισμένον ἔξω τειχῶν ἐπὶ τὴν καλουμένην Πηγὴν
the custom outside walls to the called Spring
ποιησαμένου τοῦ βασιλέως (νεὼς δὲ ταύτῃ περικαλλὴς τῇ
having-made the emperor temple and there most-beautiful to-the
Θεοτόκῳ δεδόμηται), διαμάχη τις μεταξὺ Βυζαντίων καὶ
God-bearer has-been-built fighting a-certain between Byzantines and
Ἀρμενίων συνέβαινεν, ὡς πολλοὺς πρὸς τῶν Ἀρμενίων
Armenians happened so-that many by the Armenians
τρωθῆναι τῶν ἀστικῶν. ἄρτι δὲ πρὸς ἑσπέραν ἐπὶ τὰ
to-be-wounded of-the townsmen just and toward evening to the
ἀνάκτορα τοῦ βασιλέως ἐλαύνοντος, ὕβρεσι κἀκ τοῦ
palace the emperor riding with-insults and-from the
ἀναφανδὸν ἐχρῶντο Βυζάντιοι. καί τι γύναιον σὺν
open used Byzantines and a-certain woman with
τῷ θυγατρίῳ εἰς τοσαύτην ἀπόνοιαν ἤλασεν, ὡς τοῦ
the little-daughter into such madness drove so-that from-the
στέγους προκύψαι καὶ λίθους βαλεῖν κατὰ τοῦ ἄνακτος.
roof to-lean-out and stones to-throw against the lord
ὃ καὶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ πρὸς τοῦ Πραίτωρος ληφθὲν δίκας
which also on-the next-day by the Praetor taken penalties
μετὰ τοῦ θυγατρίου ἀπέτισεν, ἐπί τι προάστειον πυρὸς
with the little-daughter paid on a-certain suburb of-fire
γεγονὸς ἀνάλωμα, Ἀναράτας καλούμενον. τότε δὴ καὶ
having-become consumption Anaratai called then indeed also
αὐτὸς ἐπεχωρίαζον ὁ ταῦτα γράφοντι Βυζάντιος, ἐπὶ
myself was-staying the these-things writing (in)-Byzantium for

λόγων συλλογήν τε καὶ παίδευσιν, μειράκιον ὤν. ἔφιππόν
of-letters gathering both and education a-lad being on-horseback
τε τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Νικηφόρον βάδην ἰόντα βλέπων διὰ
both the emperor Nikephoros at-a-walk going seeing through
τοῦ ἄστεος, καὶ ἀπερικτύπητον ταῖς τοσαύταις ὕβρεσι
the town and unshaken by-the such insults
πέλοντα, καὶ τὸ φρόνημα σταθηρὸν διασώζοντα, καὶ ὡς
being and the spirit steady preserving and as
μή τινος ἐπισυμβάντος καινοῦ διακείμενον, ἐτεθήπειν τὸ
not anything having-befallen new being-disposed I-was-amazed-at the
ἀκατάπληκτον τοῦ ἀνδρός, ὅπως ἄτρεστον παρὰ τὰ δεινὰ
imperturbability of-the man how fearless amid the dangers
τὴν ψυχὴν συνετήρει εὐγένειαν. ἀλλὰ τὴν μὲν στάσιν
the soul he-kept nobility but the indeed riot
ἡ νὺξ ἐπελθοῦσα διέλυσεν· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ ἄλλως
the night having-come dissolved the and emperor also otherwise
μεγαλόφρων τε ὤν, καὶ μὴ εὔκολος εἴκειν ὀργῇ, τὰ
high-minded both being and not easy to-yield to-anger the(-things)
τῇ προτεραίᾳ εἰς αὐτὸν πεπαρῳνημένα παρὰ τῶν
on-the previous-day against him drunkenly-committed by the
ἀστικῶν ἔργον μᾶλλον μέθης ἢ φορᾶς ἀτάκτου λαοῦ
townsmen work rather of-drunkenness than of-rush disorderly of-a-people
λογισάμενος, τῇ λήθῃ παρέπεμψεν. αὖθις δὲ πυρφόρους
having-reckoned to-the oblivion consigned again and fire-bearing
τριήρεις ἀσφαλῶς ἑρματίσας, καὶ μυριοφόρους ὁλκάδας
triremes securely having-ballasted and ten-thousand-bearing merchantmen
στρατιωτῶν καὶ ὅπλων γεμίσας, ἐς Σικελίαν ἔστελλε, τοῦ
with-soldiers and arms having-filled to Sicily sent of-the
μὲν ναυτικοῦ Νικήταν ἐν Πατρικίοις τελοῦντα, θεοφιλῆ
indeed fleet Niketas among Patrikioi being God-loving
καὶ σεβάσμιον ἄνθρωπον, εἰ καὶ τομίας ἐτύγχανε,
and reverend person if even eunuch he-happened-to-be

προχειρισάμενος στρατηγόν· τῆς δὲ ἱππικῆς παρατάξεως
having-appointed general of-the and horse array
Μανουήλ, αὐτανέψιον αὐτοῦ, τῷ τῶν Πατρικίων καὶ αὐτὸν
Manuel cousin his with-the of-the Patrikioi also himself
ἀξιώματι διαπρέποντα, ἄνδρα θερμουργὸν καὶ αὐθέκαστον,
dignity distinguished a-man hot-headed and self-willed
καὶ ἀπερισκέπτῳ φορᾷ εἴκοντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ περαιωσάμενοι
and to-unconsidered impetus yielding when and having-crossed
τὸν Ἀδρίαν τῆς Σικελίας προσέσχαν, τῶν πορθμείων
the Adriatic — at-Sicily they-put-in from-the boats
ἀποβάντες εἰς φάλαγγα παρετάττοντο, καὶ τοσαύτης
having-disembarked into phalanx they-drew-up and such
εὐετηρίας ἀπέλαυσαν παρὰ τὴν ἀρχήν, ὡς αὐτοβοεὶ τὰς
prosperity they-enjoyed at the beginning so-that at-the-first-shout the
κλεινὰς καὶ περιπύστους Συρακούσας ἑλεῖν καὶ Ἰμέραν,
famous and renowned Syracuse to-take and Himera
καὶ προσέτι Ταυρομένειον καὶ Λεοντίνους ἀναιμωτὶ
and besides Tauromenion and Leontini without-bloodshed
παραστήσασθαι. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐκ ἔμελλεν ἡ βάσκανος τύχη
to-bring-over but for not was-going the envious fortune
διὰ τέλους πλησίστιος αὐτοῖς ἐπιπνεῖν, σφοδρὸν δὲ καὶ
through end with-full-sail on-them to-blow violent but and
ἄγριον ἀντιπνεύσασα, ὑποβρύχια τὰ πράγματα τέθεικε.
fierce having-blown-against under-water the affairs put
δηλώσει δὲ ταῦτα ὁ λόγος ἤδη σαφῶς.
it-will-show and these-things the account presently clearly
Σικελιῶται πρὸς τοσαύτην ῥοπὴν καὶ ἀνανταγώνιστα τῶν 8
Sicilians against such force and invincible of-the
Ῥωμαίων φρονήματα οὐχ οἷοί τε ὄντες ἀντικαθίστασθαι,
Romans spirits not able — being to-withstand
τὰς πόλεις ἀπολιπόντες τὰς δυσχωρίας ὑπῄεσαν, καὶ ἐπὶ
the cities having-left the rough-places went-into and in

τόπων ἐπικαίρων ἠθροίζοντο. κρημνώδης γὰρ ὡς τὰ πολλὰ
places advantageous gathered precipitous for as the most
καὶ δενδρώδης ἡ νῆσος, ἱκανή τε τῷ βουλομένῳ
and wooded the island sufficient and for-the(-one) wishing
φρουρὰν αὐτοσχέδιον ἐπιχορηγεῖν. ὁ τοίνυν Μανουήλ,
guard improvised to-supply — therefore Manuel
δέον αὐτῷ τὰς πόλεις παρειληφότα φρουρεῖν καὶ
it-being-needful for-him the cities having-taken-over to-guard and
χώραν, ὅση εὔβοτος ἦν καὶ ἱππήλατος, ἀπείργειν τε
land as-much-as well-pastured was and horse-riding to-bar and
τὰς φυγάδας χιλῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων βρωτῶν· οὕτω γὰρ
the fugitives from-fodder and the other foods thus for
τῷ λιμώττειν τρυχόμενοι δυεῖν θάτερον ἔπαθον
by-the to-be-starving worn-down of-two the-other they-would-have-suffered
ἄν, ἢ Ῥωμαίοις ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, ἢ σπάνει
— either to-Romans themselves they-would-have-handed-over or from-lack
τῶν ἀναγκαίων διαπεφωνήκεισαν· ὁ δέ, ὁρμητίας τε ὤν,
of-the necessities would-have-perished he but impetuous both being
καὶ σφαδάζων θυμῷ καὶ νεότητι, τὸ δραστήριον δὲ καὶ
and quivering with-spirit and youth the energy and also
ἐπήβολον οὐ πάνυ δεόντως προσκεκτημένος, ταῖς προβάσαις
effectiveness not quite fittingly having-acquired by-the past
ἤδη νίκαις ὑπὲρ τὸ εἰκὸς ἐπαρθείς, διὰ τῶν ἐπισφαλῶν
already victories beyond the likely elated through the dangerous
ἐκείνων χώρων ἐπήει, τοὺς φυγάδας ἀνερευνώμενος. ἄρτι
those places advanced the fugitives searching-out just
δὲ κατὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν διαλυθείσης τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ
and in the rough-ground having-been-broken the phalanx and
διὰ σκοπέλων καὶ χηραμῶν ἀσυντάκτως χωρούσης,
through crags and holes in-disorder going
προλοχίσαντες τοὺς ἄνδρας οἱ βάρβαροι, πατάγῳ
having-laid-ambush-for the men the barbarians with-clatter

καὶ ἀσήμοις φωναῖς τῶν λόχων διανίσταντο, καὶ
and inarticulate cries from-the ambushes rose-up and
αὐτοῖς αἰφνίδιον ἐπετίθεντο. οἱ δὲ τῷ ἀπροσδοκήτῳ
on-them suddenly set those and by-the unexpected
καταπλαγέντες, καὶ μηδὲ τὸ ἡλιακὸν φῶς τῷ συνηρεφεῖ
astounded and not-even the solar light by-the overshadowing
τῆς λόχμης ἐώμενοι καθορᾷν, εἰς φυγὴν ἀπέκλιναν· οἱ δὲ
of-the thicket being-allowed to-see into flight turned the and
βάρβαροι ἐπιτεθέντες ἀνῄρουν τούτους ἀνηλεῶς, ὥς τινα
barbarians having-set-on killed them pitilessly like some
θύματα· τηνικαῦτα δὲ κτείνειν τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπείχοντο, ὅτε
victims then and to-kill the men they-refrained when
τούτοις ἥ τε δύναμις καὶ ὁ θυμὸς ἀπηγόρευσεν. ἀνῃρέθη
for-them the both strength and the spirit gave-out was-killed
δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Μανουήλ· ὅσοι δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων τὰ
and also himself — Manuel as-many-as and of-the Romans the
ξίφη διέφυγον, ζωγρίαι πρὸς τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν ἡλίσκοντο. οἱ
swords escaped alive by the Hagarenes were-captured they
δέ, ἐπεὶ τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν παρεστήσαντο, ἐπὶ τὴν ἠϊόνα
and when the foot army had-overcome to the shore
ταχυδρομήσαντες, ἵνα αἱ Ῥωμαϊκαὶ τριήρεις ὑφώρμουν,
having-run-swiftly where the Roman triremes lay-at-anchor
ἐγκρατεῖς ἐξ ἐφόδου τῶν πλείστων ἐγένοντο· ἥλω δὲ
masters from attack of-the most became was-taken and
καὶ ὁ Πατρίκιος Νικήτας, καὶ δορυάλωτος τῷ τῶν
also the Patrikios Niketas and spear-captured to-the of-the
Ἄφρων κατάρχοντι παρεπέμπετο. ἐκ γοῦν τοσούτου
Africans ruler was-sent from at-any-rate so-great
τοῦ στρατοῦ ὀλίγοι τινὲς διαδράντες καὶ εὐαρίθμητοι, ὡς
the army few some having-escaped and easily-counted to
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Νικηφόρον ἀφίκοντο· ὁ δὲ τὴν ἀπώλειαν
the emperor Nikephoros came he and the loss

διενωτισθεὶς τῆς τοιαύτης στρατιᾶς, ἠνιάθη μὲν καὶ τὴν
having-heard of-the such army was-grieved indeed and in-the
ψυχὴν ἤλγησε τῷ τοσούτῳ πταίσματι καὶ ἀλλοκότῳ
soul was-pained at-the so-great disaster and strange
συμβάματι. ὑπολογιζόμενος δὲ τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων πραγμάτων
occurrence reckoning but of-the human affairs
τὸ ἄστατον, γενναίως ἔφερε τὸ συμβάν, ἰσχυρογνώμων
the instability nobly bore the happening strong-willed
τις ὤν, καὶ ἐν δυσκολίᾳ πραγμάτων διασώζειν εἰδὼς
a-certain being and in difficulty of-affairs to-preserve knowing
τὴν ψυχὴν ἀταπείνωτον. Αὖθις δὲ κατὰ τῶν τὴν Συρίαν
the soul unhumbled again and against those — Syria
οἰκούντων Ἀγαρηνῶν ἐξήρτυε τὸν στρατόν.
dwelling Hagarenes he-prepared the army

9 Κατὰ δὲ τὸν αὐτὸν χρόνον, ἄρτι τῆς θερινῆς τροπῆς
at and the same time just the summer solstice
μεταβαλλούσης ἐπὶ τὸ μετόπωρον, ἔσεισεν ὁ Θεὸς μέγα,
changing to the autumn shook — God greatly
ὡς καὶ οἰκίας καὶ ἄστη ἀνατραπῆναι. Κλαυδιούπολίν
so-that both houses and towns to-be-overturned Claudiopolis
τε, τὸ εὐδαιμονέστατον χωρίον τῶν Γαλατῶν, τότε
and the most-prosperous place of-the Galatians then
συνέβη, κατεριπωθεῖσαν ἐκ τῆς ἀνυποστάτου κινήσεως
it-happened thrown-down from the irresistible motion
καὶ ἐνόσεως, αἰφνίδιον τῶν οἰκητόρων τάφον γενέσθαι,
and shaking suddenly of-the inhabitants tomb to-become
καὶ πολλοὺς τῶν ἐπηλύδων παρατυχόντας ἐν ἀκαρεῖ
and many of-the newcomers happening-to-be-by in an-instant
διαφθαρῆναι. αἴτιον δὲ τῆς τοσαύτης ἐνόσεως καὶ κινήσεως
to-be-destroyed cause and of-the such shaking and motion
ἀτμοὺς μὲν οἱ μαθηματικοὶ καὶ ἀναθυμιάσεις μυθολογοῦσί
vapors indeed the astronomers and exhalations tell-fables

τινας, ἐναποκλειομένας τοῖς κόλποις τῆς γῆς, αὖθίς τε εἰς
certain shut-up in-the bosoms of-the earth again and into
πνεῦμα καταιγίδος συνισταμένας, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἀθρόον συμβαίνει
blast of-whirlwind gathering since not all-together happens
τὴν διαπνοὴν τούτων ἐκτρέχειν, διὰ τὴν τῶν πόρων
the breathing-out of-them to-run-out because-of the of-the passages
στενότητα, συνειλεῖσθαί τε καὶ περιδινεῖσθαι, καὶ τὰ κοῖλα
narrowness to-be-rolled-up both and to-be-whirled-around and the hollows
περιδονεῖν μετὰ σφοδρᾶς τῆς κινήσεως, καὶ τὸ ἐπιπροσθοῦν
to-shake with violent the motion and the in-front
καὶ περιέχον ἅπαν σαλεύειν, ἕως ἂν ἐκ τοῦ τέως εἴργοντος
and surrounding all to-make-rock until — from the meanwhile confining
διεκπνεύσωσι, καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἔξωθεν ἐξατμισθέντα εἰς τὸν
they-breathe-out and to the(-parts) outside evaporated into the
ὁμογενῆ διασκεδασθεῖεν ἀέρα. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἡ τῶν
kindred may-be-dispersed air but these-things indeed the of-the
Ἑλλήνων εἰκαιομυθία πρὸς τὸ ταύτῃ δοκοῦν ἐξηγήσατο. ἐγὼ
Hellenes idle-fabling for the thus seeming set-forth I
δὲ τῷ θείῳ Δαβὶδ συνεπόμενος, ἐπισκοπῇ φαίην τοῦ Θεοῦ
and the divine David following by-visitation I-would-say — of-God
πρὸς ἡμᾶς τὸν τοσοῦτον κλόνον ἐγγίνεσθαι, ὅταν ἐπὶ τοῖς
to us the so-great tumult to-arise when on the
ἡμῶν ἐπαγρυπνήσῃ ἐπιτηδεύμασι, παρὰ τὸν θεῖον δρωμένοις
our may-watch practices against the divine done
θεσμόν, εἴ πως ἀλλὰ ταύτῃ δείσαντες ἄνθρωποι τῶν μὲν
ordinance if somehow at-least thus having-feared men from-the indeed
φαύλων ἔργων ἀφέξοιντο, ἀνθέξοιντο δὲ τῶν ἐπαινετῶν.
wicked works might-abstain might-hold-to and the praiseworthy(-ones)
ἀλλ᾽ οὕτω μὲν ἡ Κλαυδιούπολις τῇ τοῦ σεισμοῦ βίᾳ ἐκ
but so indeed — Claudiopolis by-the of-the earthquake force from
βάθρων ἀνετράπη τότε πᾶσα, καὶ συνεχύθη, τῆς ὀργῆς
foundations was-overturned then all and was-confounded of-the wrath

τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐκπιοῦσα τὸ ποτήριον ἄκρατον. παρὰ τοῦτον δὲ
— of-God having-drained the cup unmixed during this and
τὸν ἐνιαυτόν, θερείας ὥρας κατὰ τὸ μεσαίτατον, ἄρτι τοῦ
the year of-summer season at the very-middle just the
ἡλίου τῷ καρκίνῳ προσεπιβαίνοντος, ὄμβρος ἐν Βυζαντίῳ
sun to-the Cancer mounting rainstorm in Byzantium
κατερῥάγη καὶ τοῖς προσομοροῦσιν αὐτῷ, οἷον οὐ συνέβη
burst and on-the bordering it such-as not happened
κατενεχθῆναι τὸ πρότερον. κλινούσης γὰρ τῆς ἡμέρας
to-be-brought-down the before declining for the day
(παρασκευὴ δὲ ἦν) ἀρξάμενον τὸ δεινὸν εἰς ἐννάτην ὥραν
Friday and it-was having-begun the dread to ninth hour
κατέληγεν· οὕτω δὲ ῥαγδαία τις ἡ ὑέτισις κατεφέρετο,
ceased so and violent a-certain the rainfall was-borne-down
ὡς μὴ σταγόνας ὁρᾷν ὀμβριζομένας κατὰ τὸ σύνηθες,
so-that not drops to-see raining according-to the usual
ἀλλά τινας ἐπικλύζοντας ὕδασιν ὀχετούς. οὐχ ὑπελείφθη
but certain flooding with-waters channels not was-left
γοῦν τῶν σηκῶν ἢ τῶν περιπύστων οἴκων, ὅστις ἄνωθεν
at-any-rate of-the precincts or of-the famous houses which from-above
ἐκ τῆς ὀροφῆς οὐκ ἐπληροῦτο τοῦ ὕδατος, καίτοι τῶν
from the roof not was-filled with-the water although the
κατοίκων μόχθῳ ἀπαντλούντων αὐτὸ πρὸς τὰ ἄμφοδα·
inhabitants with-toil baling it to the streets
τὸ μὲν ἀπέῤῥεε, τὸ δ' ἐπέῤῥεε, καὶ ἀκαταγώνιστον ἦν
the indeed flowed-off the and flowed-on and irresistible was
τὸ δεινόν. ἐπὶ τριῶν οὖν ὡρῶν διαστήματι κατέσχεν
the dread for three then hours' interval held
ὁ ὑετός, καὶ ἦν ὁρᾷν ποταμοὺς πελαγίζοντας διὰ
the rain and it-was to-see rivers spreading-into-a-sea through
τῶν τῆς πόλεως στενωπῶν, καὶ τὸ παρασυρόμενον
the of-the city narrow-lanes and the swept-along

τῶν ἐμψύχων διαφθείροντας. οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι ἐλεεινῶς
of-the living(-creatures) destroying the and men pitiably
ἀπεθρήνουν οἰμώζοντες, κατακλυσμὸν αὖθις ἐπισκῆψαι
lamented wailing deluge again to-have-struck
κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνον τὸν τεθρυλλημένον ὑποτοπάζοντες· ἀλλ᾽ ἡ
like that the storied surmising but the
συμπαθὴς καὶ φιλάνθρωπος πρόνοια ἶριν διὰ τῆς
compassionate and humane providence rainbow through the
νεφέλης ἐρείσασα, τῇ ταύτης ἀναλάμψει τὴν τοῦ ὑετοῦ
cloud having-set by-the its shining-forth the of-the rain
κατήφειαν διεσκέδασε, καὶ αὖθις τὸ τῆς φύσεως σύγκριμα
gloom dispersed and again the of-the nature compound
ἐπὶ τὴν προτέραν κατάστασιν ἐπανήγετο. συνέβη δὲ καὶ
to the former state was-restored it-happened and also
αὖθις ὄμβρον καταῤῥαγῆναι τεθολωμένον καὶ σύμμικτον
again rainstorm to-burst turbid and mixed
τέφρᾳ, ὡς ἐπὶ καμινιαίας αἰθάλης, καὶ χλιαρὰν δὲ παρεῖχε
with-ash as from furnace soot and lukewarm too it-gave
τοῖς ἐπαφωμένοις αὐτοῦ τὴν ποιότητα.
to-those touching it the quality

Nikephoros marches into Syria, passes Antioch, and at Edessa prays in the shrine of the Confessors. At Mempetze he carries off the tile that bore the imprint of the Savior's face from the cloth sent to Abgar and enshrines it in the palace church. He crosses the Lebanon and sacks Arka; an eclipse darkens the day on 22 December. Before Antioch he spares the great city rather than spend his army on it, builds a fort on a hill in three days to harry it, and returns to Constantinople.

10 Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Νικηφόρος (αὖθις γὰρ ὁ λόγος ἐπάνεισιν,
the and emperor Nikephoros again for the account returns
ἔνθεν τὸ ἴχνος ἀπέκλινε), τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἀνειληφὼς δύναμιν,
whence the track turned-aside the Roman having-taken-up force
ἐπὶ τὴν ἐπὶ Συρίας Ἀντιόχειαν ἔθει, καὶ χάρακα ταύτῃ
to the in Syria Antioch hastened and a-palisade there
πηξάμενος, ἐπείπερ ἀποχρώντως ἔχουσα τῶν ἀναγκαίων
having-fixed since sufficiently having of-the necessities
ἐτραχηλία, καὶ γαυρουμένη ἐκ τοῦ εὐθέος σπείσασθαι οὐκ
it-swaggered and exulting from the straight(-way) to-make-terms not
ἠνείχετο, μὴ βουλόμενος αὐτὴν ἑλεπόλεσι κατεριπῶσαι·
it-endured not wishing it with-siege-engines to-throw-down
ἤδει γὰρ κατὰ μικρὸν τροπαίοις καὶ μηχαναῖς ταύτην
he-knew for by little with-trophies and devices it
παραστησόμενος, ὀλίγον αὐτῇ καιρὸν παρακαθισάμενος,
going-to-bring-over little by-it time having-sat-down
καὶ ταῖς φάλαγξι καὶ τῷ κόσμῳ τῶν ὅπλων τοὺς ἔνδον
and with-the phalanxes and the order of-the arms those within
καταπλήξας οὐχ ἥκιστα· ἐκεῖθεν ἀπάρας τὴν μεσογαίαν
having-astounded not least from-there having-set-out the inland
διήει, ἣν καὶ Παλαιστίνην καλοῦσιν, εὐδαίμονα πᾶσαν
passed-through which also Palestine they-call prosperous all
καὶ ῥέουσαν μέλι καὶ γάλα, κατὰ τὴν θείαν γραφήν· ἐν
and flowing-with honey and milk according-to the divine scripture on

δεξιᾷ δὲ τὴν Κιλικίαν εἶχε καὶ τὰ παράκτια. τὴν Ἔδεσσαν
right and — Cilicia he-had and the coastal(-parts) — Edessa
οὖν κατειληφώς, κἂν τῷ σηκῷ τῶν θείων Ὁμολογητῶν
then having-reached and-into the precinct of-the divine Confessors
εἰσεληλυθὼς καὶ τὸ θεῖον ἐξευμενισάμενος, τὴν στρατιὰν
having-entered and the divine having-propitiated the army
διανέπαυεν. ἠκηκόει γάρ, τὴν ἐν κεράμῳ τοῦ Σωτῆρος
he-rested he-had-heard for the on tile of-the Savior
καὶ Θεοῦ ἐκτυπωθεῖσαν μορφὴν ἐν τῷδε τῷ φρουρίῳ
and God impressed form in this-here the fort
παρακατέχεσθαι. ἐκτυπωθῆναι δέ φασι τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον.
to-be-kept to-have-been-impressed and they-say in-this the way
Θαδδαίου τοῦ ἀποστόλου Ἀβγάρῳ πρὸς τοῦ Σωτῆρος
Thaddeus the apostle to-Abgar by the Savior
τῷ τῆς Ἐδέσσης ἀποσταλέντος τοπάρχῃ, ὡς αὐτὸν τῆς
to-the — of-Edessa having-been-sent toparch so-that him of-the
συνεχούσης παρέσεως διὰ τοῦ θεανδρικοῦ ἀπαλλάξειεν
gripping paralysis through the divine-human he-might-free
ἐκτυπώματος, ἐνταυθοῖ παροδεύοντος τὸν πέπλον, ᾧ τῆς
imprint here passing-by the cloth on-which of-the
αὐτοῦ μορφῆς τὸ εἶδος ἀῤῥήτως ὁ Χριστὸς ἀνετύπωσε,
his form the appearance ineffably — Christ impressed
κεράμοις ἐν ἀποκειμένοις πρὸ τοῦ ἄστεος κατακρύψαι, ὡς
tiles in lying before the town to-hide as
ἐς τὴν ὑστεραίαν ἐναποληψομένους τοῦτον ἐκεῖθεν. συνέβαινε
on the next-day going-to-take-up it from-there it-happened
δὲ κατὰ πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα φωτὶ τοὺς κεράμους ἀμηχάνῳ
and through all the night with-light the tiles extraordinary
καταλάμπεσθαι. πρωῒ δὲ τὸν μὲν Θαδδαῖον ἀνειληφότα
to-be-lit-up at-dawn and — indeed Thaddeus having-taken-up
τὸν πέπλον ὁδοῦ τῆς προκειμένης ἔχεσθαι· τὸν δὲ κέραμον,
the cloth road the lying-ahead to-hold the and tile

οὗπερ ἔτυχε προσψαύσας ὁ πέπλος, τὸν θεανδρικὸν
which-indeed it-happened having-touched the cloth the divine-human
τοῦ Σωτῆρος τύπον ἀκραιφνῶς ἐναπομάξασθαι. τοῦτον
of-the Savior figure purely to-have-received-the-impress this
ἀνειληφότες οἱ βάρβαροι ἐν θαύματι καὶ σεβάσματι
having-taken-up the barbarians in wonder and reverence
παρὰ τὸ φρούριον διεφύλαττον. τότε δὲ Νικηφόρος ὁ
at the fort guarded then and Nikephoros the
βασιλεύς, ἐξελὼν τὸ ἄστυ, τὸν τοιοῦτον σεπτὸν κέραμον
emperor having-taken the town the such august tile
ἐκεῖθεν ἀνείληφε, καὶ χρυσῷ καὶ λίθοις θήκην διασκευάσας
from-there took-up and with-gold and stones a-case having-made
μετέπειτα, καὶ ταύτῃ περιστείλας τοῦτον σεπτῶς, ἐν τῷ
afterward and in-this having-enshrined it reverently in the
τῆς Θεομήτορος ναῷ, τῷ κατὰ τὴν βασίλειον ὄντι ἑστίαν,
of-the Mother-of-God temple the in the imperial being hearth
ἀνέθηκεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ Μέμπετζε παρείληφε φρούριον,
dedicated when and the Mempetze he-had-taken fort
τὸν Λίβανον τὸ ὄρος ἐγκαρσίως ὑπερβάς, τῇ Τριπόλει
the Lebanon the mountain crosswise having-crossed — at-Tripolis
προσέσχεν, ἣν ἐχυρὰν καὶ δυσάλωτον τῶν ἄλλων πόλεων
he-put-in which strong and hard-to-take than-the other cities
διαφερόντως ἰδών, ἐπεὶ καὶ αἱ νῆες αὐτῷ ἀντιπνοίαις
exceedingly having-seen since also the ships to-him by-contrary-blowings
ἀνέμων ἐκκρουόμεναι καθυστέρησαν, ταύτην παραδραμὼν
of-winds beaten-back were-late it having-passed-by
τὸ Ἄρκα φρούριον ἔγνω πολιορκεῖν, χρῆμα πλούτου
— Arka fort he-resolved to-besiege a-store of-wealth
κατέχον ἔνδον ἀμύθητον. ἐντεῦθεν τρισὶ χάραξι περιζώσας
holding within untold thereupon with-three palisades having-girded
αὐτό, ἐπολιόρκει ἐῤῥωμενέστατα, καὶ ταῖς ἑλεπόλεσι τὰ
it he-besieged most-vigorously and with-the siege-engines the

τούτου πυργώματα καθελών, ἐφ' ὅλοις ἡλίοις ἐννέα
its towers having-taken-down within whole suns nine
ἐπόρθησέ τε, καὶ ἀμύθητον ἐκεῖθεν πλοῦτον συνεξεφόρησε·
he-sacked both and untold from-there wealth carried-off
καὶ ἄλλα δὲ φρούρια πλεῖστα εἶλεν αὐτοβοεί.
and others too forts very-many he-took at-the-first-shout
Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα τῷ βασιλεῖ κατὰ τὴν Συρίαν 11
in which and these-things by-the emperor in — Syria
ἐπράττετο, ἔκλειψιν συνέβη περὶ χειμερινὰς τροπὰς τοῦ
were-being-done eclipse it-happened about winter solstice of-the
ἡλίου γενέσθαι, οἵαν μηδέπω συνέβη γενέσθαι τὸ πρότερον,
sun to-occur such-as never happened to-occur the before
πλὴν ἐκείνην τὴν ἐπὶ τοῦ δεσποτικοῦ πάθους προβᾶσαν
except that the at the Lord's passion having-gone-before
διὰ τὴν τῶν Ἰουδαίων ἀπόνοιαν, ἣν ἐπλημμέλησαν,
because-of the of-the Jews madness in-which they-offended
σταυρῷ τὸν τῶν ὅλων δημιουργὸν προσηλώσαντες. τὸ
on-a-cross the of-the all craftsman having-nailed the
δὲ τῆς ἐκλείψεως εἶδος τοιοῦτον συνέβαινεν. εἰκάδα
and of-the eclipse appearance such happened twentieth
δευτέραν ἤλαυνεν ὁ Δεκέμβριος, τετάρτῃ δὲ τῆς ἡμέρας
second was-driving the December at-fourth and of-the day
ὥρᾳ, σταθηρᾶς αἰθρίας οὔσης, σκότος ἐπέσχε τὴν γῆν, καὶ
hour steady clear-sky being darkness held the earth and
οἱ διαφανεῖς τῶν ἀστέρων ἅπαντες κατεφαίνοντο. ἦν δὲ
the bright of-the stars all appeared it-was and
ὁρᾷν τὸν τοῦ ἡλίου δίσκον ἀλαμπῆ καὶ ἀφώτιστον, αἴγλην
to-see the of-the sun disk without-shine and without-light gleam
δέ τινα ἀμυδρὰν καὶ ἰσχνήν, ταινίας δίκην λεπτῆς,
but some faint and thin of-a-ribbon in-the-manner fine
κατὰ τὸ ἄκρον κυκλόθεν τὸν δίσκον περιαυγάζουσαν. κατὰ
along the edge all-around the disk shining-around by

μικρὸν δὲ τὴν σελήνην παραμείβων ὁ ἥλιος (ὡρᾶτο
little and the moon passing the sun was-seen
γὰρ αὕτη κατὰ κάθετον αὐτὸν ἀντιφράττουσα) τὰς ἰδίας
for it in perpendicular it blocking-off the own
ἀκτῖνας ἐξέπεμπε, καὶ φωτὸς αὖθις ἐπλήρου τὴν γῆν. τῷ
rays sent-out and of-light again filled the earth by-the
καινῷ οὖν καὶ ἀσυνήθει τοῦ ὁράματος ἐκδειματωθέντες οἱ
novel then and unaccustomed of-the sight terrified the
ἄνθρωποι, τὸ θεῖον ἱκετηρίαις, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἐξιλάσκοντο.
men the divine with-supplications as the likely propitiated
τότε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐγὼ τῷ Βυζαντίῳ ἐπεχωρίαζον, μετιὼν
then also myself I — in-Byzantium was-staying pursuing
τὴν ἐγκύκλιον παίδευσιν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς (δεῖ γὰρ τὸν
the general education the and emperor it-is-needful for the
λόγον τοῦ εἱρμοῦ ἐκτραπέντα ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν τοῦτον αὖθις
account from-the sequence having-turned-aside to him himself again
ἐπαναγαγεῖν), ἐπεὶ τὰ τῶν ἐναντίων φρούρια εἷλεν ἀκονιτί,
to-bring-back when the of-the opponents forts he-took without-dust
ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀντιόχου ἐπορεύετο παμπληθεί, καὶ πρὸ τῶν
to the(-city) of-Antiochos went in-full-force and before the
τειχῶν αὐτῆς πηξάμενος χάρακα, τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ
walls of-it having-fixed a-palisade the generals and
λοχαγοὺς συναγηοχώς, ἐν περιωπῇ τε κατὰ τὸ ὕπαιθρον
captains having-gathered on a-lookout and in the open
στάς, ἔλεξε ταῦτα· “τὰ μὲν ἐπέκεινα ταύτης ἀνῳκισμένα
standing spoke these-things the indeed beyond this settled
τῆς πόλεως φρούρια τῇ τῆς προνοίας ῥοπῇ καὶ τῇ
of-the city forts by-the of-the providence force and by-the
σφῶν ἐμπειρίᾳ μετὰ τῆς προσούσης ἀνδρείας εἴλομεν, ὡς
our experience with the present bravery we-took as
ἴστε, συστρατιῶται, παρὰ πᾶσαν ὑπόνοιαν. καὶ χάριν
you-know fellow-soldiers beyond all expectation and gratitude

ὁμολογῶ πλείστην ὑμῖν, ὅτι πρὸς ἐμὲ τὸν ὑμῶν ἀφορῶντες
I-confess very-much to-you that to me the your looking
ἡγεμόνα, οὐκ ὠκλάσατε περί τε τῶν ἀηδῶν, ἃ
leader not you-sank-down about both the unpleasant(-things) which
πλεῖστα καὶ ἀπηχῆ ἐπιφέρειν οἶδεν ὁ πόλεμος, ἀλλ᾽ οὕτω
very-many and harsh to-bring knows-how the war but so
μετὰ προθυμίας καὶ λελογισμένης ῥώμης διηγωνίσασθε,
with zeal and reasoned strength you-fought-it-out
ὥστε μηδέν, οἷς προσεβάλομεν τῶν φρουρίων, ὑπέρτερον
that nothing to-which we-attacked of-the forts superior
γενέσθαι τῆς ὑμῶν ἀρετῆς, καὶ καταλειφθῆναι ἀνάλωτον.
to-become than-the your valor and to-be-left untaken
οἶδα δὲ καὶ τὸ πρὸς τὴν κατασκαφὴν ταυτησὶ τῆς πόλεως
I-know and also the for the razing of-this-here the city
πρόθυμον ὑμῶν, ὅπως ὀργᾶτε καὶ σφαδάζετε ἡ στρατιά,
eagerness your how you-swell and quiver the army
ταύτην κατεριπώσειν καὶ δηώσειν πυρί. ἀλλ᾽ οἰκτός
it to-throw-down and to-ravage with-fire but pity
μέ τις ὑπεισέρχεται ταύτης, εἰ τρίτη τῶν περὶ τὴν
me a-certain creeps-into of-it if third of-the about the
οἰκουμένην τελοῦσα πόλεων, τῷ τε κάλλει καὶ τῷ μεγέθει
inhabited-world being of-cities in-the both beauty and in-the size
τῶν περιβόλων (ὁρᾶτε γὰρ εἰς ὅσον ὕψος ἐπανατείνονται
of-the circuit-walls you-see for to how-great height rise
οὗτοι), ἔτι δὲ πλήθει τοῦ δήμου καὶ τῶν οἰκιῶν
these further and in-multitude of-the people and of-the houses
ἀμηχάνοις κατασκευαῖς, ἐρείπιον κείσεται, καθά τι φρούριον
extraordinary in-structures ruin will-lie like some fort
πενιχρόν. τὸ δὲ τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν στρατιὰν κατὰ τὴν ταύτης
poor the and the Roman army in the its
κατατρίβειν ἐκπόρθησιν, καὶ τὰ ὑμῖν ὑποποιηθέντα τῷ
sacking to-wear-out and the by-you subdued by-the

πολεμεῖν αὖθις διαφθείρειν τε καὶ λεηλατεῖν, οὔ μοι νοῦν
fighting again to-destroy both and to-plunder not to-me sense
ἔχειν δοκεῖ. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐκεῖνον μάλιστα φαίην κηδεμονικὸν
to-have seems I for that-one most would-say provident
στρατηγόν, τὸν ταῖς ἐπεξελάσεσι καὶ διαμελλήσεσι τὴν
general the(-one) by-the raids and delays the
τῶν ἐναντίων κακοῦντα χώραν καὶ διαφθείροντα· τὸν δέ
of-the opponents ravaging land and destroying the(-one) but
γε τὴν οἰκείαν ταῖς τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκδρομαῖς καὶ αὖθις
at-least the own by-the of-the army sallies and again
κατὰ χώραν ἀναστροφαῖς παραπολλύοντα καὶ ἐκτρίβοντα,
in place returns ruining and wearing-out
τοῦτον ἀνόητον, μᾶλλον δὲ κακονούστατον ὀνομάζειν
this-one senseless rather and most-ill-minded to-name
οὐκ ἂν ἀποκνήσαιμι· παρόμοιόν τι διεργαζόμενον
not — I-would-shrink similar something doing
τῶν τῇ παροιμίᾳ κωμῳδουμένων κυνῶν, οἳ τοὺς
to-the(-ones) in-the proverb mocked dogs who the
λύκους τῶν προβάτων ἀποσοβεῖν ἐποφείλοντες, καὶ τὰ
wolves from-the sheep to-scare-off being-bound and the
βοσκήματα φυλάττειν ἀνεπιβούλευτον, οἵ δέ, πρὸς τῷ μὴ
cattle to-guard unplotted-against they but besides the not
ἀποσοβεῖν, μᾶλλον τῶν θηρίων αὐτοὶ διακόπτουσι καὶ
to-scare-off rather than-the beasts themselves cut-up and
διασπαράττουσιν. εἰ οὖν δοκεῖ καὶ πείθεσθέ μοι, ἐπείπερ
tear-apart if then it-seems-good and you-obey me since
ὁ λόφος ὀχυρώτατος οὑτοσὶ καταφαίνεται, καὶ κατάῤῥυτός
the hill most-strong this-here appears and well-watered
ἐστιν ὕδασιν, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, τοῦτον δὴ τειχιστέον ἐξαυτῆς,
is with-waters as you-see this indeed must-be-walled forthwith
καὶ ἴλην ἱππέων καὶ σπεῖραν πεζῶν ἐν αὐτῷ ἐατέον·
and squadron of-horsemen and company of-foot in it must-be-left

ὥστε καθ᾽ ἑκάστην ἐπεξελάσεσι καὶ καταδρομαῖς, καὶ
so-that by each(-day) with-raids and incursions and
τῶν ἐπιτηδείων διαρπαγαῖς τὴν Ἀντιόχου ταπεινώσωσι,
of-the provisions plunderings the(-city) of-Antiochos they-may-humble
καὶ εἰς ἀμηχανίαν δεινὴν κατακλείσαντες καὶ ἄκουσαν
and into helplessness terrible having-shut-in also unwilling
ἀναγκάσωσι, Ῥωμαίοις γενέσθαι ὑπόσπονδον.” εἶπεν ὁ
may-compel to-Romans to-become subject-by-treaty spoke the
βασιλεύς, καὶ λίθον ἐπωμισάμενος (ἦν γὰρ περὶ τὰ
emperor and a-stone having-shouldered he-was for about the
τοιαῦτα μετριοπαθής τε καὶ ταπεινός), ἄνεισι ἐπὶ τὸν
such(-things) moderate both and humble goes-up to the
λόφον, πάσῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ οὕτω ποιεῖν διακελευσάμενος.
hill to-all the army so to-do having-ordered
ἦν οὖν ἰδεῖν ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἄστυ ἀνῳκισμένον ἐπὶ τὸν
it-was then to-see in three days a-town built on the
λόφον, εὐερκές τε καὶ ὀχυρώτατον. φάλαγγα τοιγαροῦν
hill well-fenced both and most-strong a-phalanx therefore
πεντακοσίων ἱππέων, καὶ σπεῖραν χιλίων πεζῶν ἐν
of-five-hundred horsemen and company of-a-thousand foot in
τῷ φρουρίῳ καταλιπών, καὶ ἀποχρῶσαν χιλὸν αὐτοῖς
the fort having-left and sufficient fodder to-them
ἀποσιτισάμενος, ἐντειλάμενός τε ὁσημέραι ἐκδρομὰς κατὰ
having-provisioned having-enjoined and daily sallies against
τῆς Ἀντιοχείας ποιεῖν, καὶ τὸ παρατυχὸν μαχαίρας ἔργον
— Antioch to-make and the coming-in-the-way of-sword work
καὶ προνομῆς ἀπεργάζεσθαι, αὐτὸς ἐκεῖθεν ἀπάρας πρὸς
and of-foraging to-perform he-himself from-there having-set-out to
τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπανέζευξε, καὶ μεγαλοπρεπῶς πρὸς
the reigning(-city) returned and magnificently by
τῶν ἀστικῶν ὑποδεχθεὶς ἐκεῖσε διέτριβεν.
the townsmen received there stayed

XII · SPHENDOSTHLAVOS INVADES MYSIA

Nikephoros sends the ruler of the Carthaginians the sword of Mohammed with a threat of war, and the ruler, fearing his fame, frees the patrikios Niketas and the Roman captives. Kalokyres meanwhile persuades Sphendosthlavos, prince of the Rus, to conquer Mysia and help him to the throne; with sixty thousand men the Rus land from the Ister, rout the Mysians, and shut them in Dorystolon, and the Mysian ruler Peter dies of a seizure. Nikephoros arms, stretches a chain across the Bosporus, and sends envoys to the Mysians to ask brides for Romanos' sons. Leo reflects that fortune reverses the affairs of the most successful, as it was about to do to Nikephoros.

1 Ἀλλ' οὕτω μέν, ἥπέρ μοι ἤδη ἐῤῥήθη, ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
but so indeed as by-me already was-said the emperor
Νικηφόρος Συρίαν καὶ τὰ παράκτια ταύτης καταδραμών,
Nikephoros Syria and the coastal(-parts) of-it having-overrun
καὶ τὸ ἀντίξουν ἅπαν ἐκποδὼν ποιησάμενος, καὶ λείαν
and the opposing all out-of-the-way having-made and booty
Μυσῶν θέμενος, καὶ πλεῖστα πτολίσματα καθελών, κἂν
of-Mysians having-made and very-many towns having-taken-down and-in
τοῖς ἐπικαιροτάτοις τῆς μεγάλης Ἀντιοχείας φρούριον
the most-advantageous(-parts) of-the great Antioch fort
ἐρυμνὸν δομησάμενος ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις καὶ πολίσας,
strong having-built in three days and having-founded
ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον ἐπανέζευξεν. Ἐντεῦθεν παρὰ τὸν τῶν
to — Byzantium returned thereupon to the of-the
Καρχηδονίων ἀγὸν διεκηρυκεύετο, καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἐναγεστάτου
Carthaginians leader he-sent-heralds and the of-the most-accursed
καὶ ἀσεβεστάτου Μωάμεδ ξίφος δῶρον ἐξέπεμπεν,
and most-impious Mohammed sword as-a-gift sent

ὅπερ λάφυρον ἔκ τινος τῶν κατὰ Παλαιστίνην ἁλόντων
which as-spoil from one of-the in Palestine captured
φρουρίων ἀνείληφε, καὶ τὸν Πατρίκιον ἐξήτει Νικήταν, ὃν
forts he-had-taken and the Patrikios demanded Niketas whom
συνέβη τὸ πρότερον ἐν τῷ περὶ Σικελίαν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
it-happened the before in the about Sicily of-the Romans
πταίσματι δορυάλωτον ληφθέντα, τῷ τοιούτῳ τῶν Ἄφρων
disaster spear-captured taken to-the such of-the Africans
παραπεμφθῆναι κατάρχοντι, ὡς ὁ λόγος ἐδήλωσε. διὰ
to-have-been-sent ruler as the account showed through
γραμμάτων οὖν ἐπέσκηπτεν, ὡς, εἰ ἐνδοιάσῃ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ
letters then he-enjoined that if he-should-hesitate about the of-the
Πατρικίου ἀπόδοσιν, καὶ οὐκ ἐξαυτῆς τοῦτον ἀνήσοι τε
Patrikios restoration and not forthwith him should-release both
τῶν δεσμῶν, καὶ ὡς αὐτὸν παραπέμψῃ, πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον
from-the bonds and to him should-send war truceless
ἤτω προσδοκῶν, καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐπικράτειαν
let-him-be expecting and all the his dominion
ἀνεκτριβῆναι, τοῖς Ῥωμαϊκοῖς δηϊουμένην στρατεύμασι. ταῖς
to-be-wiped-out by-the Roman being-ravaged armies by-the
τοιαύταις οὖν ὁ Καρχηδόνιος ἐκδειματωθεὶς ἀγγελίαις, ὡς
such then the Carthaginian terrified messages as
ἄλλαις τισί, κατὰ τὴν παροιμίαν, ἀπὸ Σκυθῶν ῥήσεσι,
by-other certain according-to the proverb from Scythians speeches
τόν τε Πατρίκιον Νικήταν καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ ληφθέντας
the both Patrikios Niketas and those with him taken
δορυαλώτους, καὶ ὅσους Ῥωμαίων ἐκ διαφόρων χώρων
spear-captured and as-many-as of-Romans from various lands
ἐν εἱρκταῖς πεδήτας παρακατεῖχε, δῶρον τῷ βασιλεῖ
in prisons fettered he-held-back as-a-gift to-the emperor
Νικηφόρῳ ἐξέπεμπε· δέος γὰρ αὐτὸν ὑπεισῄει, ἐκστρατείαν
Nikephoros sent fear for him crept-into campaign

καὶ ἔκπλουν τούτου ἐνωτισάμενον. τὸ γὰρ ἀκαταγώνιστον
and sailing his having-heard the for invincibility
τοῦ ἀνδρός, κἂν ταῖς μάχαις ἀνυπόστατον καὶ ἀπρόσιτον,
of-the man even-in the battles irresistible and unapproachable
καὶ ὅπως εὐπετῶς τὸ ἀντίπαλον ἅπαν ὡς ἔκ τινος
and how easily the opposing all as from some
θείας ῥοπῆς εὐείκτως κατεστρέφετο, ἔφριττόν τε πάντα
divine inclination readily was-subdued dreaded both all
ἔθνη καὶ ἐτεθήπεσαν, καὶ οὐ πολέμιον ἔχειν, ἀλλὰ φίλον
nations and were-astounded and not enemy to-have but friend
καὶ δεσπότην ἠπείγοντο. οὕτω μὲν δὴ ὁ Πατρίκιος
and master they-hastened thus indeed truly the Patrikios
Νικήτας καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ τῶν Ῥωμαίων αἰχμάλωτοι τῶν
Niketas and the rest of-the Romans captives from-the
δεσμῶν ῥυσθέντες καὶ τῆς εἱρκτῆς, πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον
bonds rescued and from-the prison to — Byzantium
ἐπανήεσαν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Νικηφόρος ἥσθη τε, ὡς τὸ
returned the and emperor Nikephoros was-pleased both as the
εἰκός, καὶ ἡμέραν ἦγεν ἑόρτιον, καὶ τὰς εὐχαριστηρίους τῷ
likely and day kept festal and the thanksgiving —
Θεῷ ἐπὶ τῇ τῶν ὁμοφύλων ἀπολυτρώσει ἀπεδίδου εὐχάς.
to-God for the of-the kinsmen ransoming rendered prayers
ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα κατά τε τὴν Συρίαν καὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον
in which and these-things in both — Syria and — Byzantium
τῷ βασιλεῖ διεπράττετο, ὁ πρὸς τοὺς Ταυροσκύθας
by-the emperor were-being-done the to the Tauroscythians
σταλεὶς βασιλικῷ νεύματι Καλοκύρης ὁ Πατρίκιος, κατὰ
sent by-imperial nod Kalokyres the Patrikios in
τὴν Σκυθίαν γενόμενος, καὶ τῷ τῶν Ταύρων κατάρχοντι
— Scythia having-been and with-the of-the Taurians ruler
φιλιωθείς, δώροις τε τοῦτον διαφθείρας καὶ λόγοις
having-made-friends with-gifts both him having-corrupted and with-words

καταγοητεύσας ἐπαγωγοῖς (φιλοκερδὲς δὲ ἅπαν ἐκτόπως
having-bewitched seductive gain-loving and all extraordinarily
τὸ Σκυθικόν, καὶ λίχνον ὅτι μάλιστα, καὶ ἐπιῤῥεπὲς πρὸς
the Scythian(-race) and greedy as most and inclined to
λημμάτων ὑπόσχεσιν καὶ ἀνάληψιν) ἐνέπεισε στρατιὰν
of-gains promise and receiving persuaded army
συναγηοχότα βαρεῖαν, ἐλαύνειν κατὰ Μυσῶν· τούτους
having-gathered heavy to-drive against Mysians them
δὲ καταγωνισάμενον ὑποποιήσασθαι μὲν τὴν χώραν καὶ
and having-overcome to-subdue indeed the land and
ταύτην παρακατέχειν εἰς ἴδιον ἐνδιαίτημα· αὑτῷ δὲ κατὰ
it to-hold for own dwelling for-himself and against
Ῥωμαίων συνάρασθαι, ὅπως κατάσχοι τὴν βασιλείαν, καὶ
Romans to-help so-that he-might-seize the empire and
τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἡγεμονίας ἐπιτεύξοιτο. μεγάλας δὲ καὶ
of-the Roman rule might-obtain great and also
ἀνεκδιηγήτους τὰς ὠφελείας αὐτῷ πράξειν καθυπισχνεῖτο,
indescribable the benefits for-him to-procure he-promised
ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν ταμείων συνεκφορήσαντα.
from the imperial treasuries having-carried-out
Τούτων τῶν λόγων ὁ Σφενδοσλάβος ἀκουτισθεὶς (τοῦτο 2
these the words — Sphendosthlavos having-heard this
γὰρ πρὸς τῶν Ταύρων κατωνομάζετο) οὐχ οἷός τε ἦν
for by the Taurians he-was-named not able — he-was
ἐπισχεῖν τὴν ὁρμήν· ἀλλά, μετέωρος ταῖς ἐλπίσι τοῦ
to-check the rush but elated by-the hopes of-the
πλούτου γενόμενος, ὀνειροπολῶν τε τὴν τῆς χώρας
wealth having-become dreaming-of both the of-the land
κατάσχεσιν τῶν Μυσῶν, καὶ ἄλλως δὲ θερμουργός τε ὢν
possession of-the Mysians and otherwise too hot-headed both being
καὶ θρασύς, ἄλκιμός τε καὶ ῥέκτης ἀνήρ, πᾶσαν ἡβηδὸν
and bold valiant both and active a-man all to-a-man

ἡλικίαν τῶν Ταύρων πρὸς τὴν ἐκστρατείαν κατήπειγεν.
age of-the Taurians to the campaign he-urged
ἑξήκοντα τοιγαροῦν χιλιαδῶν ἀκμαίων ἀνδρῶν στρατιὰν
of-sixty therefore thousands of-vigorous men army
συναγείρας, ἐκτὸς τοῦ θητικοῦ, ἅμα τῷ Πατρικίῳ
having-gathered besides the hired(-men) together-with the Patrikios
Καλοκύρῃ, ὃν καὶ ὁμαίμονα προσήκατο φιλίας θεσμοῖς,
Kalokyres whom also brother he-adopted of-friendship by-laws
ἐχώρει κατὰ Μυσῶν. ἄρτι δὲ παραπλέοντος τὸν Ἴστρον,
he-went against Mysians just and sailing-along the Ister
καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἐπὶ τῆς ἠπείρου ἀπόβασιν ἐπειγομένου,
and to the onto the mainland landing hastening
αἰσθόμενοι τὸ δρώμενον οἱ Μυσοί, εἰς τρισμυρίων ἀνδρῶν
having-perceived the being-done the Mysians into of-thirty-thousand men
συναγομένην φάλαγγα συνασπίσαντες ὑπηντίαζον. ἀλλ᾽
being-gathered phalanx having-locked-shields went-to-meet but
ἐῤῥωμενέστατα τῶν πορθμείων ἀποβάντες οἱ Ταῦροι,
most-vigorously from-the boats having-disembarked the Taurians
τά τε σάκη προβαλόντες, καὶ τὰ ξίφη σπασάμενοι,
the both shields having-put-forward and the swords having-drawn
ἐπιστροφάδην ἔπληττον τοὺς Μυσούς. οἱ δέ, μηδὲ τὴν
turning-about struck the Mysians they and not-even the
πρώτην ῥοπὴν ἐνεγκόντες, εἰς φυγαδείαν ἐτράποντο καὶ
first force having-borne into flight turned and
πρὸς τὸ Δορύστολον (ἐχυρὸν δὲ φρούριον τοῦτο Μυσῶν)
to — Dorystolon strong and fort this of-Mysians
ἀγεννῶς συνεκλείοντο. τηνικαῦτα δὴ λέγεται καὶ Πέτρον,
ignobly shut-themselves-in then indeed it-is-said also Peter
τὸν ἡγήτορα τῶν Μυσῶν, ἄνδρα θεοφιλῆ καὶ σεβάσμιον,
the leader of-the Mysians a-man God-loving and reverend
τῷ ἀπροσδοκήτῳ τῆς τροπῆς περιαλγήσαντα, ἐπιληψίας
at-the unexpectedness of-the rout having-grieved-sorely of-epilepsy

πάθος περιπεσεῖν, καὶ ὀλίγον ἐπιβιώσαντα, τῶν τῇδε
affliction to-have-fallen-into and little having-survived from-the here(-things)
ὑπαπελθεῖν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν κατὰ τὴν Μυσίαν ἐπράττετο
to-have-departed but these-things indeed in — Mysia were-done
ὕστερον· ὁ δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων αὐτοκράτωρ Νικηφόρος,
later the and of-the Romans emperor Nikephoros
τὰ περὶ τῶν Ταύρων διαγνούς, καὶ ἄλλως δὲ παρὰ
the(-things) about the Taurians having-learned and otherwise too through
πᾶσαν αὑτοῦ τὴν βιοτὴν μεμεριμνημένος τις ὤν, καὶ
all his-own the life thoughtful a-certain being and
ἐγρηγορώς, καὶ μὴ νευστάζων, μηδέ τισιν ἡδοναῖς ὅλως
wakeful and not nodding nor to-any pleasures wholly
δουλούμενος (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔχοι τις λέγειν, ὡς ἴδοι τοῦτον
enslaved nor for could anyone say that he-saw him
κωμάσαντα κἂν ἐν νεότητι), τότε παντοδαπός τις
reveling even in youth then of-every-sort a-certain
ἦν, καὶ τὴν πεζικὴν στρατιὰν ἐξήρτυε, καὶ τοὺς λόχους
he-was and the foot army equipped and the companies
καθώπλιζε, καὶ τὴν ἱππικὴν φάλαγγα ἐς βάθος διέταττε,
armed and the horse phalanx to depth drew-up
καὶ πανσιδήρους ἱππότας ἀπέφαινε. τάς τε μηχανὰς τὰς
and all-iron horsemen made the both engines the
ἐφετηρίους τεκταινόμενος ἐπὶ τῶν τῆς πόλεως πυργωμάτων
launching building on the of-the city towers
καθίδρυε, καὶ σειρὰν βαρυτάλαντον ἐκ σιδήρου πεποιημένην
set and chain heavy-weighted from iron made
ἐπὶ τὸν πύργον ἐνδησάμενος, ὃν Κεντηνάριον κικλήσκειν
to the tower having-bound which Kentenarion to-call
εἰώθασιν, ἐπὶ φιτρῶν τε μεγίστων ἐφαρμοσάμενος, κατὰ
they-are-wont on logs both greatest having-fitted across
τὸν Βόσπορον ἔτεινε, καὶ πρὸς τὸ τοῦ καταντιπέρας
the Bosporus he-stretched and to the of-the opposite

Καστελλίου πύργωμα ἀνῆψε. δραστήριος δὲ ὤν, καὶ
Kastellion tower he-fastened energetic and being and
βαθυγνώμων, εἰ καί τις ἄλλος, ὧν ἴσμεν, ἀνήρ,
profound-minded if even anyone else of-whom we-know a-man
ἀξύμφορον εἶναί οἱ διελογίζετο, εἰ πρὸς ἀμφότερα τὰ ἔθνη
unprofitable to-be for-him he-reckoned if against both the nations
τὴν διαμάχην ἄροιτο. ξυνοῖσον οὖν ἐδόκει εἶναι αὐτῷ,
the fight he-should-take-up advantageous then it-seemed to-be to-him
εἰ τὸ ἓν ὑποποιήσῃ τῶν ἐθνῶν. οὕτω γὰρ ἐδόκει ῥᾷστα
if the one he-should-win-over of-the nations so for it-seemed most-easily
περιέσεσθαι τοῦ ἑνός, καὶ αὐτὸ θᾶττον καταγωνίσασθαι.
he-would-prevail-over the one and it quicker to-overcome
3 Ἐντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ τὸ παρὰ τῶν Ταύρων ἀπεγνώκει
thereupon since the from the Taurians he-had-despaired
διακηρυκεύεσθαι (ᾔδει γὰρ τὸν Πατρίκιον Καλοκύρην
to-negotiate he-knew for the Patrikios Kalokyres
ἅπαξ τῆς εὐθείας ἐκκλίναντα καὶ τῆς τούτου
once from-the straight having-turned-aside and from-the his
κυρίας ἀφηνιάσαντα, καὶ μέγα παρὰ τῷ Σφενδοσλάβῳ
authority having-rebelled and greatly with — Sphendosthlavos
δυνηθέντα, μὴ εὐείκτως τῷ τούτου θελήματι
having-become-powerful not readily by-the his will
σπείσασθαι), πρὸς τοὺς ὁμοθρήσκους Μυσοὺς ἐβουλεύσατο
to-make-terms to the co-religionist Mysians he-planned
μᾶλλον πρεσβείαν στείλασθαι. καὶ δῆτα πρέσβεις ὡς αὐτοὺς
rather embassy to-send and indeed envoys to them
ἔστελλε, τόν τε Πατρίκιον Νικηφόρον, ᾧ τὸ ἐπώνυμον
he-sent the both Patrikios Nikephoros to-whom the surname
Ἐρωτικός, καὶ Φιλόθεον, τὸν τῶν Εὐχαΐτων πρόεδρον, καὶ
Erotikos and Philotheos the — of-Euchaita proedros and
τῆς τε θρησκείας αὐτοὺς ὑπεμίμνησκε (τὰ Χριστιανῶν
of-the both religion them he-reminded the(-faith) of-Christians

γὰρ ἀναντιῤῥήτως πρεσβεύουσιν οἱ Μυσοί), καὶ παρθένους
for indisputably hold-in-honor the Mysians and maidens
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ γένους ἐξῄτει, ὡς συνάψῃ ταύτας
of-the royal family he-demanded so-that he-might-join them
τοῖς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Ῥωμανοῦ παισί, καὶ ἀδιάῤῥηκτος
to-the of-the emperor Romanos sons and unbreakable
ἐκ τοῦ κήδους ἥ τε πρὸς Ῥωμαίους καὶ τοὺς
from the marriage-alliance the both toward Romans and the
Μυσοὺς καταλλαγὴ καὶ φιλία ἐμπεδωθῇ. οἱ δὲ Μυσοὶ
Mysians reconciliation and friendship might-be-confirmed the and Mysians
ἄσμενοι τὴν πρεσβείαν ἐδέχοντο, καὶ κόρας ἐξ αἵματος
gladly the embassy received and girls from blood
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν ἀναβιβάσαντες (εἰθισμένον δὲ
of-the royal on wagons having-put-up customary and
γυναιξὶ Μυσῶν, ἐφ' ἁμαξῶν ὀχεῖσθαι), τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
for-women of-Mysians on wagons to-ride to-the emperor
Νικηφόρῳ ἐξέπεμπον, ἀπαμῦναι σφίσιν ὅτι τάχιστα
Nikephoros they-sent to-defend them as quickly-as-possible
ποτνιώμενοι, καὶ τὸν τοῖς αὐχέσιν αὐτῶν ἐπικείμενον
imploring and the on-the necks their lying
πέλεκυν τῶν Ταύρων ἀποτρέψαι καὶ κενὸν ἀπεργάσασθαι.
axe of-the Taurians to-turn-away and empty to-make
καὶ κἂν ἐπήμυνε τούτοις, καὶ τρόπαια κατὰ τῶν
and even he-would-have-defended them and trophies against the
Ταύρων ἐστήσατο, ἐπεὶ καὶ κατὰ πάντων, πρὸς οὓς
Taurians would-have-set-up since also against all against whom
ἂν τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἀντεπήνεγκε δύναμιν. ἀλλ' ἀπὸ μικρᾶς
— the Roman he-brought-against force but from small
ῥοπῆς αἰωρούμενα τὰ ἀνθρώπινα, καὶ ὡς ἔκ τινος
inclination suspended the human(-things) and as from some
εἰπεῖν λεπτῆς κρόκης ἐκκρεμαννύμενα, καὶ εἰς τὸ ἐναντίον
to-say fine thread hanging-down also into the opposite

εἴωθε περιχωρεῖν. ἀνεπισφαλῶς γάρ τινες οἴονται νέμεσίν
are-wont to-turn unerringly for some think nemesis
τινα θείαν καὶ φθόνον ἀνθρώπινον τοῖς ἐπισήμοις καὶ
a-certain divine and envy human to-the distinguished and
ἀλκιμωτάτοις ἀνδράσι προσίστασθαι, σφάλλοντα τούτους,
most-valiant men to-beset tripping them
καὶ περιτρέποντα, καὶ εἰς τὸ μηδὲν συνελαύνοντα. οἷα
and overturning and into the nothing driving such-as
δὴ καὶ τότε τῷ αὐτοκράτορι Νικηφόρῳ, κατὰ ῥοῦν αὐτῷ
indeed also then to-the emperor Nikephoros with stream for-him
φερομένων τῶν πραγμάτων, καὶ ὡς οὐκ ἄλλῳ τῶν πρὸ
being-borne the affairs and as not to-another of-those before
αὐτοῦ ἡγεμονευσάντων, συμβέβηκεν. ἐγὼ δὲ τοῦτό φημι, ὅτι
him having-ruled happened I and this I-say that
ἀμηχάνῳ τοῦ κρείττονος προμηθείᾳ ἤδη τοῖς ἀνθρώποις
by-unfathomable of-the stronger providence already for-the men
εὐροοῦντα τὰ πράγματα εἰς τοὐναντίον ἀντιπεριΐσταται,
flowing-well the affairs into the-opposite are-turned-round
ὡς ταύτῃ παιδευθεῖεν θνητοὶ ὄντες καὶ πρόσκαιροι, καὶ
so-that thus might-be-taught mortal being and temporary and
μὴ περαιτέρω φυσῷεν τοῦ προσήκοντος. ἤδη γάρ τινες
not further should-puff-up than-the fitting already for some
εὐπραγίαις ἐπιβάντες καὶ κατὰ τὰς μάχας εὐδοκιμήσαντες,
on-successes having-mounted and in the battles having-won-fame
θεοὺς ἀνειπεῖν αὑτοὺς οὐκ ἐνάρκησαν, εἰς αὐτὴν τὴν
gods to-proclaim themselves not shrank against very the
πρόνοιαν ἐξυβρίσαντες. παράδειγμα τούτων οἱ τοῦ Ἀλωέως
providence having-been-insolent example of-these the — of-Aloeus
παῖδες Ὦτος καὶ Ἐφιάλτης, εἰς οὐρανοὺς κατὰ τὸν
sons Otos and Ephialtes into heavens according-to the
μῦθον πειρώμενοι ἀνελθεῖν, καὶ Ναβουχοδονόσορ ὁ
myth trying to-go-up and Nebuchadnezzar the

Βαβυλώνιος, εἰκόνα στησάμενος ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ ὁ Φιλίππου
Babylonian image having-set-up of-himself and the of-Philip
Ἀλέξανδρος, Ἄμμωνος υἱὸς ἀξιῶν ὀνομάζεσθαι. εἰκότως
Alexander of-Ammon son thinking-fit to-be-named fittingly
οὖν τρεπτὰ καὶ παλίντροπα καθέστηκε τοῖς ἀνθρώποις
then changeable and turning-back has-become for-the men
τὰ πράγματα, οἷα δὴ καὶ τότε Ῥωμαίοις συνέβαινεν,
the affairs such-as indeed also then to-Romans happened
ἀποβαλοῦσι μετὰ μικρὸν ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἑαυτῶν, οἷον οὐκ
having-lost after little leader the their-own such-as not
ἔσχεν ἄλλον ἡ Ῥωμαϊκὴ δυναστεία τὸ πρότερον. εἰ γὰρ
had another the Roman power the before if for
μὴ τῇ τούτου ἀναιρέσει εἰς τὸ ἔμπαλιν ἡ τύχη τούτοις
not by-the his slaying into the reverse the fortune for-them
ἀπέτρεχεν, οὐδὲν ἐνέδει, ἐπιβιοῦντος ἐκείνου, μὴ τὰ
ran-off nothing was-lacking surviving him not the
ὅρια πήξασθαι τῆς σφῶν ἐπικρατείας πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα
boundaries to-fix of-the their dominion toward rising
ἥλιον κατὰ τὴν Ἰνδικήν, καὶ αὖθις ἐπὶ δυόμενον πρὸς
sun in the India and again to setting to
αὐτὰ τῆς οἰκουμένης τὰ τέρματα. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐπανακτέον
very of-the inhabited-world the bounds but for must-be-brought-back
τὸν λόγον, ὅθεν ἀπέκλινε τοῦ εἱρμοῦ.
the account whence it-turned-aside of-the sequence

The garrison Nikephoros left harries Antioch into want, and Michael Burtzes, sent by the stratopedarch Peter, scales the wall by night with ladders, cuts down the sleeping guards, and fires the town; at dawn Peter rides in and the Antiochenes surrender. A hermit hands Nikephoros a note foretelling his death in the third month after September, and from then on he sleeps on a leopard skin on the floor. His father the Caesar Bardas dies at over ninety. Theophano persuades him to recall John Tzimiskes, who visits her by secret entrances and with picked men plots the emperor's murder. On 10 December a cleric's note warns the emperor, but the chamberlain leaves the conspirators' room unsearched.

4 Οἱ μὲν δὴ Μυσοὶ χεῖρας ἱκέτιδας ἐφήπλουν, ἐπαμῦναι
the indeed truly Mysians hands suppliant spread-out to-help
σφίσι δυσωποῦντες τὸν αὐτοκράτορα. ἐν ᾧ δὲ πρὸς
them imploring the emperor in which and for
τὴν ἐκστρατείαν διεσκευάζετο, ἡ τῆς μεγάλης Ἀντιοχείας
the campaign he-was-preparing the of-the great Antioch
ἅλωσις ἐπηγγέλλετο, ἄρτι κατὰ τὰς ἐκείνου ὑποθήκας
capture was-announced just according-to the his instructions
ἁλοῦσα, ἃς δὴ τοῖς καταλειφθεῖσι πρὸς αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸ
taken which indeed to-the left by him for the
ταύτην λεηλατεῖν στρατιώταις ἐπέσκηπτε. λέγεται γάρ, ὡς,
it to-plunder soldiers he-enjoined it-is-said for that
ἐπείπερ ταῖς καθ' ἡμέραν καταδρομαῖς εἰς ἀμηχανίαν καὶ
since by-the per day raids into helplessness and
σπάνιν τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἐσχάτην συνηλαύνετο, τὸν Πατρίκιον
lack of-the necessities uttermost it-was-driven the Patrikios
Πέτρον καὶ στρατοπεδάρχην, τομίαν μὲν ὄντα, ῥέκτην
Peter and stratopedarch eunuch indeed being active
δὲ τὴν ἄλλως καὶ ῥωμαλεώτατον, κατατρέχοντα Συρίαν,
but — otherwise and most-strong overrunning Syria

ἐκεῖσε μετὰ τῆς δυνάμεως ἀφικέσθαι, καὶ Μιχαὴλ ἐκεῖνον,
there with the force to-have-come and Michael that-one
ἐν ταξιάρχοις τελοῦντα, ᾧ Βούρτζης ἐπώνυμον, ἐπὶ
among taxiarchs being to-whom Burtzes surname on
κατασκοπὴν ἐκπέμψαι τῆς πόλεως. τὸν δὲ μετὰ καὶ
reconnaissance to-have-sent of-the city him and with also
ἄλλων λογάδων ἀγχοῦ ταύτης γενόμενον, τὸν ἐπίβατον
other picked(-men) near it having-been the scalable(-part)
τοῦ τείχους περισκοπῆσαι, καὶ ὀπισθόρμητον ἀπαλλαγῆναι
of-the wall to-have-surveyed and back-rushing to-have-gone-off
πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον, κλίμακάς τε ἀναλόγους τῷ ὕψει
to the camp ladders both proportionate to-the height
τῶν πύργων τεκτήνασθαι· κἂν τοῖς ἀχθοφόροις ζώοις
of-the towers to-have-built and-on the burden-bearing animals
ταύτας ἐπιφορτίσασθαι, καὶ μετὰ λεγεῶνος γενναιοτάτων
these to-have-loaded and with a-legion of-most-noble
στρατιωτῶν ἤδη μέσων νυκτῶν τὸν τῆς Ἀντιοχείας
soldiers already of-mid nights the — of-Antioch
περίβολον αὖθις καταλαβεῖν, ἤρεμά τε ταύτας προσερεῖσαι
circuit-wall again to-have-reached gently both these to-set-against
τῷ τείχει καὶ ἀνιέναι διὰ τῶν κλιμάκων· τοὺς δὲ φύλακας
the wall and to-go-up by the ladders the and guards
τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, βαθεῖ τῷ ὕπνῳ καθεύδοντας, τοῖς ξίφεσι
of-the Hagarenes in-deep the sleep sleeping with-the swords
διαχρήσασθαι. ἐγκρατεῖς δὲ τῶν τειχῶν τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον
to-have-dispatched masters and of-the walls the way this
Ῥωμαίους γεγενημένους καταβῆναί τε τῶν πύργων,
Romans having-become to-have-gone-down both from-the towers
καὶ τετραχῶς τὸ ἄστυ πυρπολεῖν· Ἀντιοχεῖς δέ, τῷ
and in-four-places the town to-burn Antiochenes and by-the
ἀπροσδοκήτῳ καταπλαγέντας, εἰς οἰμωγὰς καὶ θρήνους
unexpectedness astounded into wailings and laments

τραπῆναι καὶ ἀμηχανίαν δεινήν, διενθυμουμένους ὅ τι καὶ
to-have-turned and helplessness terrible pondering what — also
δράσαιεν. ἤδη δὲ πρὸς ἀλκὴν ὁρμᾷν διαλογιζομένων, καὶ
they-should-do already and to strength to-rush deliberating and
ῥωμαλέως τοῖς ἐναντίοις συστάδην ἀντικαθίστασθαι, τῆς
strongly the opponents in-close-fight to-withstand the
ἕω τηλαυγῶς ὑπαυγαζούσης, προέφθασε τὴν ἐκείνων ὁρμὴν
dawn far-shining glimmering anticipated the their rush
ὁ στρατοπεδάρχης Πέτρος, μετὰ τῆς δυνάμεως εἰς τὴν
the stratopedarch Peter with the force into the
πόλιν διὰ τῶν πυλῶν εἰσελάσας, ἃς οἱ προκατασχόντες
city through the gates having-ridden-in which the having-first-seized
τὸ ἄστυ Ῥωμαῖοι αὐτῷ ἀνεπέτασαν. Ἀντιοχεῖς δὲ πρὸς
the town Romans for-him had-thrown-open Antiochenes and against
τοσαύτην στρατιὰν μηδὲ ἀντωπεῖν ἐξισχύοντες, τὰ ὅπλα
such army not-even to-look-in-the-face being-strong the arms
ῥίψαντες, εἰς ἱκετείαν ἐτράποντο. οὓς ὁ στρατοπεδάρχης
having-thrown-away to supplication turned whom the stratopedarch
ἀνδραποδισάμενος, καὶ τὴν πυρκαϊὰν ἀποσβέσας, καὶ τῶν
having-enslaved and the conflagration having-quenched and of-the
σύλων ἐξελὼν τὰ πρωτόλεια, τήν τε πόλιν κατὰ
spoils having-taken-out the first-fruits the both city by
κράτος κατεῖχε, καὶ τῶν τειχῶν τὰ ἐπισφαλῆ ἐκρατύνετο.
force held and of-the walls the weak(-parts) strengthened
5 Ἀλλ᾽ οὕτω μὲν ἡ περιφανὴς καὶ μεγάλη Ἀντιόχεια πρὸς
but so indeed the illustrious and great Antioch by
τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἥλω τε καὶ ἐπορθήθη. τὴν γοῦν ταύτης
the Romans was-taken both and was-sacked the at-any-rate its
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ διακούσας κατάσχεσιν, ἐγεγήθει τε, καὶ τῷ
the emperor having-heard capture rejoiced both and to-the
κρείττονι εὐχαριστήρια ἔθυσεν. ἔτυχε δὲ τότε τὴν τῶν
stronger thank-offerings sacrificed it-happened and then the of-the

Ἀσωμάτων ἀπαντῆσαι σύναξιν, ἐν ᾗ καὶ μοναχόν τινα
Bodiless(-ones) to-fall feast in which also monk a-certain
λέγεται τῶν ἐρημικῶν ἐπιστόλιον ἐπιδόντα τῷ βασιλεῖ,
it-is-said of-the hermits a-little-letter having-handed to-the emperor
ἐκποδὼν ἐξαυτῆς οἴχεσθαι. τὸν δὲ ἀνελῖξαί τε τοῦτο,
out-of-the-way forthwith to-have-gone him and to-unroll both this
καὶ τὸν νοῦν αὐτοῦ ἀναλέξασθαι· εἶναι δὲ τὴν τούτου
and the meaning its to-read to-be and the its
ἔμφασιν τοιαύτην· "ἐμοὶ τῷ σκώληκι παρὰ τῆς προνοίας
purport such to-me the worm by the providence
ἀπεκαλύφθη, βασιλεῦ, μεταναστῆναί σε τῶν τῇδε τῷ
it-was-revealed emperor to-depart you from-the here(-things) in-the
μετὰ τὸν παρελθόντα Σεπτέμβριον τρίτῳ μηνί." πολλὰ
after the past September third month much
τοίνυν ἀναψηλαφήσας ὁ βασιλεύς, οὐχ εὗρε τὸν μοναχόν.
therefore having-searched the emperor not found the monk
ἐντεῦθεν ἐν κατηφείᾳ διῆγε καὶ σκυθρωπότητι· ἐπὶ κλίνης
thereafter in dejection he-lived and gloom on bed
τε τὸ παράπαν ἔκτοτε οὐκ ἐβουλήθη διαναπαύσασθαι,
both the at-all from-then not he-wished to-rest
ἀλλ' ἐπ' ἐδάφους ὑποστρωννύων δέρμα παρδάλεως, καὶ
but on floor spreading skin of-leopard and
κοκκοβαφῆ πῖλον, ἐπὶ τούτων ἐκάθευδε, μανδύῃ τῷ
scarlet-dyed felt on these he-slept with-a-cloak the
τοῦ μοναχοῦ Μιχαὴλ καὶ θείου αὐτοῦ, ᾧ Μαλεΐνος
of-the monk Michael and uncle his to-whom Maleinos
ἐπώνυμον, ἄνωθεν ἐπικαλύπτων αὑτοῦ τὸ σωμάτιον· ἐν
surname from-above covering his the poor-body in
οἷς εἴθιστο καθεύδειν, ὁπηνίκα τῶν δεσποτικῶν ἑορτῶν
which he-was-wont to-sleep when of-the of-the-Lord feasts
τις εἰσήλαυνε, καὶ τῶν μυστηρίων Χριστοῦ τῶν ἀχράντων
any came-in and of-the mysteries of-Christ the immaculate

ἠβούλετο μετασχεῖν. κατὰ ταύτας δὲ τὰς ἡμέρας συνέβη
he-wished to-partake in these and the days it-happened
καὶ τὸν Καίσαρα Βάρδαν, τὸν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου
also the Caesar Bardas the of-the emperor Nikephoros
πατέρα, τοῦ βίου μεταναστῆναι, ὑπὲρ τὰ ἐννενήκοντα
father from-the life to-depart over the ninety
ἔτη διαβιώσαντα, κἂν τοῖς στρατιωτικοῖς καταλόγοις ἐξ
years having-lived even-in the military rolls from
αὐτῆς ἥβης καταγηράσαντα, καὶ πολλὰ τρόπαια καὶ νίκας
very youth having-grown-old and many trophies and victories
ἐν τοῖς κατὰ πόλεμον ἀνδραγαθήμασιν ἀναδησάμενον. ὃν
in the in war deeds-of-valor having-bound-on whom
ἐπένθησεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τεθνηκότα, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἐκ τῶν
mourned the emperor dead as the likely from the
ἀνακτόρων τε καὶ μέχρι τῆς ἑστίας αὐτοῦ κατὰ μεσημβρίαν
palace both and as-far-as the hearth his at south
κειμένης τοῦ ἄστεος, πρὸς τὸ κάταντες τῆς ἐπὶ θάλασσαν
lying of-the town toward the downhill of-the to sea
φερούσης ὁδοῦ, ἵνα ὁ τῆς Σοφίας λιμὴν ἥπλωται, τὸν
leading road where the — of-Sophia harbor is-spread-out the
τούτου νεκρὸν προέπεμψε, καὶ τῇ σορῷ περιέστειλε.
his corpse he-escorted and in-the coffin laid-out
μετὰ δέ τινας ἡμέρας τοῦ ἐπὶ τῷ πατρὶ πένθους τῷ
after and some days the for the father mourning to-the
βασιλεῖ ὑπολωφήσαντος, εὐκαιρίας ἡ Αὐγούστα Θεοφανὼ
emperor having-abated opportunity the Augusta Theophano
δραξαμένη, πρόσεισι τούτῳ καταμόνας, πολλὴν συνείρουσα
having-grasped approaches him alone much stringing-together
λόγων πειθώ, Ἰωάννην τε τὸν Μάγιστρον, ᾧ Τζιμισκῆς
of-words persuasion John both the Magistros to-whom Tzimiskes
τὸ ἐπώνυμον, οὐκ ἀνίη ἐξαιτουμένη, προσλιπαροῦσά
the surname not she-ceased asking-for entreating

τε καὶ ποτνιωμένη. καὶ δικαίαν δῆθεν τὴν σκῆψιν
both and imploring and just supposedly the pretext
προτεινομένη, καί, "ἵνα τί πάντα μέτρῳ καὶ σταθμῷ
putting-forward and for what all with-measure and weight
ῥυθμίζων τὰ σά, βασιλεῦ, ὡς ἀκριβῆ στάθμην εἶναί
regulating the your(-affairs) emperor as exact rule to-be
σε καὶ κανόνα σωφροσύνης εὐθύτατον, παρορᾷς ἄνδρα
you and canon of-self-control most-straight do-you-overlook a-man
γενναῖον οὕτω καὶ νεανικόν, ἀριπρεπῆ τε κατὰ τὰς
noble so and youthful most-distinguished both in the
μάχας τυγχάνοντα καὶ ἀκαταγώνιστον, ἐγκυλινδεῖσθαι τῷ
battles being and invincible to-wallow in-the
βορβόρῳ τῶν ἡδονῶν, καὶ βίον μεταδιώκειν παρεξηυλημένον
mire of-the pleasures and a-life to-pursue dissipated
καὶ ἄνετον, σφριγῶντα καὶ αὐτὴν τῆς ἡλικίας ἄγοντα
and unrestrained swelling and very of-the age leading
τὴν ἀκμήν, καὶ ταῦτα αὐτανεψιὸν τοῦ σοῦ πεφηνότα
the prime and this a-cousin of-the your having-been-shown
κράτους, λαμπράν τε τοῦ γένους, ἕλκοντα τὴν σειράν;
power brilliant both of-the family drawing the chain
ἀλλ', εἰ δοκεῖ, κέλευε τὴν ταχίστην, τῶν χώρων
but if it-seems-good order the quickest from-the lands
ἵνα διατρίβει ἀπάραντα, ἀφικέσθαι τε πρὸς ἡμᾶς καὶ
where he-stays having-set-out to-come both to us and
συζύγῳ τῶν εὐγενῶν ἁρμοσθῆναι. τὴν γὰρ ἤδη νόμῳ
with-a-wife of-the nobles to-be-joined the for already by-law
γάμου προσαρμοσθεῖσαν αὐτῷ ὁ πικρός, ὡς οἶσθα, καὶ
of-marriage joined to-him the bitter as you-know and
λυσιμελ�ὴς ἐξεθέρισε θάνατος. εἶξον λοιπόν, βασιλεῦ, καὶ
limb-loosening mowed-down death yield henceforth emperor and
εἰσηγουμένῃ τὰ δέοντα πείσθητι, καὶ μὴ προκείσθω
to-me-proposing the needful(-things) be-persuaded and not let-there-lie-open

ταῖς ἀκολάστοις γλώσσαις κωμῳδία καὶ σαρκασμὸς ὁ
to-the licentious tongues mockery and sarcasm he-who
ἐκ τοῦ σοῦ γένους ἀναδραμών, κἂν ταῖς τῶν πολέμων
from the your family having-sprung even-in the of-the wars
ἀνδραγαθίαις παρὰ πάντων μεγαλαυχούμενος."
deeds-of-valor by all being-boasted-of

6 Τούτοις τοῖς λόγοις μετελθοῦσα τὸν αὐτοκράτορα καί, ὡς
with-these the words having-gone-after the emperor and as
τὸ εἰκός, καταγοητεύσασα (εὔνοιαν γὰρ ὑπὲρ τὸ προσῆκον
the likely having-bewitched goodwill for beyond the fitting
παρεῖχεν αὐτῇ, ἐκτόπως τῆς ὥρας ταύτης ἡττώμενος),
he-showed to-her extraordinarily by-the bloom her being-overcome
ἀνέπεισεν εἰσκαλέσαι τὸν Ἰωάννην, καὶ θᾶττον ἀπαντῆσαι
she-persuaded to-call-in — John and quickly to-come
πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον. ὁ δὲ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἰσελάσας
to — Byzantium he and to the reigning(-city) having-ridden-in
καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ παραστάς, ἐπείπερ ἐπισκήψεις ἐδέξατο
and beside-the emperor having-stood since injunctions he-received
τοῖς βασιλείοις ὁσημέραι φοιτᾷν, τότε μὲν ἐφ' ἑστίας
to-the palace daily to-go then indeed to hearth
εὐθὺς ἀπηλλάττετο· μετέπειτα δὲ παρὰ τὴν βασίλειον
at-once went-off afterward and to the imperial
αὐλὴν οὐ διελίμπανεν ἀνιών. ἅτε δὲ θερμουργός τις
court not he-ceased going-up as and hot-headed a-certain
ἀνὴρ πεφυκώς, καὶ τολμήσας εἰ καί τις ἄλλος, καὶ
man being-by-nature and having-dared if even anyone else and
πράγμασιν ἐπιχειρεῖν ἀλλοκότοις παραβολώτατος, ἐξεῦρε
affairs to-attempt strange most-reckless he-found-out
μηχανήν, ὥστε διά τινων ἀφανῶν εἰσόδων πρὸς τῆς
a-device so-as through certain hidden entrances by the
Αὐγούστης ἑτοιμασθεισῶν ὑποδύεσθαί τε καὶ εἰς λόγους
Augusta having-been-prepared to-slip-in both and into words

ταύτῃ συνέρχεσθαι, καὶ τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου
with-her to-come and the of-the emperor Nikephoros
τῶν ἀνακτόρων μελετῆσαι καθαίρεσιν. ἐντεῦθεν ἄνδρας
from-the palace to-plan removal thereafter men
ῥωμαλέους καὶ νεανικοὺς τὰ πολέμια ἐκ διαλειμμάτων
strong and youthful in-the warlike(-things) at intervals
πρὸς αὐτὴν ἐξέπεμπεν, οὓς ὑποδεχομένη ἐν οἰκίσκῳ
to her he-sent whom receiving in little-room
σκοταίῳ παρ᾽ αὐτῇ παρεφύλαττεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πόνον ἡ
dark beside herself she-kept when and toil the
τούτων ἐπὶ κακῷ συλλαβοῦσα συμφωνία καὶ δεινὴν ἀδικίαν
their for evil having-conceived conspiracy and dire injustice
ὠδίνασα, τὴν πονηρὰν τεκεῖν ἀνομίαν ἠπείγετο,
having-been-in-labor-with the wicked to-bring-forth lawlessness hastened
συνελθόντες αὖθις ἀλλήλοις κατὰ τὸ σύνηθες,
having-come-together again with-one-another according-to the custom
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Νικηφόρον τῆς ἀρχῆς κατασπᾶσαι
the emperor Nikephoros from-the rule to-drag-down
διέγνωσαν, ἐκεῖθεν ἐφ᾽ ἑστίας ὁ Ἰωάννης ἀπαλλαγείς,
they-decided from-there to hearth — John having-gone-off
Μιχαήλ τε, τὸν καλούμενον Βούρτζην, καὶ Λέοντα τὸν
Michael both the called Burtzes and Leo —
Πεδιάσιμον εἰσκαλέσας καὶ τὸ δωμάτιον κλείσας, τὴν
Pediasimos having-called-in and the chamber having-shut the
τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου μετ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐσκαιωρεῖτο
of-the emperor Nikephoros with them contrived
ἀναίρεσιν. μὴν ἐφειστήκει τότε Δεκέμβριος, δεκάτην
killing month was-at-hand then December tenth
ἐλαύνων ἡμέραν. λέγεται δὲ κατὰ τὴν ἑσπέραν παρὰ
driving day it-is-said and in the evening at
τὸν καιρὸν τῆς ὑμνῳδίας κληρικόν τινα τῆς βασιλείου
the time of-the hymn-singing cleric a-certain of-the imperial

αὐλῆς λίβελλον ἀναδοῦναι τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἐν ᾧ ταῦτα
court petition to-hand to-the emperor in which these-things
ἐγέγραπτο· "γνωστὸν ἔστω σοι, βασιλεῦ, ὡς ὄλεθρός
had-been-written known let-it-be to-you emperor that destruction
σοι ταύτῃ τῇ νυκτὶ ἐπικαττύεται χαλεπός. ὅτι δὲ ἀληθῆ
for-you this the night is-being-contrived harsh that and true
ταῦτα, ἡ γυναικωνῖτις ἐρευνηθήτω, ἐν ᾗ ἄνδρες ἔνοπλοι
these-things the women's-quarters let-be-searched in which men armed
καταληφθήσονται, οἱ τὴν σὴν μέλλοντες αὐτουργῆσαι
will-be-caught those the your going to-perpetrate
σφαγήν." τὸν γοῦν λίβελλον ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀναγνούς,
slaughter the at-any-rate petition the emperor having-read
Μιχαὴλ τῷ τοῦ κοιτῶνος κατάρχοντι ἔρευναν ἀκριβῆ τῶν
to-Michael the of-the bedchamber ruler search exact of-the
ἀνδρῶν ποιῆσαι παρεκελεύσατο· ὁ δέ, εἴτε τὴν Αὐγούσταν
men to-make ordered he and whether the Augusta
καταιδεσθείς, εἴτε μελλήσει χρησάμενος, ἢ καὶ θεοβλαβείᾳ
having-respected or with-delay having-used or also by-God-sent-folly
παρενεχθείς, παρῆκε τὸ δωμάτιον, ἐν ᾧ τὸ τῶν φόνων
led-astray let-pass the chamber in which the of-the murders
τῶν ἀνδρῶν καθῆστο στίφος, ἀνεξερεύνητον. ἤδη δὲ τῆς
of-the men sat band unsearched already and the
νυκτὸς ἐπελθούσης, κατὰ τὸ εἰθισμένον ἡ βασιλὶς πρὸς
night having-come according-to the custom the empress to
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα εἰσφοιτήσασα, λόγους διῄει περὶ
the emperor having-gone-in words went-through about
τῶν ἐκ Μυσίας νεωστὶ ἀφιγμένων νυμφῶν, ὅτι, "ἄπειμι
the from Mysia newly arrived brides that I-go-away
τὰ πρὸς θεραπείαν αὐτῶν ἐπισκήψασα, ἔπειτα δὲ
the(-things) for care their having-enjoined then and
φοιτήσω πρὸς σέ· ἀλλ' ἠνεῳγμένος ὁ κοιτωνίσκος ἔστω,
I-will-come to you but opened the little-bedchamber let-be

καὶ μὴ κλεισθήτω τὰ νῦν· παλινοστήσασα γὰρ ἐγὼ τοῦτον
and not let-it-be-shut the now having-returned for I it
κλείσω λοιπόν.” ταῦτα προσειποῦσα ἐκεῖθεν ἐξῄει. ὁ δὲ
I-will-shut henceforth these-things having-said from-there went-out the and
βασιλεὺς δι’ ὅλης μὲν τῆς φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς τὰς
emperor through all indeed the watch of-the night the
συνήθεις εὐχὰς ἀνέπεμπε τῷ Θεῷ, καὶ τῇ μελέτῃ τῶν
customary prayers sent-up — to-God and in-the study of-the
θείων γραφῶν διεσχόλαζεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν ὕπνον ἡ φύσις
divine scriptures be-was-occupied when and the sleep the nature
ἀπῄτει, πρὸ τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων τῆς τε θεανδρικῆς
demanded before the august icons of-the both divine-human
τοῦ Χριστοῦ μορφῆς, καὶ τῆς Θεομήτορος, καὶ τοῦ θείου
— of-Christ form and of-the Mother-of-God and of-the divine
προδρόμου καὶ κήρυκος, παρὰ τὸ παρδάλειον δέῤῥος καὶ
forerunner and herald on the leopard skin and
τὸν κοκκοβαφῆ πῖλον, ἐπ’ ἐδάφους διανεπαύετο.
the scarlet-dyed felt on floor he-rested

XIV · THE MURDER OF NIKEPHOROS

In a snowstorm John is hauled up to the palace in a basket. A little man from the women's quarters shows the conspirators the emperor asleep on the floor; Leo Balantes wounds him, and John upbraids him, plucks his beard, and drives a sword through his skull. Leo sums up Nikephoros' virtues and his one fault, an unbending severity. John is acclaimed, and the body is buried at night in the Holy Apostles.

Οἱ δὲ πρὸς τῆς Αὐγούστης ὑποδεχθέντες ὑπηρέται τοῦ 7
the and by the Augusta received servants —
Ἰωάννου, τοῦ δωματίου ξιφήρεις ἐκπηδήσαντες, τὴν
of-John from-the little-room sword-in-hand having-leapt-out the

ἐκείνου ἄφιξιν προσεδέχοντο, περὶ τὰ ὕπαιθρα τῶν
his arrival awaited on the open(-terraces) of-the
βασιλείων ὑπερῴων κατασκοπούμενοι. πέμπτην τῆς νυκτὸς
palace upper(-floors) keeping-watch fifth of-the night
ὥραν ὁ γνώμων ἤδη κατεπηγγέλλετο· δριμεῖα δέ
hour the sundial already announced sharp and
τις βορέου αὖρα τὸ τοῦ ἀέρος ἐπεῖχε κατάστημα, καὶ
a-certain of-north breeze the of-the air held state and
χιὼν ἐχεῖτο πολλή· καὶ ὁ Ἰωάννης ἀφίκετο μετὰ τῶν
snow was-poured much and — John arrived with the
συνωμοτῶν, ἐπὶ λέμβου τὸν αἰγιαλὸν παραπλέων, καὶ τῆς
conspirators on a-skiff the shore sailing-along and on-the
ἠπείρου προσεπιβαίνων, ἵνα ὁ λίθινος λέων τὸν ταῦρον
mainland landing where the stone lion the bull
ζωγρεῖ (Βουκολέοντα τὸν τόπον κέκληκεν ἡ συνήθεια)· ὃς
seizes Boukoleon the place has-called the custom who
τοῖς ἄνωθεν ἐπὶ τῶν ὑπαίθρων προκύπτουσιν ὑπηρέταις
to-the from-above on the open(-terraces) leaning-out servants
συρίττων ἐπεγινώσκετο. τοιοῦτον γὰρ τοῖς παλαμναίοις
whistling was-recognized such for to-the murderers
ἐδέδοτο σύνθημα. κόφινον οὖν καλωδίοις ἐξηρτημένον
had-been-given signal a-basket then from-ropes hung
χαλάσαντες ἄνωθεν, καθ' ἕνα τοὺς συνωμότας πρότερον
having-let-down from-above by one the conspirators first
ἅπαντας ἀνιμήσαντο, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην αὐτόν.
all they-hauled-up then and also — John himself
ἀνελθόντες οὖν παρὰ πᾶσαν ἀνθρωπίνην ὑπόνοιαν, καὶ
having-gone-up then beyond all human expectation and
τὰ ξίφη γυμνώσαντες, εἰς τὸν βασιλικὸν εἰσελαύνουσι
the swords having-bared into the imperial they-drive-in
θάλαμον, καὶ τὴν κλίνην κατειληφότες, καὶ ταύτην εὑρόντες
bedchamber and the bed having-reached and it having-found

κενὴν καὶ μήτινα ἐν αὐτῇ διαναπαυόμενον, ἐπεπήγεσαν
empty and no-one in it resting they-stood-fixed
ἀπὸ τοῦ δέους, καὶ κατακρημνίζειν αὑτοὺς ἐπειρῶντο
from the fear and to-throw-headlong themselves they-tried
πρὸς θάλασσαν. ἀλλ' ἀνδράριόν τι τῶν ἐκ τῆς
into sea but a-manikin a-certain of-the from the
γυναικωνίτιδος ἰταμῶν, αὐτῶν ἡγησάμενον, ὑποδεικνύει
women's-quarters reckless(-ones) them leading points-out
τὸν βασιλέα καθεύδοντα, ὃν κύκλῳ περιστάντες ἔνυττον
the emperor sleeping whom in-a-circle having-stood-around they-struck
τοῖς ποσὶν ἐναλλόμενοι. διυπνισθέντα δὲ τοῦτον καὶ τὴν
with-the feet leaping-on having-been-awakened and him and the
κεφαλὴν ἐπ' ἀγκῶνος ἐρείσαντα, ξίφει βιαίως παίει Λέων
head on elbow having-propped with-sword violently strikes Leo
ὁ Βαλάντης ὀνομαζόμενος. ὁ δὲ περιαλγήσας τῷ
the(-one) Balantes named he and having-suffered-sorely from-the
τραύματι (μέχρι τῆς ὀφρύος καὶ τῆς βλεφαρίδος τὸ ξίφος
wound as-far-as the eyebrow and the eyelid the sword
καθίκετο, ἀπαράξαν μὲν τὸ ὀστοῦν, μὴ πλῆξαν δὲ τὸν
reached having-shattered indeed the bone not having-struck but the
ἐγκέφαλον), "Θεοτόκε, βοήθει," ἐκέκραγε γεγωνοτέρᾳ φωνῇ·
brain God-bearer help he-cried with-louder voice
ἐῤῥεῖτο δὲ πανταχόθεν τῷ αἵματι καὶ κατεφοινίσσετο. ὁ
he-flowed and from-every-side with-the blood and was-reddened —
δὲ Ἰωάννης, ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλικῆς καθίσας στρωμνῆς, ἑλκύειν
and John on the imperial having-sat bed to-drag
ὡς αὐτὸν τὸν βασιλέα παρεκελεύσατο. ὃν ἑλκυσθέντα,
to himself the emperor ordered whom dragged
ὀκλάζοντά τε καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ ἔδαφος διαῤῥέοντα (οὐδὲ γὰρ
sinking-down both and on the floor flowing nor for
οἷός τε ἦν ἐπὶ γόνυ ἀνίστασθαι, καταβληθείσης αὐτῷ
able — he-was on knee to-rise having-been-cast-down for-him

τῆς γιγαντώδους ἰσχύος τῇ τοῦ ξίφους πληγῇ), ἀνηρώτα
the gigantic strength by-the of-the sword blow questioned
τοῦτον μετὰ ἀπειλῶν, καί, "λέγε μοι, ἀγνωμονέστατε σὺ καὶ
him with threats and tell me most-ungrateful you and
βάσκανε τύραννε, οὐ δι' ἐμοῦ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἡγεμονίας
envious tyrant not through me the Roman rule
ἐπέβης, καὶ τὴν τοσαύτην δυναστείαν ἀνείληφας; πῶς οὖν,
you-mounted and the so-great power you-took-up how then
τῆς τοιαύτης ἀλογήσας εὐεργεσίας, καὶ φθόνῳ καὶ μανίᾳ
the such having-disregarded benefaction and by-envy and madness
οἰστρηλατηθείς, τῆς τῶν στρατευμάτων καθαιρήσειν ἀρχῆς
goaded from-the of-the armies to-dislodge command
τὸν σὸν εὐεργέτην ἐμὲ οὐκ ἐνάρκησας; ἀλλὰ κατ' ἀγροὺς
the your benefactor me not you-shrank but in fields
σχολάζειν διαφῆκας μετὰ τῶν γεωργῶν, ὡσεί τινα ἄτιμον
to-be-at-leisure you-let-go with the farmers like some dishonored
μετανάστην, ἄνδρα γενναῖον οὕτω, καὶ νεανικὸν ὑπὲρ σέ·
exile a-man noble so and youthful beyond you
ὃν τὰ τῶν ἐναντίων φρίττει στρατόπεδα, καὶ οὗ τῶν
whom the of-the opponents dread camps and of-whom from-the
χειρῶν οὐκ ἔστιν ὅστις σε ῥύσεται νῦν. εἰπὲ τοίνυν, εἴ τίς
hands not there-is who you will-rescue now say therefore if any
σοι πρὸς ταῦτα δικαιολογίας ἀντιλογία ὑπολέλειπται."
to-you to these-things of-plea counter-argument is-left

8 Ὁ δὲ βασιλεύς, λειποθυμῶν ἤδη καὶ μὴ ἔχων τὸν αὑτῷ
the and emperor fainting already and not having the(-one) him
ἐπαμύνοντα, τὴν Θεοτόκον ἐκάλει ἐπίκουρον. Ἰωάννης δὲ
defending the God-bearer called helper John and
τὸν πώγωνα τούτου δραξάμενος ἀνηλεῶς ἔτιλλε, καὶ οἱ
the beard his having-grasped pitilessly plucked and the
συνωμόται ταῖς λαβαῖς τῶν ξιφῶν τὰς αὐτοῦ σιαγόνας
conspirators with-the hilts of-the swords the his jaws

ὠμῶς καὶ ἀφιλανθρώπως ἔνυττον, ὡς διασαλεῦσαί τε
cruelly and inhumanly struck so-that to-shake both
τοὺς ὀδόντας καὶ παρακινῆσαι αὐτοὺς τοῦ φατνώματος.
the teeth and to-dislodge them from-the jaw-socket
ἐπεὶ δὲ προσκορεῖς ἦσαν τοῦτον ποινηλατούμενοι, κατὰ
when and sated they-were him punishing against
τῶν στέρνων ὁ Ἰωάννης παίει ποδί, τό τε ξίφος
the chest — John strikes with-foot the both sword
ἀνατείνας κατὰ μέσον διήλασε τοῦ κρανίου, πλήττειν τὸν
having-raised in middle drove-through of-the skull to-strike the
ἄνδρα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐγκελευσάμενος. οἱ δὲ κατεσπάθιζον
man also to-the others having-ordered they and cut-down
τοῦτον ἀνηλεῶς, καί τις ἀκουφίῳ τὸ μετάφρενον
him pitilessly and someone with-an-akouphion the back
αὐτοῦ πλήξας διαμπερὲς ἐπὶ τὰ στέρνα διήλασε. τὸ δὲ
his having-struck right-through to the chest drove-through the and
τοιοῦτον ὅπλον σιδήρειον ἐπίμηκες πέφυκεν, ἐρωδιοῦ ῥάμφει
such weapon iron long is of-heron to-beak
προσεοικὸς ἀτεχνῶς· παρὰ τοσοῦτον δὲ διαλλάττει τοῦ
resembling simply by so-much and it-differs from-the
ῥάμφους κατὰ τὸν σχηματισμόν, παρ᾽ ὅσον ἐκεῖνο μὲν
beak in the shape by as-much-as that indeed
ἰθυτενὲς ἡ φύσις ἐκλήρωσε τῷ πτηνῷ, τὸ δὲ εἰς καμπὴν
straight the nature allotted to-the bird the but into a-bend
ἠρέμα μετρίαν ἐκτείνεται, ὀξεῖαν ἐπιεικῶς προβαλλόμενον
gently moderate extends sharp fairly putting-forth
τὴν ἀκμήν. τοιαύτην μὲν δὴ Νικηφόρος ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
the point such indeed truly Nikephoros the emperor
τὴν τοῦ βίου εὗρε καταστροφήν, πάντα μὲν τὸν τῆς ζωῆς
the of-the life found end all indeed the of-the life
χρόνον πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ ἔτη διαβιούς, ἓξ δὲ καὶ μόνους
time fifty and seven years having-lived six and also only

ἐνιαυτοὺς πρὸς μησὶ τέσσαρσι τὴν τῆς βασιλείας ἰθύνας
years with months four the of-the empire having-directed
ἀρχήν· ἀνὴρ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ σώματος ῥώμῃ πᾶσαν ἀδηρίτως
rule a-man in-bravery and of-body in-strength all indisputably
ὑπερβαίνων τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτὸν γενεάν, ἐμπειρότατός τε καὶ
surpassing the in his generation most-experienced both and
δραστικώτατος τὰ πολέμια, καὶ πρὸς πᾶσαν ἰδέαν
most-effective in-the warlike(-things) and toward every kind
πόνων ἀνένδοτος, καὶ σώματος ἀμείλικτος καὶ ἀκολάκευτος
of-toils unyielding and of-body unbending and unflattered
ἡδοναῖς· μεγαλόφρων τε καὶ μεγαλοφυὴς τὰ πολιτικά,
by-pleasures high-minded both and great-natured in-the civic(-things)
ἐννομώτατα δικάζων, καὶ νομοθετῶν ἀσφαλῶς, καὶ μηδενὸς
most-lawfully judging and legislating securely and by-none
τῶν ἐν τούτοις κατατριβέντων ἡττώμενος· ἐν δὲ ταῖς
of-the(-men) in these having-spent-their-time being-overcome in and the
εὐχαῖς καὶ ταῖς παννύχοις πρὸς Θεὸν στάσεσιν ἄκαμπτός
prayers and the all-night to God standings unbending
τε καὶ ἀδαμάντινος, ἀμετεώριστον ἐν ταῖς ὑμνῳδίαις
both and adamantine undistracted in the hymn-singings
τὸν νοῦν συντηρῶν, καὶ πρὸς τὰ μάταια μηδόλως
the mind keeping and to the vain(-things) not-at-all
ῥεμβόμενον. ἐλάττωμα δὲ τοῦτο προσῆπτον οἱ πολλοὶ τῷ
wandering defect and this attached the many to-the
ἀνδρί, ὅτι τε ἀπαρεγχείρητον ἐβούλετο πρὸς ἁπάντων
man that both inviolate be-wished by all
συντηρεῖσθαι τὴν ἀρετήν, καὶ μὴ παραχαράττεσθαι τὴν
to-be-kept the virtue and not to-be-debased the
τοῦ δικαίου ἀκρίβειαν. διὸ καὶ ἀπαραίτητος ἦν εἰς τὴν
of-the just exactness wherefore also inexorable he-was for the
τούτων ἐκδίκησιν, καὶ τοῖς ὀλισθαίνουσιν ἀδυσώπητος
their punishment and to-those slipping unmoved-by-entreaty

καὶ φορτικὸς ἐδόκει, καὶ ἐπαχθὴς τοῖς ἀδιάφορον ἀντλεῖν
and burdensome he-seemed and oppressive to-those indifferent to-draw
τὸν βίον ἐθέλουσιν. ἐγὼ δέ φημι, ὡς εἰ μή τις κατὰ ῥοῦν
the life wishing I and say that if not some with stream
φερομένοις τοῖς πράγμασι βάσκανος νεμεσήσασα τύχη
being-borne the affairs envious having-grudged fortune
τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ταχὺ τοῦ βίου ἀπήγαγε, μεγίστην
the man this quickly from-the life had-carried-off greatest
ἂν ἡ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡγεμονία καὶ οἵαν οὐκ ἄλλοτε
— the of-the Romans rule and such-as not at-another-time
εὔκλειαν ἀπηνέγκατο. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἡ πρόνοια, τὰ σκληρὰ
glory would-have-carried-off but for the providence the hard
καὶ ὑπέραυχα τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἀποστυγοῦσα φρονήματα,
and boastful of-the men abhorring spirits
κολούει τε καὶ περιστέλλει καὶ εἰς τὸ μηδὲν συνωθεῖ,
curtails both and wraps-up and into the nothing pushes
οἷς οἶδεν ἀνεφίκτοις κρίμασι πρὸς τὸ συμφέρον τὸ
by-which it-knows unattainable judgments toward the advantageous the
τοῦ βίου πορθμεῖον εὐθύνουσα.
of-the life ferry steering
Ὁ δέ γε Ἰωάννης, ἐπεὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον θεοστυγὲς καὶ 9
— and at-least John when the such God-hated and
ἀνόσιον μῦσος εἰργάσατο, ἐπὶ τὸν λαμπρὸν οἶκον τῆς
unholy abomination he-wrought to the brilliant hall of-the
βασιλικῆς ἑστίας παρελθὼν (Χρυσοτρίκλινον τὸν δόμον
imperial hearth having-passed Chrysotriklinos the building
κατονομάζουσι), τό τε πέδιλον τὸ ἐρυθρὸν τοῖς ποσὶν
they-name the both sandal the red on-the feet
ἐνηρμόσατο, καὶ παρὰ τὸν θρόνον κεκάθικε τὸν βασιλικόν,
fitted and at the throne sat the imperial
καὶ περὶ τῶν κοινῶν πραγμάτων ἐφρόντιζεν, ὅπως τούτων
and about the common affairs took-thought how of-these

ἐγκρατής τε γένοιτο, καὶ μήτις αὐτῷ διαστασιάσοι
master both he-might-become and not-anyone against-him might-revolt
τῶν ἐξ αἵματος προσηκόντων τῷ αὐτοκράτορι. οἱ δὲ τοῦ
of-those by blood related to-the emperor the and —
Νικηφόρου ὑπασπισταί, ὀψέ ποτε τὴν ἀναίρεσιν τούτου
of-Nikephoros shield-bearers late at-last the killing his
ἐνωτισθέντες, ὥρμησαν ἐπαμῦναι αὐτῷ, ὑποτοπάζοντες,
having-heard rushed to-help him surmising
ἐν τοῖς ζῶσιν ἔτι περιεῖναι τὸν ἄνδρα, καὶ τὰς
among the living still to-survive the man and the
σιδηρέας πύλας παντὶ σθένει ἀναμοχλεύειν ἐπειρῶντο.
iron gates with-all strength to-lever-up tried
ἀλλὰ ὁ Ἰωάννης τὴν κεφαλὴν ἐνεχθῆναι τοῦ Νικηφόρου
but — John the head to-be-brought — of-Nikephoros
ἐνεκελεύσατο, καὶ ταύτην ὑποδειχθῆναι διὰ τρυμαλιᾶς τοῖς
ordered and it to-be-shown through a-hole to-the
ἐκείνου σωματοφύλαξι. παρελθὼν δέ τις, Ἀτζυποθεόδωρος
his bodyguards having-come and someone Atzypotheodoros
καλούμενος, ἐξέτεμέ τε τὴν κεφαλήν, καὶ τοῖς στασιάζουσιν
called cut-off both the head and to-the rebels
ὑπεδείκνυεν. οἱ δέ, τὸ ἀλλόκοτον καὶ ἄπιστον ἀθρήσαντες
showed they and the strange and incredible having-beheld
θέαμα, τά τε ξίφη τῶν χειρῶν μεθῆκαν, καὶ παλινῳδίαν
sight the both swords from-the hands let-go and recantation
ᾖσαν, καὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην αὐτοκράτορα Ῥωμαίων ὁμοφώνως
sang and — John emperor of-Romans with-one-voice
ἐκήρυττον. ὁ δὲ τοῦ Νικηφόρου νεκρὸς κατὰ τὸ ὕπαιθρον
proclaimed the and — of-Nikephoros corpse in the open
ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος πανημέριος ἔκειτο· ἑνδεκάτη ἦν τοῦ
on the snow all-day lay eleventh it-was of-the
Δεκεμβρίου μηνὸς ἡμέρα, σαββάτῳ· ὃν πρὸς ἑσπέραν
December month day on-Saturday which toward evening

βαθεῖαν τῇ ὁσίᾳ παραπεμφθῆναι ὁ Ἰωάννης προσέταξε.
deep to-the holy(-rites) to-be-sent — John ordered
θήκῃ οὖν σχεδιασθείσῃ ξυλίνῃ ὡς ἔτυχε περιστείλαντες,
in-a-case then improvised wooden as it-happened having-wrapped
μέσον τῶν νυκτῶν λαθραίως εἰς τὸν θεῖον τῶν Ἀποστόλων
middle of-the nights secretly into the divine of-the Apostles
σηκὸν ἐξεκόμισαν, καὶ κατὰ τὸ ἡρῷον, ἔνθα τὸ τοῦ
precinct carried-out and in the heroon where the of-the
θείου καὶ ἀοιδίμου Κωνσταντίνου σῶμα κατάκειται, ἐν
divine and celebrated Constantine body lies in
μιᾷ τῶν βασιλικῶν σορῶν ἐκήδευσαν. ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐκ
one of-the imperial coffins they-buried but for not
ἐπενύσταξεν ἡ δίκη τῇ μιαιφονίᾳ τῶν ἀλαστόρων ἐκείνων
dozed the justice at-the bloodguilt of-the accursed those
ἀνδρῶν, μετῆλθε δὲ πάντας ποινηλατοῦσα μετέπειτα,
men pursued and all punishing afterward
καὶ δημευθέντες, κατὰ τὰ ἔσχατα πενητεύσαντες,
and having-had-property-confiscated to the extremes having-been-poor
κακοὶ κακῶς τοῦ ζῆν ἀπηλλάγησαν, ὅσοι τῆς
evil evilly from-the to-live were-released as-many-as of-the
ἐκείνου σφαγῆς αὐτόχειρες ἐξεγένοντο. ἀλλ᾽ ἀποχρώντως
his slaughter self-handed-killers became but sufficiently
γὰρ εἰρῆσθαί μοι δοκεῖ περὶ τῶν πεπραγμένων τῷ
for to-have-been-said to-me seems about the deeds by-the
αὐτοκράτορι Νικηφόρῳ, καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ βιοτῆς καὶ
emperor Nikephoros and the his life and
καταστροφῆς. τὸ δὲ πέρα τοῦ μετρίου κατατρίβειν τὸν
end the and beyond the measure to-wear-out the
λόγον καὶ κατατείνειν ἐκεῖ, πολυπραγμόνων ἡγοῦμαι τὸ
account and to-stretch there of-busybodies I-think the
πάθος καὶ τῆς γραφῆς ὑπερβαινόντων τὸ πλήσμιον,
affliction and of-the writing exceeding the surfeit

οἷς μηδὲ τὸ τυχὸν παρεῖται ἀνεξερεύνητον. δέον
for-whom not-even the chance(-thing) is-left unexamined needful
οὖν εἶναί μοι δοκεῖ, ταύτην τὴν περὶ ἐκείνου καὶ τῶν
then to-be to-me seems this the about him and of-the
αὐτῷ πραχθέντων διήγησιν περιστείλαντα, καὶ περὶ τῶν
by-him done narrative having-wrapped-up and about the
τῷ Ἰωάννῃ πραχθέντων, ὃς κατ᾽ ἐπίκλησιν Τζιμισκῆς
— by-John done who by surname Tzimiskes
ἐκαλεῖτο (τοῦτο δὲ τὸ τῆς Ἀρμενίων διαλέκτου πρόσρημα
was-called this and the of-the Armenians dialect appellation
ὄν, εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα μεθερμηνευόμενον μουζακίτζην δηλοῖ·
being into the Greek(-tongue) being-translated mouzakitzes means
βραχύτατος γὰρ τὴν ἡλικίαν τελῶν ἐπωνυμίαν ταύτην
very-short for in-the stature being surname this
ἐκτήσατο), κατὰ τὸ ἐνὸν ἐξειπεῖν, ὡς ἂν μὴ λήθης
he-acquired according-to the possible to-set-out so-that — not by-oblivion's
βυθοῖς παραῤῥυῇ ἔργα βιωφελῆ καὶ μνήμης ἐπάξια.
depths may-slip-away deeds life-benefiting and of-memory worthy

BOOK VI

XV · JOHN TZIMISKES EMPEROR

At dawn on 11 December John is proclaimed emperor with the sons of Romanos, and the proedros Basil, bastard of the elder Romanos, is made parakoimomenos; an order beheading plunderers keeps the city quiet. Nikephoros' brother Leo flees to the Great Church and is banished with his son Nikephoros to Lesbos, his son Bardas to Amaseia. The author paints John: short, strong, and generous, if given to drink and pleasure. Polyeuktos admits him to the church only once the Augusta is banished, Nikephoros' decree on the Church is annulled, and the murderer, Leo Balantes, is named.

Τοῦ δὲ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου τὸν τρόπον, ὃν εἴρηταί 1
of-the and emperor Nikephoros the way which has-been-said
μοι, ἀναιρεθέντος, τὰς τῆς βασιλείας ἡνίας Ἰωάννης,
by-me having-been-killed the of-the empire reins John
ὁ κατ' ἐπίκλησιν Τζιμισκῆς, ὑποζώννυται. ἤδη δὲ
the by surname Tzimiskes girds-on already and
τετάρτης φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ἀρχομένης, ἑβδόμης ἡμέρας
of-(the)-fourth watch of-the night beginning seventh day
διαφανούσης, ἑνδεκάτης τελούσης τοῦ Δεκεμβρίου μηνός,
dawning eleventh being of-the December month
κατὰ τὴν τρισκαιδεκάτην ἴνδικτον τοῦ ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ
in the thirteenth indiction of-the six-thousandth
τετρακοσιοστοῦ ἑβδομηκοστοῦ ὀγδόου ἔτους, λογάδων
four-hundredth seventieth eighth year of-picked
ἀνδρῶν στίφος, διὰ τῶν ἀγυιῶν τοῦ ἄστεος διερχόμενον,
men band through the streets of-the town passing
αὐτοκράτορα Ῥωμαίων τὸν Ἰωάννην σὺν τοῖς τοῦ ἤδη
emperor of-Romans — John with the of-the already
βασιλεύσαντος Ῥωμανοῦ παισὶν ἀνηγόρευον· οἷς ἐκ
having-reigned Romanos sons proclaimed whom from

διαστήματος ἐφείπετο Βασίλειος ὁ Νόθος, Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ
a-distance followed Basil the Bastard of-Romanos the
πάλαι αὐτοκράτορος ἐκ Σκυθίδος υἱός, τῷ τοῦ
of-old emperor from a-Scythian-woman son with-the of-the
προέδρου ἐκδιαπρέπων ἀξιώματι. Νικηφόρος δέ, μόνος τῶν
proedros being-distinguished dignity Nikephoros and alone of-the
λοιπῶν σεβαστῶν, ἐς γέρας τῷ ἀνδρὶ ταύτην ἐκαινοτόμησε
other augusti as prize for-the man this newly-created
τὴν τιμήν· ὅσπερ, εἰ καὶ ἐκτομίας ἐτύγχανεν, ἀλλὰ τὴν
the honor who if even eunuch he-happened-to-be but —
ἄλλως δραστήριός τε καὶ ἀγχίνους ὑπῆρχεν ἀνήρ, εὐφυῶς
otherwise energetic both and shrewd he-was a-man aptly
τοῖς πράγμασιν ἐν περιστάσεσιν ἁρμοττόμενος. συνωμότης
to-the affairs in crises adapting fellow-conspirator
δὲ ὢν Ἰωάννῃ, καὶ λίαν ἐκτόπως αὐτῷ φιλικῶς διακείμενος,
and being to-John and very extraordinarily to-him friendly disposed
ἐσκήπτετο πρότερον νοσεῖν, κἄπειτα πονήρως εἶχε, καὶ
he-pretended earlier to-be-ill and-then badly he-was and
κλινοπετὴς ἦν. νύχιον οὖν τὴν τοῦ Νικηφόρου μεμαθηκὼς
bedridden he-was by-night then the — of-Nikephoros having-learned
ἀναίρεσιν, τῷ προειληφότι στίφει μετὰ σπείρας γενναίων
killing to-the having-gone-ahead band with company of-noble
νεανίσκων ἐπισπόμενος, σεβαστὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
young-men following august emperor of-Romans
τὸν Ἰωάννην ἀνεκήρυττεν· εἰς τὰ βασίλειά τε αὖθις
— John proclaimed into the palace both again
ἀνῄει, καὶ περὶ τῶν κοινῶν Ἰωάννῃ συνέπραττε, τὴν
went-up and about the common(-affairs) with-John worked-together the
τοῦ παρακοιμωμένου πρὸς ἐκείνου τιμὴν εἰληφώς. περὶ
of-the parakoimomenos from him honor having-received about
τῶν ξυνοισόντων οὖν αὑτοῖς βουλευσάμενοι, ἐντάλματα
the advantageous then for-them having-deliberated injunctions

καὶ προστάγματα διὰ παντὸς τοῦ ἄστεος αὐθωρὸν
and commands through all the town at-once
ἔστελλον, μὴ ἐξεῖναί τινι νεωτερειῖν, ἢ ἐπὶ διαρπαγὰς
they-sent not to-be-permitted for-anyone to-make-revolt or to plunderings
ἀποκλίνειν· κίνδυνον γὰρ εἶναι τῷ τοιουτότροπόν τι
to-turn danger for to-be for-the(-one) of-such-sort something
τολμήσαντι, ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τῆς κεφαλῆς. τοῦτο τὸ παράγγελμα
having-dared to-be-deprived of-the head this the order
ἐπιεικῶς Βυζαντίους ἐξεδειμάτωσε, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἐτόλμα
fairly Byzantines terrified and no-one dared
νεοχμῶσαί τι παρὰ τὸ προσταχθέν. εἰώθεσαν γὰρ ἐν
to-innovate anything against the commanded they-were-wont for in
ταῖς τοιαύταις μεταβολαῖς οἱ ἀργοὶ τοῦ δήμου, καὶ ἄποροι,
the such changes the idle of-the people and destitute
ἐς διαρπαγὰς χρημάτων καὶ κατασκαφὰς οἴκων, ἔσθ' ὅτε
to plunderings of-goods and demolitions of-houses there-is when
καὶ τῶν ὁμοφύλων σφαγὰς τρέπεσθαι, καθά που καὶ ἐν
also of-the kinsmen slaughters to-turn as somewhere also in
τῇ ἀναῤῥήσει τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου συμβέβηκεν.
the proclamation of-the emperor Nikephoros happened
ἀλλὰ τὴν τοιαύτην ἀκάθεκτον τοῦ ἀγοραίου ὄχλου φορὰν
but the such unrestrainable of-the market crowd rush
προφθάσας ἀνέστειλε τὸ τοῦ Ἰωάννου διάγγελμα.
having-anticipated checked the — of-John proclamation
Ἐν τούτοις τῶν πραγμάτων ἠωρημένων, Λέων 2
in these the affairs being-in-suspense Leo
Κουροπαλάτης, ὁ τοῦ Νικηφόρου σύναιμος, ἐφ' ἑστίας
Kouropalates the — of-Nikephoros brother at hearth
καθεύδων, τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σφαγὴν διενηχθείς, δέον
sleeping the of-the brother's slaughter having-heard it-being-needful
αὐτῷ, χρυσοῦ θησαυροὺς κεκτημένῳ πολυταλάντους,
for-him of-gold treasures having of-many-talents

κατὰ ἄμφοδον διασπείρειν, καὶ τούτοις τοὺς ἀστικοὺς
along street to-scatter and with-these the townsmen
δεξιούμενον, εἰς ἐκδίκησιν κατὰ τῶν τυράννων παρακαλεῖν
welcoming to vengeance against the tyrants to-summon
(εἰ γὰρ οὕτω διενοήθη, τάχ' ἂν ἀναιμωτὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην
if for so he-had-thought perhaps — without-bloodshed — John
τῶν ἀρχείων κατέσπασεν· ὅτι τε οἱ τὰς τῆς
from-the offices he-would-have-dragged-down because both those the of-the
πολιτείας ἐγκεχειρισμένοι ἀρχὰς πρὸς τοῦ Νικηφόρου
state entrusted offices from — Nikephoros
ταύτας εἰλήφεσαν· καὶ ὅτι στρατιωτικὸν ἀξιόχρεων τῶν
these had-received and because military(-force) adequate of-those
ὑπ' ἐκείνῳ τεταγμένων τῷ Βυζαντίῳ ἐπεχωρίαζεν· οἳ
under him ranked — in-Byzantium was-staying who
πάντες αὐτῷ βουληθέντι, καὶ πρὸς ἀλκὴν καὶ νεωτερισμὸν
all with-him having-wished and to strength and revolt
ὡρμηκότι, συνήραντο ἄν)· ἀλλὰ γάρ, τῷ μεγέθει τοῦ
having-rushed would-have-joined — but for by-the greatness of-the
πάθους τὰς φρένας ἐκθροηθείς, τοῦτο μὲν οὐδ' ἐπὶ νοῦν
blow the wits shaken this indeed not-even into mind
ἔλαβεν, ὡς εἶχε δὲ δρόμων τὸν περίπυστον τῆς τοῦ Θεοῦ
he-took as he-had and at-a-run the famous of-the — of-God
Σοφίας καταλαμβάνει σηκόν, τῇ τύχῃ καὶ τῇ φορᾷ
Wisdom reaches precinct to-the fortune and to-the course
τῶν πραγμάτων ταῦτα καταλιπών. ὁ δέ γε Ἰωάννης,
of-the affairs these-things having-left — and at-least John
πρὶν τηλαυγῶς τῇ γῇ τὰς ἀκτῖνας προσυφαπλῶσαι τὸν
before far-shining on-the earth the rays to-spread the
ἥλιον, ταῖς μεγίσταις τῆς πολιτείας ἀρχαῖς οἰκείους ἄνδρας
sun in-the greatest of-the state offices own men
ἀποκαθίστησι, Πραίτωρα, καὶ τοῦ πλωΐμου Δρουγγάριον,
establishes Praetor and of-the fleet Droungarios

τῆς τε βίγλης, καὶ ὃν καλοῦσι νυκτέπαρχον, τοὺς
of-the both Watch and whom they-call nykteparchos those
τοῦ Νικηφόρου, παραιτησάμενος· οὓς ἅμα τοῖς ἐξ
— of-Nikephoros having-dismissed whom together-with those from
αἵματος ἐκείνου ἀνήκουσιν ἐν τοῖς σφετέροις ἀγροῖς
blood his related in the their-own fields
διατρίβειν παρέπεμψε. πίστεις τε τῷ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
to-stay he-sent pledges both to-the of-the emperor
Νικηφόρου ὁμαίμονι Λέοντι τῷ Κουροπαλάτῃ, καὶ
Nikephoros brother Leo the Kouropalates and
Νικηφόρῳ Πατρικίῳ, τῷ υἱῷ τοῦ τοιούτου Λέοντος, περὶ
to-Nikephoros Patrikios the son of-the such Leo about
τῶν σφῶν σωμάτων ἀπαθείας δούς, ἐς Μήθυμναν, τὴν
the their bodies' safety having-given to Methymna the
ἐν Λέσβῳ τῇ νήσῳ κατῳκισμένην, περιορίζει· τούς τε
in Lesbos the island settled he-banishes the both
τοπάρχας τῶν χώρων ἁπάντων μεθίστησι, καὶ οἰκείους
toparchs of-the lands all he-removes and own
ἀντ' ἐκείνων ἀποκαθίστησι. τότε δὴ καὶ Βάρδαν, τὸν τοῦ
instead of-them establishes then indeed also Bardas the of-the
Κουροπαλάτου Λέοντος υἱόν, ἐν πατρικίοις τελοῦντα,
Kouropalates Leo son among patrikioi being
καὶ τὴν τοῦ Δουκὸς ἀξίαν ὑπεζωσμένον, κἂν τοῖς τῆς
and the of-the Doux dignity having-girded-on and-in the —
Χαλδαίας ὁρίοις διατρίβοντα, τῆς ἀρχῆς παγανώσας,
of-Chaldia borders staying from-the office having-reduced-to-civilian
εἰς Ἀμάσειαν περιορίζει. ἱκανὴν οὖν ἐντεῦθεν ἀσφάλειαν
to Amaseia banishes sufficient then thence safety
ἑαυτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς πράγμασιν ἐπιβραβεύσας, καὶ ἅπαν
for-himself both and for-the affairs having-awarded and all
τὸ ὕποπτον τῆς πολιτείας ἀνακαθάρας, ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις
the suspect of-the state having-cleansed in the palace

διέτριβε. πέμπτον καὶ τεσσαρακοστὸν ἔτος ἦν αὐτῷ τῆς
he-stayed fifth and fortieth year it-was for-him of-the
ἡλικίας, ὅτε τῆς βασιλείου ἐπέβη ἀρχῆς.
age when the imperial he-mounted rule

3 Τὴν δὲ ἰδέαν τοιόσδε ἦν· λευκὸς μὲν τὴν ὄψιν, καὶ
in-the and appearance such he-was white indeed in-the face and
εὔχρους, τὴν κόμην φέρων ξανθὴν καὶ ἀραιὰν ἐπὶ μέτωπον·
of-good-color the hair bearing blond and thin on forehead
ὀφθαλμοὶ τούτῳ ἀνδρώδεις καὶ χαρωποί· ῥὶς λεπτή τε
eyes for-him manly and bright nose fine both
καὶ σύμμετρος· γένυς ἡ ἄνωθεν πυρσή, καὶ εἰς πλαίσιον
and proportioned beard the from-above red and into a-frame
καθειμένη παρὰ τὸ μέτριον, ἡ δὲ κάτωθεν μεμετρημένη
let-down beyond the measure the and from-below measured
ὡς τὸ εἰκός, καὶ μήτι ἐνδεῶς ἔχουσα. τὴν δὲ ἡλικίαν
as the likely and not-at-all deficiently having in-the and stature
βραχύς τις ἦν, εἰ καὶ στέρνον εὐρὺ καὶ μετάφρενον
short a-certain he-was if even chest broad and back
εἶχε· γιγαντώδης δὲ τούτῳ ἐνῆν ἰσχύς, καὶ ταῖς χερσὶν
he-had gigantic but in-him was-in strength and in-the hands
εὐαγωγία, καὶ ἀλκή τις ἀνανταγώνιστος· ἡρωϊκὴ γὰρ
dexterity and might a-certain irresistible heroic for
αὐτῷ ἀνεκέκρατο, ἀδεής τε καὶ ἀκατάπληκτος, ἐν οὕτω
in-him was-blended fearless both and undaunted in so
βραχεῖ σώματι ἀποδεδειγμένη τόλμαν ὑπερφυῆ. ἐς ὅλην
short body displayed daring extraordinary against whole
γὰρ ἀντίπαλον φάλαγγα οὐκ ἀπεδειλία μόνος ὁρμᾷν,
for opposing phalanx not he-shrank alone to-rush
πλείστους τε κατακταίνων, ἀπτερώτῳ τάχει πρὸς τὸν
very-many both slaying with-wingless speed to the
οἰκεῖον αὖθις συνασπισμὸν διανέκαμπτε, κακῶν ἀπαθής· ἐν
own again close-order he-turned-back of-harms unsuffering in

ἅλματι δέ, καὶ σφαιρισμοῖς, καὶ ἀκοντισμοῖς, καὶ τόξων
leaping and also ball-games and javelin-throwings and bows'
ἐντάσεσι καὶ βολαῖς, πάντων κατηυμεγέθει τῶν κατὰ
stretchings and shots of-all he-surpassed of-those in
τὴν αὐτὴν γενεάν. λέγεται, ὡς κέλητας ἵππους τέτταρας
the same generation it-is-said that racing horses four
στοιχηδὸν ἱστάς, ἐκ τοῦ θατέρου μέρους καθαλλόμενος,
in-a-row setting from the one side leaping-down
ἐπὶ τὸν πύματον ὥς τις πτηνὸς ἐφίζανε. βέλος τε ἀφιεὶς
on the last like some bird he-alighted missile both letting-fly
οὕτω κατεστοχάζετο τοῦ σκοποῦ, ὡς διὰ δακτυλίου
so he-aimed-at the mark that through ring's
ὀπῆς ἰέναι ἀπευθύνειν αὐτό· τοσοῦτον ὑπερέβαλλε καὶ τὸν
hole to-go to-direct it so-much he-surpassed also the
παρ᾽ Ὁμήρου μεγαλαυχούμενον νησιώτην, τὸν διὰ τῶν
by Homer much-boasted islander the(-one) through the
πελέκεων τὸν ὀϊστὸν διευθύναντα. σφαῖράν τε ἐκ σκύτους
axes the arrow having-directed ball both from leather
κατειργασμένην ὑελίνου σκύφους ἐν τῷ πυθμένι ἐπιτιθείς,
made of-glass cup on the bottom placing
μύωπί τε τὸν ἵππον κεντρίζων καὶ τὸν δρόμον ἐπιταχύνων,
with-spur both the horse goading and the course quickening
ῥάβδῳ παίων τὴν σφαῖραν, αὐτὴν μὲν ἀναθρώσκειν καὶ
with-a-rod striking the ball it indeed to-leap-up and
πέτασθαι κατειργάζετο· τὸ δὲ δὴ σκύφος ἀμετακίνητον
to-fly he-made the and indeed cup unmoved
καὶ ἄθραυστον κατὰ χώραν μένειν ἐλίμπανε. μεγαλόδωρός
and unbroken in place to-remain he-left generous
τε καὶ φιλοδωρότατος παρὰ πάντας ἦν· οὐδεὶς γὰρ
both and most-gift-loving beyond all he-was no-one for
αὐτὸν αἰτησάμενος τῶν ἐλπίδων κενὸς ἀπηλλάττετο. πᾶσι
him having-asked of-the hopes empty went-away to-all

δὲ φιλαγάθως καὶ ἱλαρῶς ἐφιλανθρωπεύετο, προφητικῶς
and kindly and cheerfully he-showed-humanity prophetically
τὸ ἔλαιον τῆς εὐποιΐας κιχρῶν· καὶ εἰ μὴ Βασίλειος ὁ
the oil of-the beneficence lending and if not Basil the
παρακοιμώμενος αὐτὸν ἐπεῖχε τῆς ἀπλήστου περὶ τὸ
parakoimomenos him had-checked from-the insatiable for the
εὐεργετεῖν τοὺς ὁμοφύλους ῥοπῆς, κἂν τοὺς βασιλικοὺς
to-benefit the kinsmen inclination even the imperial
θησαυροὺς εἰς τὴν τῶν δεομένων διανομὴν θᾶττον
treasuries into the of-the needy distribution quickly
συνεξεφόρησεν. ἐλάττωμα δὲ Ἰωάννῃ τοῦτο προσῆν, ὅτι
he-would-have-carried-out defect and to-John this was-attached that
τε περὶ πότους ἔστιν ὅτε παρὰ τὸ προσῆκον ἐκώμαζε,
both about drinkings there-is when beyond the fitting he-reveled
καὶ περὶ τὰς τοῦ σώματος ἡδονὰς διεπτόητο.
and about the of-the body pleasures he-was-excited

4 Ἀλλ᾽ οὕτω μὲν ἐν ἡμέραις ἑπτὰ τὰ τῆς πολιτείας
but so indeed in days seven the(-affairs) of-the state
διοικησάμενος, καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν ἑαυτῷ κρατυνάμενος, καὶ
having-administered and the rule for-himself having-strengthened and
ὡς οὐκ ἄν τις ᾠήθη ποτὲ (ἐν γὰρ ταῖς μεγίσταις
as not — anyone would-have-thought ever in for the greatest
τῶν πραγμάτων μεταβολαῖς, πολλῆς, ὡς εἰκός, στάσεως
of-the affairs changes much as likely riot
ἀναῤῥιπιζομένης καὶ ταραχῆς, τότε, οὐκ οἶδ᾽ ὅπως,
being-fanned and tumult then not I-know how
παρατυχὸν εὐκοσμία τις καὶ βαθεῖα σιγὴ τὸν δῆμον
by-chance good-order a-certain and deep silence the people
κατέσχε, τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου ἀναιρεθέντος, καί
held of-the emperor Nikephoros having-been-killed and
τινος ἑνὸς τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἑτέρου μηδενὸς κἂν ἐπὶ κόῤῥης
some one of-the shield-bearers another nobody even on cheek

εἰληφότος κόνδυλον), ἐς τὸν θεῖον καὶ μέγαν τῆς τοῦ Θεοῦ
having-received blow into the divine and great of-the — of-God
Σοφίας σηκὸν εἰσφοιτᾷ, ὡς πρὸς τοῦ πατριάρχου κατὰ
Wisdom precinct he-goes as by the patriarch according-to
τὸ εἰθισμένον τῷ βασιλείῳ διαδήματι ταινιωθησόμενος.
the custom with-the imperial diadem going-to-be-crowned
εἴθισται γὰρ τοὺς νέον τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἡγεμονίας
it-is-customary for those newly the Roman rule
προσεπιβαίνοντας ἐπί τε τὸν ἄμβωνα τοῦ νεὼ ἀνιέναι,
mounting onto both the ambo of-the temple to-go-up
καὶ πρὸς τοῦ κατὰ καιροὺς ἱεράρχου εὐλογεῖσθαί τε, καὶ
and by the at times high-priest to-be-blessed both and
τῷ βασιλείῳ στέφει ταινιοῦσθαι τὴν κεφαλήν. ὁ δὲ
with-the imperial crown to-be-crowned the head — and
Πολύευκτος τὸν τῆς πατριαρχίας τότε θρόνον κατεῖχε. θεῖός
Polyeuktos the of-the patriarchate then throne held divine
τέ τις ὢν καὶ ζέων τῷ πνεύματι, εἰ καὶ τὴν ἡλικίαν
both a-certain being and boiling in-the spirit if even in-the age
ἔξωρος ἦν, μὴ ἐξεῖναί οἱ ἐδήλου τῷ βασιλεῖ
beyond-season he-was not to-be-permitted for-him he-showed to-the emperor
ἐς τὸ ἱερὸν εἰσελαύνειν, πρὶν ἂν τὴν Αὐγοῦσταν τῶν
into the temple to-drive-in before — the Augusta from-the
βασιλείων ἐξαγάγῃ, καὶ τὸν ἀναιρέτην τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
palace he-should-lead-out and the killer of-the emperor
Νικηφόρου, ὅσπερ ἂν εἴη, καθυποδείξῃ· καὶ προσέτι τὸν
Nikephoros whoever — he-might-be he-should-point-out and besides the
τόμον τῇ συνόδῳ προσαποτίσῃ, ὃν ὁ Νικηφόρος παρὰ
tome to-the synod should-repay which — Nikephoros against
τὸ εἰκὸς ἐνεώχμωσεν. ὁ γὰρ Νικηφόρος, εἴτε τὰ θεῖα
the fitting innovated — for Nikephoros whether the divine(-things)
πρός τινων τῶν ἱερέων κινούμενα βουλόμενος διορθοῦν,
by some of-the priests being-disturbed wishing to-set-right

ὡς ᾤετο, εἴτε κατεξουσιάζειν καὶ τῶν ἱερῶν, ὅπερ
as he-thought or to-domineer also over-the sacred(-things) which
ἔκσπονδον ἦν, τόμον σχεδιάσαι τοὺς ἱεράρχας κατεβιάσατο,
truce-breaking was tome to-draft the high-priests compelled
μήτι τῶν ἐκκλησιαστικῶν πραγμάτων ἐκτὸς τῆς ἐκείνου
nothing of-the ecclesiastical affairs apart-from the his
ῥοπῆς ἐνεργεῖν. ταῦτα μὲν ὁ Πολύευκτος τῷ βασιλεῖ
inclination to-take-effect these-things indeed — Polyeuktos to-the emperor
ποιεῖν εἰσηγεῖτο· ἄλλως γὰρ οὐχ οἷόν τε ἐξεῖναι αὐτῷ
to-do proposed otherwise for not possible — to-be-permitted for-him
ἐς τὰ θεῖα εἰσιτητέον ἀνάκτορα. ὁ δέ, τὴν τοιαύτην φάσιν
into the divine must-be-entered palace he and the such statement
δεξάμενος, τήν τε Αὐγοῦσταν τῶν ἀνακτόρων κατήγαγε,
having-received the both Augusta from-the palace brought-down
καὶ κατὰ τὴν νῆσον τὴν λεγομένην Πρώτην περιώρισε,
and to the island the called Prote banished
τόν τε τοῦ Νικηφόρου τόμον τῇ συνόδῳ ἐπέδωκε, καὶ
the both — of-Nikephoros tome to-the synod gave-up and
Λέοντα τὸν Βαλάντην καθυπεδείκνυεν, αὐτόχειρα τοῦ
Leo — Balantes pointed-out self-handed-killer —
Νικηφόρου καὶ αὐθέντην πεφηνέναι τοῦτον, οὐκ ἄλλον,
of-Nikephoros and murderer to-have-been-shown this-one not another
ἰσχυριζόμενος. οὕτως εἰς τὸν θεῖον σηκὸν ὁ Ἰωάννης
asserting thus into the divine precinct — John
παραδεχθείς, καὶ πρὸς τοῦ Πολυεύκτου στεφθείς, ἐς
having-been-admitted and by — Polyeuktos crowned to
τὴν βασίλειον ἑστίαν παλινοστεῖ, παρὰ παντὸς τοῦ τε
the imperial hearth returns by all the both
στρατιωτικοῦ πλήθους καὶ τοῦ δημοτικοῦ εὐφημούμενος.
military multitude and the popular acclaimed

John gives away his patrimony to farmers and to a hospital for lepers, whose sores he tends himself. Theodore of Koloneia, a monk who had foretold his reign, becomes patriarch of Antioch; Polyeuktos dies, and John installs the hermit Basil of Olympus as patriarch. He relieves a three-year famine and checks the Arabs at Antioch. Leo recounts how the Mysians came into Europe. Sphendosthlavos, who has impaled twenty thousand at Philippopolis, demands a ransom or Rome's withdrawal to Asia; John reminds him of his father Ingor's fate, and the prince threatens to pitch his tents before the gates of Byzantium.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐκεχειρίας μικρᾶς καὶ ῥᾳστώνης δραξάμενος, τὴν
thereupon respite small and ease having-grasped the
προσοῦσαν αὐτῷ κτῆσιν ἀνέκαθεν δίχα διαιρήσας· πολλὴ
belonging to-him property from-of-old in-two having-divided much
δέ τις ἦν ἔκ τε τῶν προγόνων αὐτῷ καταλειφθεῖσα
and a-certain was from both the ancestors to-him left
(λαμπροτάτου γὰρ γένους ὁ Ἰωάννης κατήγετο, πρὸς μὲν
most-brilliant for family — John descended on indeed
πατρὸς εὐγενὴς τῶν ἀφ' ἡλίου ἀνατολῶν, ἐκ δὲ μητρὸς
father's(-side) noble of-those from sun's risings from and mother's(-side)
ἀνεψιὸς Νικηφόρου τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος), καὶ ἐκ τῶν
cousin of-Nikephoros the emperor and from the
βασιλικῶν δωρεῶν, ἣν διὰ τὰ ἐν πολέμοις αὐτοῦ τρόπαια
imperial gifts which because-of the in wars his trophies
φιλοτίμως ἀπεφέρετο· τὴν μὲν τοῖς ὁμόροις καὶ ἀγχιτέρμοσι
lavishly he-carried-off the indeed to-the neighboring and adjoining
γεωργοῖς ἀφῆκε διανείμασθαι· τὴν δὲ τῷ καταντιπέρας
farmers he-let to-divide the and to-the opposite
Βυζαντίου τῶν λελωβημένων νοσοκομείῳ ἠφώρισε,
of-Byzantium of-the maimed hospital he-assigned
προσεπιδομήσας τοῖς παλαιοῖς δόμοις τῶν τῇ ἱερᾷ
having-built-on to-the old buildings of-those with-the sacred

νόσῳ καμνόντων καὶ ἑτέρας οἰκίας. καὶ τούτων τὸν ἀριθμὸν
disease suffering also other houses and of-these the number
πολυπλασιάσας, ἀνιών τε καὶ ὡς αὐτοὺς παραγινόμενος,
having-multiplied going-up both and to them coming
διένεμέ τε τούτοις χρυσόν, καὶ τὰ ἡλκωμένα καὶ τῇ νόσῳ
he-distributed both to-them gold and the ulcerated and by-the disease
κατειργασμένα τούτων μέλη οὐκ ἀπηξίου θεραπεύειν κατὰ
wrought their limbs not he-disdained to-tend according-to
τὸ ἐνόν, καίτοι ἁβρότατος ὢν καὶ λίαν φιλόκαλος. τοσοῦτον
the possible although most-delicate being and very elegant so-much
εἶχε τὸ φίλοικτόν τε καὶ συμπαθὲς πρὸς τὸ κάμνον τῆς
he-had the compassion both and sympathy toward the suffering of-the
φύσεως, παρὰ φαῦλον, ὅτε πως τούτοις ἀπήντα, τόν τε τῆς
nature at naught when somehow them he-met the both of-the
βασιλείας ὄγκον καὶ τὸν ἐκ τῆς ἁλουργίδος ἀποτικτόμενον
empire bulk and the from the purple begotten
τῦφον τιθείς. φόρων τε ἀτέλειαν τῷ τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν
pride setting of-tributes both exemption to-the of-the Armeniakoi
θέματι παρέσχεν· ἐκεῖθεν γὰρ ὥρμητο. τῆς δὲ ῥόγας
theme he-granted from-there for he-came the and stipend
ἐνστάσης, ἣν ἥ τε σύγκλητος καὶ τὸ τῆς πολιτείας εὐγενὲς
being-due which the both senate and the of-the state noble
καὶ ἐλλόγιμον παρὰ τῆς βασιλικῆς χειρὸς ἀποφέρεται, πᾶσι
and eminent from the imperial hand carries-off to-all
τοῖς ἠξιωμένοις ταυτησὶ τῆς δωρεᾶς, προῖκα τὴν ῥόγαν
those deemed-worthy of-this-here the gift as-a-gift the stipend
ἐπηύξησε, φιλοτίμῳ καὶ φιλαγάθῳ γνώμῃ κινούμενος.
he-increased with-lavish and generous mind being-moved

6 Ἤδη δὲ τῆς πρὸς Ὀρόντῃ μεγάλης Ἀντιοχείας πρὸς τοῦ
already and the on Orontes great Antioch by the
αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου ἁλούσης, καὶ τοῦ ἱεραρχοῦντος
emperor Nikephoros having-been-taken and of-the high-priest

χηρευούσης (ὁ γὰρ τὸ πρότερον κατάρχων ταύτης Ἀγαρηνὸς
being-widowed the for the before ruling it Hagarene
τὸν πατριάρχην Χριστοφόρον, ἀποστολικὸν ἄνδρα τε καὶ
the patriarch Christopher apostolic a-man both and
θεσπέσιον, ἀνεῖλεν, ἀκόντιον κατὰ τῶν στέρνων αὐτοῦ
divine killed javelin against the chest his
διελάσας, ἔγκλημα τἀνδρὶ εἰς τὸν σωτῆρα Χριστὸν
having-driven charge on-the-man toward the Savior Christ
ἐπάγων εὐσέβειαν), ταύτης τὸν συνοικισμὸν προὐργιαίτερον
bringing piety of-it the resettlement more-important
ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ποιούμενος, διὰ σπουδῆς εἶχε καὶ
the emperor John making through zeal he-had and
πολὺς ἦν ἐγκείμενος, τῆς ἱεραρχίας ταύτης τὸν ἄξιον
much he-was pressing of-the high-priesthood of-it the worthy(-man)
εὑρεῖν. ἀλύοντι δὲ τούτῳ καὶ γνωματεύοντι, ἐπὶ νοῦν
to-find fretting and to-this-one and deliberating to mind
ἦλθεν ὁ ἐκ Κολωνείας Θεόδωρος, ἀνὴρ ἐξ ὀνύχων τὸν
came the from Koloneia Theodore a-man from nails the
ἐρημικὸν καὶ ἀπράγμονα βίον αἱρετισάμενος, καὶ πολλοῖς
solitary and unbusy life having-chosen and with-many
ἱδρῶσιν ἀσκητικοῖς τὸ σαρκίον καταδαμάσας. τρίχινον
sweats ascetic the flesh having-subdued hairy
γὰρ ῥάκος ἐνδιδυσκόμενος, καὶ τούτῳ περικαλύπτων τὸν
for rag putting-on and with-this covering-over the
σίδηρον, ὃν ἔφερε τυραννῶν τὸ σωμάτιον, οὐ πρότερον
iron which he-wore tyrannizing the poor-body not before
αὐτὸ ἀπεσκευάζετο, πρὶν ἂν διερρύη τε ὅλον, καὶ εἰς οὐδὲν
it he-put-off until — rotted-away both whole and to nothing
ἐχρημάτιζε. λέγεται δέ, τὸν τοιοῦτον μοναστὴν Νικηφόρῳ τε
came it-is-said and the such monk to-Nikephoros both
πρότερον, καὶ αὖθις Ἰωάννῃ, τὴν τῆς βασιλείας θεοκλυτῆσαι
earlier and again to-John the of-the empire to-have-prophesied

ἀνάῤῥησιν. τοῦτον τῷ Βυζαντίῳ τότε παρουσιάζοντα ὁ
proclamation this-one — in-Byzantium then being-present —
Ἰωάννης προσάγει τῷ Πολυεύκτῳ· ὁ δέ, ἅμα τοῖς
John brings — to-Polyeuktos he and together-with the
ἐνδημοῦσι τῶν ἐπισκόπων τὸν ἄνδρα ἐξητακώς, ἐφευρών τε
resident of-the bishops the man having-examined having-found both
τὴν μὲν θύραθεν παιδείαν οὐ πάνυ ἠκριβωκότα, τήν γε μὴν
the indeed outside learning not quite having-mastered the at-least but
θείαν καὶ ἡμετέραν ἐξησκημένον φιλοτιμότατα, χρίει αὐτὸν
divine and ours having-practiced most-zealously anoints him
πατριάρχην Ἀντιοχείας. ὁ δὲ Πολύευκτος, μικρὰς ἡμέρας
patriarch of-Antioch — and Polyeuktos few days
ἐπιβιοὺς μετὰ τὴν Θεοδώρου προχείρισιν, μεταλλάττει
having-survived after the of-Theodore appointment exchanges
τὸν βίον, μνημεῖα τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ καταλιπὼν τὰς τῶν
the life memorials to-the church having-left the of-the
ἀρετῶν εἰκόνας, καὶ τὴν γνῶσιν τῆς θείας καὶ ἀνθρωπίνης
virtues images and the knowledge of-the divine and human
σοφίας καὶ ἐπιστήμης, ἣν εἰς ἄκρον ἐξήσκησε. τοῦ δὲ
wisdom and science which to height he-practiced — and
Πολυεύκτου ἐπὶ τρισκαίδεκα ἐνιαυτοὺς τὰς τῆς πατριαρχίας
of-Polyeuktos for thirteen years the of-the patriarchate
ἡνίας ἰθύναντος, καὶ πρὸς τὴν μακαρίαν μεταναστάντος
reins having-directed and to the blessed having-departed
κατάπαυσιν, σπουδὴ ἐξεγένετο τῷ αὐτοκράτορι Ἰωάννῃ,
rest zeal arose for-the emperor John
εἰς τὸν τῆς ἱεραρχίας θρόνον ἄνδρα ἐπιβιβάσαι τὸν
into the of-the high-priesthood throne a-man to-raise the
ἀρεταῖς καὶ τρόποις τῶν πολλῶν ὑπερφέροντα. τῇ
in-virtues and in-manners than-the many surpassing on-the

γοῦν ὑστεραίᾳ ἐς τὴν βασίλειον αὐλὴν τοὺς ἱεράρχας
at-any-rate next-day into the imperial court the high-priests
εἰσκαλεσάμενος καὶ τὴν σύγκλητον, ἔφησε τοιαῦτα·
having-called-in and the senate be-said such-things
"Μίαν ἀρχὴν ἐξεπίσταμαι, τὴν ἀνωτάτην καὶ πρώτην, ἥτις 7
one authority I-know the highest and first which
ἐκ τοῦ μὴ ὄντος εἰς τὸ εἶναι τὸ τοῦ ὁρατοῦ καὶ ἀοράτου
from the not being into the to-be the of-the visible and invisible
κόσμου παρήγαγε σύστημα. δύο δὲ τὰς ἐν τῷδε τῷ βίῳ
world brought-forth system two and the in this-here the life
γινώσκω καὶ τῇ κάτω περιφορᾷ, ἱερωσύνην καὶ βασιλείαν,
I-know and the below revolution priesthood and empire
ὧν τῇ μὲν τὴν τῶν ψυχῶν ἐπιμέλειαν, τῇ δὲ
of-which to-the(-one) indeed the of-the souls care to-the(-other) and
τὴν τῶν σωμάτων κυβέρνησιν ἐνεχείρισεν ὁ δημιουργός,
the of-the bodies government entrusted the craftsman
ὡς ἂν μὴ τούτων χωλεύσοιτο μέρος, ἄρτιόν τε καὶ
so-that — not of-these should-be-lamed part sound both and
ὁλόκληρον διασώζοιτο. τοίνυν, ἐπεὶ τὸ χρεὼν ὁ τὴν
whole should-be-preserved therefore since the debt the the
ἐκκλησίαν ἰθύνων ἐξέτισεν, ἔργον μὲν τούτου τοῦ ἀλαθήτου
church directing has-paid work indeed of-this the unescapable
πέφυκεν ὀφθαλμοῦ, τὸν κατευμεγεθοῦντα πάντων εἰς τὴν
is eye the(-one) surpassing all into the
λειτουργίαν τῶν θείων παραγαγεῖν, ᾧ καὶ πρὸ τοῦ
service of-the divine(-things) to-bring-forward by-which even before the
πλασθῆναι τὰ ἐπιτηδεύματα τῶν ἀνθρώπων διέγνωσται.
to-be-formed the practices of-the men have-been-discerned
αὐτὸς δέ, οὗ πεῖραν ἀνδρὸς ἀναμφίλεκτον ἐκ τοῦ μακροῦ
I-myself and of-whom trial of-a-man indisputable from the long
χρόνου παρείληφα, τοῦτον ἐπὶ τῶν θώκων ἀναβιβάζω
time I-have-received this-one onto the thrones I-raise

τῶν ἐκκλησιαστικῶν· ὡς μὴ λάθοι κατὰ γωνίαν
of-the ecclesiastical so-that not he-should-escape-notice in corner
τὸν βίον διηντληκὼς ἄνθρωπος παντοδαποῖς προτερήμασι
the life having-drained-out a-man with-every-kind excellences
κλεϊζόμενος, ᾧ γε καὶ τὸ προορατικὸν ἐκ Θεοῦ
being-famed to-whom at-least also the foreseeing from God
δεδώρηται χάρισμα. πολλὰ γάρ μοι τῶν μελλόντων ἀνεῖλε
has-been-given gift many for to-me of-the future(-things) he-foretold
θείᾳ ὀμφῇ, ἐκβάντα ἐν τοῖς καιροῖς αὐτῶν." εἶπεν
by-divine voice having-come-to-pass in the times their spoke
ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ εἰς μέσον παρήγαγε τὸν ἀναχωρητὴν
the emperor and into middle brought-forward the anchorite
Βασίλειον, ὃς ἐξ ὀνύχων τὸν μονήρη βίον αἱρετισάμενος,
Basil who from nails the monastic life having-chosen
συχνοὺς ἀγῶνας ἱδρώτων ἀσκητικῶν ἐν ταῖς τοῦ Ὀλύμπου
many contests of-sweats ascetic in the of-the Olympus
ἀκρωρείαις ἐπεδείξατο. τοῦτον ἐς τὴν πατριαρχικὴν ἑστίαν
ridges displayed him to the patriarchal hearth
ἀνιέναι παρεκελεύσατο· τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ (αὕτη δὲ ἦν
to-go-up ordered on-the and following this and was
ἀναστάσιμος ἡμέρα, καθ' ἣν τὴν ὀρθόδοξον πίστιν περὶ
resurrection day on which the orthodox faith about
τῆς τῶν σεπτῶν εἰκόνων προσκυνήσεως οἱ θεῖοι πατέρες
the of-the august icons veneration the divine fathers
ἐκράτυναν) τὸ τῆς ἀρχιερωσύνης ὁ Βασίλειος χρίσμα
confirmed the of-the high-priesthood — Basil chrism
δέχεται, καὶ οἰκουμενικὸς πατριάρχης ἀνακηρύττεται.
receives and ecumenical patriarch is-proclaimed

8 Ἰωάννῃ δὲ τῷ αὐτοκράτορι πολλαῖς ταῖς φροντίσιν
to-John and the emperor by-many the cares
ἐταλαντεύετο ἡ διάνοια, ποίᾳ δὴ προτέρᾳ δοίη
was-swayed the mind to-which indeed first he-should-give

τὴν ῥοπὴν ἐν τριόδῳ ἀπειλημμένος, καὶ μὴ παρενεχθείη
the weight at a-crossroads caught and not should-be-led-astray
τοῦ δέοντος. ἥ τε γὰρ σπάνις τῶν ἀναγκαίων καὶ ὁ
from-the needful the both for lack of-the necessities and the
λιμὸς ἐκβαθύνας, ἐπὶ τριετῆ καιρὸν τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἀρχὴν
famine having-deepened for three-year time the Roman rule
ἐπεβόσκετο· ἐπέκειτο δὲ καὶ ἡ Ῥωσσικὴ κίνησις οὐ χρηστὰς
fed-upon pressed and also the Rus movement not good
ὑποτιθεμένη ἐλπίδας, καὶ ἡ τῶν Καρχηδονίων καὶ Ἀράβων
suggesting hopes and the of-the Carthaginians and Arabs
κατὰ τῆς ἐπὶ Συρίαν Ἀντιοχείας, ἄρτι προσκτηθείσης
against the in Syria Antioch just acquired
Ῥωμαίοις, καταδρομή. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἄμαχον κακὸν τοῦ λιμοῦ
by-Romans raid the indeed then unconquerable evil of-the famine
τῇ σιταγωγίᾳ, ἣν ἐκ τῶν ἁπανταχῆ ἐμπορίων προνοίᾳ
by-the grain-transport which from the everywhere markets by-providence
διὰ τάχους συνήγαγε, διέλυσε, στήσας τὴν νομὴν τοῦ
through speed he-gathered he-dissolved having-stopped the spreading of-the
τοσούτου δεινοῦ. τὴν δέ γε ὁρμὴν τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν
so-great dread the and at-least rush of-the Hagarenes
τῇ τῶν Ἑῴων στρατευμάτων παρατάξει ἀνεχαίτισε,
by-the of-the Eastern armies array he-checked
Νικολάου τοῦ Πατρικίου στρατηγοῦντος· ὅστε οἰκεῖος ὢν
Nicholas the Patrikios commanding who intimate being
σπάδων τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἐμπειρίαν ἐκ πολλῆς μελέτης τῶν
eunuch to-the emperor experience from much practice of-the
ἀγώνων ἐκέκτητο. πρὸς μέντοι τὸν Σφενδοσλάβον, τὸν τῆς
contests had-acquired toward however — Sphendosthlavos the of-the
Ῥωσσικῆς πανοπλίας κατάρχοντα, ἔγνω διακηρυκεύεσθαι.
Rus full-army ruling he-resolved to-negotiate
καὶ δὴ πρέσβεις ὡς αὐτὸν ἐκπέμπει, παραγγέλλων αὐτῷ,
and indeed envoys to him sends instructing to-him

τὸν πρὸς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου ἐπὶ τῇ καταδρομῇ
the by the emperor Nikephoros for the raid
τῶν Μυσῶν ὑπεσχημένον ἀνειληφότα μισθόν, ἐπὶ τὰ
of-the Mysians promised having-received pay to the
σφῶν ἤθη καὶ τὸν Κιμμέριον μετανίστασθαι Βόσπορον,
their-own homes and the Cimmerian to-depart Bosporus
τὴν δὲ Μυσίαν παραλιπεῖν, Ῥωμαίοις προσήκουσαν, καὶ
— and Mysia to-leave to-Romans belonging and
ἀπόμοιραν τελοῦσαν Μακεδονίας ἀνέκαθεν. λέγεται γὰρ
portion being of-Macedonia from-of-old it-is-said for
Μυσοὺς ἀποίκους τῶν ὑπερβορέων Κοτράγων, Χαζάρων
Mysians colonists of-the hyperborean Kotragoi Khazars
τε καὶ Χουμάνων ὄντας, τῶν οἰκείων μεταστῆναι ἠθῶν·
both and Khoumanoi being from-the own to-have-moved homes
ἀλωμένους δὲ κατὰ τὴν Εὐρώπην, ταύτην κατειληφέναι καὶ
wandering and over — Europe this to-have-seized and
κατοικῆσαι, Κωνσταντίνου, ᾧ Πωγωνάτος ἐπίκλησις,
to-have-settled Constantine to-whom Pogonatos surname
τότε Ῥωμαίων ἡγεμονεύοντος· ὁμωνύμως δὲ τὴν χώραν
then Romans ruling by-the-same-name and the land
ἀπὸ Βουλγάρου (τοῦ σφῶν φυλάρχου) Βουλγαρίαν καλέσαι.
from Boulgaros the their phylarch Bulgaria to-have-called
9 Ἄιδεται καὶ ἕτερος περὶ τούτων λόγος, ὧδέ πη
is-sung also another about these account thus somehow
ἔχων· Ἰουστινιανοῦ, τοῦ Ῥωμαίων αὐτοκράτορος, ὑπὸ
having of-Justinian the of-Romans emperor by
Λεοντίου ἐκτμηθέντος τὴν ῥῖνα καὶ κατὰ τὴν Χερσῶνα
Leontios having-been-cut the nose and in — Cherson
περιορισθέντος, ἐπείπερ ἐκεῖθεν αὐτῷ διαδράναι πολυτρόπως
having-been-banished since from-there to-him to-escape in-many-ways
ἐγένετο, ἐς τὴν Μαιῶτίν τε ἀφικέσθαι, καὶ τὸ Μυσῶν
it-happened into the Maeotis both to-have-come and the of-Mysians

ἔθνος προσεταιρίσασθαι, ἐφ᾽ ᾧ, τήν τε βασιλείαν αὐτῷ
nation to-have-made-companion on condition the both empire for-himself
ἀνασώσασθαι, καὶ μισθοὺς μεγάλους ἐναπολήψεσθαι. τοὺς
to-recover and pay great to-take-in-return them
δὲ ἕψεσθαί τε αὐτῷ, καὶ πρὸς αὐτοῦ, τῆς βασιλείας αὖθις
and to-follow both him and by him the empire again
ἐπειλημμένου, εἰληφέναι τὴν χώραν, ὅσην ὁ Ἴστρος
having-laid-hold-of to-have-received the land as-much-as the Ister
ἐντὸς Μακεδόνων περιορίζει· καὶ τὴν μετοίκησιν ταύτῃ
within Macedonians bounds and the resettlement there
ποιήσασθαι, καὶ πολλὰ πολέμων ἔργα καὶ ἀνδραποδισμῶν
to-have-made and many of-wars works and enslavements
προξενῆσαι Ῥωμαίοις, πολεμησείοντας ἀεί, καὶ τὰ Θρᾳκῷα
to-have-caused for-Romans being-eager-for-war always and — Thracian
κατατρέχοντας κλίματα. Ῥωμαίους δὲ ἀντεπιέναι τούτοις·
overrunning regions Romans and to-attack-in-return them
τοὺς δὲ τὴν ἐκείνων οὐχ ὑφισταμένους ἀλκήν, ἐπ᾽ ἀμφιλαφῶν
they and the their not withstanding strength in thickly-wooded
χωρίων λόχμας καταδύεσθαι, καὶ ταῖς δυσχωρίαις τούτους
places' thickets to-dive-into and in-the rough-places them
καταγωνίζεσθαι. πολλῶν τοιγαροῦν ἐκ τοῦ κατ᾽ ἐκείνου
to-overcome many therefore from the at that
καιροῦ καταῤῥαγέντων πολέμων, καὶ γενναίων στρατηγῶν
time having-burst-out wars and noble generals
ὀλωλότων, Νικηφόρου τε, τοῦ παλαιτάτου αὐτοκράτορος,
having-perished Nikephoros both the most-ancient emperor
πεσόντος πρὸς τῶν Μυσῶν, παρὰ μόνου Κωνσταντίνου
having-fallen by the Mysians by only Constantine
λέγεται Κοπρωνύμου ἡσσηθῆναι Μυσούς, καὶ αὖθις παρὰ
it-is-said Kopronymos to-have-been-defeated Mysians and again by
τοῦ ἐγγόνου αὐτοῦ Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ τῆς Αὐγούστης Εἰρήνης
the grandson his Constantine the of-the Augusta Irene

υἱοῦ, καὶ τὰ νῦν δὲ πρὸς Ἰωάννου τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, ὃς
son and the now and by John the emperor who
τὰς τῶν Μυσῶν πόλεις αἰχμῇ παρεστήσατο· οὐχ ἱστόρηται
the of-the Mysians cities by-spear brought-over not is-recorded
δέ τις Ῥωμαίων ἕτερος, τούτους ἐπὶ τῆς σφετέρας γῆς
and anyone of-Romans other them in the their-own land
καταγωνισάμενος. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων ἅλις.
having-overcome but about indeed these-things enough
10 Ὁ δὲ Σφενδοσλάβος, ταῖς κατὰ τῶν Μυσῶν νίκαις ἐπὶ
— *and Sphendosthlavos by-the against the Mysians victories to*
μέγα αἰρόμενος, καὶ τῇ βαρβαρικῇ αὐθαδείᾳ ὑπέροπλα
great raised and with-the barbarian arrogance overweeningly
βρενθυόμενος (ἤδη γὰρ τὴν χώραν βεβαίως ἐκέκτητο),
swaggering already for the land securely he-had-acquired
περιδεεῖς καὶ καταπλῆγας Μυσοὺς τῇ ἐμφύτῳ ἀπηνείᾳ
very-fearful and terror-struck Mysians by-the innate cruelty
κατεργασάμενος (φασὶ γὰρ τὴν Φιλίππου πόλιν τῷ
having-made they-say for the of-Philip city in-the
πολεμεῖν ἐξελών, δισμυρίους τῶν ἐν τῷ ἄστει ληφθέντων
fighting having-taken twenty-thousand of-those in the town taken
ὠμῶς καὶ ἀπανθρώπως ἀνασκολοπίσαι, καὶ ταύτῃ τὸ
cruelly and inhumanly to-have-impaled and thus the
ἀντίξουν ἅπαν ἐκδειματῶσαι καὶ θεῖναι ὑπόσπονδον),
opposing all to-have-terrified and to-have-made subject-by-treaty
ὑπεραύχους καὶ αὐθάδεις τὰς ἀποκρίσεις τοῖς πρέσβεσι
arrogant and self-willed the answers to-the envoys
Ῥωμαίων ἐξέφερε· “μὴ γὰρ ἀφέξεσθαι τῆς χώρας,
of-Romans he-delivered not for to-keep-off from-the land
εὐδαίμονος οὔσης, εἰ μὴ ἐπὶ χρημάτων πολυταλάντων
prosperous being if not on of-money of-many-talents
καταβολῇ, καὶ ἀπεμπολήσει τῶν τε πόλεων καὶ τῶν
payment and ransoming of-the both cities and of-the

ἀνδραπόδων, ὅσα τῷ πολεμεῖν ἐπεκτήσαντο. εἰ δ'
captives as-many-as by-the fighting they-had-acquired if but
οὐ βούλεσθαι Ῥωμαίους ταῦτα καταβαλεῖν, ἀλλὰ τῆς
not to-wish Romans these-things to-pay but —
Εὐρώπης θᾶττον ἀφίστασθαι, ὡς μὴ προσηκούσης αὐτοῖς,
from-Europe quickly to-withdraw as not belonging to-them
καὶ πρὸς τὴν Ἀσίαν μετασκευάζεσθαι· ἄλλως γὰρ μὴ
and to — Asia to-remove otherwise for not
οἴεσθαι, Ταυροσκύθας εἰς σπονδὰς Ῥωμαίων ξυμβήσεσθαι."
to-think Tauroscythians into treaty with-Romans to-come
Ἰωάννης δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, τὰς τοιαύτας ἀποκρίσεις
John and the emperor the such answers
τοῦ Σκύθου δεξάμενος, καὶ αὖθις τοῖς προαπεσταλμένοις
of-the Scythian having-received and again by-the sent-before(-envoys)
ἀμείβεται τάδε· "τὴν ἐκ πατέρων ἐς ἡμᾶς διαβᾶσαν
replies these the from fathers to us having-come-down
εἰρήνην ἀλώβητον καθ' ἣν Θεὸς ἐμεσίτευσεν, οὐ δεῖν
peace unimpaired in which God mediated not it-is-needful
οἰόμεθα λύειν αὐτοί· ἅτε πρόνοιαν εἶναι πιστεύοντες τὴν
we-think to-dissolve ourselves as providence to-be believing the
τὸ πᾶν διευθύνουσαν, καὶ τὰ Χριστιανῶν πρεσβεύοντες
the all directing and the of-Christians honoring
ἔθιμα. διὰ ταῦτα εἰσηγούμεθά τε ὑμῖν ὡς φίλοις,
customs because-of these-things propose both to-you as friends
καὶ συμβουλεύομεν, ἐξαυτῆς ἀπαίρειν τῆς μηδέν τι
and counsel forthwith to-depart from-the nothing at-all
προσηκούσης χώρας ὑμῖν, καὶ μὴ διαμέλλειν, μηδ'
belonging land to-you and not to-delay nor
ἀναδύεσθαι, εἰδότας, ὡς εἰ μὴ καταπειθεῖς ταύτῃ τῇ
to-shrink-back knowing that if not obedient to-this the
ὀνησιφόρῳ ξυμβουλῇ γένοισθε, οὐχ ἡμᾶς, αὐτοὺς δέ,
beneficial counsel you-should-become not us yourselves but

λύειν τὰς ἀνέκαθεν συντεθείσας σπονδάς. καὶ μή γε
to-dissolve the from-of-old compacted treaties and not at-least
δόξωμεν μεγαλαύχους ταύτας τὰς ἀποκρίσεις ποιεῖν.
may-we-seem boastful these the answers to-make
ἐν Χριστῷ γὰρ θαῤῥοῦμεν τῷ ἀθανάτῳ Θεῷ, ὡς, εἰ
in Christ for we-trust in-the immortal God that if
μὴ τῆς χώρας ἀπέλθοιτε, καὶ ἄκοντες παρ᾽ ἡμῶν
not from-the land you-should-depart even unwilling by us
ταύτης ἀπελαθήσεσθε. οἶμαι γάρ σε μὴ λεληθέναι τὸ
from-it you-will-be-driven I-think for you not to-have-escaped the
τοῦ σοῦ πταῖσμα πατρὸς Ἴγγορος, ὅστε τὰς ἐνόρκους
of-the your disaster father's Ingor who the sworn
σπονδὰς παρὰ φαῦλον θέμενος, σὺν μεγάλῳ κινήματι καὶ
treaty at naught having-set with great movement and
μυρίοις σκάφεσι κατὰ τῆς βασιλευούσης ἐκπλεύσας, μόλις
countless boats against the reigning(-city) having-sailed-out barely
σὺν δέκα λέμβοις ἐς τὸν Κιμμέριον ἀφίκετο Βόσπορον,
with ten skiffs to the Cimmerian arrived Bosporus
αὐτάγγελος τῶν οἰκείων γεγονὼς συμφορῶν. καὶ παρίημι
self-messenger of-the own having-become misfortunes and I-pass-over
τὸν αὖθις οἴκτιστον μόρον ἐκείνου, παρὰ τοὺς Γερμανοὺς
the afterward most-pitiable fate his against the Germans
ἐκστρατεύσαντος, καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνων ληφθέντος, καὶ
having-campaigned and by them having-been-taken and
φυτῶν στελέχεσι προσδεθέντος, καὶ εἰς δύο διαμερισθέντος
of-trees to-the-trunks having-been-tied and into two having-been-divided
τμήματα. καὶ σὲ γοῦν οὐκ οἶμαι πρὸς τὴν σὴν
pieces and you at-any-rate not I-think to the your
ἐπαναζεῦξαι πατρίδα, εἴ γε τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν παντευχίαν
to-return fatherland if at-least the Roman full-armor
κατὰ σοῦ χωρεῖν ἀναγκάσειας, ἀλλ᾽ αὐτόθι διαφθαρήσεσθαι
against you to-go you-should-compel but there to-be-destroyed

πανσυδεί, ὡς μηδὲ πυρφόρον ἐς Σκυθίαν ἀφικέσθαι, τὰς
in-full-force so-that not-even fire-bearer to Scythia to-come the
κατασχούσας ὑμᾶς ἀπευκταίους ἀπαγγελοῦντα τύχας." ὁ δὲ
having-seized you abominable to-announce fortunes — and
Σφενδοσλάβος, ἐπὶ ταῖς τοιαύταις ἀποκρίσεσι σχετλιάσας,
Sphendosthlavos at the such answers having-been-indignant
τῇ τε βαρβαρικῇ μανίᾳ καὶ ἀπονοίᾳ παραφερόμενος,
by-the both barbarian madness and desperation carried-away
ἀντέλεξε τοιαῦτα· "οὐδεμίαν ἀνάγκην τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
answered such-things no necessity the emperor
Ῥωμαίων ὡς ἡμᾶς ἀφικέσθαι ὁρῶ κατεπείγουσαν· διὸ
of-Romans to us to-come I-see pressing therefore
μὴ κάμῃ, μέχρι τῆσδε τῆς γῆς ἀφικόμενος· αὐτοὶ γὰρ
not let-him-weary as-far-as this-here the land having-come ourselves for
ὅσον οὔπω πρὸ τῶν τοῦ Βυζαντίου πυλῶν πηξόμεθα τὰς
all but before the — of-Byzantium gates will-fix the
σκηνάς, καὶ καρτερὸν χάρακα ταύτῃ περιβαλοῦμεν, ἐξιόντα
tents and strong palisade there we-will-throw-around going-out
τε τοῦτον, εἴ γε καὶ καρτερήσει πρὸς τοσούτων πόνων
both him if at-least also he-will-endure for such toils
διαγωνίσασθαι, γενναίως ὑποδεξόμεθα, διδάξομέν τε τοῖς
to-fight-it-out nobly we-will-receive we-will-teach both by-the
ἔργοις αὐτοῖς, ὡς οὐ βάναυσοί τινες ἀποχειροβίωτοι, ἀλλ'
deeds themselves that not artisans some living-by-hand but
αἱμάτων ἄνδρες τυγχάνομεν, τοῖς ὅπλοις τὸ δυσμενὲς
of-blood men we-are with-the arms the hostile
καταγωνιζόμενοι· εἰ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐξ ἀγνοίας κατὰ τὰ
overcoming if even he-himself from ignorance like the
σκιατραφοῦντα γύναια τὴν Ῥωσσικὴν ἡγεῖται ἀλκήν, καί,
shade-reared women the of-Rus thinks strength and

ὥς τινα νήπια ὑπομάζια μορμολυκείοις τισί, ταύταις ταῖς
like some infants at-the-breast with-bugbears certain with-these the
ἀπειλαῖς ἡμᾶς πειρᾶται δεδίττεσθαι."
threats us he-tries to-frighten

XVII · BARDAS SKLEROS AGAINST THE RUS

John forms a guard of picked young men, the Immortals, and sends Bardas Skleros, brother of his late wife Maria, and the stratopedarch Peter, who once ran a Scythian champion through with his lance, to winter in the lands next to Mysia. The Rus send a force with Huns and Mysians against them. Bardas sends John Alakas to scout, draws up his men in three bodies with two in ambush, and engages more than thirty thousand with ten thousand. His brother Constantine cuts down a Scythian together with his horse; the ambush shakes the enemy, Bardas cleaves another to the belt, and they flee, over twenty thousand falling against fifty-five Romans. John brings the Asian armies to winter in Thrace and Macedonia.

11 Τούτων τῶν ἀπονενοημένων τοῦ ἐκεῖθεν λόγων ὁ
these the desperate of-the(-one) from-there words the
βασιλεὺς διενηχηθείς, ἔγνω, μὴ διαμέλλειν, ἀλλὰ πάσῃ
emperor having-heard resolved not to-delay but with-all
σπουδῇ τὰ ἐς τὸν πόλεμον ἐξαρτύεσθαι, ὡς ἂν
zeal the(-things) for the war to-prepare so-that —
προτερήσοι τὴν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἄφιξιν, ἐπιτειχίσοι τε τούτῳ
he-might-anticipate the to him arrival might-wall-against both him
τὴν κατὰ τῆς βασιλευούσης ἐπίθεσιν. εὐθὺς οὖν ἴλην
the against the reigning(-city) attack at-once then squadron
γενναίων καὶ νεανικῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐκλεξάμενος, ἀθανάτους
of-noble and youthful men having-chosen Immortals
τε τούτους κατονομάσας, περὶ αὑτὸν εἶναι διεκελεύσατο.
both them having-named about himself to-be he-ordered
ἐντεῦθεν τὸν Μάγιστρον Βάρδαν, ᾧ Σκληρὸς ἡ
thereupon the Magistros Bardas to-whom Skleros the

ἐπίκλησις, ὁμαίμονα τῆς ἀποιχομένης Μαρίας, τῆς τοῦ
surname brother of-the departed Maria the of-the
τοιούτου βασιλέως συνεύνου, τυγχάνοντα, δραστήριον ἄνδρα
such emperor wife being energetic a-man
καὶ τὴν ἀλκὴν γενναιότατον· καὶ τὸν Πατρίκιον Πέτρον,
and in-the strength most-noble and the Patrikios Peter
τὸν πρὸς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου στρατοπεδάρχην
the(-one) by the emperor Nikephoros stratopedarch
προχειρισθέντα διά τε τὴν προσοῦσαν αὐτῷ ἀρετήν, καὶ
appointed because-of both the belonging to-him virtue and
τὰ κατὰ τοὺς πολέμους ἀνδραγαθήματα (λέγεται γάρ ποτε
the in the wars deeds-of-valor it-is-said for once
Σκυθῶν τὴν Θρᾴκην καταδραμόντων, ἐπεὶ ἐξ ἀντιπάλου
Scythians — Thrace having-overrun when from opposing(-side)
τὸν Πέτρον, καίτοι τομίαν ὄντα, μετὰ τοῦ συνεπομένου
— Peter although eunuch being with the following
στίφους ξυνέβαινεν αὐτοῖς ἀντιτάττεσθαι, τὸν τῶν Σκυθῶν
band it-happened for-them to-be-arrayed-against the of-the Scythians
ἀγόν, πελώριον ἄνδρα, καὶ ἐς τὸ ἀσφαλὲς τεθωρακισμένον,
leader huge man and to the secure armored
παρὰ τὸ μεταίχμιον ἐξιππάσασθαι, κοντὸν ἐπιμήκη
into the no-man's-land to-ride-out lance long
κραδαίνοντα, προσκαλεῖσθαί τε τὸν βεβουλημένον αὐτῷ
brandishing to-challenge both the(-one) wishing him
ἀντιτάττεσθαι· τὸν δὲ Πέτρον, ἀλκῆς καὶ μένους παρ'
to-face — and Peter of-strength and might beyond
ὑπόνοιαν ὑποπλησθέντα, τὸν ἵππον τε σφοδρῶς κεντρίσαι
expectation having-been-filled the horse both violently to-spur
τοῖς μύωψι, καὶ τὸ δόρυ κραταιῶς διαγκυλησάμενον,
with-the spurs and the spear mightily having-gripped
ἀμφοτέραις ὦσαι κατὰ τοῦ στέρνου τὸν Σκύθην· οὕτω
with-both(-hands) to-thrust against the chest the Scythian so

δὲ γενέσθαι τὴν ἀντέρεισιν καρτεράν, ὡς ἀντιτορῆσαι, καὶ
and to-have-been the counter-thrust strong that to-pierce and
διαμπερὲς κατὰ τὸ μετάφρενον διαπτῆναι, μὴ ἀντισχόντα
right-through at the back to-fly not having-withstood
τὸν ἀλυσιδωτὸν θώρακα, ἀλλ' ἄναυδον τὸν πελώριον
the chain-mail breastplate but speechless the huge
ἐκεῖνον προσαραχθῆναι τῇ γῇ· καὶ τούτῳ τῷ καινῷ καὶ
that-man to-be-dashed on-the earth and at-this the novel and
ξένῳ θεάματι καταπλαγῆναί τε τοὺς Σκύθας, καὶ πρὸς
strange sight to-have-been-astounded both the Scythians and to
φυγὴν ἀπιδεῖν)· τούτοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς παρήγγειλεν ὁ
flight to-look these the generals ordered the
βασιλεύς, τὰς δυνάμεις ἀνειληφότας ἐπὶ τὴν ὅμορον καὶ
emperor the forces having-taken-up to the bordering and
ἀγχιτέρμονα τῆς Μυσίας διαβαίνειν· ἐκεῖ τε διαχειμάζειν,
adjacent — of-Mysia to-cross there both to-winter
καὶ γυμνάζειν τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ τὸν χῶρον περιέπειν, ὡς
and to-exercise the army and the place to-take-care-of so-that
μή τις εἴη τούτῳ λώβη ταῖς ἐκδρομαῖς τῶν Σκυθῶν·
not any might-be to-it damage from-the sallies of-the Scythians
ἔς τε τὰς ἐπαύλεις καὶ τὰ ἤθη τῶν δυσμενῶν διγλώσσους
to both the encampments and the haunts of-the enemies bilingual
ἄνδρας ἐκπέμπειν Σκυθικὸν ἠμπισχημένους ἱματισμόν,
men to-send-out Scythian having-put-on clothing
ὡς τὰ σφῶν διαβούλια γνοῖεν, καὶ βασιλεῖ ταῦτα
so-that the their plans they-might-learn and to-the-emperor these-things
κατάφωρα γίγνοιντο. τὴν τοιαύτην οὖν φάσιν πρὸς τοῦ
evident might-become the such then statement from the
βασιλέως εἰληφότες, τὴν Εὐρώπην καταλαμβάνουσιν.
emperor having-received — Europe they-reach

Ταυροσκύθαι δέ, τὴν τούτων ἐνωτισθέντες διάβασιν, 12
Tauroscythians and the their having-heard crossing
ἀπόμοιραν τῆς σφετέρας στρατιᾶς διαιρέσαντες, Οὔννων
a-portion of-the their-own army having-divided of-Huns
τε καὶ Μυσῶν πλῆθος ταύτῃ προσεταιρίσαντες, κατὰ
both and of-Mysians multitude to-it having-attached against
Ῥωμαίων χωρεῖν ἐκπεπόμφεσαν. ἄρτι δὲ τὴν τούτων
Romans to-go had-sent just and the their
ἐπήλυσιν ὁ Μάγιστρος Βάρδας αἰσθόμενος, καὶ ἄλλως
approach the Magistros Bardas having-perceived and otherwise
γενναῖός τε καὶ ῥέκτης τυγχάνων ἀνήρ, τότε δὲ σφαδάζων
noble both and active being a-man then and quivering
θυμῷ καὶ ῥώμης ὁρμῇ, τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν λογάδας
with-spirit and with-strength's rush the about himself picked(-men)
συνειληφώς, πρὸς τὴν τῶν ἐναντίων ἠπείγετο συμπλοκήν.
having-gathered to the of-the opponents hastened engagement
καὶ δὴ Ἰωάννην τὸν Ἀλακᾶ εἰσκαλέσας, εἰς κατασκοπὴν
and indeed John — Alakas having-called-in on reconnaissance
ἀπέστειλεν, ἀθρῆσαί τε τοὺς Σκύθας, καὶ τὸ τοῦ πλήθους
sent to-observe both the Scythians and the of-the multitude
εἰκάσαι ποσόν, καὶ καθ' ὃν αὐλίζοιντο τόπον, καὶ ὅ τι
to-guess amount and in which they-encamped place and what —
πράττοιεν· πέμπειν τε τὴν ταχίστην ὡς αὐτόν, καὶ πάντα
they-were-doing to-send both the quickest to him and all
διαγγέλλειν, ὡς συσκευάσοι, καὶ ἐκτάξοι τὴν στρατιὰν
to-report so-that he-might-prepare and might-draw-up the army
πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. Ἰωάννης δέ, τοὺς ἑπομένους λογάδας
for the war John and the following picked(-men)
ἀνειληφώς, κατὰ τάχος ἐπὶ τοὺς Σκύθας ἱππάσατο· τῇ
having-taken-up with speed against the Scythians rode on-the
δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ παρὰ τὸν Μάγιστρον στέλλει, ἐπισπεύδων
and next-day to the Magistros sends urging

τοῦτον ἱκέσθαι μετὰ τοῦ πλήθους· μὴ πόῤῥω γάρ, ἀλλ᾽
him to-come with the multitude not far for but
ἐγγύθεν, τοὺς Σκύθας αὐλίζεσθαι. ὁ δέ, τῶν τοιούτων
near the Scythians to-encamp he and the such
λόγων διακούσας, τριχῇ διατάξας τὴν φάλαγγα, τῇ μὲν
words having-heard threefold having-arranged the phalanx the indeed
ἐφέπεσθαι παρήγγειλε κατὰ μέτωπον, ταῖς δὲ κατὰ τοὺς
to-follow he-ordered at front the and in the
ἐγκαρσίους προλοχίζειν δρυμούς· τηνικαῦτα δὲ τῆς ἐνέδρας
transverse to-lie-in-ambush thickets then and from-the ambush
διεκθέειν, ὁπηνίκα τῆς σάλπιγγος, τὸ ἐνυάλιον ἐπηχούσης,
to-run-out when of-the trumpet the war-call sounding
διακούσαιεν. ταῦτα τοῖς λοχαγοῖς παρακελευσάμενος, κατὰ
they-should-hear these-things to-the captains having-ordered at
στόμα τοῖς Σκύθαις ἀντεπῄει, κραταιῶς διαγωνιζόμενος.
mouth the Scythians went-against mightily fighting
ἐπλεονέκτει δὲ πλήθει τὸ στράτευμα τῶν ἐναντίων,
had-the-advantage and in-number the army of-the opponents
ὑπὲρ τοὺς τρισμυρίους τελοῦν· οἱ γὰρ τῷ Μαγίστρῳ
over the thirty-thousand being those for with-the Magistros
συνεφεπόμενοι, μετὰ τῶν λόχων, οὐ πλέονες τῶν μυρίων
following with the ambushes not more than-the ten-thousand
ἐτύγχανον. τῆς δὲ συμπλοκῆς γενομένης παρ᾽ ἀμφοτέρων,
happened-to-be of-the and engagement having-occurred on both(-sides)
ἔπιπτον οἱ νεανικώτεροι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγεται τῶν τινα
fell the more-youthful there indeed it-is-said of-the a-certain
Σκυθῶν, ἀλκῇ καὶ σώματος ὄγκῳ γαυρούμενον, τῆς
Scythians in-strength and of-body in-bulk exulting from-the
ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἀποκριθέντα φάλαγγος ἐξιππεῦσαί τε, καὶ τῷ
about himself having-separated phalanx to-ride-out both and —
Βάρδᾳ ἐπιδραμεῖν, καὶ ξίφει τοῦτον πλῆξαι κατὰ τῆς
on-Bardas to-run-at and with-sword him to-strike on the

κόρυθος· κενὴν δὲ γενέσθαι τὴν τοῦ ξίφους καταφοράν,
helmet empty and to-have-been the of-the sword downstroke
τοῦ ἀθέρος ἀναγναμφθέντος τῇ κυνῇ, καὶ ἀλλαχόσε
of-the blade having-been-bent-back by-the cap and elsewhere
τῇ ταύτης στεγανότητι περιολισθήσαντος. Κωνσταντῖνος
by-the its solidity having-slipped-around Constantine
δὲ ὁ πατρίκιος, σύναιμος τῷ Βάρδᾳ τελῶν, ἄρτι τῷ
and the patrikios brother — to-Bardas being just with-the
ἰούλῳ τὴν γένυν ἐπιχνοάζων, πελώριός τε πεφυκὼς τῷ
first-down the cheek being-covered huge both being by-the
σώματι, καὶ τὴν ἰσχὺν δυσεκβίαστος καὶ ἀκαταγώνιστος,
body and in-the strength hard-to-force and invincible
τὸ ξίφος σπασάμενος ἴεται τὸν Σκύθην βαλεῖν· ὁ δέ,
the sword having-drawn goes the Scythian to-strike he and
τὴν φορὰν αὐτοῦ ὑπειδόμενος, ἐκκλίνει τὴν πληγήν, κατ᾽
the rush his having-foreseen dodges the blow onto
ἰσχίον ὑπτιάσας τοῦ ἵππου. δέχεται δὲ ταύτην παρὰ
haunch having-leaned-back of-the horse receives and it at
τὸν αὐχένα ὁ ἵππος, ὃν διαμπερὲς ἀποτέμνεται· ὁ
the neck the horse which right-through is-cut-off the
δὲ Σκύθης, ἅμα τῷ ἵππῳ κατενεχθείς, πρὸς τοῦ
and Scythian together-with the horse brought-down by —
Κωνσταντίνου ἐναποσφάττεται.
Constantine is-slaughtered
Τῆς δὲ μάχης τῇδε κἀκεῖσε μετακλινομένης, καὶ συχνὰς 13
of-the and battle here and-there inclining and many
καὶ ἀμφιταλάντους μεταβαλλούσης ῥοπὰς ἐφ᾽ ἑκάτερα, τὸ
and teetering changing inclinations to both(-sides) the
ἐνυάλιον ὁ Βάρδας ἐνηχεῖν ἐγκελεύεται, τά τε τύμπανα
war-call — Bardas to-sound orders the both drums
θαμινὰ παταγεῖν· τῆς δὲ φάλαγγος ἐκ τῶν λόχων
frequently to-beat of-the and phalanx from the ambushes

ἐξαναστάσης κατὰ τὸ σύνθημα, καὶ κατὰ νώτου τῶν
having-risen-up according-to the signal and at back of-the
Σκυθῶν γενομένης, δέος τε αὐτοῖς εἰσῄει καὶ πρὸς
Scythians having-come fear both to-them came-in and to
φυγαδείαν ἀπέκλιναν. μήπω δὲ γεγενημένης λαμπρᾶς τῆς
flight they-turned not-yet and having-become brilliant the
διώξεως, τῶν ἐπιφανῶν τις Σκυθῶν, μεγέθει σώματος
pursuit of-the illustrious a-certain Scythians in-size of-body
καὶ ὅπλων λαμπρότητι πεφυκὼς τῶν ἄλλων ἀριπρεπής,
and of-arms in-brilliance being than-the others most-distinguished
κατὰ τὸ μεταίχμιον περιῄει, ἐπ᾽ ἀλκὴν τοὺς ἑταίρους
in the no-man's-land went-about to strength the comrades
ἐπιῤῥωννύς. τοῦτον Βάρδας ὁ Σκληρὸς ἐξιππασάμενος
strengthening this-one Bardas — Skleros having-ridden-out
παίει κατὰ τῆς κεφαλῆς, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ ζωστῆρος τὸ ξίφος
strikes on the head and as-far-as the belt the sword
διήλασε, μήτε τοῦ κράνους αὐτῷ ἐπαρκέσαντος, μήτε τοῦ
drove not the helmet for-him having-sufficed nor the
θώρακος τὴν τῆς χειρὸς ἐπισχόντος ἰσχύν, ἢ τὴν τοῦ ξίφους
breastplate the of-the hand having-checked strength or the of-the sword
τομήν. διχῇ δὲ τούτου διατμηθέντος καὶ προσαραχθέντος
cut in-two and he having-been-cut-apart and having-been-dashed
τῇ γῇ, Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν ὑφ᾽ ἡδονῆς ἐπηλάλαξαν, καὶ πρὸς
on-the earth Romans indeed from pleasure raised-the-war-cry and to
ἀλκὴν ἐπερῤῥώσθησαν· Σκύθαι δέ, τῷ καινῷ καὶ ἀλλοκότῳ
strength were-strengthened Scythians and by-the novel and strange
τῆς πληγῆς ἀποδειλιάσαντες, σὺν οἰμωγῇ τὸν συνασπισμὸν
of-the blow having-lost-heart with wailing the close-order
διαλύσαντες, εἰς φυγαδείαν ἐτράποντο. οὓς ἐπισπόμενοι
having-broken into flight turned whom having-followed
Ῥωμαῖοι μέχρι βαθείας ἑσπέρας ἀνῄρουν ἀνηλεῶς. κατὰ
Romans until deep evening killed pitilessly in

τοῦτον δὴ λέγεται τὸν ἀγῶνα πεντήκοντα καὶ πέντε
this indeed it-is-said the contest fifty and five
Ῥωμαίων ἄνδρας τεθνάναι, τραυματίας δὲ γενέσθαι
of-Romans men to-have-died wounded and to-have-become
συχνούς, καὶ ἵππων κατακοντισθῆναι τοὺς πλέονας· Σκυθῶν
many and of-horses to-have-been-speared the most of-Scythians
τε ὑπὲρ τοὺς δισμυρίους διαφθαρῆναι. ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν πρὸς
and over the twenty-thousand to-have-perished but the indeed against
τοὺς Σκύθας γεγενημένη τότε Ῥωμαίων διαμάχη εἰς
the Scythians having-occurred then of-Romans fight into
τοιοῦτον ἐτελεύτα τὸ τέλος. Ἰωάννης δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὰς
such ended the end John and the emperor the
Ἀσίας δυνάμεις εἰς τὴν Εὐρώπην διὰ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου
of-Asia forces into — Europe through the Hellespont
περαιοῦσθαι κατήπειγεν, ἐς τἀπὶ Θρᾴκης τε καὶ Μακεδονίας
to-be-carried-across urged to the-in Thrace both and Macedonia
διαχειμάζειν χωρία, καὶ τοῖς ὅπλοις ὁσημέραι γυμνάζεσθαι,
to-winter places and with-the arms daily to-be-exercised
ὡς μὴ ἀπόμαχοι εἶεν ἐπὶ τὸν τῶν ἀγώνων καιρόν,
so-that not unfit-for-battle they-might-be at the of-the contests time
μειονεκτοῦντες ἐν τῇ μάχῃ τῶν δυσμενῶν· περιμένειν δὲ
falling-short in the battle of-the enemies to-await and
τὸν τοῦ ἤρους καιρόν. ἐκείνου γὰρ ἤδη ἐκ τῆς χειμερινῆς
the of-the spring time that for already from the wintry
κατηφείας προκύπτοντος, καὶ εἰς σταθηρὰν αἰθρίαν τὸ
gloom peeping-forth and into steady clear-sky the
κοσμικὸν κατάστημα μεταβάλλοντος, αὐτόν τε βασιλέα ὡς
world's condition changing himself both emperor to
αὐτοὺς ἀφικέσθαι, τὰς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν δυνάμεις ἐπαγόμενον,
them to-come the about him forces bringing
καὶ πανσυδεὶ τοῖς Ταυροσκύθαις συμπλέκεσθαι.
and in-full-force with-the Tauroscythians to-engage

XVIII · THE REVOLT OF BARDAS PHOKAS

Bardas Phokas, son of the Kouropalates Leo, escapes from his banishment at Amaseia with his cousins the Parsakoutenoi, gathers rebels at Caesarea with the vine-dresser Symeon Ampelas, and puts on the red sandals, while his father, under guard on Lesbos, plots through the bishop Stephen to cross to Europe. John has the bishop Stephen tried, and Leo and his son Nikephoros, condemned to death, are blinded instead. John offers Bardas pardon by letter, but Bardas calls him the murderer of his uncle. Bardas Skleros, made stratelates, is sent into Asia with gold-sealed grants of rank to win over the rebels; from Dorylaion he writes to Phokas, his brother's brother-in-law, urging surrender, and Phokas answers that he will win the throne or die nobly.

1 Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα Ἰωάννῃ τῷ βασιλεῖ κατὰ τῶν Ῥῶς
in which and these-things by-John the emperor against the Rus
διεσπούδαστο, Βάρδας ὁ Δούξ, ὁ τοῦ Κουροπαλάτου μὲν
were-being-pressed Bardas the Doux the of-the Kouropalates indeed
Λέοντος υἱός, Νικηφόρου δὲ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος αὐτανεψιός,
Leo son of-Nikephoros and the emperor nephew
ἐς νεωτερισμὸν ἀσυμφανῶς ἀποκλίνας, ἐξ Ἀμασείας, καθ'
to revolt secretly having-turned from Amaseia in
ἣν περιώριστο, φυγαδείᾳ ἐχρήσατο, Θεοδώρου Βάρδα
which he-had-been-banished flight used Theodore Bardas
τε καὶ Νικηφόρου, τῶν Πατρικίων καὶ αὐταδέλφων,
both and Nikephoros the Patrikioi and brothers
ἐς τοῦτο συναραμένων αὐτῷ· οἳ ἐκ τῆς ἐνεγκαμένης
to this having-helped him who from the having-borne
αὐτοὺς Παρσακούτης ἐπίκλησιν εἰλήφεσαν Παρσακουτηνοί,
them Parsakouta surname had-received Parsakoutenoi
ἐξάδελφοι τῷ Δουκὶ Βάρδᾳ τυγχάνοντες. τῆς οὖν Ἀμασείας
cousins to-the Doux Bardas being — then from-Amaseia

ἀωρὶ τῶν νυκτῶν λαθρηδὸν ὁ Δοὺξ ἀποδράς,
at-an-untimely-hour of-the nights secretly the Doux having-run-away
διὰ τῶν προετοιμασθέντων ἀμοιβαίων ἵππων ἐς τὴν
through the prepared relay horses to —
τῆς Καππαδοκίας ἀφῖκτο Καισάρειαν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπὶ
— of-Cappadocia came Caesarea there indeed for
εὐαριθμήτοις ἡμέραις ἐναυλισάμενος, πλῆθος ἀπονενοημένων
easily-counted days having-encamped multitude of-desperate
ἀνδρῶν ἐπ᾽ ἀποστασίαν ῥεπόντων συνειλόχει, τῶν
men to defection inclining he-gathered those
ἐκ γένους αὐτῷ καὶ συνήθων μάλιστα συνεισρεόντων
from family to-him and acquaintances most flowing-together
ὁσημέραι. καὶ γὰρ ταῖς καινοτομίαις ἐκτόπως οἱ ἄνθρωποι
daily and for in-the innovations extraordinarily the men
χαίρειν εἰώθεσαν, δόξης ὀνειροπολουμένης ἐλπίσι, τιμαῖς
to-rejoice were-wont of-glory dreamed-of by-hopes by-honors
τε ἀξιωμάτων, καὶ χρημάτων διανομαῖς ὑπαγόμενοι.
both of-dignities and of-money by-distributions being-led-on
συνεκρότουν δὲ τὴν ἀποστασίαν, συναγηοχότες πάσῃ
welded-together and the defection having-collected with-all
σπουδῇ τὰ στρατεύματα, οἵ τε ῥηθέντες Παρσακουτηνοί,
zeal the armies the both mentioned Parsakoutenoi
καὶ Συμεών, ὃς γεωργὸς ἀμπέλων καθεστηκώς, ἐκ
and Symeon who cultivator of-vines being from
τῆς ἐργασίας αὐτῆς τὸ ἐπώνυμον εἴληφεν, Ἀμπελᾶς
the work itself the surname received Ampelas
κατονομασθείς· ἀνὴρ ἐξ ἀσήμων μὲν φὺς καὶ τῶν ἀγενῶν,
named a-man from obscure indeed born and of-the lowborn
ἀνδρείᾳ δὲ καὶ χειρῶν ἰσχύϊ μηδενὶ εἴκων τῶν ἐπ᾽ ἀλκῇ
in-bravery but and of-hands in-strength to-none yielding of-the in strength
καὶ ῥώμῃ μεγαλαυχουμένων ἀνδρῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἱκανὸν ὁ
and might boasting men when and sufficient —

Βάρδας περὶ αὑτὸν ἑώρα στίφος συνερρυηκός, ὡς οἷόν
Bardas about himself saw band having-flowed-together so-that possible
τε εἶναι καὶ εἰς συνασπισμὸν ἀῤῥαγῆ παρατάττεσθαι,
— to-be also into close-order unbreakable to-be-arrayed
ἐξ ἀντιπάλου τε διαμιλλᾶσθαι τοῖς ἀντιπίπτουσι, τὸ
from opposing both to-contend with-the opposing the
μελαμβαφὲς παραιτησάμενος πέδιλον, τὸ ἐρυθρὸν παραυτίκα
black-dyed having-renounced sandal the red at-once
μετημφιάσατο, καὶ Ῥωμαίων αὐτοκράτωρ ἀναφανδὸν
put-on and of-Romans emperor openly
ἀνερῥήθη πρὸς τῶν συστασιωτῶν. χρημάτων οὖν διανομὰς
was-proclaimed by the fellow-rebels of-money then distributions
ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ ἀξιωμάτων παρεῖχε τιμάς, ταξιάρχους καὶ
he-promised and of-dignities offered honors taxiarchs and
στρατηγοὺς προβαλλόμενος, ἀρχάς τε τὰς εὐκλεεῖς, ὅσας
generals appointing offices both the glorious as-many-as
καὶ βασιλεὺς εἰώθει τοῖς εὖνοις φιλοτίμως προτείνεσθαι.
also emperor was-wont to-the well-disposed lavishly to-offer
συνεκρότει δὲ τὴν ἀποστασίαν καὶ Λέων Κουροπαλάτης,
welded-together and the defection also Leo Kouropalates
ὁ τοῦ Βάρδα τοκεύς, ἐς μὲν τὴν νῆσον Λέσβον
the — of-Bardas parent in indeed the island Lesbos
φρουρούμενος, διὰ Στεφάνου δέ, τοῦ ἐπισκόπου Ἀβύδου,
being-guarded through Stephen and the bishop of-Abydos
τοῖς Μακεδόσι χρήματα καὶ τιμὰς ὑπισχνούμενος, καὶ
to-the Macedonians money and honors promising and
δέχεσθαι αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς νήσου ἀναγόμενον προτρεπόμενος,
to-receive him from the island putting-out urging
καὶ συνεπιτίθεσθαι, καὶ συνεργάζεσθαι αὐτῷ τὴν τοῦ
and to-join-in-attacking and to-help-accomplish him the —
Ἰωάννου τῶν ἀνακτορίων καθαίρεσιν.
of-John from-the palace overthrow

Ὁ δὲ βασιλεύς, τὸν τοιοῦτον γνοὺς νεωτερισμόν, 2
the and emperor the such having-learned revolt
διεταράχθη μέν, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἀπτέρῳ δὲ τάχει τὸν
was-troubled indeed as the likely with-wingless and speed the
ἐπίσκοπον Στέφανον ἐκ τῆς Ἀβύδου ἀναγαγών, τοῖς
bishop Stephen from — Abydos having-brought-up to-the
δικαστηρίοις ἐκδίδωσι. τῶν δὲ πραγμάτων ἐξελεγχθέντων
courts hands-over of-the and affairs having-been-proved
καὶ καταφανοῦς γεγονότος τοῦ δράματος, τὸν μὲν τῇ
and manifest having-become the drama the indeed to-the
συνόδῳ τῶν ἐπισκόπων παρέπεμψεν, ἔκπτωσιν τῆς
synod of-the bishops he-sent deposition from-the
ἱερωσύνης ὑποστησόμενον. Λέοντα δὲ τὸν Κουροπαλάτην,
priesthood going-to-undergo Leo and the Kouropalates
καὶ Νικηφόρον, τὸν τούτου υἱόν, τῇ τοῦ θανάτου
and Nikephoros the his son to-the of-the death
ὑπαγαγόντων ψήφῳ τῶν δικαστῶν, ὁ βασιλεύς, πρὸς
having-brought-under vote the judges the emperor to
τὸ φιλανθρωπότερον ἀποκλίνας, οὐκ ἔκτεινε· τὰς δὲ
the more-humane having-inclined not killed the and
ὄψεις ἀμφοτέρων, κατὰ τὴν Λέσβον στείλας, ἐπήρωσε.
eyes of-both at — Lesbos having-sent he-blinded
καὶ ἡ μὲν τῷ Κουροπαλάτῃ πρὸς τὴν Εὐρώπην
and the indeed for-the Kouropalates to — Europe
τότε μελετηθεῖσα διάβασις ἐς τοῦτο τὸ τέλος κατέληξε,
then planned crossing to this the end ended
τοιαύτην μὲν αὐτῷ τὴν ποινὴν προξενήσασα, συχνοὺς
such indeed for-him the penalty having-procured many
δὲ τῶν φίλων χρημάτων καὶ οἴκων στερήσασα, ὅσοι
and of-the friends of-money and houses having-deprived as-many-as
τὴν ἐκείνου συμβουλὴν ἐπὶ καθαιρέσει τοῦ βασιλέως
the his counsel for overthrow of-the emperor

προσήκαντο. ὁ δὲ Βάρδας, ἅπαξ ἀποκλίνας εἰς τυραννίδα,
accepted — and Bardas once having-inclined to tyranny
ἀπρὶξ εἴχετο ταύτης, τῇ τε περὶ αὐτὸν πολυχειρίᾳ
tightly held to-it in-the both about himself multitude-of-hands
γαυρούμενος, καὶ ταῖς φάλαγξι βρενθυόμενος, καὶ ὅσον
exulting and in-the phalanxes swaggering and all
οὔπω τὴν τῆς βασιλείας κατάσχεσιν ὀνειροπολῶν. καὶ
but the of-the empire possession dreaming-of and
δῆτα τὴν Ἀσίαν κατατρέχων, τῶν μὴ σπενδομένων αὐτῷ
indeed — Asia overrunning of-those not making-terms with-him
πυρπολῶν τὰς οἰκίας, λείαν ἐτίθει Μυσῶν. βασιλεὺς δὲ
burning the houses booty made of-Mysians emperor and
πρὸς αὐτὸν γράφει ταῦτα· “Τὸν ἔναγχος γεγενημένον
to him writes these-things the lately having-occurred
πρὸς ἕω νεωτερισμὸν ἀκηκοότες, οὐ τῆς σῆς γνώμης
toward east revolt having-heard not of-the your mind
ἔργον τοσοῦτον ἡγούμεθα, ὅσον τῆς τῶν συναραμένων
work so-much we-think as of-the of-those having-helped
σοι ἀπονοίας καὶ τρόπου βαρβαρικοῦ, οἵ γε πάντως
you madness and manner barbarian who at-least surely
ὑπὸ θεοβλαβείας παρακροτούμενοι, ἐς τοσοῦτον κίνδυνον
by God-sent-folly being-urged into so-great danger
ἑαυτοὺς ἐμβαλεῖν οὐκ ἐνάρκησαν· καὶ ταῦτα εἰδότες, ὡς
themselves to-cast not shrank and that knowing that
τοῖς νεωτεριεῖν ἀνῃρημένοις καὶ ἀντίπαλον ἐξ αὐθαδείας
for-those to-make-revolt having-chosen and opposing from arrogance
αἴρειν χεῖρα Ῥωμαίων αὐτοῖς αὐτοκράτορσιν, οὐδεμία
to-raise hand of-Romans against-very emperors no
τις εἰς παραίτησιν ὑπολέλειπται πρόφασις, ὁπηνίκα
any for excuse is-left pretext when
τοῖς ὅπλοις καταγωνισθέντες, ἔκδοτοι ταῖς ποινηλασίαις
with-the arms overcome surrendered to-the punishments

ὑπάγονται. ἡμεῖς τοιγαροῦν ἐμφυλίῳ αἵματι μιᾶναι τὴν
they-are-led we therefore with-kindred blood to-defile the
γῆν εὐλαβούμεθα. εἰ γὰρ βουληθῶμεν τοῖς ὅπλοις τοὺς
earth are-wary if for we-should-wish with-the arms the
ἀποστάτας ἀμύνεσθαι, οὐκ ἂν φθάνοιμεν (σὺν Θεῷ δὲ
rebels to-ward-off not — we-would-be-slow with God and
εἰρήσθω) οἰκτρῶς αὐτοὺς κατακαίνοντες. τίς γὰρ ἀτέραμνος
let-it-be-said pitiably them killing who for unbending
οὕτω καθέστηκεν, ὡς ὑποστῆναι τὴν ῥοπὴν τοῦ ἡμετέρου
so has-become as to-withstand the force of-the our
κινήματος, καὶ μὴ εὐθὺς ὑποδειλιάσας πρὸς φυγὴν ἀπιδεῖν;
movement and not at-once having-lost-heart to flight to-look
τοιγαροῦν παραινοῦμεν ὑμῖν, πρὸ τῶν ὀλεθρίων ἑλέσθαι
therefore we-exhort you before the destructive(-things) to-choose
τὰ σώζοντα, καὶ ἕως πρόκειται συγγνώμης καιρός, τὰ
the saving(-things) and while lies-before of-pardon time the
ὅπλα ῥίψαντες εἴξατε τῷ κράτει τῆς βασιλείας
arms having-thrown-away yield to-the power of-the empire
ἡμῶν, ἀμνηστίαν ὑμῖν τοῦ τοσούτου τολμήματος καὶ
our amnesty to-you of-the so-great daring and
συγγνώμην, ἐπὶ μάρτυρι τῷ Θεῷ, ἀναντίῤῥητον ἀπονέμοντι.
pardon with witness — God indisputable granting
πάντως δὲ καὶ αἱ κτήσεις ἀθιγεῖς ὑμῖν ἀφεθήσονται,
surely and also the possessions untouched for-you will-be-left
καὶ ἀπαρεγχείρητοι. παραινοῦμεν λοιπόν, τῆς τοιαύτης
and inviolate we-exhort henceforth from-the such
ἀνασφήλαντας μέθης τῆς δεδομένης ἀμελλητὶ σωτηρίας
having-sobered-up drunkenness the given without-delay safety
ἀντιποιήσασθαι. εἰ δὲ σκιαμαχοῦντες τῇ τυραννίδι τὴν
to-lay-claim-to if but shadow-fighting to-the tyranny the

ῥοπὴν ἀπονείμητε, ὑμῖν μεταμελήσει τῆς ἀβουλίας, ὁπηνίκα
weight you-should-assign to-you it-will-be-repented of-the folly when
ψήφῳ τῶν νόμων ταῖς θανασίμοις ποιναῖς παραπέμποισθε."
by-vote of-the laws to-the deadly penalties you-should-be-sent

3 Ταύτην ὁ Φωκᾶς Βάρδας ἀπειληφὼς τὴν γραφήν,
this — Phokas Bardas having-received the writing
ἀντίγραφα μὲν οὐκ ἠξίωσεν ἀντεπιστεῖλαι πρὸς βασιλέα·
replies indeed not deemed-fit to-send-back to emperor
λοιδορησάμενος δὲ αὐτόν, καὶ βδελυρὸν καὶ ἀλάστορα
having-reviled but him and loathsome and avenging-demon
ὀνομάσας, καὶ τοῦ γένους ἀποκαλέσας παλαμναῖον
having-named and of-the family having-called blood-guilty
αὐτόχειρα, τῶν τυραννείων κατιέναι παρήγγειλεν. αὑτῷ
slayer from-the palace to-go-down he-ordered to-himself
γὰρ μᾶλλον ἀνήκειν τὴν τῆς ἡγεμονίας ἀρχήν, Καίσαρα
for rather to-belong the of-the rule office Caesar
πάππον κομπάζοντι, καὶ θεῖον αὐτοκράτορα. ὅν, φησί, μὴ
grandfather boasting and uncle emperor whom he-says not
πτοηθέντα τὸν τῆς δίκης ἀκοίμητον ὀφθαλμόν, παρὰ τὴν
having-feared the of-the justice sleepless eye on the
χαμαιῤῥιφῆ στρωμνὴν ἐναποσφάξαι, δίκην βοσκήματος·
on-the-ground bed to-have-slaughtered in-the-manner of-cattle
τὸν φύντα δὲ καὶ τὸν φίλτατον ὁμαίμονα, τὰ πύματα
the parent and also the dearest brother the last
παθόντας δεινά, ἐπ᾽ ἀδήλοις καὶ ἀναποδείκτοις προφάσεσι
having-suffered dire(-things) on obscure and unproven pretexts
τοῦ γλυκυτάτου στερῆσαι φωτός· οἷς τιμωρὸν πάντως
of-the sweetest to-have-deprived light for-which avenger surely
αὐτὸν ἐπαφήσειν τὴν δίκην, τοῦ ὁμογνίου αἵματος
himself will-let-loose the justice of-the kindred blood
ἑπταπλασίως ἐκτίσοντα τὸ ἀνταπόδομα, τῷ πανολεθρίᾳ
sevenfold going-to-pay the requital to-the to-utter-ruin

τὸ γενναῖον καὶ ἡρωϊκὸν φῦλον παραπέμψαι σκαιωρήσαντι.
the noble and heroic race to-send having-contrived
τῶν οὖν τοιούτων ἀπονενοημένων λόγων ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
the then such desperate words the emperor
Ἰωάννης ἐνωτισθείς, καὶ γνούς, ἀνίατα τὸν ἄνδρα
John having-heard and having-learned incurably the man
νοσεῖν, ἠπειγμένον τε πρὸς διαρπαγὰς καὶ φόνους μετὰ
to-be-sick hastening both to plunderings and murders with
τῶν ἐπισπομένων συνωμοτῶν ἀπηνῶς καὶ ἀφιλανθρώπως
the following conspirators harshly and inhumanly
χωρεῖν, συνεῖδε, μηκέτι διαμέλλειν ἢ ῥᾳθυμεῖν, ὡς μὴ
to-advance he-perceived no-longer to-delay or to-be-indolent so-that not
τῇ τοιαύτῃ ῥᾳστώνῃ καιρὸν σχοίη τὸ τοῦ ἀποστάτου
by-the such ease opportunity should-have the of-the rebel
ἑταιρικόν, καὶ πόλεις πορθεῖν, καὶ εἰς μείζονα ἐξολισθήσοι
company and cities to-sack and into greater should-slip
ἀπόνοιαν· ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν ἐνόντων, ὅποι παρείκοι,
madness but from the possible(-means) where it-should-allow
ἀντικαθίστασθαι κραταιῶς, καὶ τοὺς πελάτας ἀμύνεσθαι.
to-withstand mightily and the assailants to-ward-off
Βάρδαν οὖν, τὸν κατ' ἐπωνυμίαν Σκληρόν, ἄνδρα λίαν
Bardas then the by surname Skleros a-man very
ἐκτόπως νεανικὸν καὶ δραστήριον, οὗ τὴν σύναιμον
extraordinarily youthful and energetic whose the sister
Μαρίαν κοινωνὸν ἔσχε βίου τὸ πρόσθεν ὁ Ἰωάννης,
Maria partner had of-life the before — John
κάλλει καὶ σωφροσύνῃ ἐς μέγα κλέους ἥκουσαν (ἔφθη δὲ
in-beauty and in-self-control to great of-fame having-come anticipated and
ταύτην ὁ πικρὸς κατεργασάμενος θάνατος)· τοῦτον ἐν
her the bitter having-done-for death him among
Μαγίστροις τελοῦντα καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ Θρᾴκης στρατευμάτων
Magistroi being and of-the in Thrace armies

ἐπιστατοῦντα, καὶ τὴν τῶν Ῥῶς σφαδάζουσαν κατὰ τῶν
being-in-command and the of-the Rus raging against the
Ῥωμαίων ἐπήλυσιν γενναίως ἀποτειχίζοντα, μετὰ τὴν
Romans attack nobly walling-off after the
ἀριστείαν, ἣν ἔναγχος ἀνεδήσατο τοὺς Σκύθας τρεψάμενος,
prize-of-valor which lately he-bound-on the Scythians having-routed
ἥπέρ μοι ἤδη δεδήλωται, μεταπεμψάμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς
as by-me already has-been-shown having-summoned the emperor
καὶ στρατηλάτην ἀνακηρύξας κατὰ τῶν στασιωτῶν, ἐς
and stratelates having-proclaimed against the rebels into
τὴν Ἀσίαν ἐξέπεμψεν· ἐντειλάμενος, εἰ οἷόν τε εἶναι,
— Asia sent having-enjoined if possible — to-be
μὴ μιᾶναι τὴν γῆν, ὅτι μὴ πᾶσα ἀνάγκη, τῷ τῶν
not to-defile the earth except — all necessity with-the of-the
ὁμοφύλων αἵματι· ἀλλὰ τιμῶν ὑποσχέσεσι καὶ χρημάτων
kindred blood but of-honors by-promises and of-money
διανομαῖς καὶ πίστεσιν ἀπαθείας ὑπαγαγέσθαι τοὺς τῷ
by-distributions and by-pledges of-safety to-win-over those by-the
ἀποστάτῃ συναπαχθέντας. ἐνεχείριζε δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ τόμους,
rebel led-away-with-him he-entrusted and to-him also documents
κατασεσημασμένους ἐκ χρυσοῦ σφραγῖσι βασιλικαῖς, οἷς
sealed of gold with-seals imperial in-which
ἐνεγέγραπτο ταξιάρχων καὶ στρατηγῶν καὶ Πατρικίων τιμαί.
were-written of-taxiarchs and of-generals and of-Patrikioi honors
τούτοις ἐγκελευσάμενος δεξιοῦσθαι τοὺς γνωσιμαχοῦντας,
with-these having-ordered to-welcome those changing-their-minds
καὶ ἀθετοῦντας τὴν τοῦ τυράννου αὐθεντίαν, καὶ πρὸς τὴν
and rejecting the of-the tyrant authority and to the
τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποκλίνοντας δούλωσιν. ὁ δὲ στρατηλάτης
of-the emperor inclining servitude the and stratelates
Σκληρός, τὸν Βόσπορον περαιωθεὶς καὶ κατειληφὼς τὸ
Skleros the Bosporus having-crossed and having-reached —

Δορύλαιον, ἐνταῦθα τὸν στρατὸν ἀνεκαλεῖτο, καὶ ἐς
Dorylaion there the army was-calling-up and into
φάλαγγα καθίστη, καὶ ταῖς καθ' ἡμέραν μελέταις ἐγύμναζεν.
phalanx set and by-the per day practices exercised
ἤδη δὲ καὶ ἀποχρῶσαν ὁρῶν τὴν ἐπισυναχθεῖσαν στρατιάν,
already and also sufficient seeing the gathered army
ὡς εἶναι ἱκανὴν ἐξ ἀντιπάλου παρατυχὸν τοῖς ἐναντίοις
so-that to-be sufficient from opposing as-it-happened with-the opponents
συμπλέκεσθαι, τῷ Δουκὶ Βάρδᾳ καὶ συγκηδεστῇ (ἀδελφὴν
to-engage to-the Doux Bardas and in-law sister
γὰρ τοῦ Φωκᾶ Κωνσταντῖνος Πατρίκιος, ὁ τοῦ Σκληροῦ
for — of-Phokas Constantine Patrikios the — of-Skleros
σύναιμος, σύζυγον εἶχε) δηλοῖ ταῦτα·
brother wife had shows these-things
" Ἐπισφαλῶς ἐβουλεύσω καὶ λίαν ἐπικινδύνως, ἀναίδην 4
dangerously you-planned and very perilously shamelessly
κατὰ τῶν κρατούντων ἀπαυθαδισάμενος, καὶ τὴν ὀλέθριον
against the rulers having-behaved-arrogantly and the destructive
μελετήσας τυραννίδα, καὶ ὅπλα κατὰ τῶν ὁμοφύλων
having-plotted tyranny and arms against the kindred
ἀράμενος, καὶ καταμιάνας ἱερῶν οἴκων ἕδη ταῖς τῶν
having-raised and having-defiled of-sacred houses seats with-the of-the
ἀπαιδεύτων συνωμοτῶν προνομαῖς. εἰς κενὸν ἠπατήθης,
uneducated conspirators plunderings into empty you-were-deceived
Πατρίκιε, λέοντα νύσσων κοιμώμενον, τὸν ἀήττητον
Patrikios a-lion pricking sleeping the unconquered
αὐτοκράτορα. οἶδας γάρ, ὡς ἐν ταῖς μάχαις ἐπιφανεὶς
emperor you-know for that in the battles having-appeared
οὗτος, πολυάνθρωπα στρατόπεδα ἐκ τῆς φήμης καὶ μόνης
this-one populous camps from the report and alone
ἐτρέψατο. πῶς οὖν, διεφθαρμένων ἀνδρῶν συμβουλίαις
routed how then of-corrupted men by-counsels

ἀναπεισθείς, εἰς τοιοῦτον ὄλισθον ἐνσέσεικας σεαυτόν; ἀλλ',
persuaded into such slip you-have-hurled yourself but
εἰ δοκεῖ, πείσθητί μοι, ὡς συγκηδεστῇ, καὶ φιλοῦντι,
if it-seems-good be-persuaded by-me as in-law and loving
καὶ τὰ λῴονα συμβουλεύοντι· καὶ ἀπώθου τὴν κακίστην
and the better(-things) counseling and thrust-away the worst
τυραννίδα, καὶ τῆς σωτηρίας ἀντιλαβοῦ, συγγνώμην τοῦ
tyranny and the safety lay-hold-of pardon of-the
σφάλματος αἰτησάμενος (ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτὸς ἐγγυῶμαι, μηδέν
error having-asked I and myself guarantee nothing
σε πείσεσθαι τῶν ἀηδῶν, οὔτε πρὸς τοῦ κρατοῦντος,
you to-suffer of-the unpleasant(-things) neither from the ruler
οὔτε πρὸς ἄλλου τινός, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ συνεπομένῳ σοι
nor from other anyone but also to-the following you
στίφει ἀμνηστεία τῆς προπετείας δοθήσεται)· καὶ μὴ
band amnesty of-the rashness will-be-given and not
βουληθῇς τὸν θυμὸν ἐξοπλίσαι κατὰ σοῦ τὸν βασιλικόν,
wish the anger to-arm against you the imperial
ὃς ἀπαραίτητός ἐστι τοῖς εὐγνωμονεῖν οὐκ ἐθέλουσι.
which inexorable is to-those to-be-reasonable not willing
τῶν σεαυτοῦ λοιπὸν γενόμενος λογισμῶν μὴ προῇ τὴν
of-the your-own henceforth having-become reasonings not cast-away the
ἐσχάτην ἄγκυραν, ἀλλ', ἕως τὸ φιλάνθρωπον πρόκειται,
last anchor but while the humane(-offer) lies-before
ἅσπασαι τοῦτο, ὅπερ εἰσαῦθις ἐπιζητῶν οὐχ εὑρήσεις, καὶ
embrace this which hereafter seeking not you-will-find and
πολλὰ καταθρηνήσεις, σαυτὸν τῆς ἀβουλίας μεμφόμενος."
much you-will-lament yourself for-the folly blaming
Ὁ δὲ Φωκᾶς Βάρδας, τὴν δύναμιν ἀναλεξάμενος τῆς
— and Phokas Bardas the force having-read of-the
γραφῆς, ἀμείβεται ταῦτα· "Ἀγαθόν τι χρῆμα καὶ
letter replies these-things good some thing and

θεῖον εἶναι τὴν συμβουλὴν ἐξεπίσταμαι, παλαιῶν βίβλους
divine to-be the counsel I-know of-ancients books
παραναγνοὺς καὶ αὐτός· ἰσχύειν δὲ ταύτην τηνικαῦτα
having-read-through also myself to-be-strong and it then
λογίζομαι, ὁπηνίκα θεραπείαν τὰ πράγματα δέχονται. ὅταν
I-reckon when treatment the affairs admit when
δὲ περὶ αὐτὰ τὰ καίρια κινδυνεύωσι, καὶ εἰς τὰ πύματα
and about very the vital(-parts) they-are-in-danger and into the last
δεινὰ συνελαύνωνται, ἴσα καὶ τῷ μηδὲν ἰσχύειν οἶμαι
dire(-straits) are-driven equal also to-the nothing to-be-strong I-think
τὴν συμβουλήν. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἀναλογιζόμενος, εἰς οἵας τύχας
the counsel I for reckoning into what-sort fortunes
ὁ ἀνόσιος καὶ παλαμναῖος Ἰωάννης τὸ ἐμὸν συνέκλεισε
the unholy and murderous John the my shut-in
γένος, τὸν μὲν αὐτοκράτορα καὶ θεῖον ἐμόν, εὐεργέτην
family the indeed emperor and uncle my benefactor
δὲ αὐτοῦ, κοιμώμενον λέοντα κτείνας ἀνηλεῶς, ἐμὲ δὲ
and his sleeping lion having-killed pitilessly me and
μάτην περιορίσας, τόν τε φύντα καὶ τὸν ὁμαίμονα ὠμῶς
in-vain having-banished the both parent and the brother cruelly
καὶ ἀφιλανθρώπως ἀποτυφλώσας ἐπὶ προφάσει μηδεμιᾷ,
and inhumanly having-blinded on pretext none
τὸν βίον ἀβίωτον τίθεμαι. διὰ ταῦτα μὴ κάμνε
the life unlivable I-make because-of these-things not weary
προτρέπων, ἐς χεῖρας ἀλάστορος ἐχθροῦ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ
urging into hands of-avenging-demon enemy the my-own
προέσθαι ζωήν. οὐδὲ γὰρ πείσεις. ἀλλ' ἀνὴρ ὢν
to-cast-away life nor for you-will-persuade but a-man being
καὶ αὐτός, καὶ ἀκινάκην παρεζωσμένος, ἀγωνίσομαι τοῖς
also myself and short-sword having-girded-on I-will-contend for-the
κειμένοις τοῦ γένους μου. πάντως δὲ δυσὶ πράγμασι
fallen of-the family my surely and with-two affairs

τῆς τύχης ᾐωρημένης, θάτερον τούτων ἐκβήσεται· ἢ
the fortune being-poised one of-these will-come-about either
γὰρ εὐκλείας βασιλικῆς ἐπιτεύξομαι, καὶ τοῖς παλαμναίοις
for of-glory imperial I-will-obtain and to-the murderers
ἐντελὲς παρέξω τὸ ἀνταπόδομα· ἢ γενναίως τὸ μεμορμένον
full I-will-render the requital or nobly the fated
ἀποίσομαι, μιαροῦ τυράννου καὶ ἀνοσίου ἀπαλλαγείς."
I-will-bear from-foul tyrant and unholy released

XIX · THE END OF THE REVOLT

Skleros' spies in beggars' dress win deserters from Phokas' camp, and Phokas, forbidden by a voice to finish his psalm, slips away to the fort of the Tyrants. His captured followers are blinded at the place called Typhlobibaria, and Leo recalls the blinding of Phokas' great-uncle Leo. Phokas surrenders on pledges and is banished to Chios, and John marries Theodora, Constantine Porphyrogennetos' daughter.

Ταύτην ὁ Σκληρὸς Βάρδας ἀπειληφὼς τὴν γραφήν,
this — Skleros Bardas having-received the letter
καὶ ἀπογνούς, ὡς οὐκέτι συμβουλίαις πείσει τὸν
and having-despaired that no-longer by-counsels he-will-persuade the(-one)
εἰς ἀπόνοιαν ἐκ προπετείας κατολισθήσαντα, τὴν
into madness from rashness having-slipped the
στρατιὰν κατὰ ἴλας καὶ σπείρας διατάξας, τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ
army into squadrons and companies having-arranged the to —
Διπόταμον ᾔει. ἐκεῖσε δὲ ἀφικόμενος, ἐς τὸ τοῦ Φωκᾶ
Dipotamon went there and having-arrived into the — of-Phokas
Βάρδα κατασκόπους ἐξαπιναίως στέλλει στρατόπεδον, εἰς
Bardas spies suddenly sends camp into
ἐπαιτούντων σχῆμα μετασκευάσας αὐτούς, δηλώσοντας
of-beggars guise having-changed them going-to-show

τὰς βασιλικὰς ὑποσχέσεις καὶ ἀμνηστίαν τῶν
the imperial promises and amnesty of-the(-things)
τολμηθέντων τοῖς προηγουμένοις τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ
dared to-those leading of-the army and
προσέτι ἀπαγγελοῦντας, ὡς, εἰ μὴ τοῦ ἀποστάτου
besides going-to-announce that if not from-the rebel
θᾶττον ἀποῤῥαγεῖεν, καὶ πρὸς βασιλέα σπείσοιντο,
quickly they-should-break-away and with emperor should-make-terms
τὸν στρατηλάτην μετὰ τῆς ὁμαιχμίας ἐπιθήσεσθαι
the stratelates with the fellow-army would-attack
καιροφυλακήσαντα, καὶ ὡς ἀντιπάλοις χρήσασθαι. οἱ δέ,
having-watched-for-the-moment and as opponents would-treat they and
τούτων ἐνωτισθέντες τῶν λόγων, καὶ τοῦ ἐπ᾽ ἀδήλοις
these having-heard the words and than-the on uncertain
σκιαμαχεῖν ταῖς τύχαις τὰς παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος
to-shadow-fight the fortunes the from the emperor
διδομένας τιμὰς ἑλέσθαι μᾶλλον συνοῖσον εἶναι σκεψάμενοι,
given honors to-choose rather advantageous to-be having-considered
νυκτὸς ἐπελθούσης, τῆς τοῦ Φωκᾶ διαστάντες ἑταιρίας,
night having-come from-the — of-Phokas having-separated company
πρὸς τὸν στρατηλάτην ἀπηυτομόλησαν. ὧν οἱ προὔχοντες
to the stratelates deserted of-whom the foremost
Ἀνδράλεστος ἦν ὁ Πατρίκιος, αὐτανεψιὸς τοῦ Φωκᾶ, καὶ
Andralestos was the Patrikios cousin — of-Phokas and
ὁ Ἀμπελᾶς Συμεών. Βάρδας δέ, τὸν τούτων δρασμὸν
— Ampelas Symeon Bardas and the their flight
διαγνούς, καὶ ὅπως ἀπροφασίστως αὐτοῦ ἀπεῤῥάγησαν,
having-learned and how without-pretext from-him they-had-broken-away
ἤσχαλλεν, ὡς εἰκός, καὶ τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας ἱκετείαις
was-vexed as likely and those left with-supplications
ἐξελιπάρει, μὴ καταπροδοῦναι λέγων αὐτόν, καὶ ὃν
implored not to-betray saying him and whom

συνίστορα Θεὸν καὶ ἔφορον τῶν ὅρκων πεποίηνται·
witness God and overseer of-the oaths they-had-made
ἀγωνίσασθαι δὲ μᾶλλον εἰς δύναμιν, καί οἱ δεινὰ
to-fight but rather to (their)-utmost and him dire(-things)
πεπονθότι συνάρασθαι· οὐδὲ γὰρ τὸν Σκληρόν, ἔφη,
having-suffered to-help nor for — Skleros he-said
αὐτοῖς ἐξισχύειν συστάδην ἀντικαθίστασθαι, εἴγε μὴ
them to-be-strong-enough in-close-fight to-withstand if-indeed not
νωθρῶς αὐτοὶ καὶ ἀνειμένως χωροῖεν ἐπὶ τὸ πολεμεῖν.
sluggishly they and slackly should-go to the to-fight
καὶ ὁ μὲν ἐλιπάρει ταῦτα ποτνιώμενος· οἱ δέ, καὶ
and he indeed implored these-things imploring they and also
αὖθις τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὑπεκρέοντες, τῷ στρατηλάτῃ
again from-the camp slipping-away to-the stratelates
Σκληρῷ προσετίθεντο. λέγεται βαθείας ἄρτι νυκτὸς
Skleros went-over it-is-said deep just night
ἐνισταμένης, περιπαθῆ γενόμενον τὸν Φωκᾶν τῷ δρασμῷ
setting-in deeply-moved having-become — Phokas at-the flight
τῶν συνωμοτῶν, ἀγρυπνεῖν καὶ ἀλύειν, εὐχαῖς τε τὸ
of-the conspirators to-lie-awake and to-be-distraught with-prayers both the
θεῖον ἐξιλεοῦσθαι, τὸ Δαβιδικὸν ἐκεῖνο κατεπᾴδοντα λόγιον·
divine to-propitiate the Davidic that chanting saying
Δίκασον, Κύριε, τοὺς ἀδικοῦντάς με. αἰφνίδιον δὲ φωνὴν ἐξ
judge Lord those wronging me suddenly and a-voice from
ἀέρος ἐνηνεγμένην αὐτοῦ τὰ ὦτα περιβομβεῖν, μὴ περαιτέρω
air borne his the ears to-ring-around not further
τοῦ ψαλμοῦ χωρεῖν διακελεύουσαν· ὡς τοῦ στρατηλάτου
of-the psalm to-go ordering as the stratelates
Βάρδα κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ τὰ τοιαῦτα τοῦ ψαλμοῦ προεξαιτήσαντος
Bardas against him the such of-the psalm having-forestalled-in-asking
λόγια. ἐπιτρὶς δὲ αὐτῷ τῆς τοιαύτης ἐνηχηθείσης φωνῆς,
sayings thrice and to-him the such having-resounded voice

θαμβηθῆναί τε τῷ καινῷ τοῦ χρησμοῦ, καὶ τῆς εὐνῆς
to-be-astounded both at-the novelty of-the oracle and from-the bed
διαναστῆναι περιδεῶς, καὶ τὴν τῆς ἕω φαῦσιν ἐκδέχεσθαι.
to-rise fearfully and the of-the dawn light to-await
Ἤδη δὲ τῆς ἡμέρας σταθερῶς διαυγαζούσης, τοῦ ἵππου 6
already and the day steadily shining-through the horse
ἐπιβῆναι καὶ διϊέναι τὸ στράτευμα, ἐρεῖσαί τε τοῖς
to-mount and to-go-through the army to-fix both on-the
πεδίλοις τὸν ὀφθαλμόν. ἐρείσαντι δὲ φαντασίαν
sandals the eye to-him-having-fixed and an-appearance
γενέσθαι ἀλλόκοτον. δόξαι γὰρ οὐκ ἐρυθρὰ ταῦτα
to-have-happened strange to-seem for not red these
τυγχάνειν, ἀκραιφνῶς δὲ μελεμβαφῆ. ἐρέσθαι τε τοὺς ἀμφ᾽
to-be purely but black-dyed to-ask both those about
αὐτόν, ἀνθ᾽ ὅτου τὸν τοσοῦτον πλάνον καθυποσταῖεν, καὶ μὴ
him for what the so-great error they-had-undergone and not
τὰ τῆς βασιλείας, ἀλλ᾽ ἰδιωτικά, αὐτῷ ἐπορέξειεν πέδιλα.
the of-the empire but private to-him they-had-handed sandals
τοὺς δὲ ἀποκρίνασθαι, τὰ κοκκοβαφῆ πέλειν, αὐτῷ δὲ
they and to-answer the scarlet-dyed to-be to-him and
ταῦτα κατανοεῖν ἀκριβῶς συνεβούλευον. τὸν δὲ ἐπιβαλεῖν
these to-observe exactly they-advised him and to-cast
τούτοις τὸν ὀφθαλμόν, καὶ ἐρυθρὰ ταῦτα καταμαθεῖν,
on-these the eye and red these to-learn
καθάπερ ἐτέλουν ἀνέκαθεν. τοῦτο δεύτερον ἀπαίσιον οἰωνὸν
just-as they-were from-of-old this second ill-omened omen
ὁ Φωκᾶς λογισάμενος τὸ τεράστιον, ὁρῶν δὲ καὶ τὴν
— Phokas having-reckoned the portent seeing and also the
στρατιὰν αὐτοῦ διϊσταμένην καὶ ἀφηνιάζουσαν, ἔγνω παντὶ
army his breaking-apart and rebelling resolved in-every
τρόπῳ διασώζειν ἑαυτόν. μέσων οὖν τῶν νυκτῶν τῶν
way to-save himself in-middle then of-the nights of-the

οἰκειοτάτων τριακοσίους ἐς τὸ ἀσφαλὲς ὡπλισμένους
most-intimate three-hundred to the secure armed
ἀνειληφώς, λάθρα τοῦ χάρακος ἔξεισι, καὶ τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ
having-taken secretly from-the palisade goes-out and the to the
τῶν Τυράννων φρούριον ἄγουσαν, ὃ Ἀντιγοὺς κέκληται,
of-the Tyrants fort leading which Antigous has-been-called
ᾔει· ὅπερ, τὸ τῆς τύχης παλίμβολον ὑφορώμενος, ἐκ
went which the of-the fortune changeability suspecting from
πολλοῦ ἐκρατύνατο, σῖτον ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ παντοδαπὴν χιλὸν
long-ago he-had-strengthened grain in it and every-kind fodder
ἐπιδαψιλευσάμενος. ὁ δὲ χῶρος, ἵνα τῷ Φωκᾷ Βάρδᾳ
having-supplied-abundantly the and place where — for-Phokas Bardas
ὁ συνασπισμὸς διαλέλυτο, Βαρδάηττα ἐκαλεῖτο ἀνέκαθεν.
the close-order had-been-dissolved Bardaetta was-called from-of-old
Βάρδας δὲ ὁ στρατηλάτης, τὸν δρασμὸν διαγνοὺς τοῦ
Bardas and the stratelates the flight having-learned —
Φωκᾶ, συνάμα λογάσιν ἐξιππασάμενος, ἔθει διώκων. ἀλλ᾽
of-Phokas together-with picked(-men) having-ridden-out ran pursuing but
αὐτοῦ μὲν διήμαρτεν, ἤδη τῷ φρουρίῳ ἀνασωθέντος·
him indeed he-missed already in-the fort having-escaped
τῶν δὲ τούτου συνωμοτῶν ὅσους ζωγρίας εἵληφε, τῶν
of-the and his conspirators as-many-as alive he-took of-the
ὀφθαλμῶν ἀπεστέρησε, προστεταγμένον πρὸς βασιλέως
eyes deprived ordered by emperor
ἔχων αὐτό. λέγεται δὲ τὸ χωρίον, ἵνα τοῖς ἀθλίοις
having this it-is-said and the place where to-the wretched(-men)
τὸ τοιοῦτον συνέβη ἀτύχημα, Τυφλοβιβάρια ὀνομάζεσθαι.
the such happened misfortune Typhlobibaria to-be-named
ἔμοιγε οὖν ἔπεισι θαυμάζειν, ὅπως ἐξ ἐπιπνοίας τινὸς
to-me-indeed then it-comes to-wonder how from inspiration some
οἱ πάλαι κινούμενοι ἄνθρωποι ἀπὸ τῆς τῶν πραγμάτων
the of-old moved men from the of-the affairs

ἐκβάσεως προσηκόντως καὶ καταλλήλως τὰς προσηγορίας
outcome fittingly and appropriately the names
τοῖς τόποις ἐτίθεσαν. ἐπεὶ λέγεται καὶ Λέοντα τὸν Φωκᾶν,
to-the places gave since it-is-said also Leo — Phokas
τὸν πρὸς πάππου θεῖον τοῦ Βάρδα, τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς
the on grandfather's(-side) uncle — of-Bardas the eyes
ἐκκοπῆναι ἀνηλεῶς, ὀνομάζεσθαι δὲ τὸν χῶρον, καθ'
to-have-been-gouged pitilessly to-be-named and the place in
ὃν τὴν τοιαύτην ὑπέστη ποινήν, Ὠηλέοντα, πρὸς δὲ
which the such be-underwent penalty Oeleon by and
τῆς ἀγροικικῆς ἰδιωτείας κεκλῆσθαι Γωλέοντα. ἀλλὰ τὰ
the rustic vulgarity to-have-been-called Goleon but the
μὲν τῶν τίσεων χωρία τοιαύτας ἀνέκαθεν τὰς ἐπωνυμίας
indeed of-the punishments places such from-of-old the names
εἰλήφεσαν. οὐ παρέλκον δὲ ἴσως δόξει τὸ καὶ τὸν τρόπον
had-received not superfluous and perhaps it-will-seem the also the manner
τῆς τοῦ Λέοντος ἐκτυφλώσεως κατὰ παραδρομὴν ἐξειπεῖν.
of-the — of-Leo blinding in passing to-tell
Ἄρτι τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Λέοντος φθινάδι νόσῳ τῶν ἔνθεν 7
just the emperor Leo by-wasting disease from-the here(-things)
μεταναστάντος, καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου, τοῦ αὐτοῦ συναίμου,
having-departed and Alexander the his brother
κατόπιν ἐκείνῳ συναπελθόντος, τῆς δὲ Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἀρχῆς
after him having-gone-off-with of-the and Roman rule
πρός τε Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ τιθηνουμένου παιδὸς αὐτοῦ, καὶ
by both Constantine the being-nursed child his and
τῆς Αὐγούστης Ζωῆς, ἐπισφαλῶς φερομένης, Συμεών, ὁ
the Augusta Zoe precariously being-borne Symeon the
τῶν Μυσῶν ἀρχηγός, ἀνὴρ τολμητίας καὶ θερμουργὸς τὰ
of-the Mysians leader a-man daring and hot-headed in-the
πολεμικά, πάλαι σφαδάζων, καὶ τὴν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων μάχην
warlike(-things) long quivering and the against Romans battle

ὠδίνων, εὐκαιρίας δραξάμενος, λεηλατῶν οὐκ ἀνίη
being-in-labor-with opportunity having-grasped plundering not ceased
Μακεδονίαν καὶ Θρᾴκην· εἰς ἀπόνοιάν τε τὴν Σκυθικὴν
Macedonia and Thrace into madness both the Scythian
καὶ συνήθη ἐπαρθείς, αὐτοκράτορα ἑαυτὸν ἀνακηρύττειν
and accustomed elated emperor himself to-proclaim
Ῥωμαίοις ἐκέλευεν. οἱ δέ, τὴν ὕπαιθρον ἀλαζονείαν καὶ
Romans ordered they and the open boastfulness and
ὕβριν τοῦ Σκύθου μὴ φέροντες, τὰ ὅπλα κινεῖν κατ᾽
insolence of-the Scythian not bearing the arms to-move against
αὐτοῦ ἔγνωσαν. καὶ δὴ Λέοντα τὸν Φωκᾶν, ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ
him resolved and indeed Leo — Phokas in-bravery and
τροπαίοις τηνικαῦτα τῶν λοιπῶν στρατηγῶν ὑπερφέροντα,
trophies then than-the other generals surpassing
ἀρχηγὸν τῆς στρατιᾶς προστησάμενοι καὶ Δομέστικον
leader of-the army having-set-over and Domestic
τῶν σχολῶν ἀνειπόντες· Ῥωμανὸν δέ, τῶν ἐμπύρων νεῶν
of-the scholae having-proclaimed Romanos and of-the fiery ships
προχειρισάμενοι ναύαρχον (Δρουγγάριον τῶν πλωΐμων
having-appointed admiral Droungarios of-the fleet
τὸν εἰς τὴν τοιαύτην ἀφιγμένον ἀρχὴν ὀνομάζουσι)·
the(-one) to the such having-come office they-name
τὸν μὲν ἐκ γῆς, τὸν δὲ ἐκ θαλάσσης, Μυσοῖς
the(-one) indeed from land the(-other) and from sea Mysians
ἐπιτίθεσθαι προὔπεμψαν. περαιωθέντα δὲ τὸν Λέοντα καὶ
to-attack they-sent-forward having-crossed and — Leo and
τὴν Μυσίαν κατειληφότα φασὶ ἐκτόπως διαγωνίσασθαι,
— Mysia having-reached they-say extraordinarily to-have-fought
καὶ ἀναρίθμητα πλήθη κατακόψαι τῶν δυσμενῶν, ὡς τὸν
and countless multitudes to-have-cut-down of-the enemies so-that —
Συμεὼν εἰς ἀπορίαν συνελαθῆναι δεινήν, καὶ ἀμηχανεῖν ὅ
Symeon into perplexity to-have-been-driven terrible and to-be-at-a-loss what

τι καὶ δράσῃ, καὶ ὅπως ἐκφύγῃ οὕτω θρασὺν ἄνδρα
— also he-should-do and how he-should-escape so bold a-man
καὶ ἀκαταγώνιστον. ἤδη δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπειρηκότων
and invincible already and also of-the other having-given-up
Μυσῶν καὶ πρὸς φυγαδείαν τρεπομένων, ἀγγελίαν πρός
Mysians and to flight turning message from
τινος λέγεται τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἀνενεχθῆναι τῷ Λέοντι,
some it-is-said of-the shield-bearers to-have-been-brought — to-Leo
ὡς ὁ Δρουγγάριος Ῥωμανὸς αὐτοῖς ἱστίοις ἀπάρας,
that the Droungarios Romanos with-very sails having-set-out
κατὰ πρύμναν ἱσταμένου τοῦ πνεύματος, ἔρωτι τυραννίδος
at stern standing the wind from-love of-tyranny
ἀποπλέει εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον. τὸν δέ, τῷ ἀπαισίῳ τῆς
sails-off to — Byzantium him and at-the ill-omen of-the
ἀγγελίας περιαλγήσαντα, διαλῦσαί τε τὸν συνασπισμόν,
message having-grieved-sorely to-break-up both the close-order
καί, νῶτα τοῖς Μυσοῖς δόντα, ἐπείγεσθαι πρὸς τὴν
and backs to-the Mysians having-given to-hasten to the
βασιλεύουσαν, εἴ πως τὸν τοῦ Ῥωμανοῦ προτερήσοι
reigning(-city) if somehow the — of-Romanos he-might-anticipate
ἐπίπλουν, καὶ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἡγεμονίας ἐγκρατὴς γένοιτο.
sailing and of-the Roman rule master he-might-become
τὸν δὲ Συμεών, τὴν ἀπροφάσιστον καὶ ἀλλόκοτον ἰδόντα
— and Symeon the unexplained and strange having-seen
Ῥωμαίων φυγήν, ἐνδοιάσαι μὲν ἐς τὸ παραυτίκα,
of-Romans flight to-have-hesitated indeed for the moment
μή τι σκαιωρούμενον εἴη, καὶ ὄλεθρος Μυσοῖς
lest something being-contrived it-might-be and destruction to-Mysians
ἐπισπομένοις ἐγγένηται· μαθόντα δὲ ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγειν
following might-arise having-learned and with all-strength to-flee
αὐτούς, ἕπεσθαί τε, καὶ ἄπειρα πλήθη συγκόψαι ἀνηλεῶς.
them to-follow both and boundless multitudes to-cut-down pitilessly

καὶ νῦν ἐστὶν ὁρᾷν εἰσέτι σωρείας ὀστῶν παρὰ τὴν
and now it-is to-see still heaps of-bones by —
Ἀγχίαλον, καθ' ἣν ἀκλεῶς συνεκόπη τότε φεῦγον τῶν
Anchialos at which ingloriously was-cut-down then fleeing of-the
Ῥωμαίων τὸ στράτευμα. ὁ δὲ Λέων, ἐπείπερ ὑστέρησε τῆς
Romans the army — and Leo since he-was-late for-the
εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον ἀφίξεως, καὶ τῆς ἐλπίδος ἡμάρτανεν
to — Byzantium arrival and from-the hope fell-short
(ἔφθη γὰρ ὁ Ῥωμανὸς τὴν βασίλειον ἑστίαν κατειληφὼς
anticipated for — Romanos the imperial hearth having-reached
καὶ Πατὴρ Βασιλέως ἀναῤῥηθείς), ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν διὰ
and Father of-Emperor proclaimed into — Asia through
τῆς Ἀβύδου περαιωθείς, πρὸς ἀποστασίαν ἀπέκλινε, καὶ
— Abydos having-crossed to defection he-turned and
πολλὰ τῷ Ῥωμανῷ καὶ τῇ πολιτείᾳ παρέσχε πράγματα,
much — to-Romanos and to-the state caused trouble
κατατρέχων, καὶ τοὺς ἐτησίους φόρους ἀφαιρούμενος, καὶ
overrunning and the annual tributes taking-away and
τοὺς ἀντικαθισταμένους χειρούμενος. ἤδη δὲ τῷ χρόνῳ
those resisting subduing already and in-the time
τοῦ λῃστρικοῦ διασκεδασθέντος, καὶ εἰς τοὔμπαλιν αὐτῷ
the robber(-band) having-been-dispersed and into the-reverse for-him
ὑπονοστήσαντος τοῦ βουλεύματος, φυγαδείᾳ χρήσασθαι,
having-turned the plan flight to-have-used
συλληφθῆναί τε καὶ ὠμῶς ἐκκεντηθῆναι τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.
to-have-been-caught both and cruelly to-have-been-gouged the eyes
8 Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτως. Φωκᾷ δὲ ἐπειγομένῳ τηνικαῦτα
but these-things indeed so to-Phokas and hastening then
ἐπὶ τὸ φρούριον, καὶ οὐραγοῦντι τῶν ἀμφ' αὑτόν,
to the fort and bringing-up-the-rear of-those about himself
τῶν ἐπιτιθεμένων αὐτῷ τις ἐξιππασάμενος, θρασὺς καὶ
of-those attacking him someone having-ridden-out bold and

ἀγέρωχος, ἐπῄει, ἐπανατείνων τὸ ξίφος μετ᾽ ἀπειλῶν, καὶ
haughty advanced raising the sword with threats and
πλήττειν ἐπιχειρῶν. ὁ δὲ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην
to-strike trying he and to-be-off the quickest
παρῄνει, τὰς κατασχούσας αὐτὸν τύχας εὐλαβηθέντα.
urged the having-seized him fortunes having-heeded
δεῖν δέ, θνητὸν ὄντα, τὸ ἄστατον πάντως ὑφορᾶσθαι
to-be-needful and mortal being the instability surely to-suspect
τῶν πραγμάτων καὶ ἄπιστον, καὶ μὴ προστιθέναι
of-the affairs and untrustworthiness and not to-add
κακοδαιμονοῦντος ἀνδρὸς τοῖς ἀλγήμασιν ἄλγημα. ἀρκεῖν
of-an-ill-fated man to-the pains pain to-suffice
γὰρ τὰ περιστοιχήσαντα τοῦτον δεινά, ἅτινα εἰς τοῦτο
for the having-surrounded him dire(-things) which into this
δυσπραγίας αὐτὸν περιήλασαν, ὡς φυγάδα νῦν καθορᾶσθαι
of-misfortune him had-driven that a-fugitive now to-be-seen
τὸν τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς κατάρξαντα στρατιᾶς. ὁ δέ, ὕθλον
the(-one) of-the Roman having-commanded army he and nonsense
τηνάλλως τοὺς τοιούτους λόγους τιθέμενος, πλησιέστερον
idly the such words regarding nearer
ᾔει, πλήττειν πειρώμενος. ὁ δὲ Βάρδας, τὴν παρῃωρημένην
went to-strike trying — and Bardas the hanging-beside
κορύνην μεταχειρισάμενος, αἰφνίδιόν τε συστραφείς, κατὰ
mace having-taken-in-hand suddenly both having-turned on
τῆς κόρυθος παίει τὸν ἄνθρωπον· ὁ δέ, αὐτῇ κυνῇ
the helmet strikes the man he and with-the-very cap
κατεαγεὶς τὸ κρανίον, ἄναυδος τῇ γῇ προσαράσσεται· καὶ
broken the skull speechless to-the earth is-dashed and
οὕτως ἐς τὸ φρούριον ὁ Φωκᾶς διασώζεται. Βάρδας δέ, ὁ
thus into the fort — Phokas escapes Bardas and the
στρατηλάτης καὶ Μάγιστρος, τὸ φρούριον κυκλωσάμενος,
stratelates and Magistros the fort having-surrounded

παρῄνει τῷ Φωκᾷ Βάρδᾳ, τὴν εὐμένειαν τοῦ κρατοῦντος
urged — Phokas Bardas the goodwill of-the ruler
αἰτήσασθαι, καὶ τοῦ τειχίου κατιέναι ὡς τάχιστα. ὁ δέ,
to-ask and from-the little-wall to-come-down as quickly-as-possible he and
ἐπεὶ ἐς ἀμηχανίαν ἐσχάτην καὶ δεινὴν ἀπορίαν συνείληπτο,
since into helplessness uttermost and terrible perplexity he-had-been-caught
πολλὰ γνωματεύσας καὶ λογισάμενος, ἔγνω ἐνδοῦναι
much having-judged and having-reckoned he-resolved to-give-in
τῇ τύχῃ, καὶ εἶξαι τοῖς κρατοῦσιν, εἰ ἀπάθειαν αὑτοῦ
to-the fortune and to-yield to-the rulers if safety for-himself
τε καὶ τῶν φιλτάτων λήψοιτο. παραυτίκα οὖν πίστεις
both and for-the dearest he-should-receive at-once then pledges
ἐξαιτησάμενος, ὡς οὐδέν τι τῶν ἀηδῶν πείσεται, καὶ
having-asked that nothing at-all of-the unpleasant(-things) he-will-suffer and
ταύτας πρὸς τοῦ Σκληροῦ εἰληφώς, κάτεισι τοῦ φρουρίου
these from — Skleros having-received comes-down from-the fort
σὺν γυναικὶ καὶ τέκνοις. ὁ δὲ τούτους δεξάμενος ἀλύπως
with wife and children he and them having-received without-harm
ἐφρούρει, ἀναφέρει τὰ ξυναχθέντα πρὸς βασιλέα,
guarded refers the(-things) accomplished to emperor
ἐρόμενος ὅ τι δεῖ καὶ ποιεῖν. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἰωάννης
asking what — is-needful also to-do the and emperor John
ἐδήλου, τὸν μὲν τοῦ Φωκᾶ Βάρδαν, κληρικὸν ἀποκαρέντα,
showed the indeed — of-Phokas Bardas cleric having-been-tonsured
ἅμα συζύγῳ καὶ τέκνοις ἐν τῇ νήσῳ Χίῳ περιορίσαι·
together-with wife and children in the island Chios to-banish
αὐτὸν δέ, τὰς δυνάμεις ἀνειληφότα, ἐς τὴν Εὐρώπην
him-himself and the forces having-taken-up into — Europe
διὰ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου διαπερᾶν, χειμεριοῦντα πρὸς τὰ
through the Hellespont to-cross going-to-winter in the
ἐκεῖσε χειμάδια· ὡς, ἦρος εὐθὺς ἐπιγινομένου, καὶ αὐτὸν
there winter-quarters so-that spring at-once coming-on also himself

βασιλέα μετὰ τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἐκστρατεῦσαι κατὰ Σκυθῶν·
emperor with the shield-bearers to-campaign against Scythians
μηδὲ γὰρ τὴν τούτων ἀκάθεκτον ὕβριν καρτερῆσαι λοιπόν.
not for the their unrestrainable insolence to-endure any-longer
Οὗτοι γάρ, τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς Εὐρώπης τοῦ στρατηλάτου Βάρδα 9
these for the from — Europe of-the stratelates Bardas
διαγνόντες ἄπαρσιν, ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν παρὰ βασιλέως σταλέντος
having-learned departure to — Asia by emperor having-been-sent
διὰ τὸν ἔναγχος ἀναῤῥιπισθέντα πρὸς τοῦ Φωκᾶ Βάρδα
because-of the lately fanned by — Phokas Bardas
νεωτερισμόν, καθάπερ μοι ἤδη ἐῤῥήθη, τὰ μέγιστα
revolt as by-me already was-said the greatest
Ῥωμαίους ἐσίνοντο, αἰφνιδίους ἐπεξελάσεις ποιούμενοι, καὶ
Romans harmed sudden raids making and
τὴν τῶν Μακεδόνων ληϊζόμενοι καὶ δηοῦντες ἀφειδῶς·
the of-the Macedonians plundering and ravaging unsparingly
τοῦ τὴν ἐπιστασίαν τῆς ἐνταῦθα στρατιᾶς ἐγχειρισθέντος
the the command of-the there army entrusted
Ἰωάννου Μαγίστρου, ᾧ Κουρκούας ἐπώνυμον, ἐς
John Magistros to-whom Kourkouas surname to
ῥᾳστώνην καὶ πότους, παρὰ τὸ εἰκός, ἀποκλίναντος,
ease and drinking-bouts beyond the likely having-inclined
ἀπείρως τε καὶ ἀμαθῶς κεχρημένου τοῖς πράγμασι· τῷ
inexperiencedly both and ignorantly having-used the affairs therefore
τοι καὶ ἐς αὐθάδειαν καὶ θράσος τὰ Ῥωσικὰ ἐπήρθη
indeed also into arrogance and boldness the of-Rus were-raised
φρονήματα. τὴν ὑπέραυχον τοιγαροῦν ἀλαζονείαν αὐτῶν, καὶ
spirits the boastful therefore boastfulness their and
τὸν ἀντικρὺς προπηλακισμὸν μὴ στέγων ὁ βασιλεύς, παντὶ
the outright insult not bearing the emperor with-all
σθένει κολούειν καὶ κατασπᾷν ἠπείγετο ἐκ τοῦ συστάδην
strength to-curtail and to-drag-down hastened from the close-quarters

τούτοις συμπλέκεσθαι. ἐντεῦθεν καὶ τὰς ἐμπύρους τριήρεις
with-them to-engage thereupon also the fiery triremes
ἑρματίζειν προσέταττε, καὶ σίτου πλῆθος ἐς τὴν τοῦ Ἀδριανοῦ
to-ballast he-ordered and of-grain multitude to the — of-Hadrian
πόλιν διὰ τῶν σιτηγῶν πλοίων κομίζειν, καὶ χορτάσματα
city through the grain-carrying ships to-carry and fodder
τῶν ὑποζυγίων, καὶ ἀποχρῶντα ὅπλα τῇ στρατιᾷ, ὡς
of-the draft-animals and sufficient arms for-the army so-that
μήτινος τούτων κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν τῶν ἀγώνων οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι
none of-these in the time of-the contests the Romans
σπανίζοιεν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα παρεσκευάζετο, Θεοδώραν,
might-lack in which and these-things were-being-prepared Theodora
τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ Πορφυρογεννήτου
the of-the emperor Constantine the Porphyrogennetos
παῖδα, ὁ Ἰωάννης πρὸς γάμον ἡρμόσατο, κάλλει μὲν καὶ
child — John to marriage joined in-beauty indeed and
σώματος ὥραις οὔ τι λίαν οὖσαν ἀριπρεπῆ, σωφροσύνῃ
of-body in-bloom not at-all very being most-distinguished in-self-control
δὲ καὶ ταῖς παντοδαπαῖς ἀρεταῖς ἀδηρίτως τοῦ θήλεος
but and in-the every-kind virtues indisputably the female(-sex)
ὑπεραίρουσαν. Νοέμβριος μὴν ἐνειστήκει, ἔτει δευτέρῳ
surpassing November month had-set-in in-year second
τῆς τούτου ἡγεμονίας, ὅτε ἡ γαμήλιος ἐτελεῖτο ἑστίασις.
of-the his rule when the wedding was-being-held feast
καὶ θυμηδία τις κατεῖχε τὸν δῆμον ἄῤῥητος, ἀνθ' ὧν
and joy a-certain held the people unspeakable for which
ἤθους εὐμενείᾳ καὶ τρόπων χρηστότητι τὸ ὑπήκοον ὁ
of-character by-kindliness and of-manners by-goodness the subject(-people) the
βασιλεὺς ἴθυνε· θαυμαζόμενος μάλιστα, ὅτε μεγαλοπρεπής
emperor directed being-admired most since magnificent
τις ὢν καὶ ἀρχικὸν κεκτημένος τὸ φρόνημα, προσηνής
a-certain being and commanding having the spirit gentle

τε καὶ ἐπιεικὴς τοῖς ὑπηκόοις ἐδείκνυτο, προχείρως
both and fair to-the subjects he-showed-himself readily
τοῖς χρῄζουσιν ἐπιδαψιλεύων τὸν ἔλεον. ἀλλὰ τότε
to-those needing lavishing the mercy but then
μέν, φιλοτησίαις καὶ θεάτρων ἁμίλλαις τὸν δῆμον
indeed with-banquets and of-theaters contests the people
φιλοφρονούμενος, κατὰ τὸ Βυζάντιον διεχείμαζε καὶ τὸν
treating-kindly at — Byzantium wintered and the
τοῦ ἦρος καιρὸν ἐξεδέχετο, τοὺς ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἐξασκῶν
of-the spring time awaited the about himself training
ὁσημέραι λογάδας τὴν ἐνόπλιον κατὰ θάτερα δίνησιν καὶ
daily picked(-men) the armed to the-other-side wheeling and
τὴν παντοδαπὴν τοῦ πολεμεῖν ἐμπειρίαν, ὁπόση παρὰ
the every-kind of-the to-fight experience as-much-as in
τὰς μάχας τοῖς ἀλκιμωτάτοις ἀνδράσιν ἐπινενόηται.
the battles by-the most-valiant men has-been-devised

BOOK VIII

XX · THE MARCH TO PRESLAV

In spring John prays at the Chalke, which he rebuilds, at the Great Church, and at Blachernai, reviews the fire-bearing triremes, and sends them to the Ister to cut off the Rus; Leo digresses on the Ister as a river of Eden. At Adrianople he learns the kleisourai are unguarded and persuades his doubting officers to cross them at once, while the Rus expect him to keep the Easter feast. With the Immortals in front, fifteen thousand hoplites, and thirteen thousand horse, he reaches Preslav; the Rus come out and fight evenly until the Immortals charge their left, and eight thousand five hundred fall. Kalokyres escapes by night to Sphendosthlavos at Dorystolon, and on Holy Thursday John assaults the wall.

1 Τῆς δὲ χειμερινῆς κατηφείας εἰς ἐαρινὴν αἰθρίαν
of-the and wintry gloom into vernal clear-sky
μεταβαλούσης, τὸ σταυρικὸν σημεῖον εὐθὺς ἄρας ὁ
having-changed the of-the-cross standard at-once having-raised the
βασιλεύς, κατὰ τῶν Ταυροσκυθῶν ἠπείγετο. καὶ δῆτα
emperor against the Tauroscythians hastened and indeed
τῶν ἀνακτόρων ἐξαναστάς, τῷ τοῦ Σωτῆρος Χριστοῦ
from-the palace having-risen to-the of-the Savior Christ
κατὰ τὴν Χαλκῆν τιμωμένῳ σηκῷ πρόσεισι, τὸ θεῖον
at the Chalke honored precinct goes the divine
ἐξευμενισόμενος. ὅνπερ ἀθρήσας ἐστενωμένον εὐκτήριον,
going-to-propitiate which having-beheld narrowed house-of-prayer
μόλις που πεντεκαίδεκα χωρεῖν ἔνδον ἄνδρας δυνάμενον,
barely about fifteen to-hold within men able
σκολιάν τε καὶ δυσπρόσοδον, ὡσεί τινα ἑλικοειδῆ
crooked both and hard-of-access like some spiral
λαβύρινθον ἢ κρησφύγετον κεκτημένον τὴν ἄνοδον, ἐξαυτῆς
labyrinth or hiding-place having the ascent forthwith

ἐγκελεύεται ἐς τὸ μεγαλειότερον καὶ εὐαγέστερον ἐκ
orders into the grander and holier from
βάθρων τοῦτον οἰκοδομεῖν, τῶν γείσων αὐτὸς σχηματίσας
foundations it to-build of-the cornices himself having-shaped
τὸν περίμετρον· ὃν εἰς τοῦτο κάλλος, εἰς ὃ νῦν ὁρᾶται,
the perimeter which into this beauty into which now it-is-seen
καὶ μέγεθος ἡ ἐκείνου ἐξ ἐπιπνοίας τινὸς σπουδὴ καὶ
and size the his from inspiration some zeal and
ἐπίσκηψις ἤγειρεν. ἐντεῦθεν εἰς τὸν θεῖον καὶ περίπυστον
injunction raised thence into the divine and famous
νεὼν τῆς τοῦ Θεοῦ σοφίας ἀφικόμενος, ἄγγελόν τε αὐτῷ
temple of-the — of-God wisdom having-come angel both to-him
δοθῆναι ἐξαιτησάμενος, προπορευόμενον τοῦ στρατοῦ, καὶ
to-be-given having-asked going-before the army and
τὴν ὁδὸν κατευθύνοντα, εἰς τὸν ἐν Βλαχέρναις τιμώμενον
the road directing into the in Blachernai honored
τῆς Θεομήτορος οἶκον λιτανεύων ἐπιφοιτᾷ. κἀνταῦθα δὲ
of-the Mother-of-God house making-litany he-goes and-there and
ἱκετηρίαις τὸ θεῖον, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἐξιλεωσάμενος, ἄνεισιν
with-supplications the divine as the likely having-propitiated goes-up
ἐς τὰ ἐκεῖσε ἀνάκτορα, τὰς πυρφόρους τριήρεις ὀψόμενος,
to the there palace the fire-bearing triremes going-to-see
τακτικῶς πρὸς τὸ τοῦ Βοσπόρου σαλευούσας προκόλπιον,
in-order toward the of-the Bosporus riding inlet
ᾧ καὶ ἐπίνειον ταῖς φορτίσι καθέστηκεν εὔορμον
in-which also roadstead for-the merchantmen is good-for-anchoring
καὶ εὐγάληνον, ἐς καμπὴν ἠρέμα μέχρι τῆς γεφύρας καὶ
and calm into a-bend gently as-far-as the bridge and
τοῦ κατ᾽ αὐτῆς εἰσβάλλοντος ποταμοῦ ἐκτεινόμενον. τὴν
the beneath it emptying river stretching the
γοῦν μετ᾽ ἐμπειρίας καὶ κόσμου τῶν τριηρῶν εἰρεσίαν καὶ
at-any-rate with experience and order of-the triremes rowing and

ἄμιλλαν ὁ βασιλεὺς θεασάμενος (ἐτύγχανον δὲ ὑπὲρ τὰς
contest the emperor having-beheld they-were and over the
τριακοσίας, συνάμα λέμβοις καὶ ἀκατίοις, ἃ νῦν γαλέας
three-hundred together-with skiffs and boats which now galleys
καὶ μονέρια κοινῶς ὀνομάζουσι), φιλοφρονησάμενός τε τοὺς
and monoremes commonly they-call having-treated-kindly both the
ἐρέτας καὶ τὸ περὶ αὐτὰς στρατιωτικὸν ἀργυρίου διανομῇ,
rowers and the about them military(-men) of-silver by-distribution
ἐς τὸν Ἴστρον ἐκπέμπει, τὸν τούτου πόρον φρουρήσοντας,
to the Ister sends the its passage going-to-guard
ὡς μὴ ἐνὸν εἴη τοῖς Σκύθαις, ἐς τὴν σφῶν πατρίδα
so-that not possible it-might-be for-the Scythians to the their fatherland
ἐκπλεῖν καὶ τὸν Κιμμέριον Βόσπορον, εἴγε πρὸς φυγὴν
to-sail-out and the Cimmerian Bosporus if-indeed to flight
ἀποκλίνοιεν. λέγεται δὲ τὸν Ἴστρον ἕνα τῶν ἐξ Ἐδὲμ
they-should-turn it-is-said and the Ister one of-those from Eden
ἐκπορευομένων εἶναι ποταμῶν, τὸν ἐπικεκλημένον Φισῶν,
proceeding to-be rivers the(-one) called Phison
ἐκ τῆς ἕω μὲν ἐκδιδόμενον, ὑποδυόμενόν τε κατὰ γῆν
from the east indeed issuing going-under both along earth
ἀμηχάνῳ τοῦ δημιουργοῦ σοφίᾳ· καὶ αὖθις ἐκ τῶν
by-the-unfathomable of-the craftsman wisdom and again from the
Κελτικῶν ὀρέων ἀναπιδύοντα, ἑλισσόμενόν τε διὰ τῆς
Celtic mountains springing-up winding both through —
Εὐρώπης, καί, εἰς πέντε τεμνόμενον στόματα, τὸν ῥοῦν
Europe and into five being-divided mouths the stream
ἐσβάλλειν παρὰ τὸν Πόντον, ὃς Εὔξεινος ὀνομάζεται.
to-empty by the Pontus which Euxine is-named
τινὲς δὲ Φισῶν τὸν τὴν Ἰνδικὴν τέμνοντα γῆν τυγχάνειν,
some and Phison the(-one) the Indian cutting land to-be

ὃν καὶ Γάγγην κικλήσκειν εἰώθασι, παρ' ᾧ ἐξευρίσκεται
which also Ganges to-call are-wont by which is-found
ὁ λίθος ὁ σμάραγδος.
the stone the emerald
Ἀλλ' αἱ μὲν τριήρεις τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον ἐπὶ τὸν Ἴστρον 2
but the indeed triremes this the way to the Ister
ἀνήχθησαν. Ἰωάννης δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, τοῦ Βυζαντίου
put-out John and the emperor — from-Byzantium
ἀπάρας, ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ σὺν παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι
having-set-out to the(-city) of-Hadrian with all the army
παραγίνεται. ἣν Ὀρέστην φασὶ πολίσαι τὸν τοῦ
arrives which Orestes they-say to-have-founded the(-son) —
Ἀγαμέμνονος, ὅτε τὸν πλάνον ὑπέστη μετὰ τὴν ἀναίρεσιν
of-Agamemnon when the wandering he-underwent after the killing
Κλυταιμνήστρας, τῆς ἰδίας μητρός· ἐξ ἐκείνου τε
of-Clytemnestra the own mother from that both
Ὀρεστιάδα κεκλῆσθαι τὸ πρότερον. Ἀδριανὸν δὲ αὖθις
Orestias to-have-been-called the before Hadrian and again
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα, Σκύθαις μαχόμενον, ἁλῶναί τε τῇ
the emperor Scythians fighting to-have-been-taken both with-the
θέσει τῆς χώρας, καὶ ταύτην ἐχυροῖς περιβόλοις τειχίσαι,
position of-the land and it with-strong circuit-walls to-have-walled
καὶ Ἀδριανοῦ ὀνομάσαι. ἐνταῦθα δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀφικόμενος,
and of-Hadrian to-have-named there and the emperor having-arrived
ἀναμαθών τε πρὸς τῶν σκοπῶν, ὡς ἐπάγουσαι εἰς τὴν
having-learned both from the scouts that leading into the
τῶν Μυσῶν δυσέμβολοι καὶ ἐστενωμένοι ἀταρπιτοί, ἃς καὶ
of-the Mysians hard-to-attack and narrowed paths which also
κλεισούρας, διὰ τὸ οἱονεὶ κατακεκλεῖσθαι, κατονομάζουσι,
kleisourai because-of the as-it-were to-be-shut-in they-name
παρὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν οὐ παραφυλάττονται, τοὺς λοχαγοὺς
by the Scythians not are-guarded the captains

καὶ ταξιάρχους συναγηοχώς, ἔλεξε τοιάδε· “Ὤιμην μέν, ὦ
and taxiarchs having-gathered spoke such-things I-thought indeed O
συστρατιῶται, Σκύθας τὴν ἡμετέραν ὡς αὐτοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ
fellow-soldiers Scythians the our to them from long-ago
προσδοκῶντας ἄφιξιν, παντὶ σθένει τὰ ἐπικαιρότατα καὶ
expecting arrival with-all strength the most-advantageous and
στενώτατα, δυσπρόσοδά τε, τῶν ἀταρπιτῶν, θριγκοῖς τισι
narrowest hard-of-access both of-the paths with-walls certain
καὶ ἑρκίοις συγκλεῖσαι, ὡς μὴ εὐπετῶς ἡμῖν εἴη
and fences to-shut so-that not easily for-us it-might-be
εἰς τὰ πρόσω εἰσιτητέα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ τοῦ θείου Πάσχα
into the forward must-be-entered since and the of-the divine Pascha
ἐπέλευσις ἔσφηλε τούτους, προκατασφαλίσασθαι τὰς ὁδοὺς
coming foiled them to-secure-in-advance the roads
καὶ ἀπεῖρξαι τὴν ἡμῶν πάροδον, μὴ πεισθέντας, ὡς
and to-bar the our passage not having-been-persuaded that
καταλιπόντες ἡμεῖς τὰ τῇ μεγάλῃ ἑορτῇ ἑφεπόμενα,
having-left we the(-things) the great feast attending
λαμπροφορίας, καὶ προόδους, καὶ τρυφάς, καὶ θέατρα, περὶ
splendid-robes and processions and luxuries and theaters for
πόνους καὶ ταλαιπωρίας πολέμων ἐναποκλίνομεν, δοκεῖ μοι
toils and hardships of-wars we-turn it-seems to-me
ἄριστα πράξειν, εἰ ἐξαυτῆς ἁρπάσωμεν τὸν καιρόν, καὶ
best to-fare if forthwith we-should-seize the occasion and
ὡς ἔχομεν τάχους ἐνσκευασάμενοι, τὴν ἐστενωμένην ὁδὸν
as we-have of-speed having-equipped-ourselves the narrowed road
παροδεύσωμεν, πρὸ τοῦ Ταυροσκύθας αἰσθέσθαι τὴν ἡμῶν
we-should-pass before the Tauroscythians to-perceive the our
ἔφοδον, καὶ εἰς ἀλκὴν κατὰ τὰς δυσχωρίας ὁρμῆσαι. εἰ γὰρ
attack and to defense in the rough-places to-rush if for
προτερήσομεν τὴν τῶν ἐπισφαλῶν χωρίων διάβασιν, καὶ
we-shall-anticipate the of-the dangerous places crossing and

ἀπροσδόκητοι τούτοις προσβάλωμεν, οἶμαι (σὺν Θεῷ δὲ
unexpected on-them should-fall I-think with God and
εἰρήσθω), αὐτοβοεὶ καὶ τὴν πόλιν Πραισθλάβαν αἱρήσειν,
let-it-be-said at-the-first-shout also the city Preslav to-take
ᾗ Μυσοῖς ἐστὶ τὰ βασίλεια· κἀκεῖθεν ὁρμώμενοι,
where for-Mysians are the palace and-from-there setting-out
ῥᾷστα τὴν Ῥωσικὴν ἀπόνοιαν καταγωνισόμεθα."
most-easily the Rus madness we-shall-overcome
Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν εἶπεν ὁ βασιλεύς, τοῖς δέ γε στρατηγοῖς 3
but these-things indeed said the emperor to-the and at-least generals
καὶ ταξιάρχοις ἄκαιρος ἐδόκει ταυτὶ τὰ ῥηθέντα τόλμα,
and taxiarchs untimely seemed these-here the said(-things) daring
καὶ τηνάλλως θράσος ἐς ἀπόνοιαν ἐκπίπτον ἀλόγιστον,
and vainly boldness into madness lapsing unreasoning
ἀπερισκέπτως τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν δύναμιν διὰ σηραγγώδους
recklessly the Roman force through cavernous
καὶ κρημνώδους ὁδοῦ διαβιβάζειν ἐπὶ τῆς ἀλλοδαπῆς
and precipitous road to-carry-across onto the foreign(-land)
προτρεπόμενα. ἐφ' ἱκανὸν οὖν χρόνον σιωπώντων αὐτῶν,
urging for sufficient then time being-silent them
ἀναλαβὼν αὖθις καὶ ἀνοιδήσας ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ φησίν· "Ὅτι
having-resumed again and having-swelled the emperor says that
μὲν τὸ μὴ λελογισμένως παρὰ τοὺς πολέμους χωρεῖν,
indeed the not reasonedly in the wars to-go
ἀλλ' αὐθαδῶς καὶ θρασέως, κίνδυνον εἴωθεν ὡς μάλιστα
but arrogantly and boldly danger is-wont as most
προξενεῖν καὶ πανολεθρίαν ἀνήκεστον, ἐπίσταμαι καὶ αὐτός,
to-cause and utter-ruin incurable I-know also myself
ἐκ νεότητος ταῖς μάχαις ἀναστραφείς, καὶ πολλὰ τρόπαια,
from youth in-the battles having-lived and many trophies
καθὼς ἴστε, καὶ νίκας ἀναδησάμενος. ὅτι δέ, ἐν οἷς ὁ
as you-know and victories having-bound-on that and in which the

καιρός, ὡς ἐπὶ ξυροῦ ἀκμῆς ἑστηκώς, μὴ κατὰ γνώμην
occasion as on razor's edge standing not according-to judgment
χρῆσθαι τοῖς πράγμασι δίδωσι, δεῖ που τοῦτον
to-use the affairs gives it-is-needful somehow it
προαρπάζειν, καὶ τὰ οἰκεῖα εὖ τίθεσθαι, συνθήσεσθαί
to-seize-first and the own(-affairs) well to-settle will-agree
μοι δοκῶ καὶ αὐτούς, ἐμπειρίαν πολλὴν ἀναλεξαμένους
with-me I-think also yourselves experience much having-gathered
ἐκ τῆς ἀλλεπαλλήλου καὶ ἑτεροκλινοῦς τῶν πολέμων
from the alternating and fickle of-the wars
ῥοπῆς. εἴ τι οὖν μοι πείθεσθε τὰ λῴονα συμβουλεύοντι,
swing if at-all then me you-obey the better(-things) counseling
ἕως οἱ Σκύθαι πρὸς ῥᾳστώνην ἀναπεπτώκασι, μήπω τὴν
while the Scythians to ease have-fallen-back not-yet the
ἡμῶν αἰσθόμενοι ἄφιξιν, ἁρπάσωμεν τὸν καιρόν, καὶ ἡ
our having-perceived arrival let-us-seize the occasion and the
νίκη τῇ διαβάσει τῆς κλεισούρας συνέψεται. εἰ γὰρ
victory with-the crossing of-the kleisoura will-follow if for
διαβησείοντας ἡμᾶς αἴσθοιντο, καὶ εἰς ἀντίπαλον ἐπὶ
about-to-cross us they-should-perceive and into opposing in
τῶν στενωπῶν ἀντιτάξοιντο φάλαγγα, οὐκ εἰς καλὸν ἡμῖν
the narrow-lanes should-array phalanx not to good for-us
τελευτήσει τὰ πράγματα, ἀλλ' ἐς ἀπορίαν καὶ ἀμηχανίαν
will-end the affairs but into perplexity and helplessness
δεινήν. ἐπιῤῥώσαντες οὖν τοὺς θυμούς, καὶ λογισάμενοι,
terrible having-strengthened then the spirits and having-reckoned
ὅτι Ῥωμαῖοί ἐστε, οἱ τὸ ἀντίξουν ἅπαν τὸ πρόσθεν
that Romans you-are the(-ones) the opposing(-force) all the before
ὅπλοις καταστρεφόμενοι, ἕπεσθε τὴν ταχίστην, τὴν σφῶν
with-arms subduing follow the quickest the your-own
ἀρετὴν ἐπὶ τῶν ἔργων ἐπιδεικνύμενοι."
valor in the deeds displaying

Ταῦτα εἰπών, καὶ ἀριπρεπεῖ παντευχίᾳ καθοπλισθείς, 4
these-things having-said and with-resplendent full-armor having-been-armed
ἐφ᾽ ἵππου τε γαύρου καὶ σοβαροῦ ἐπιβάς, καὶ
upon horse both spirited and proud having-mounted and
δόρυ ἐπωμισάμενος μήκιστον, ἀπήρχετο τῆς ὁδοῦ,
spear having-shouldered very-long set-off on-the road
προπορευομένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν λεγομένων ἀθανάτων
going-ahead having the of-the called Immortals
φάλαγγα, τεθωρακισμένην ἐπιεικῶς· εἵποντο δὲ αὐτῷ
phalanx armored suitably followed and him
ὁπλῖται μὲν τῶν ἀλκιμωτάτων πρὸς τοῖς μυρίοις
hoplites indeed of-the most-valiant in-addition-to the ten-thousand
πεντακισχίλιοι, ἱππεῖς δὲ μύριοι καὶ τρισχίλιοι. τὸ
five-thousand horsemen and ten-thousand and three-thousand the
δὲ λοιπὸν στρατιωτικὸν μετὰ τοῦ θητικοῦ, φέρον τὰς
and remaining military(-force) with the baggage-train carrying the
ἑλεπόλεις καὶ τὰς παντοδαπὰς μηχανάς, βάδην ἐξόπισθεν
siege-engines and the of-all-kinds machines at-a-walk behind
εἵπετο, ἅμα τῷ προέδρῳ Βασιλείῳ, ᾧ τὴν τούτων
followed together-with the proedros Basil to-whom the of-these
ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπέτρεψε πρόνοιαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς ἐπισφαλεῖς
the emperor entrusted care when and the perilous
καὶ κρημνώδεις τόπους διώδευε παρὰ πᾶσαν ὑπόνοιαν, τὸ
and precipitous places he-traversed beyond all expectation the
σύντονον ἐπισχὼν τῆς πορείας, ἐπί τινος ἐχυροῦ γηλόφου
intensity having-checked of-the march on some secure hill
ἐκ τοῦ θατέρου μέρους παραῤῥέοντα ἔχοντος ποταμόν,
on the other side flowing-beside having river
ὑδάτων πληθώραν ἐπαγγελλόμενον, τήν τε ἵππον καὶ
of-waters abundance promising the both horse and
τὸν στρατὸν διανέπαυσεν. ἄρτι δὲ σταθηρᾶς ἡμέρας
the army he-rested just and broad day

ἀπαυγαζούσης, διαναστάς, καὶ ἐς βαθείας φάλαγγας
shining-forth having-risen and into deep phalanxes
διατάξας τὸ στράτευμα, τὴν ἐπὶ Πραισθλάβας ᾔει,
having-drawn-up the army the(-road) toward Preslav went
θαμινὰ τὰς σάλπιγγας τὸ ἐνυάλιον ἐγκελευσάμενος ἐπηχεῖν,
frequently the trumpets the battle-call having-ordered to-sound
ἀλαλάζειν τε τὰ κύμβαλα, καὶ τὰ τύμπανα παταγεῖν.
to-clash both the cymbals and the drums to-rattle
ἐντεῦθεν βοή τις ἄῤῥητος ἀνεδίδοτο, συνεπηχούντων τοῖς
thereupon shout some unspeakable was-sent-up echoing to-the
τυμπάνοις τῶν ἐκεῖσε ὀρέων, καὶ ἀντικτυπούντων τῶν
drums of-the there mountains and resounding of-the
ὅπλων, καὶ τῶν ἵππων χρεμετιζόντων, τῶν τε ἀνδρῶν
arms and of-the horses neighing of-the both men
ἀλλήλοις ἐκβοώντων καὶ πρὸς τὴν μάχην ἐπιῤῥωννύντων,
to-one-another shouting-out and to the battle encouraging
ὡς τὸ εἰκός. Ταυροσκύθας δέ, τὴν τοῦ στρατοπέδου μετ᾽
as the likely Tauroscythians and the of-the army with
ἐμπειρίας ὡς αὐτοὺς ἀθρήσαντας ἐπεξέλασιν, ἀμηχανία
experience toward them having-beheld advance perplexity
καὶ δέος ᾕρει, τῷ ἀπροσδοκήτῳ καταπλαγέντας τοῦ
and fear seized by-the unexpected stricken of-the
πράγματος. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς σπουδῇ τὰ ὅπλα ἁρπάσαντες,
event but even so with-haste the arms having-snatched
καὶ τοὺς θυρεοὺς ἐπωμισάμενοι (ἐρυμνοὶ δὲ οὗτοι, καὶ
and the shields having-shouldered strong and these and
ἐς τὸ ἀσφαλὲς ποδήρεις ἐξειργασμένοι πεποίηνται),
to the safety reaching-the-feet made they-have
ἐς καρτερὸν ἀντικαταστάντες συνασπισμόν, ἐπὶ τὸ πρὸ
into strong having-stood-against close-formation onto the before
τοῦ ἄστεος ἱππήλατον πεδίον Ῥωμαίοις ἀντεπῆεσαν,
the town horse-drivable plain to-Romans advanced-against

δίκην θηρίων βρυχώμενοι, καὶ καινὴν καὶ ἀλλόκοτον
like beasts roaring and strange and outlandish
προϊέμενοι ὠρυγήν. Ῥωμαῖοι δέ, συμβαλόντες αὐτοῖς,
sending-forth howl Romans and having-engaged them
ἐῤῥωμένως ἐμάχοντο, καὶ ἄξια πολέμων ἔργα εἰργάζοντο,
vigorously fought and worthy of-wars deeds wrought
τῆς μάχης ἰσοπαλοῦς ἀμφοτέροις γεγενημένης. ἐνταῦθα
the battle evenly-matched for-both having-become then
τοῖς ἀθανάτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν
to-the Immortals the emperor against the left of-the
Σκυθῶν κέρας μετὰ ῥύμης εἰσβάλλειν ἐγκελεύεται. οἱ δέ,
Scythians wing with force to-charge orders they and
προβαλόντες τοὺς ἄκοντας, καὶ σφοδρῶς τοῖς μύωψι
having-thrust-forward the javelins and violently with-the spurs
τοὺς ἵππους κεντρίσαντες, κατὰ τούτων ἤλαυνον. Σκύθαι
the horses having-goaded against these drove Scythians
δέ, ἅτε πεζέταιροι χρηματίζοντες· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀφ' ἵππων
and as foot-soldiers being nor for from horses
εἰθισμένον ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς ἀγωνίζεσθαι, ὅτι μηδὲ πρὸς τοῦτο
accustomed is for-them to-fight because not-even for this
γυμνάζονται· οὐχ ὑπήνεγκαν τὸν τῶν Ῥωμαίων δορατισμόν,
they-are-trained not endured the of-the Romans spear-thrusting
ἀλλ' ἐκκλίναντες εἰς φυγήν, ἐπὶ τὸν τοῦ ἄστεος περίβολον
but having-turned to flight into the of-the town circuit-wall
συνεκλείοντο· οὓς ἐπισπόμενοι Ῥωμαῖοι ἀνηλεῶς ἔκτεινον.
were-shut-in whom having-pursued Romans pitilessly killed
φασὶ γὰρ παρὰ ταύτην τὴν προσβολὴν ὀκτακισχιλίους
they-say for in this the assault eight-thousand
πρὸς τοῖς πεντακοσίοις ἀναιρεθῆναι Σκυθῶν.
in-addition-to the five-hundred to-have-been-slain of-Scythians

Οἱ δὲ περιλειφθέντες, ἐπεὶ πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ συνεκλείσθησαν,
the and survivors when within the town were-shut-in
ἐκ τῶν ἐπάλξεων ἄνωθεν ἐῤῥωμένως ἠκροβολίζοντο.
from the battlements from-above vigorously skirmished
τηνικαῦτα λέγεται καὶ τὸν Πατρίκιον Καλοκύρην, τῇ
at-that-time it-is-said also the Patrikios Kalokyres —
Πραισθλάβᾳ ἐπιχωριάζοντα, ὅσπερ τὴν Ῥωσικὴν πανοπλίαν
in-Preslav sojourning who the Rus full-army
κατὰ τῶν Μυσῶν τὸ πρόσθεν, ᾗπέρ μοι ἤδη ἐῤῥήθη,
against the Mysians the before as by-me already was-said
κεκίνηκεν, αἰσθόμενον τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἄφιξιν
had-set-in-motion having-perceived the of-the emperor's arrival
(οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐνῆν λανθάνειν, τῶν βασιλικῶν παρασήμων
nor for it-was-possible to-escape-notice the imperial insignia
τῇ στιλπνότητι τοῦ χρυσοῦ ἄῤῥητον ἐκπεμπόντων
with-the gleam of-the gold unspeakable sending-out
μαρμαρυγήν), λαθραίως ὑπὸ νύκτα βαθεῖαν ὑπεξελθεῖν τε
radiance secretly under night deep to-steal-out both
τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ ὡς τὸν Σφενδοσθλάβον ἀφικέσθαι, αὐτοῦ
from-the town and to — Sphendosthlavos to-have-gone there
που παρὰ τὸ Δορύστολον (ὃ τὰ νῦν Δρίστα καλεῖται)
somewhere by — Dorystolon which — now Dristra is-called
πανσυδὶ διατρίβοντα. ἀλλ' οὕτω μὲν ὁ Καλοκύρης
with-all-his-host staying but thus indeed — Kalokyres
ἀπέδρασε, Ῥωμαίους δὲ ἡ νὺξ ἐπελθοῦσα τῆς μάχης
escaped Romans and the night having-come-on from-the battle
ἐπέσχεν. ἅρτι δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὑστεραίαν καὶ τῆς λοιπῆς
checked just and on the next-day and of-the remaining
στρατιᾶς μετὰ τῶν ἑλεπόλεων ἀφιγμένης (ἡμέρα δὲ ἦν ἡ
army with the siege-engines having-arrived day and was the
καλουμένη μεγάλη πέμπτη, καθ' ἣν ἐπὶ τὸ πάθος μολὼν
called great fifth on which to the Passion having-gone

ὁ Σωτὴρ τὰ σωτήρια τοῖς μαθηταῖς μετὰ τὸν μυστικὸν
the Savior the saving to-the disciples after the mystical
δεῖπνον διδάγματα ἐξεπαίδευσε), πρωΐθεν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
supper teachings taught at-dawn the emperor
Ἰωάννης ἐξαναστὰς καὶ εἰς ἀῤῥαγῆ συνασπισμὸν διατάξας
John having-risen and into unbroken close-formation having-drawn-up
τὰς φάλαγγας, παιωνίσας τε τὸ ἐνυάλιον, τῷ τείχει
the phalanxes having-sung-the-paean and the battle-call to-the wall
προσέβαλεν, ὡς αὐτοβοεὶ αἱρήσων τὴν πόλιν. Ῥῶς δὲ
attacked as at-the-first-shout going-to-take the city Rus and
καὶ αὐτοὶ πρὸς τοῦ σφῶν παρακροτούμενοι στρατηγοῦ
also themselves by the their-own being-roused general
(Σφέγκελος δὲ ἦν οὗτος, ὁ τρίτην ἔχων τιμὴν παρὰ
Sphengelos and was this(-man) the third holding honor among
Σκύθαις μετά γε Σφενδοσθλάβον· ἐκεῖνος γὰρ ἁπάντων
Scythians after at-least Sphendosthlavos he for of-all
κατῆρχεν), ἐκ τῶν ἐπάλξεων ἀντετάξαντο, καὶ Ῥωμαίους
ruled from the battlements drew-up-against and Romans
ἐπιόντας κατὰ τὸ ἐνὸν ἠμύνοντο, ἀκόντια, καὶ βέλη, καὶ
advancing as-far-as the possible warded-off javelins and arrows and
λίθους χειροπλήθεις ἐπαφιέντες ἄνωθεν. Ῥωμαῖοι δέ, τοῖς
stones hand-filling hurling-at from-above Romans and with-the
τε τόξοις καὶ πετροβόλοις ὀργάνοις, σφενδόναις τε καὶ
both bows and stone-throwing engines with-slings both and
ἀκοντίοις θαμινώτερον κάτωθεν βάλλοντες, ἀνεῖργον τοὺς
javelins more-thickly from-below shooting kept-back the
Σκύθας, βιαζόμενοι, καὶ μὴ ἐῶντες ἀδεῶς προκύπτειν
Scythians forcing and not allowing fearlessly to-lean-out
ἐκ τῶν ἐπάλξεων. ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ, γεγωνότερον
from the battlements the and emperor louder
ἐμβοήσας καὶ τῷ περιβόλῳ τὰς κλίμακας προσερείδειν
having-shouted and to-the circuit-wall the ladders to-set-against

ἐγκελευσάμενος, ἐπέῤῥωσε τῇ βοῇ τὴν πολιορκίαν,
having-ordered strengthened by-the shout the siege
ἐκθύμως ἐπ᾽ ὄψεσι βασιλέως ἁπάντων διαγωνιζομένων,
eagerly before eyes of-(the)-emperor of-all contending-hard
καὶ τιμὰς ἀναλόγους τοῖς πόνοις τοπαραυτίκα πρὸς αὐτοῦ
and honors proportionate to-the toils at-once from him
προσδοκώντων ἀποίσεσθαι.
expecting to-carry-off

XXI · THE CAPTURE OF PRESLAV

Theodosios Mesonyktes climbs a ladder and beheads a Rus on the battlement, and the Romans pour over the walls. King Boris is taken and received with honor; John fires the palace, Skleros destroys seven thousand Rus, and Preslav falls in two days. John keeps Easter there, renames it Ioannoupolis, and marches on Dorystolon, where Sphendosthlavos beheads three hundred Mysian nobles and John's charge routs the Rus.

6 Ῥωμαίων δὲ ἐπιβρισάντων καὶ τοῖς τείχεσι προσπελασάντων
Romans and having-pressed-hard and to-the walls having-brought-near
τὰς κλίμακας, ἐνταῦθά τις γενναῖος νεανίσκος, ἄρτι
the ladders there a-certain noble youth just
πυρσαῖς θριξὶν ἐπιχνοάζων τὴν γένυν, ἐκ τῆς τῶν
with-reddish hairs growing-down-on the jaw from the of-the
Ἀνατολικῶν ὁρμώμενος γῆς, ᾧ Θεοδόσιος ὄνομα,
Anatolikoi hailing land to-whom Theodosios name
Μεσονύκτης ἐπίκλησις, θατέρᾳ μὲν τὸ ξίφος σπασάμενος,
Mesonyktes surname with-the-one indeed the sword having-drawn
τῇ λαιᾷ δὲ τὴν ἀσπίδα ὑπὲρ κεφαλὴν ἀνατείνας, ὡς
with-the left and the shield over head having-stretched-up so-that
μὴ βάλλοιτο ἄνωθεν παρὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν, διὰ τῆς κλίμακος
not he-be-struck from-above by the Scythians by the ladder

ἄνεισιν· ἀγχοῦ δὲ γενόμενος τῆς ἐπάλξεως, καταστοχήσας
goes-up near and having-come of-the battlement having-aimed-at
τοῦ προκύπτοντος Σκύθου καὶ τοῦτον ἀμυνομένου τῷ
the leaning-out Scythian and him warding-off with-the
δόρατι, παίει κατὰ τοῦ τένοντος· ἀπαραχθεῖσα δὲ ἡ κεφαλὴ
spear strikes at the sinew torn-off and the head
σὺν τῇ κόρυθι ἔξω τειχῶν πρὸς ἔδαφος ἐσφαιρίζετο·
with the helmet outside of-the-walls to ground rolled
Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ τῷ καινῷ τοῦ δράματος ἐπηλάλαξαν, καὶ
Romans and at-the novel of-the spectacle raised-the-war-cry and
συχνοὶ τοῦ πρώτως ἀνελθόντος τόλμαν ζηλώσαντες, διὰ
many of-the first having-gone-up daring having-emulated by
τῶν κλιμάκων ἀνέθεον. ὁ δὲ Μεσονύκτης, ἐπεὶ τοῦ τείχους
the ladders ran-up — and Mesonyktes when the wall
ἐπέβη, καὶ τῆς ἐπάλξεως ἐγκρατὴς ἐξεγένετο, πλείστους
he-mounted and of-the battlement master became very-many
τῶν ἀμυνομένων Ῥῶς ἐπιστροφάδην πλήττων τῶν
of-the defending Rus turning-about striking from-the
τειχῶν κατεκρήμνιζε. θᾶττον δὲ συχνῶν ἑκασταχοῦ τῶν
walls hurled-down quickly and many on-every-side of-the
περιβόλων ἀνελθόντων, καὶ παντὶ σθένει τοὺς ἐναντίους
circuit-walls having-gone-up and with-all strength the opponents
ἀποσφαττόντων, τὰς ἐπάλξεις καταλιπόντες οἱ Σκύθαι, ἐς
slaughtering the battlements having-abandoned the Scythians into
τὴν βασίλειον αὐλήν, τειχίον ἐχυρὸν κεκτημένην, ἐν ᾗ
the royal court a-wall secure possessing in which
καὶ ὁ πλοῦτος Μυσοῖς ἐναπέκειτο, ἀκλεῶς συνώσθησαν,
also the wealth for-Mysians was-stored ingloriously were-crowded
πυλίδα μίαν ἠνεῳγμένην παραλιπόντες. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα
a-postern one opened having-left in which and these-things
ἐδρᾶτο, ἡ ἔξω τειχῶν ὁρμωμένη τῶν Ῥωμαίων
were-being-done the outside of-the-walls rushing of-the Romans

πληθύς, τοὺς θαιροὺς τῶν πυλῶν καὶ μοχλοὺς διακόψασα
multitude the hinges of-the gates and bars having-cut-through
καὶ συντρίψασα, ἔνδον εἰσῄει τοῦ ἄστεος, ἀμύθητον φόνον
and having-smashed inside went-into the town untold slaughter
αὐτουργήσασα τῶν Σκυθῶν. τότε δὴ καὶ Βορὴν
having-worked-by-its-own-hand of-the Scythians then indeed also Boris
συλληφθῆναι λέγεται, τῶν Μυσῶν βασιλέα, σὺν γυναικὶ καὶ
to-have-been-seized it-is-said of-the Mysians king with wife and
δυσὶ νηπίοις, οὕτω πυρσοῖς τὴν γένυν περιπυκάζοντα, καὶ
two infants so with-reddish the jaw thickly-covering and
προσαχθῆναι τῷ βασιλεῖ· ὁ δέ, τοῦτον δεξάμενος, διὰ τιμῆς
to-have-been-brought to-the emperor he and him having-received in honor
ἦγε, κοίρανον Βουλγάρων ἀποκαλῶν, φάσκων τε, ἥκειν
held lord of-Bulgarians calling saying and to-have-come
Μυσοῖς τιμωρήσων, δεινὰ πεπονθόσι πρὸς τῶν Σκυθῶν.
for-Mysians going-to-avenge terrible(-things) having-suffered from the Scythians
7 Ῥωμαῖοι δέ, ἅπαξ ἐμπελασθέντες τῷ ἄστει, ἐχώρουν διὰ
Romans and once having-come-close to-the town advanced through
τῶν στενωπῶν, τοὺς μὲν δυσμενεῖς ἀποκτείνοντες, τὰ δὲ
the narrow-lanes the indeed enemies killing the and
χρήματα διαρπάζοντες. τηνικαῦτα καὶ τῇ βασιλείῳ αὐλῇ
goods plundering at-that-time also the royal court
προσέβαλλον, ἐν ᾗ τῆς Ῥωσικῆς πληθύος συνώσθη τὸ
attacked in which of-the Rus multitude crowded the
μάχιμον. ἀλλ᾽ εὐσθενῶς ἔνδον ἀντικαταστάντες οἱ Σκύθαι
fighting(-part) but stoutly within having-stood-against the Scythians
τούτους ἀνῄρουν, διὰ τῆς πυλίδος ἐξολισθαίνοντας, καὶ
these killed through the postern slipping-out and
μέχρι τῶν ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα ἄνδρας ἀνεῖλον νεανικούς.
up-to the hundred and fifty men killed young
ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὸ τοιοῦτον σύμπτωμα γνούς, θᾶττον
the and emperor the such mishap having-learned quickly

ἐξιππασάμενος, παντὶ σθένει πρὸς τὴν μάχην χωρεῖν
having-ridden-out with-all strength to the battle to-advance
τοῖς ἑπομένοις προὐτρέπετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ εἶχέ τι
to-the followers urged since and not he-was-able something
γενναῖον ἀνύττειν (διὰ γὰρ τῆς ἐστενωμένης πυλίδος τοὺς
noble to-accomplish through for the narrowed postern the(-ones)
εἰσιόντας Ταυροσκύθαι δεχόμενοι εὐπετῶς κατειργάζοντο,
entering Tauroscythians receiving easily overpowered
πλείστους κατασπαθίζοντες), τὴν μὲν πρόσω τῶν Ῥωμαίων
very-many cutting-down-with-swords the indeed forward of-the Romans
ἀλόγιστον ὁρμὴν ἀνεχαίτισε, πῦρ δὲ τῇ αὐλῇ ἑκασταχοῦ
reckless rush he-reined-in fire and to-the court on-every-side
διὰ τῶν περιβόλων ἐνιέναι προσέταξε. τῆς δὲ πυρκαϊᾶς
through the circuit-walls to-throw-in ordered of-the and blaze
σφοδρᾶς ἀναῤῥιπισθείσης, καὶ ἐκτεφρούσης θᾶττον τὰ
violent having-been-fanned-up and reducing-to-ash quickly the
ὑποκείμενα, τῶν δόμων ὑπεξελθόντες οἱ Ῥῶς, ὑπὲρ
under(-parts) from-the buildings having-stolen-out the Rus over
τοὺς ἑπτακισχιλίους τυγχάνοντες, ἔς τε τὸ ὕπαιθρον
the seven-thousand being into and the open-air
τῆς αὐλαίας συσπειραθέντες, ἀμύνεσθαι τοῖς ἐπιοῦσι
of-the courtyard having-massed to-defend-themselves against-the attackers
παρεσκευάζοντο. τούτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς Βάρδαν Μάγιστρον
prepared against-these the emperor Bardas Magistros
τὸν Σκληρὸν μετὰ νεανικοῦ συντάγματος ἀντέταξεν· οὓς
— Skleros with youthful detachment set-against whom
κυκλωσάμενος τῇ συνεπομένῃ φάλαγγι τῶν ἀλκιμωτάτων
having-encircled with-the following phalanx of-the most-valiant
ἀνδρῶν ὁ Σκληρός, ἔργου εἶχετο. καὶ τῆς συμπλοκῆς
men — Skleros to-work held and of-the engagement
γενομένης καρτερῶς οἱ Ῥῶς διεμάχοντο, μὴ δόντες νῶτα
having-become stoutly the Rus fought-it-out not having-given backs

τοῖς ἐχθροῖς, Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ τῇ σφῶν ἀρετῇ καὶ τῇ
to-the enemies Romans and by-the their-own valor and by-the
τῶν πολέμων πείρᾳ κατηκόντισαν ἅπαντας, πλείστων
of-the wars experience shot-down all very-many
ὅτι καὶ Μυσῶν κατὰ ταύτην πεσόντων τὴν μάχην·
as-could-be also of-Mysians in this having-fallen the battle
οἵγε συνεπήμυνον Σκύθαις, Ῥωμαίοις δυσμεναίνοντες, ὡς
who-indeed helped Scythians against-Romans being-hostile as
γεγονόσιν αἰτίοις τῆς ὡς αὐτοὺς γεγενημένης ἀφίξεως τῶν
having-become causes of-the to them having-happened coming of-the
Σκυθῶν. Σφέγκελος δὲ παρὰ τὸν Σφενδοσθλάβον ᾤχετο,
Scythians Sphengelos and to — Sphendosthlavos went
φυγῇ μετ' ὀλίγων κλέψας τὴν σωτηρίαν· αὖθις δὲ ἀνῃρέθη,
in-flight with few having-stolen the safety again and was-killed
ὥσγε μοι ἤδη εἰρήσεται. ἀλλ' οὕτω μὲν ἡ Πραισθλάβα,
as-indeed by-me presently will-be-told but thus indeed — Preslav
ἐν δυσὶν ἡλίοις ἁλοῦσα, ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίοις ἐγένετο.
in two suns having-been-taken under Romans came
8 Ἰωάννης δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, τὴν στρατιάν, ὡς τὸ εἰκός,
John and the emperor the army as the likely
φιλοφρονησάμενος, διανέπαυε, καὶ τὴν θείαν ἀνάστασιν
having-treated-kindly rested and the divine resurrection
τοῦ Σωτῆρος αὐτόθι ἑώρταζεν. ἔκ τε τῶν δορυαλώτων
of-the Savior there celebrated from and the captured-by-the-spear
Ταυροσκυθῶν τινας ἀποκρίνας ὡς τὸν Σφενδοσθλάβον
Tauroscythians some having-picked-out to — Sphendosthlavos
ἐξέπεμπε, τὴν τῆς πόλεως ἅλωσιν ἀπαγγελοῦντας αὐτῷ
sent the of-the city capture going-to-announce to-him
καὶ τὴν τῶν ἑταίρων ἀναίρεσιν, φράζειν τε, μὴ διαμέλλειν,
and the of-the companions killing to-tell and not to-delay
ἀλλ' αἱρεῖσθαι τὴν ταχίστην δυοῖν θάτερον· ἢ τὰ ὅπλα
but to-choose the quickest of-two the-one either the arms

καταθέσθαι καὶ τοῖς κρείττοσι πειθαρχεῖν, καὶ τῶν
to-lay-down and the stronger to-obey and of-the(-things)
τετολμημένων συγγνώμην αἰτεῖν, ἀφιστάμενον ἐξαυτῆς
dared pardon to-ask withdrawing at-once
χώρας τῆς τῶν Μυσῶν· ἤ, τοῦτο μὴ βουλομένου, ἀλλ'
from-country the of-the Mysians or this not wishing but
εἰς τὴν σύντροφον αὐθάδειαν ἀποκλίναντος, παντὶ σθένει
into the inbred arrogance having-inclined with-all strength
ἐπιοῦσαν τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἀμύνεσθαι δύναμιν. ταῦτα μὲν
advancing the Roman to-ward-off force these-things indeed
ἀπαγγέλλειν Σφενδοσθλάβῳ παρήγγειλεν· αὐτὸς δέ, ὀλίγων
to-announce to-Sphendosthlavos he-ordered himself and few
ἡμερῶν ἐνδιατρίψας τῇ πόλει, καὶ ταύτης τὰ πεπονηκότα
days having-spent in-the city and of-this the damaged(-parts)
ὀχυρωσάμενος, καὶ φρουρὰν ἀποχρῶσαν καταλιπών,
having-fortified and garrison sufficient having-left
Ἰωαννούπολίν τε ταύτην ἐπὶ τῷ ἑαυτοῦ καλέσας ὀνόματι,
Ioannoupolis and it after the his-own having-called name
πανστρατὶ τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ Δορύστολον ἴετο. ὅπερ
with-all-the-army the(-road) toward — Dorystolon went which
Κωνσταντῖνος, ὁ ἐν βασιλεῦσιν ἀοίδιμος, ἐκ βάθρων
Constantine the among emperors celebrated from foundations
ἐδείματο, καὶ εἰς ὃ νῦν ὁρᾶται κάλλος καὶ μέγεθος
built and into which now is-seen beauty and size
ἤγειρεν, ὁπηνίκα τὸ σταυρικὸν σημεῖον κατηστερισμένον
raised when the of-the-cross standard starred
ἐν οὐρανῷ θεασάμενος, Σκύθας δυσμενῶς ἀντιτεταγμένους
in heaven having-beheld Scythians hostilely arrayed-against
αὐτῷ καὶ μανικῶς ὁρμῶντας κατεπολέμησε. πάρεργον δὲ
him and madly rushing he-defeated as-a-side-work and
τῆς ὁδοῦ τήν τε καλουμένην Πλίσκουβαν καὶ Δίνειαν εἷλεν
of-the road the both called Pliskouba and Dineia took

ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ συχνὰς τῶν πόλεων, αἳ τῶν Σκυθῶν
the emperor and many of-the cities which from-the Scythians
ἀφηνιάσασαι Ῥωμαίοις προσέθεντο. Σφενδοσθλάβος δέ, τὸ
having-revolted to-Romans attached-themselves Sphendosthlavos and the
κατὰ τὴν Πραισθλάβαν πάθος γνούς, ἤσχαλλε μὲν
at — Preslav disaster having-learned was-vexed indeed
καὶ ἤχθετο, οὐκ ἀγαθὸν οἰωνὸν τοῦ μέλλοντος τοῦτο
and grieved not good omen of-the future this
τιθέμενος· τῇ δὲ Σκυθικῇ ἀπονοίᾳ παρακροτούμενος, καὶ
taking by-the and Scythian madness being-roused and
ταῖς κατὰ Μυσῶν νίκαις γαυρούμενος, εὐπετῶς ᾤετο καὶ
by-the over Mysians victories exulting easily thought also
τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν καταγωνίσασθαι δύναμιν.
the Roman to-overcome force

9 Ὁρῶν δὲ Μυσοὺς τῆς ἐκείνου μὲν ἑταιρείας ἀφηνιάζοντας,
seeing and Mysians from-the his indeed companionship revolting
τῷ δὲ βασιλεῖ προσχωροῦντας, πολλὰ γνωσιμαχήσας, καὶ
to-the and emperor going-over much having-changed-his-mind and
ἀνασκοπήσας, ὡς, εἰ πρὸς Ῥωμαίους οἱ Μυσοὶ ἀποκλίνειαν,
having-considered that if to Romans the Mysians should-incline
οὐκ εἰς καλὸν αὑτῷ τελευτήσει τὰ πράγματα, τοὺς
not to good for-himself will-end the affairs the(-men)
γένει καὶ δυναστείᾳ διαφέροντας συνειλοχὼς τῶν Μυσῶν,
in-birth and in-power excelling having-gathered of-the Mysians
εἰς τριακοσίους ἀριθμουμένους, ὠμὸν καὶ ἀπάνθρωπον
to three-hundred numbering savage and inhuman
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐμελέτησε τόλμημα. δειροτομήσας γὰρ πάντας
against them devised deed-of-daring having-beheaded for all
ἀπέκτεινε· τὴν δ᾽ ἄλλην πληθὺν πεδήσας συνέκλεισεν
he-killed the and other multitude having-fettered shut-up
ἐν εἱρκταῖς. αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν τῶν Ταυροσκυθῶν πανοπλίαν
in prisons himself and the of-the Tauroscythians full-army

συναγαγών, εἰς ἑξήκοντα χιλιάδας συναγομένην ἀνδρῶν,
having-gathered to sixty thousands gathered of-men
Ῥωμαίοις ἀντετάξατο. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς σχολαιότερον
against-Romans drew-up-against in which and the emperor more-leisurely
τὴν πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἐπεποίητο ἄφιξιν, τινὲς παραβόλῳ
the toward them had-made arrival some with-reckless
τόλμῃ παρακροτούμενοι τῶν θρασυτέρων, τῆς Ῥωσικῆς
daring being-roused of-the bolder from-the Rus
ἀποῤῥαγέντες φάλαγγος, ἐς λόχον ἐκάθιζον, καὶ δὴ τῶν
having-broken-off phalanx into ambush sat and indeed of-the
προδρόμων τινὰς ἐκ τοῦ ἀφανοῦς ἐπελάσαντες ἔκτειναν.
forerunners some from the hidden(-place) having-charged killed
ὧν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ ἐῤῥιμμένα παρὰ τὴν ἀταρπιτὸν τὰ
of-whom the emperor thrown along the path the
πτώματα κατιδών, τῷ ῥυτῆρι τὸν ἵππον ἐπισχών,
corpses having-caught-sight with-the rein the horse having-checked
σχετλιάσας τε τὴν τῶν ὁμοεθνῶν ἀπώλειαν, ἀνιχνεύειν
having-lamented and the of-the fellow-countrymen loss to-track-down
τοὺς τοῦτο δεδρακότας ἐκέλευε. τῶν δὲ πεζεταίρων τοὺς
the(-men) this having-done ordered of-the and foot-soldiers the
δρυμοὺς καὶ τὰς λόχμας καταδραμόντων σπουδῇ, καὶ τοὺς
thickets and the coppices having-scoured with-haste and the
πελάτας ἐκείνους συνειληφότων, εἰς ὄψιν τε πεπεδημένους
assailants those having-seized into sight and fettered
παραγαγόντων τῷ βασιλεῖ, αὐθωρὸν κατασπαθίζειν τούτους
having-brought to-the emperor on-the-spot to-cut-down these
προσέταττεν. οἱ δέ, μηδὲν μελλήσαντες, ξίφεσιν ἄρδην
he-ordered they and nothing having-delayed with-swords utterly
ἐμέλισαν ἅπαντας. ἄρτι δὲ τῶν στρατευμάτων ἐς τὸν πρὸ
cut-to-pieces all just and of-the armies into the before
τοῦ Δορυστόλου χῶρον συνελθόντων, ὃ καὶ Δρίστραν
— Dorystolon place having-come-together which also Dristra

κικλήσκειν εἰώθεσαν, Ταυροσκύθαι μὲν ἔγχεσι καὶ θυρεοῖς
to-call were-wont Tauroscythians indeed with-spears and with-shields
τὰς φάλαγγας πυκνώσαντες, καὶ οἷον πυργώσαντες, τοὺς
the phalanxes having-packed-close and as-it-were having-made-towers the
δυσμενεῖς παρὰ τὸ μεταίχμιον ἔμενον. Ῥωμαίους δὲ κατὰ
enemies at the no-man's-land awaited Romans and in
μέτωπον ἀντιτάξας ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ τοὺς πανσιδήρους
front having-arrayed-against the emperor and the all-iron
ἱππότας κατὰ θάτερον κέρας παραστησάμενος, τούς τε
horsemen on the-other wing having-set-beside the both
τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας ἐξόπισθεν ἐπιστήσας, καὶ θαμινὰ
archers and slingers behind having-set and frequently
βάλλειν ἐγκελευσάμενος, ἐπῆγε τὴν φάλαγγα.
to-shoot having-ordered led-on the phalanx
10 Τῶν δὲ στρατοπέδων εἰς χεῖρας ἀλλήλοις συναραχθέντων,
of-the and armies into hands with-one-another having-dashed-together
καὶ σφοδρᾶς τῆς μάχης καταῤῥαγείσης, ἰσοπαλὴς παρὰ τὰς
and violent the battle having-broken-out evenly-matched at the
πρώτας προσβολὰς ὁ ἀγὼν τέως ἐν ἀμφοτέροις ἐγίνετο.
first assaults the contest for-a-time on both-sides was
Ῥῶς μὲν γὰρ δεινόν που καὶ σχέτλιον τιθέμενοι, εἰ
Rus indeed for terrible somehow and wretched holding if
δόξαν παρὰ τῶν προσοίκων ἐθνῶν ἔχοντες, ἐν ταῖς μάχαις
reputation among the neighboring peoples having in the battles
ἀεὶ τῶν ἀντιπάλων κρατεῖν, νῦν ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων αἰσχρῶς
always the adversaries to-overcome now by Romans shamefully
ἡττηθέντες ταύτης ἐκπέσοιεν, ἐκθύμως διηγωνίζοντο.
having-been-defeated of-this they-should-fall-from eagerly fought-it-out
Ῥωμαίοις δὲ αἰδώς τις εἰσῄει καὶ νέμεσις, εἰ τὸ ἀντίξουν
to-Romans and shame some came-in and indignation if the opposing
ἅπαν ὅπλοις καὶ τῇ σφῶν ἀρετῇ καταστρεφόμενοι,
all with-arms and with-the their-own valor subduing

νῦν ἀπέλθοιεν, παρὰ πεζομαχοῦντος ἔθνους, ἱππάζεσθαι
now they-should-depart by a-fighting-on-foot people to-ride
μηδόλως εἰδότος, καταγωνισθέντες, ὥς τινες ἔργων μάχης
not-at-all knowing defeated as some of-deeds of-battle
ἀνάσκητοι, καὶ τοσοῦτον αὐτοῖς ἐν ἀκαρεῖ κλέος οἰχήσεται.
unpracticed and so-much for-them in an-instant glory will-be-gone
τὰς τοιαύτας δὴ δόξας παρ' ἑαυτοῖς ἐντρέφοντα τὰ
the such indeed thoughts among themselves nursing the
στρατεύματα θαῤῥαλέως διηγωνίζοντο· καὶ Ῥῶς μὲν τῇ
armies boldly fought-it-out and Rus indeed with-the
συντρόφῳ θηριωδίᾳ καὶ τῷ θυμῷ στρατηγούμενοι, μετὰ
inbred savagery and by-the anger led with
ῥύμης κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐφήλλοντο, οἷον ἐνθουσιῶντες καὶ
force against Romans leapt as-if possessed and
βρυχώμενοι· Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ μετ' ἐμπειρίας καὶ τεχνικῆς
roaring Romans and with experience and technical
ἐπιστήμης αὐτοῖς ἀντεπῄεσαν. καὶ συχνοὶ παρ' ἀμφοτέρων
knowledge them advanced-against and many from both
ἔπιπτον τῶν μερῶν, καὶ μέχρι μὲν δείλης βαθείας
fell the sides and until indeed evening late
ἀμφιτάλαντος ἡ νίκη ἐδόκει, τῇδε κἀκεῖσε μεταφερομένης
in-the-balance the victory seemed here and-there being-carried-about
τῆς μάχης. ἤδη δὲ τοῦ φωσφόρου καταφερομένου πρὸς
the battle already and the light-bringer descending toward
δυσμάς, τὴν ἵππον ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀνὰ κράτος αὐτοῖς ἐπιῤῥάξας,
west the horse the emperor with might at-them having-dashed
ἐμβοήσας τε, Ῥωμαίους ὄντας ἐπὶ τῶν ἔργων τὴν σφῶν
having-shouted and Romans being in the deeds the their-own
ἀρετὴν ἐπιδείκνυσθαι, τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐπέῤῥωσε τὰ φρονήματα.
valor to-display of-the men strengthened the spirits
ἐπέβρισαν γὰρ ἐκτόπῳ φορᾷ, καὶ οἱ σαλπιγκταὶ τὸ
they-pressed-hard for with-extraordinary rush and the trumpeters the

ἐνυάλιον ἐπηλάλαξαν, καὶ βοή τις ἀθρόα παρὰ Ῥωμαίων
battle-call sounded and shout some massed from Romans
ἤρθη. Σκύθαι δέ, τὴν τούτων οὐκ ἐνεγκόντες ῥοπήν, ἐς
was-raised Scythians and the of-these not having-borne weight into
φυγὴν ἔκλιναν καὶ πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος συνώσθησαν, πολλοὺς
flight turned and toward the wall were-crowded many
τῶν σφετέρων παρὰ ταύτην ἀποβαλόντες τὴν μάχην.
of-the their-own in this having-lost the battle
Ῥωμαῖοι δέ, τὰ ἐπινίκια παιωνίσαντες, ἐν εὐφημίαις εἶχον
Romans and the victory-song having-sung-the-paean in acclamations held
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα· ὁ δὲ ἀξιωμάτων τότε διανομαῖς
the emperor he and of-ranks then with-distributions
καὶ δεξιώσεσιν ἑστιάσεων ἐφιλοφρονεῖτο τούτους, καὶ
and with-receptions of-feasts treated-kindly these and
προθυμοτέρους ἐπὶ τὰς μάχας εἰργάζετο.
more-eager for the battles made

XXII · BEFORE DORYSTOLON

John entrenches his camp before Dorystolon. The Rus ride out for the first time on horseback and are speared down by the Roman lancers. The fire-bearing triremes arrive on the Ister, and the Rus, remembering how Ingor's fleet was burned, drag their boats under the walls. In a hard battle the Rus champion Sphengelos is killed and Theodore Lalakon crushes heads with an iron mace. Meanwhile Leo the Kouropalates, whose eyes had been spared, escapes from Methymna, has his friends copy the palace keys, slips into the city by a postern, and is betrayed; he and his son Nikephoros are dragged from the Great Church, exiled to Kalonymos, and blinded.

Ἄρτι δὲ ἡμέρας διαυγαζούσης, ἐρυμνῷ χάρακι τοῦτον τὸν 1
just and day dawning with-a-strong palisade in-this the
τρόπον ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐκρατύνετο. γεώλοφός
manner the emperor the camp fortified a-mound
τις χαμαίζηλος τοῦ Δορυστόλου ἐκ διαστήματος κατὰ τὸ
some low-lying — of-Dorystolon at distance on the
πεδίον ἀνίσταται. ἐν τούτῳ τὸ στράτευμα διασκηνισάμενος,
plain rises on this the army having-encamped
ταφρείαν ἀνορύττειν κυκλόθεν ἐκέλευε· τόν τε χοῦν
a-trench to-dig all-around ordered the and earth
ἐκφοροῦντας ἐς τὴν τὸ στρατόπεδον ταινιοῦσαν τῆς
carrying-out onto the the camp girding of-the
τάφρου ὀφρῦν ἀποτίθεσθαι, ἐς ὕψος δὲ ἀποχρῶν αἰρομένων
trench brow to-deposit to height and sufficient raised
τῶν χωμάτων ἄνωθεν καταπηγνύειν τὰ δόρατα, ἐπερείδειν
the mounds above to-fix the spears to-set-against
τε τούτοις τοὺς θυρεοὺς ἀλλήλων ψαύοντας· ὡς ἀντὶ
and on-these the shields one-another touching so-that instead-of
τείχους χρηματίζειν τήν τε τάφρον καὶ τὸν ἐκφορηθέντα
wall to-serve the both trench and the carried-out

χοῦν τῷ στρατεύματι· καὶ μὴ ἐνὸν εἴη τοῖς ἐναντίοις
earth for-the army and not possible it-might-be for-the opponents
ἔνδον διαβαίνειν, ἀλλ' εἴργεσθαι τῆς ἐφόδου τῇ τάφρῳ
within to-cross but to-be-barred from-the attack to-the trench
ἐγχρίπτουσιν. εἰθισμένον δὲ Ῥωμαίοις, ταύτῃ τὴν σφῶν
approaching accustomed and for-Romans in-this-way the their-own
ἐπὶ τῆς πολεμίας διατίθεσθαι ἔπαυλιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν χάρακα
in the enemy(-land) to-arrange encampment when and the palisade
τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον ἐκρατύνατο, τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἐκτάξας
in-this the manner he-had-fortified on-the following having-drawn-up
τὴν στρατιὰν τῷ τείχει προσέβαλλε. Σκύθαι δέ, τῶν
the army against-the wall attacked Scythians and from-the
πύργων προκύπτοντες, βέλη καὶ χερμάδας, καὶ ὅσα
towers leaning-out arrows and hand-stones and whatever
ἑκηβόλα πέφυκεν ὄργανα, κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἠφίεσαν
far-darting are engines against the Roman let-fly
φάλαγγος. οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ σφενδόναις καὶ βέλεσι Σκύθας
phalanx they and also themselves with-slings and with-arrows Scythians
ἠμύναντο κάτωθεν. καὶ μέχρι τῶν τοιούτων ἀκροβολισμῶν
warded-off from-below and up-to the such skirmishings
ἀμφοτέροις ἡ μάχη περιῄστατο, καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν ἐπὶ τὸν
for-both the battle came-round and Romans indeed to the
χάρακα ᾔεσαν, καὶ δεῖπνον εἵλοντο· Σκύθαι δέ, κλινούσης
palisade went and supper took Scythians and declining
ἡμέρας, ἔφιπποι τοῦ περιβόλου ἐξῄεσαν, τότε πρώτως
day on-horseback from-the circuit-wall came-out then first
φανέντες ἐφ' ἵππων ὀχούμενοι. ἄφιπποι γὰρ παρὰ τοὺς
appearing on horses riding without-horses for in the
πολέμους ἀεὶ χωρεῖν εἰώθεισαν, ἀνασκήτως ἔχοντες τῶν
wars always to-go were-accustomed unpracticed being of-the
ἐφιππίων ἐπιβαίνειν, καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀνταγωνίζεσθαι.
saddles to-mount and against-the enemies to-contend-against

Ῥωμαῖοι δέ, σπουδῇ τοῖς ὅπλοις φραξάμενοι καὶ τῶν
Romans and with-haste with-the arms having-fenced-themselves and the
ἵππων ἐπιβάντες, τούς τε κοντοὺς ἀνειληφότες (ἐπιμήκεις
horses having-mounted the and lances having-taken-up long
δὲ τούτους παρὰ τὰς μάχας μεταχειρίζονται), μετὰ ῥύμης
and these in the battles they-handle with force
καὶ βιαίου ὠθισμοῦ αὐτοῖς ἐπελαύνουσιν. οἱ δέ, μηδὲ
and violent thrusting them charge they and not-even
τοῖς ῥυτῆρσι τοὺς ἵππους χαλιναγωγεῖν ἐπιστάμενοι,
with-the reins the horses to-guide knowing
πρὸς τῶν Ῥωμαίων κατακοντιζόμενοι, νῶτα δόντες εἰς
by the Romans being-speared backs having-given into
τὸ τεῖχος κατεκλείοντο.
the wall were-shut-in

Τηνικαῦτα δὴ καὶ αἱ τῶν Ῥωμαίων πυρφόροι τριήρεις 2
at-that-time indeed also the of-the Romans fire-bearing triremes
μετὰ τῶν σιτηγῶν πορθμείων διὰ τοῦ Ἴστρου ἐφάνησαν
with the grain-carrying ferries through the Ister appeared
ἀναπλέουσαι· ἃς Ῥωμαῖοι μὲν ἰδόντες ἀῤῥήτου χαρμονῆς
sailing-up which Romans indeed having-seen with-unspeakable joy
ὑπεπλήσθησαν, Σκύθας δὲ δέος ᾕρει, τὸ ἐπιφερόμενον αὐτοῖς
were-filled Scythians and fear seized the brought-against them
ὑγρὸν πῦρ δεδιότας. ἠκηκόεισαν γὰρ πρὸς τῶν γεραιτέρων
liquid fire fearing they-had-heard for from the elders
τοῦ σφῶν ἔθνους, ὡς τὸν μυριόστολον στρατὸν Ἴγγορος,
of-the their-own people that the ten-thousand-ship host of-Ingor
τοῦ τὸν Σφενδοσθλάβον τεκόντος, Ῥωμαῖοι τῷ τοιούτῳ
the(-one) — Sphendosthlavos having-begotten Romans with-the such
Μηδικῷ πυρὶ κατὰ τὸν Εὔξεινον ἐξετέφρωσαν. ἐντεῦθεν
Median fire on the Euxine had-burned-to-ash thereupon
σπουδῇ τὰ ἑαυτῶν συναγαγόντες ἀκάτια, πρὸ τοῦ περιβόλου
with-haste the their-own having-gathered boats before the circuit-wall

τοῦ ἄστεος εἵλκυσαν, ἵνα παραῤῥέων ὁ Ἴστρος τὸ θάτερον
of-the town hauled where flowing-beside the Ister the other
τοῦ Δορυστόλου περικλύζει πλευρόν. ταῦτα αἱ πυρφόροι
— of-Dorystolon washes-around side these the fire-bearing
νῆες κυκλόθεν ἐφρούρουν, ὡς μὴ εἴη Σκύθαις ἐνόν,
ships all-around guarded so-that not it-might-be for-Scythians possible
αὐτῶν ἐπιβεβηκόσιν, ἐπὶ τὴν σφῶν ἀνασώζεσθαι γῆν. τῇ
them having-boarded to the their-own to-get-safe-back land on-the
δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ Ταυροσκύθαι, τοῦ ἄστεος ὑπεκδύντες, κατὰ
and next-day Tauroscythians from-the town having-slipped-out on
τὸ πεδίον ἐτάξαντο, ποδηνεκεῖς θυρεοὺς προβαλλόμενοι
the plain drew-up reaching-the-feet shields holding-before-them
καὶ θώρακας ἁλυσιδωτούς. Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ τοῦ
and corslets chain-linked Romans and also themselves from-the
χάρακος ὑπεξῄεσαν ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς τεθωρακισμένοι· καὶ
palisade came-out to the exact armored and
καρτερῶς ἄμφω τὰ μέρη διηγωνίζοντο, καὶ ἀμφίδοξος
stoutly both the sides fought-it-out and doubtful
ἡ νίκη ἐδόκει, ἄλλοτε θατέρου μέρους ὠθοῦντος.
the victory seemed at-another-time the-other side pushing
ἐπεὶ δέ τις Ῥωμαίων τῆς φάλαγγος ἀποῤῥαγεὶς
when and a-certain of-Romans from-the phalanx having-broken-off
τὸν μετὰ Σφενδοσθλάβον τρίτον παρὰ Ταυροσκύθαις
the after Sphendostblavos third among Tauroscythians
τιμώμενον Σφέγκελον, ἐκθύμως τότε διαγωνιζόμενον,
honored Sphengelos eagerly then contending
κατηκόντισεν, ἄνδρα γιγαντώδη καὶ νεανικόν· ἐπὶ τῷ
speared-down a-man giant-like and young at the
τούτου πτώματι διαταραχθέντες Ταυροσκύθαι βάδην τοῦ
his fall thrown-into-confusion Tauroscythians at-a-walk from-the
πεδίου ὑπενόστουν καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἠπείγοντο. τηνικαῦτα
plain withdrew and toward the town hastened at-that-time

καὶ Θεόδωρος, ὁ τὴν κατεπωνυμίαν Λαλάκων, ἀνὴρ
also Theodore the(-one) the surname Lalakon a-man
κατά τε ἀλκὴν καὶ σώματος ῥώμην δυσάντητος καὶ
in both prowess and of-body strength hard-to-face and
ἀκαταγώνιστος, πλείστους τῶν δυσμενῶν σιδηρᾷ κορύνῃ
invincible very-many of-the enemies with-an-iron mace
ἀπέκτεινεν. ἰσχύϊ γὰρ χειρὸς ταύτην καταφέρων,
killed with-strength for of-hand it bringing-down
αὐτῇ κυνῇ καὶ τὴν ταύτῃ περιστελλομένην συνέθλαττε
together-with helmet and the by-it enveloped crushed
κεφαλήν. ἀλλ᾽ οὕτω μὲν τότε Σκύθαι, τὰ νῶτα δόντες,
head but thus indeed then Scythians the backs having-given
διὰ τοῦ ἄστεος ὑπενόστησαν. Ῥωμαίους δὲ ὁ βασιλεύς,
through the town withdrew Romans and the emperor
τὸ ἀνακλητικὸν ἐπαυλεῖν ἐγκελεύσας, συνεκαλεῖτο ἐπὶ
the recall to-pipe having-ordered called-together to
τὸν χάρακα, οὓς δώροις καὶ προπόσεσιν ἐθεράπευε,
the palisade whom with-gifts and with-toasts courted
προθυμοποιῶν, ῥωμαλέως ἐπὶ τοὺς πολέμους χωρεῖν.
making-eager vigorously to the wars to-go
Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῶν πραγμάτων ἠωρημένων, καὶ τῆς 3
in this and the affairs being-in-suspense and the
μάχης ἔτι συνεστηκυίας, Λέων Κουροπαλάτης, ὁ τοῦ
battle still standing Leo Kouropalates the of-the
αὐτοκράτορος Νικηφόρου ὁμαίμων, ἐπὶ τὴν κατὰ Λέσβον
emperor Nikephoros brother at the in Lesbos
Μήθυμναν ἅμα Νικηφόρῳ τῷ υἱῷ φρουρούμενος, ὥς
Methymna together-with Nikephoros the son being-guarded as
μοι ἤδη δεδήλωται, χρυσῷ τοὺς φρουροὺς διαφθείρας,
by-me already has-been-shown with-gold the guards having-corrupted
ἐς ἀποστασίαν ἀπέκλινεν, ἀσινεῖς ἔχων τὰς κόρας τῶν
into revolt turned unharmed having the pupils of-the

ὀφθαλμῶν. ὁ γὰρ ἐκτυφλοῦν τὸ πρόσθεν αὐτὸν προτραπείς,
eyes the for to-blind the before him urged
εἴτε κατ᾽ ἐντολὴν τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦτο πεποιηκὼς (ὑπονοεῖται
either by command of-the emperor this having-done is-suspected
γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο· τεκμήριον δέ, ὅτι μετὰ τὴν τοῦ δράματος
for also this proof and that after the of-the plot
διάγνωσιν κακῶν ἀπαθὴς ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἔμεινεν), εἴτε
discovery of-ills untouched the man remained or
καὶ οἴκτῳ τῆς τοσαύτης ἐπικαμφθεὶς συμφορᾶς, τὰς
also by-pity of-the so-great having-been-bent misfortune the
μὲν βλεφαρίδας ἐκείνου κατέκαυσεν, ἀσινεῖς δὲ καὶ
indeed eyelashes his burned unharmed but and
ἀκηράτους τὰς κόρας παρέλιπε. τότε γοῦν εἰς ἀκάτιον
intact the pupils left then at-any-rate into a-skiff
ὁ Κουροπαλάτης ἐμβάς, τῇ κατ᾽ ἀντιπέρας Βυζαντίου
the Kouropalates having-embarked at-the on opposite Byzantium
χθονὶ λεληθότως προσώρμισεν, ἐπί τι φροντιστήριον, ὃ
land secretly put-in at some monastery which
Πηλαμὺς κέκληται, κρυπτόμενος. ἐκεῖθέν τε διά τινος τῶν
Pelamys is-called hiding from-there and through some of-the
οἰκείων τοῖς φίλοις καὶ γνωστοῖς τὴν αὑτοῦ καταμηνύει
household(-men) to-the friends and acquaintances the his-own reveals
ἄφιξιν. οἱ δὲ παντὶ σθένει συνάρασθαί οἱ διωμολόγουν,
arrival they and with-all strength to-help-take-up him agreed
καὶ πλῆθος συναθροίσειν ἐνόπλων ἀνδρῶν, καὶ τὰς τῆς
and a-multitude to-gather of-armed men and the of-the
βασιλικῆς ἑστίας κλεῖς ὑφελέσθαι, δι᾽ ὧν αὐτῷ εὐπετῶς
imperial hearth keys to-steal through which for-him easily
ἡ ἐς τὰ βασίλεια γένοιτο πάροδος. καὶ δῆτα ἔργου
the into the palace might-be entrance and indeed to-work
εἴχοντο, καὶ τὴν διὰ λόγων ὑπόσχεσιν καὶ δι᾽ ἔργων
held and the by words promise also by deeds

ἀνύττειν ἐπεχείρουν, μηδόλως μελλήσαντες. ἐντεῦθεν δή
to-accomplish undertook not-at-all having-delayed thereupon indeed
τινα τῶν βασιλικῶν κλειδούχων δωρεαῖς ὑποποιησάμενοι,
one of-the imperial key-keepers with-gifts having-won-over
κηρῷ τὰς κλεῖς ἐκτυποῦν ἔπεισαν, καὶ αὐτοῖς ἐπιδοῦναι
in-wax the keys to-take-impressions persuaded and to-them to-hand-over
τὸν κηρόν. καὶ ὅς, οὐδὲν ἀναδύς, τυπώσας τὸν
the wax and he nothing having-shrunk-back having-impressed the
κηρὸν ἐπεδίδου· οἱ δέ, βάναυσον μισθωσάμενοι, τὰς κλεῖς
wax handed-over they and a-craftsman having-hired the keys
ἐφ᾽ ἑστίας ὡς τάχος ἐχάλκευσαν.
at hearth as quickly forged
Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα τούτοις κατὰ γνώμην, ὥς γε 4
when and all for-these according-to plan as at-least
ἐδόκει, ἐχώρει, τὸν Κουροπαλάτην ἐκάλουν περαιοῦσθαι
it-seemed went the Kouropalates they-called to-cross
τὸν Βόσπορον, καὶ καταίρειν ἐπὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον. ὁ δέ,
the Bosporus and to-put-in at — Byzantium he and
τῶν νυκτῶν ἀωρὶ νεὼς ἐπιβὰς καὶ τῇ ἀκροπόλει
of-the nights untimely a-ship having-boarded and at-the acropolis
προσσχών, ἐκεῖθεν διά τινος πυλίδος ὑπὸ τὴν τοῦ
having-landed from-there through some postern under the of-the
ἁγίου Φωκᾶ τελεθούσης ἑστίαν, ἔνδον εἰσῄει τοῦ ἄστεος,
holy Phokas being house within went-into the town
τὴν τῆς ἡγεμονίας ἀρχὴν ἤδη κατέχειν ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν
the of-the leadership rule already to-hold in the hands
ὀνειροπολῶν. τῷ δέ, ἀντὶ πορφυρίδος λαμπρᾶς, καὶ
dreaming for-him and instead-of purple brilliant and
σκήπτρων χρυσῶν, καὶ τυραννίδος, ἣν ὡς μὴ ὤφελεν
scepters golden and tyranny which as not he-ought
ἐμελέτησεν, ἐκτύφλωσιν πικρὰν καὶ ὑπερορίαν μακράν, καὶ
he-devised blinding bitter and exile long and

δήμευσιν τῶν οἰκείων ἡ τύχη ἐσκαιωρεῖτο, ἐπιγελῶσά
confiscation of-the household(-goods) the fortune was-contriving laughing-at
που τοῖς ἐλπιζομένοις τἀνδρί, ὡς οὐκ ἐν ἐχυρῷ
somehow the(-things) being-hoped by-the-man as not in security
κειμένοις, ἀλλ᾽ εἰς τοὔμπαλιν αὐτῷ περιτρεπομένοις,
lying but into the-reverse for-him being-turned
καὶ χαλεπὴν τῶν ἀτυχημάτων ἐπικυλίνδουσι συμφοράν.
and grievous of-the mishaps rolling-on calamity
ἄρτι γάρ, ἐπείπερ κατ᾽ οἰκόν τινος τῶν ὑπηρετουμένων
just for since in house of-some of-the serving
αὐτῷ ἐν τοῖς τοῦ Σφορακίου μέρεσι καθῆστο, τοὺς
him in the — of-Sphorakios quarters he-was-sitting the
συνωμότας συνελθεῖν ἐκδεχόμενος, εἷς τῶν ἐφεπομένων
conspirators to-come-together awaiting one of-the following
αὐτῷ, τῆς ἑστίας ὑπεξελθών, πρόσεισι τῶν συνήθων
him from-the house having-slipped-out approaches of-the acquaintances
τινί, βασιλικῆς ἱστουργίας ὄντι μελεδωνῷ, τὴν τοῦ
someone of-imperial weaving being overseer the of-the
Κουροπαλάτου ἐνδημίαν μηνύων αὐτῷ, καὶ τὸ δρᾶμα
Kouropalates presence revealing to-him and the plot
ἀνακαλύπτων, καὶ προσλιπαρῶν συνάρασθαι αὑτοῖς μετὰ
uncovering and entreating to-help-take-up for-them with
τοῦ τὴν ἱστουργικὴν αὐτουργοῦντος συστήματος. ὁ δὲ
the the weaving working-himself body he and
τὴν ταχίστην βοηθεῖν ἐπηγγέλλετο, καὶ ἀναστὰς ὡς τὸ
the quickest to-help promised and having-risen as the
περὶ αὑτὸν πλῆθος καλέσας ἀπῄει. παρὰ Λέοντα δὲ τὸν
about himself multitude having-called went-off to Leo and the
Πατρίκιον καὶ πλωΐμου Δρουγγάριον ἀφικόμενος, ὃς τότε
Patrikios and of-the-fleet Droungarios having-come who then
παρὰ βασιλέως τὴν τοῦ Βυζαντίου ἐκεχείριστο πρόνοιαν,
from emperor the — of-Byzantium had-been-entrusted care

πάντα τούτῳ δηλοῖ· καὶ ὡς ὁ Κουροπαλάτης ἐκ τῆς
all to-this-man reveals and that the Kouropalates from the
ὑπερορίας ἀναχθείς, ἐπηλύτης τε ὤν, καὶ κατά
exile having-been-brought-back newcomer both being and in
τινα οἰκουρῶν ἑστίαν, ὅσον οὔπω βούλεται τυραννεῖν.
some keeping-at-home house all but wishes to-usurp
ὁ δὲ τῷ ἀθρόῳ τῆς ἀγγελίας καταπλαγείς, εἶτ' αὖθις
he and at-the suddenness of-the news stricken then again
ἀνενεγκὼν (ἦν δὲ σταθηρὸς ἐν περιστάσεσι, καὶ τὸ δέον
having-recovered he-was and steady in crises and the needful
δραστήριος ἐν ἀπόροις ἐξευρεῖν), τὸ περὶ αὑτὸν στῖφος
effective in difficulties to-find-out the about himself band
ἀνειληφώς, ἐξαυτῆς τῇ οἰκίᾳ, καθ' ἣν ὁ Κουροπαλάτης
having-taken-up at-once on-the house in which the Kouropalates
κατήγετο, ἐπιτίθεται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔγνω τὸ καθ' αὑτὸν δρᾶμα
was-lodging attacks when and knew the concerning him plot
κατάφωρον ὁ Κουροπαλάτης καὶ ἔκδηλον γεγονός, διά
detected the Kouropalates and evident having-become through
τινος παραθύρου μετὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ ὑπεκδὺς Νικηφόρου, ἐς τὸν
some window with the son slipping-out Nikephoros into the
θεῖον καὶ μέγαν καταφεύγει σηκόν, ἱκέτης ἐλεεινὸς ἀντὶ
divine and great flees precinct a-suppliant pitiable instead-of
σοβαροῦ τυράννου καὶ ἀλαζόνος ὁρώμενος. ὃν ἐκεῖθεν
proud tyrant and boastful seen whom from-there
οἱ περὶ τὸν Δρουγγάριον ἀποσπάσαντες, εἰς ἀκάτιόν τε
the(-men) around the Droungarios having-dragged-away into a-skiff and
ἅμα τῷ υἱῷ Νικηφόρῳ ἐμβαλόντες, πρὸς τὴν λεγομένην
together-with the son Nikephoros having-thrown to the called
Καλώνυμον νῆσον περιορίζουσι· κελεύσει τε βασιλικῇ αὖθις
Kalonymos island exile by-command and imperial again

πρὸς τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἐκ Μυσίας ἐνηνεγμένῃ ἀμφοτέρους
from the emperor from Mysia brought both
ἀποτυφλοῦσι, καὶ τὴν τούτων περιουσίαν δημεύουσιν.
blind and the their property confiscate

XXIII · THE RUS AT BAY

The Rus sally to burn the siege engines; the magistros John Kourkouas, drunk, is thrown from his horse, and taking him for the emperor they hack him apart and mount his head on a tower. Next day Anemas kills their second, Ikmor. At night the Rus burn their dead, slaughter captives over them, and drown infants and cocks in the Ister; Leo traces their rites to Anacharsis and Zamolxis or to Achilles, and cites Arrian and Ezekiel's prince of Rhos. In council Sphendosthlavos rejects flight and resolves to fight to the death. Leo notes that the Rus kill themselves rather than be taken. On 24 July they come out; Anemas wounds Sphendosthlavos and is killed.

Ἀλλ' οὕτω μὲν τῷ Κουροπαλάτῃ Λέοντι τὰ τῆς
but thus indeed for-the Kouropalates Leo the(-affairs) of-the
τυραννίδος εἰς δεινὸν καὶ ὀλέθριον κατέληξε τέλος. οἱ δὲ
tyranny into terrible and ruinous ended end the and
Ῥῶς συνασπίσαντες (αὖθις γὰρ ὁ λόγος, ὅθεν ἐξέβη,
Rus having-formed-close-ranks again for the account whence it-went-out
ἐπάνεισιν), ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον ἐξῄεσαν, παντὶ σθένει πειρώμενοι,
returns onto the plain came-out with-all strength trying
τὰς τῶν Ῥωμαίων πυρπολεῖν μηχανάς. οὐ γὰρ τὰς τούτων
the of-the Romans to-burn engines not for the their
μετὰ ῥοίζου ἔστεγον ἐκπεμπομένας βολάς, πλείστων
with whizzing they-withstood sent-out shots very-many
ὁσημέραι ὑπὸ τῶν ἀφιεμένων λίθων ἀναιρουμένων Σκυθῶν.
daily by the hurled stones being-killed of-Scythians
Ἰωάννης δὲ ὁ Κουρκούας καὶ Μάγιστρος, ἐκ γένους
John and — Kourkouas and Magistros by birth

προσήκων τῷ βασιλεῖ, τὴν τῶν τοιούτων μηχανημάτων
related to-the emperor the of-the such machines
ποιούμενος φυλακήν, τὴν μετὰ θράσους ὁρμὴν τῶν ἐναντίων
making guard the with boldness rush of-the opponents
ἰδών, καὶ ἄλλως οἴνῳ καρηβαρῶν καὶ νευστάζων (μετ'
having-seen and besides with-wine heavy-headed and nodding after
ἄριστον γὰρ ἦν), ἵππου ἐπιβάς, σὺν τοῖς ἑφεπομένοις
breakfast for it-was horse having-mounted with the following
λογάσιν ἤλαυνε κατ' αὐτῶν. βόθρῳ δὲ ὁ ἵππος κατενεχθεὶς
picked-men rode against them into-a-pit and the horse having-fallen
ἀποβάλλει τῶν νώτων τὸν Μάγιστρον. οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι,
throws from-the back the Magistros the and Scythians
ἀριπρεπῆ πανοπλίαν ἰδόντες, καὶ φάλαρα τοῦ ἵππου καὶ
resplendent full-armor having-seen and trappings of-the horse and
τὴν ἄλλην σκευὴν ἐξειργασμένα λαμπρῶς (ἐτύγχανον γὰρ
the other gear worked splendidly they-happened for
κατακόρως ἀληλιμμένα χρυσῷ), δόξαντες αὐτὸν ἐκεῖνον
to-excess coated with-gold having-thought him that-very
εἶναι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα, ἀθρόως περιδραμόντες αὐτοῖς
to-be the emperor in-a-mass having-run-around together-with
ὅπλοις τοῦτον τοῖς ξίφεσι καὶ πελέκεσι κατεμέλισαν
arms him with-the swords and axes cut-to-pieces
ἀπηνῶς· δορατίῳ τε τὴν κεφαλὴν περιπείραντες, ἐπὶ τῶν
cruelly with-a-spear and the head having-pierced on the
πύργων κατέπηξαν, Ῥωμαίους τωθάζοντες, ὡς τὸν σφῶν
towers fixed Romans mocking that the their
βασιλέα δίκην βοσκήματος κρεουργήσαντες. ἀλλὰ τοιαῦτα
emperor like a-beast having-butchered but such
μὲν Ἰωάννης ὁ Μάγιστρος ἀπηνέγκατο τὰ ἐπίχειρα, ὧν
indeed John the Magistros carried-off the wages of-what
εἰς τοὺς θείους πεπαρῳνήκει σηκούς, θυμοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ
against the divine he-had-outraged precincts of-anger barbarian

γεγονὼς παρανάλωμα. λέγεται γὰρ πολλοὺς τῶν κατὰ
having-become a-casualty it-is-said for many of-the in
Μυσίαν κεραΐσαι, καὶ τὰ τούτων ἔπιπλα καὶ σκεύη τὰ
Mysia to-have-ravaged and the their furnishings and vessels the
ἱερὰ εἰς ἰδιωτικὰ μετασκευάσαι κειμήλια.
sacred into private to-have-converted heirlooms

6 Ῥῶς δὲ τῇ τοιαύτῃ νίκῃ κατεπαρθέντες, ἐς τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν
Rus and by-the such victory elated on the following
τοῦ ἄστεος ὑπεξιόντες, παρὰ τὸ μεταίχμιον ἐτάξαντο·
from-the town coming-out at the no-man's-land drew-up
Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ καὶ αὐτοί, ἐς βαθεῖαν συνασπίσαντες
Romans and also themselves into deep having-formed-close-ranks
φάλαγγα, τούτοις ἀντεπῄεσαν. ἐνταῦθα Ἴκμορα, τὸν μετὰ
phalanx against-these advanced-against there Ikmor the after
τὸν Σφενδοσθλάβον τὸ Σκυθικὸν ἄγοντα στράτευμα καὶ
— Sphendosthlavos the Scythian leading army and
τιμώμενον εὐθὺς μετ' ἐκεῖνον, ἄνδρα γιγαντώδη καὶ νεανικόν,
honored straight after him a-man giant-like and young
ἰδὼν Ἀνεμᾶς, ὁ τῶν βασιλικῶν σωματοφυλάκων εἷς, καὶ
having-seen Anemas the of-the imperial bodyguards one and
τοῦ τῶν Κρητῶν υἱὸς ἀρχηγοῦ, ἐνθουσιωδῶς ἐφορμῶντα
of-the of-the Cretans son leader frenziedly charging
μετὰ τῆς τῶν ἐφεπομένων πεζεταίρων φάλαγγος καὶ
with the of-the following foot-soldiers phalanx and
πλείστους Ῥωμαίων ἀποκτιννύοντα, ἀλκῇ τε φύσεως
very-many of-Romans killing by-prowess and of-nature
ἐπαρθείς, τὸ παρῃωρημένον ξίφος ἑλκύσας, καὶ τὸν ἵππον
elated the hanging-at-his-side sword having-drawn and the horse
τῇδε κἀκεῖσε παρεξελάσας, τοῖς τε μύωψι καταικίσας,
here and-there having-ridden-out with-the and spurs having-goaded
κατὰ τοῦ Ἴκμορος ἴεται, καὶ τοῦτον κατειληφὼς πλήττει
against — Ikmor rushes and him having-overtaken strikes

κατὰ τοῦ τένοντος· ἡ δὲ τοῦ Σκύθου κεφαλὴ σὺν τῇ
at the sinew the and of-the Scythian head with the
δεξιᾷ ἐκτμηθεῖσα χειρὶ πρὸς τοὔδαφος ἀπηράττετο. τοῦ δὲ
right cut-off hand to the-ground was-dashed of-the and
πεσόντος, βοή τις παρὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν οἰμωγῇ σύμμικτος
fallen shout some from the Scythians with-wailing mingled
αἴρεται· Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ τούτοις ἐπέδραμον. οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἤνεγκαν
is-raised Romans and on-these ran they and not bore
τὴν τῶν ἐναντίων ῥοπήν, ἀλλὰ τῷ τοῦ σφῶν στρατηγοῦ
the of-the opponents weight but at-the of-the their-own general
πάθει ἐκτόπως περιαλγήσαντες, τὰ σάκη κατωμαδὸν
fate extraordinarily having-grieved the shields upon-the-shoulders
ἄραντες, ἐχώρουν διὰ τοῦ ἄστεος, οὓς ἐπισπόμενοι
having-lifted went through the town whom having-pursued
Ῥωμαῖοι ἀπέκτεινον. ἤδη δὲ νυκτὸς κατασχούσης, καὶ τῆς
Romans killed already and night having-taken-hold and the
μήνης πλησιφαοῦς οὔσης, κατὰ τὸ πεδίον ἐξελθόντες τοὺς
moon full-shining being on the plain having-gone-out the
σφετέρους ἀνεψηλάφων νεκρούς· οὓς καὶ συναλίσαντες πρὸ
their-own groped-for dead whom also having-gathered before
τοῦ περιβόλου καὶ πυρὰς θαμινὰς διανάψαντες, κατέκαυσαν,
the circuit-wall and pyres numerous having-kindled burned
πλείστους τῶν αἰχμαλώτων, ἄνδρας καὶ γύναια, ἐπ᾽
very-many of-the captives men and women over
αὐτοῖς κατὰ τὸν πάτριον νόμον ἐναποσφάξαντες.
them according-to the ancestral custom having-slaughtered
ἐναγισμούς τε πεποιηκότες, ἐπὶ τὸν Ἴστρον ὑπομάζια
offerings-to-the-dead and having-made at the Ister suckling
βρέφη καὶ ἀλεκτρυόνας ἀπέπνιξαν, τῷ ῥοθίῳ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
babes and cocks drowned in-the current of-the river
ταῦτα καταποντώσαντες. λέγεται γὰρ Ἑλληνικοῖς ὀργίοις
these having-sunk it-is-said for in-Hellenic rites

κατόχους ὄντας, τὸν Ἑλληνικὸν τρόπον θυσίας καὶ χοὰς
possessed being in-the Hellenic manner sacrifices and libations
τοῖς ἀποιχομένοις τελεῖν, εἴτε πρὸς Ἀναχάρσεως ταῦτα
to-the departed to-perform either by Anacharsis these-things
καὶ Ζαμόλξιδος, τῶν σφετέρων φιλοσόφων, μυηθέντες,
and Zamolxis of-the their-own philosophers having-been-initiated
εἴτε καὶ πρὸς τῶν τοῦ Ἀχιλλέως ἑταίρων. Ἀρριανὸς γάρ
or also by the — of-Achilles companions Arrian for
φησιν ἐν τῷ Περίπλῳ, Σκύθην Ἀχιλλέα τὸν Πηλέως
says in the Periplus Scythian Achilles the(-son) of-Peleus
πεφηνέναι, ἐκ τῆς Μυρμηκιῶνος καλουμένης πολίχνης,
to-have-been from the Myrmekion called town
παρὰ τὴν Μαιῶτιν λίμνην κειμένης· ἀπελαθέντα δὲ πρὸς
by the Maeotic lake lying driven-out and by
τῶν Σκυθῶν διὰ τὸ ἀπηνές, ὠμόν, καὶ αὔθαδες τοῦ
the Scythians because-of the harsh savage and arrogant of-the
φρονήματος, αὖθις Θετταλίαν οἰκῆσαι. τεκμήρια τοῦ λόγου
temper again Thessaly to-have-dwelt proofs of-the account
σαφῆ ἥ τε τῆς ἀμπεχόνης σὺν τῇ πόρπῃ σκευή, καὶ
clear the both of-the cloak with the brooch fashion and
ἡ πεζομαχία, καὶ ἡ πυρσὴ κόμη, καὶ οἱ γλαυκιῶντες
the fighting-on-foot and the red hair and the gray-gleaming
ὀφθαλμοί, καὶ τὸ ἀπονενοημένον, καὶ θυμοειδές, καὶ ὠμόν·
eyes and the reckless and spirited and savage
ἃ καὶ ὀνειδίζων Ἀγαμέμνων ἐπέσκωπτεν, οὑτωσὶ λέγων·
which also reproaching Agamemnon mocked thus saying
“Αἰεὶ γάρ τοι ἔρις τε φίλη, πόλεμοί τε, μάχαι τε.”
always for to-you strife both dear wars and battles and
φόνῳ γὰρ εἰσέτι καὶ αἵματι τὰ νείκη Ταυροσκύθαι
with-slaughter for still and with-blood the quarrels Tauroscythians
διακρίνειν εἰώθασιν. ὅτι δὲ τὸ ἔθνος ἀπονενοημένον, καὶ
to-decide are-wont that and the people reckless and

μάχιμον, καὶ κραταιόν, πᾶσι τοῖς ὁμόροις ἐπιτιθέμενον
warlike and mighty all the bordering attacking
ἔθνεσι, μαρτυροῦσι πολλοί, καὶ ὁ θεῖος δὲ Ἰεζεκιήλ,
peoples testify many and the divine and Ezekiel
μνήμην τούτου ποιούμενος, ἐν οἷς ταῦτά φησιν· “Ἰδοὺ
mention of-it making in which these-things he-says behold
ἐγὼ ἐπάγω ἐπὶ σὲ τὸν Γὼγ καὶ Μαγώγ, ἄρχοντα Ῥώς.”
I bring upon you — Gog and Magog prince of-Rhos
Ἀλλ’ ἀπόχρη μὲν ταῦτα περὶ τῶν Ταύρων ἐναγισμῶν.
but suffice indeed these-things about the Taurians offerings-to-the-dead
Τότε δὲ ἤδη διανισχούσης ἡμέρας βουλὴν ὁ Σφενδοσθλάβος 7
then and already breaking-forth day council — Sphendosthlavos
τῶν ἀρίστων ἐκάθιζεν, ἣν καὶ κομέντον τῇ σφετέρᾳ
of-the best convened which also komenton in-the their-own
διαλέκτῳ φασίν. ἄρτι δὲ συναθροισθέντων περὶ αὐτόν,
tongue they-say just and having-been-gathered about him
καὶ ὅ τι δεῖ καὶ δρᾷν πρὸς αὐτοῦ διερωτηθέντων,
and what — must also to-do by him having-been-asked
οἱ μὲν ἀωρὶ συνεβούλευον τῶν νυκτῶν, ἐπιβάντες τῶν
some indeed untimely advised of-the nights having-boarded the
πλοίων, πάσῃ μηχανῇ κλέψαι τὴν φυγήν· μὴ γὰρ οἵους τε
boats by-every means to-steal the flight not for able —
καθεστάναι ἱππόταις πανσιδήροις ἀνδράσι συμπλέκεσθαι,
to-be with-horsemen all-iron men to-engage
ἀποβαλόντας καὶ ταῦτα τοὺς πρωταγωνιστάς, ὑφ’ ὧν
having-lost and that the foremost-fighters by whom
τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀνερρώννυτο, καὶ οἱ θυμοὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν
the army was-strengthened and the spirits of-the men
παρεθήγοντο. οἱ δὲ τοὔμπαλιν δεξιὰς ἐμβάλλειν
were-whetted others and the-reverse right-hands to-give
Ῥωμαίοις ἐξυνεβούλευον, καὶ πίστεις λαμβάνειν, καὶ οὕτω
to-Romans advised and pledges to-take and so

διασώζειν τὴν περιλειφθεῖσαν στρατιάν. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔχειν
to-save the remaining army nor for to-be-able
εὐχερῶς κλέψαι τὸν ἀπόπλουν, τῶν πυρφόρων νεῶν παρὰ
easily to-steal the sailing-away of-the fire-bearing ships along
τοῦ Ἴστρου ἄνδηρα ἑκατέρωθεν φρουρουσῶν τὰ πορθμεῖα,
of-the Ister banks on-each-side guarding the ferries
ὡς, ἡνίκα πειραθεῖεν ἐκπλεῦσαι τὸν ποταμόν, πυρπολήσειν
so-that whenever they-should-try to-sail-out the river to-burn
ἐξαυτῆς ἅπαντα. ὁ δὲ Σφενδοσθλάβος, μύχιον καὶ πικρὸν
at-once all — and Sphendosthlavos deep and bitter
ἀνοιμώξας, "οἴχεται τὸ κλέος," ἔφη, "ὃ τῇ Ῥωσικῇ
having-groaned is-gone the glory he-said which the Rus
πανοπλίᾳ συνείπετο, τὰ πρόσοικα καταστρεφομένῃ ἔθνη
full-army accompanied the neighboring subduing peoples
ἀπονητί, καὶ χώρας ὅλας ἀνδραποδιζομένῃ ἀναιμωτί, εἰ νῦν
without-toil and countries whole enslaving without-bloodshed if now
ἀκλεῶς Ῥωμαίοις ὑπείξομεν. ἀλλὰ γάρ, τὴν ἐκ προγόνων
ingloriously to-Romans we-shall-yield but for the from forefathers
ἀνειληφότες ἀρετήν, ἀναλογισάμενοί τε, ὡς ἀκαταγώνιστος
having-taken-up valor having-reckoned and that invincible
ἡ Ῥωσικὴ μέχρι καὶ τήμερον καθέστηκεν ἀλκή, ἐκθύμως
the Rus until even today has-stood might eagerly
ὑπὲρ τῆς σφῶν σωτηρίας διαγωνισώμεθα. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔθιμον
for the our-own safety let-us-fight-it-out nor for customary
ἡμῖν φεύγουσιν ἐς τὴν πατρίδα φοιτᾷν, ἀλλ' ἢ νικῶντας
for-us fleeing into the fatherland to-go but either conquering
ζῆν, ἢ εὐκλεῶς τελευτᾷν, ἔργα ἐπιδεδειγμένους γενναίων
to-live or gloriously to-die deeds having-displayed of-noble
ἀνδρῶν." τοσαῦτα μὲν ὁ Σφενδοσθλάβος ἐβούλευσεν.
men so-much indeed — Sphendosthlavos counseled

Λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοῦτο περὶ Ταυροσκυθῶν, μήποτε μέχρι καὶ 8
it-is-said and also this about Tauroscythians never until even
νῦν ἑαυτοὺς ἐγχειρίζειν τοῖς δυσμενέσιν ἡττωμένους· ἀλλ'
now themselves to-hand-over to-the enemies being-defeated but
ἤδη τῆς σωτηρίας ἀπαγορεύσαντας ὠθεῖν τε κατὰ τῶν
already of-the safety having-despaired to-thrust both into the
σπλάγχνων τὰ ξίφη, καὶ οὕτως ἑαυτοὺς ἀναιρεῖν. τοῦτο δὲ
bowels the swords and thus themselves to-kill this and
πράττουσι, δόξαν κεκτημένοι τοιαύτην· φασὶ γὰρ τοὺς
they-do belief having such they-say for the(-men)
πρὸς τῶν ἐναντίων κατακτεινομένους ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις,
by the opponents being-slain in the wars
μετὰ τὸν μόρον καὶ τὴν ἐκ τῶν σωμάτων διάζευξιν τῶν
after the death and the from the bodies separation of-the
ψυχῶν ἐν ᾅδου τοῖς αὐθένταις ὑπηρετεῖν. Ταυροσκύθαι δέ,
souls in Hades to-the slayers to-serve Tauroscythians and
τὴν τοιαύτην δεδιότες λατρείαν, ἀποστυγοῦντες δὲ καὶ
the such fearing servitude loathing and also
τοῖς ἀναιροῦσιν αὐτοὺς ἐξυπηρετεῖν, τῆς ἑαυτῶν σφαγῆς
to-the(-men) killing them to-serve of-the their-own slaughter
αὐτόχειρες γίνονται. ἀλλὰ τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ ἐπικρατήσασα
by-their-own-hand become but such indeed the having-prevailed
ἐν αὐτοῖς δόξα. τότε δέ, τῶν τοῦ ἄρχοντος λόγων
among them belief then and of-the of-the ruler words
ἀκούσαντες, φιλοψυχότατα τὸν ὑπὲρ τῆς σφῶν σωτηρίας
having-heard most-life-lovingly the for the their-own safety
αἱρεῖσθαι κίνδυνον κατετίθεντο, ἐκθύμως τε πρὸς τὴν
to-choose danger they-resolved eagerly and against the
Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἀντιτάξασθαι δύναμιν. τῇ γοῦν ὑστεραίᾳ
Roman to-array-themselves force on-the at-any-rate next-day
(ἕκτη δὲ ἦν τῆς ἑβδομάδος ἡμέρα, καὶ εἰκάδα τετάρτην
sixth and was of-the week day and twentieth fourth

ἤλαυνεν ὁ Ἰούλιος μήν), περὶ καταφορὰν ὄντος ἡλίου,
was-driving the July month about setting being sun
πανσυδὶ τῆς πόλεως ἐξελθόντες οἱ Ταυροσκύθαι,
with-all-their-host from-the city having-gone-out the Tauroscythians
παντὶ σθένει διακινδυνεύειν ᾑροῦντο, εἰς φάλαγγα καρτερὰν
with-all strength to-run-the-risk chose into phalanx strong
συνασπίσαντες, καὶ προβαλόντες τοὺς ἄκοντας. Ῥωμαίους
having-formed-close-ranks and having-thrust-forward the javelins Romans
δὲ διατάξας ὁ βασιλεὺς ὑπεξῆγε τοῦ χάρακος. ἤδη δὲ
and having-drawn-up the emperor led-out from-the palisade already and
τῆς μάχης καταῤῥαγείσης, εὐρώστως οἱ Σκύθαι Ῥωμαίοις
the battle having-broken-out stoutly the Scythians against-Romans
ἐπῄεσαν, τοῖς τε ἀκοντίοις σινόμενοι, καὶ τοῖς βέλεσι
advanced with-the both javelins harming and with-the arrows
τοὺς ἵππους τιτρώσκοντες, καὶ τοὺς ἐπιβάτας εἰς γῆν
the horses wounding and the riders to earth
καταβάλλοντες. ἐνταῦθα ὁ τῇ προτεραίᾳ ἠριστευκὼς
casting-down there the on-the previous-day having-been-best
Ἀνεμᾶς καὶ τὸν Ἴκμορον κατακτείνας, τὸν Σφενδοσθλάβον
Anemas and — Ikmor having-slain — Sphendosthlavos
ἰδὼν ἐνθουσιωδῶς κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ὁρμῶντα καὶ μανικῶς,
having-seen frenziedly against Romans rushing and madly
καὶ τὰς αὐτοῦ ἐπιῤῥωννύοντα φάλαγγας, τὸν ἵππον
and the his encouraging phalanxes the horse
παρεξελάσας (εἰθισμένον δὲ ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦτο δρᾷν, καὶ
having-ridden-out accustomed and was for-him this to-do and
πλείστους τῶν Σκυθῶν τοιούτῳ τρόπῳ ἀνεῖλε τὸ
very-many of-the Scythians in-such manner he-had-killed the
πρότερον), ὅλην ἡνίαν τῷ ἵππῳ ἀνεὶς ὡς αὐτὸν
before whole rein to-the horse having-let-go toward him
ἴεται, καὶ ξίφει παίει κατὰ τῆς κλειδός, καὶ τὸν μὲν
rushes and with-sword strikes at the collarbone and him indeed

πρηνῆ καταβάλλει, οὐ μὴν κατακτείνει. ἐπήρκεσε γὰρ ὁ
headlong casts-down not however kills sufficed for the
ἀλυσιδωτὸς χιτὼν καὶ τὸ σάκος, ἅ, δεδιὼς τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς
chain-linked tunic and the shield which fearing the Roman
αἰχμάς, ἠμφιέννυτο. Ἀνεμᾶς δέ, πρὸς τῆς τῶν Σκυθῶν
spear-points he-wore Anemas and by the of-the Scythians
κυκλωθεὶς φάλαγγος, τοῦ ἵππου καταβληθέντος συχναῖς
having-been-encircled phalanx the horse having-been-cast-down with-frequent
τῶν δοράτων βολαῖς, πλείστους μὲν ἀναιρεῖ τούτων,
of-the spears casts very-many indeed kills of-these
ἐναποσφάττεται δὲ καὶ αὐτός, ἀνὴρ οὐδενὸς τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν
is-slaughtered and also himself a-man by-none of-the contemporaries
ἡττώμενος ἐν τοῖς κατὰ τὰς μάχας ἀνδραγαθήμασιν.
being-surpassed in the in the battles brave-deeds

XXIV · VICTORY AND THE PEACE

A storm blows dust into the Rus' faces and a rider on a white horse, held to be the martyr Theodore, breaks their ranks; in Byzantium a nun has seen the God-bearer send him to John's help. Bardas Skleros surrounds the Rus, fifteen thousand five hundred fall, and Sphendosthlavos sues for peace. John supplies the twenty-two thousand survivors with grain, and the prince, crossing in a boat, meets him on the Ister bank; Leo describes his appearance. On the way home the Patzinaks kill Sphendosthlavos and nearly all his men. John renames Dorystolon Theodoroupolis and triumphs in Constantinople, setting the icon of the God-bearer in his chariot, and makes Boris lay aside the Mysian regalia.

Ἐπὶ τῷ τούτου τοίνυν οἱ Ῥῶς ἀναθαῤῥήσαντες πταίσματι, 9
at the his therefore the Rus having-taken-courage fall
γεγωνόν τι καὶ ἄγριον ἐπηλάλαξαν, καὶ Ῥωμαίους
loud something and wild raised-the-war-cry and Romans
ἀνώθησαν. οἱ δὲ προτροπάδην ὑπενόστουν, τὴν ἀλλόκοτον
pushed-back they and headlong withdrew the strange

ὁρμὴν ἐκκλίνοντες τῶν Σκυθῶν. ἐνταῦθα ὁ βασιλεύς, ὡς
rush avoiding of-the Scythians there the emperor when
ᾔσθετο κλινομένην τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν φάλαγγα, δεδοικώς,
he-perceived giving-way the Roman phalanx fearing
μὴ καταπτοηθεῖσα τὸ ἀλλόκοτον ὅρμημα τῶν Σκυθῶν,
lest terrified-by the strange onset of-the Scythians
περὶ αὐτὰ πταίσοι τὰ καίρια, τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν
about the-very it-should-stumble the vital(-things) to-the(-men) around him
ἐγκελευσάμενος καὶ τὸ δόρυ σθεναρῶς μεταχειρισάμενος,
having-called-out and the spear stoutly having-handled
κατὰ τῶν ἀντιπάλων ἐχώρει. ἐπαταγεῖτο δὲ καὶ τὰ
against the adversaries advanced were-rattled and also the
τύμπανα, καὶ τὸ ἐνυάλιον συνεπήχουν αἱ σάλπιγγες. Ῥωμαῖοι
drums and the battle-call sounded-together the trumpets Romans
δέ, τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος καταιδεσθέντες ὁρμήν, τοὺς
and the of-the emperor having-been-shamed-by rush the
ἵππους περιελίξαντες, μετὰ ῥύμης τοῖς Σκύθαις ἐφώρμησαν.
horses having-wheeled-round with force on-the Scythians charged
παραυτίκα δὲ καὶ θύελλα ψεκάδι συμμιγὴς ἀναῤῥιπισθεῖσα,
at-once and also a-storm with-rain mixed having-been-fanned-up
ἐπὶ πολύ τε τοῦ ἀέρος χεθεῖσα, τοὺς δυσμενεῖς ἔβαλλε,
over much and of-the air having-been-poured the enemies struck
καὶ ἡ κόνις ἐγειρομένη τοὺς αὐτῶν ἔβλαπτεν ὀφθαλμούς.
and the dust rising the their harmed eyes
λέγεται δὲ καί τινα λευκόπωλον ἄνδρα φανῆναι,
it-is-said and also a-certain on-a-white-horse man to-have-appeared
προηγεῖσθαί τε Ῥωμαίων, καὶ τούτοις προτρέπεσθαι,
to-lead both Romans and them to-urge
χωρεῖν κατὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν· ὅστις θεσπεσίως τὰς τῶν
to-advance against the Scythians who marvelously the of-the
δυσμενῶν διακόπτων συνετάραττε φάλαγγας. τοῦτόν φασι
enemies cutting-through confounded phalanxes him they-say

μήτε πρότερόν τις ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ θεάσασθαι, οὔτ'
neither before anyone in the camp to-have-seen nor
αὖθις μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἑωρακέναι· καίτοι βασιλέως αὐτὸν
again after the battle to-have-seen although emperor him
ἀναψηλαφῶντος, ὡς δωρεαῖς ἐπαξίως φιλοφρονήσαιτο, καὶ
searching-for so-that with-gifts worthily he-might-treat-kindly and
ἀμοιβαῖς ἕκατι τῶν πόνων ἀμείψαιτο. ἀλλ' οὐχ εὑρέθη
with-rewards for-the-sake-of the toils he-might-repay but not he-was-found
ζητούμενος. ἐντεῦθεν ἀναμφίλεκτος ὑπόνοια ὑποτρέχει, τὸν
being-sought hence undisputed supposition runs-beneath the
μέγαν ἐν μάρτυσι Θεόδωρον εἶναι, ὃν παρὰ τοὺς
great among martyrs Theodore to-be whom in the
ἀγῶνας ὁ βασιλεὺς σύμμαχον ἐξελιπάρει παρίστασθαι,
contests the emperor ally besought to-stand-by
ῥύεσθαί τε καὶ σώζειν συνάμα παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι.
to-rescue both and to-save together-with all the army
φασὶ δὲ καὶ τοιοῦτόν τι συμβῆναι παρὰ τὴν πρὸ τῆς
they-say and also such something to-have-happened on the before the
μάχης ἑσπέραν. ἐν Βυζαντίῳ παρθένος τῶν ἀνατεθειμένων
battle evening in Byzantium a-virgin of-the dedicated
Θεῷ καθ' ὕπαρ ὁρᾷν ἐδόκει τὴν θεοτόκον, ὑπό τινων
to-God in waking-vision to-see seemed the God-bearer by some
φλογοειδῶν δορυφορουμένην ἀνδρῶν. φάναι δὲ πρὸς
fiery escorted men to-say and to
αὐτούς· "καλέσατε δή μοι τὸν μάρτυρα Θεόδωρον·"
them call indeed for-me the martyr Theodore
παραυτίκα δὲ παραχθῆναι γενναῖον ἄνδρα καὶ
at-once and to-have-been-brought-forward noble man and
νεανικόν, ἔνοπλον. εἰπεῖν τε πρὸς αὐτὸν τὴν θεοτόκον·
young armed to-say and to him the God-bearer
"ὁ σὸς παρὰ τὸ Δορύστολον Ἰωάννης, κύριε Θεόδωρε,
the your at — Dorystolon John lord Theodore

Σκύθαις μαχόμενος, ἄρτι περιστατεῖται δεινῶς. ἀλλ' εἰς
Scythians fighting just-now is-beset terribly but to
τὴν ἐκείνου σπεῦσον βοήθειαν. εἰ γὰρ μὴ προφθάσῃς, ἐς
the his hasten help if for not you-anticipate into
κίνδυνον αὐτῷ τελευτήσει τὰ πράγματα." τὸν δὲ αὖθις,
danger for-him will-end the affairs him and again
ἑτοίμως ἔχειν, εἰπεῖν, τῇ μητρὶ τοῦ Θεοῦ καὶ δεσπότου
ready to-be to-say to-the mother — of-God and Lord
μου πειθαρχεῖν· φάμενος δὲ τοῦτο εὐθὺς οἴχεσθαι, καὶ
my to-obey having-said and this at-once to-be-gone and
οὕτω τὸν ὕπνον ἀποπτῆναι τῆς παρθένου τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν.
thus the sleep to-have-flown-off of-the virgin from-the eyes
ἀλλὰ τῇ μὲν παρθένῳ τὸ ὕπαρ ἐς τοῦτο συνεπεραίνετο.
but to-the indeed virgin the vision to this was-brought-to-an-end
10 Ῥωμαῖοι δέ, τῷ προπορευομένῳ θείῳ ἀνδρὶ ἑφεπόμενοι,
Romans and the going-ahead divine man following
τοῖς ἐναντίοις συμπλέκονται, καὶ καρτερᾶς μάχης
with-the opponents engage and stout battle
συστάσης, οὐκ ἐνεγκόντες τὴν τῆς ἱππικῆς φάλαγγος οἱ
having-arisen not having-borne the of-the cavalry phalanx the
Σκύθαι ῥοπήν, κυκλωθέντες τε πρὸς τοῦ Μαγίστρου
Scythians weight having-been-encircled and by the Magistros
Βάρδα, ᾧ Σκληρὸς ἡ ἐπίκλησις (ἐκεῖνος γὰρ μετὰ
Bardas to-whom Skleros the surname he for with
τοῦ συνεπομένου πλήθους τὴν κύκλωσιν ἐποιήσατο), εἰς
the following multitude the encirclement made to
φυγὴν ἔκλιναν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ περιβόλου συμπατούμενοι,
flight turned and up-to the circuit-wall trampled-together
ἀκλεῶς ἔπιπτον. μικροῦ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Σφενδοσθλάβος
ingloriously fell by-a-little and also himself — Sphendosthlavos
ἐλήφθη, ἔξαιμος γεγονὼς καὶ καταβελής, εἰ μὴ ἡ νὺξ
was-taken bloodless having-become and shot-down if not the night

ἐπελθοῦσα τοῦτον διέσωσεν. λέγεται δὲ παρὰ ταύτην τὴν
having-come-on him had-saved it-is-said and in this the
μάχην πέντε καὶ δέκα χιλιάδας πρὸς τοῖς πεντακοσίοις
battle five and ten thousands in-addition-to the five-hundred
ἀναιρεθῆναι Σκυθῶν, ληφθῆναι δὲ δισμυρίαν ἀσπίδα, καὶ
to-have-been-slain of-Scythians to-have-been-taken and twenty-thousand shield and
ξίφη πάμπολλα. Ῥωμαίων δὲ τριακοσίους ἀποκτανθῆναι
swords very-many of-Romans and three-hundred to-have-been-killed
πρὸς τοῖς πεντήκοντα, τρωθῆναι δὲ συχνούς.
in-addition-to the fifty to-have-been-wounded and many
ἀλλὰ τοιαύτην μὲν Ῥωμαῖοι τὴν νίκην παρὰ τὸν ἀγῶνα
but such indeed Romans the victory in the contest
ἠνέγκαντο τουτονί. ὁ δὲ Σφενδοσθλάβος, παρ' ὅλην τὴν
carried-off this-here — and Sphendosthlavos through whole the
νύκτα βαρυθυμῶν ἐπὶ τῇ κατακοπῇ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιᾶς,
night being-heavy-hearted at the cutting-down of-the his-own army
ἤσχαλλε μὲν καὶ ἐσφάδαζε τῷ θυμῷ. μὴ ἐξισχύων
was-vexed indeed and writhed in-the anger not being-strong-enough
δ' ἔτι πρὸς ἀκαταγώνιστον ἀνύττειν πανστρατιάν, ἔγνω,
but still against invincible to-accomplish full-army he-knew
στρατηγοῦ νοῦν ἔχοντος ἔργον εἶναι, ἐν ἀμηχάνοις
of-a-general sense having work to-be in helpless(-straits)
καταληφθέντα δεινοῖς, μὴ καταπίπτειν τοῖς λυπηροῖς,
having-been-caught terrible not to-fall-down before-the griefs
παντὶ δὲ τρόπῳ διασώζειν πειρᾶσθαι τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτόν. καὶ
in-every and way to-save to-try the(-men) under him and
δῆτα παρὰ τὴν ἕω πρέσβεις ὡς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Ἰωάννην
indeed at the dawn envoys to the emperor John
στείλας, πίστεις ᾔτει ξυμβάσεων, ἐπὶ τῷ, Ταυροσκύθας
having-sent pledges asked of-agreements on-the-terms that Tauroscythians
μὲν τό τε Δορύστολον ἐγχειρίσαι Ῥωμαίοις, καὶ τοὺς
indeed — both Dorystolon to-hand-over to-Romans and the

αἰχμαλώτους ἀπολύσαι, καὶ Μυσίας ἀφέξεσθαι, καὶ πρὸς
captives to-release and from-Mysia to-keep-away and to
τὴν σφῶν ἀναζεῦξαι πατρίδα· Ῥωμαίους δὲ παραχωρῆσαι
the their-own to-march-home fatherland Romans and to-grant
αὐτοῖς τοῦ ἀπόπλου, καὶ μὴ ἐναγομένοις ἐπιτεθήσεσθαι
to-them the sailing-away and not as-they-set-out to-attack
μετὰ τῶν πυρφόρων νεῶν (ἐκτόπως γὰρ ἐδεδίεσαν τὸ
with the fire-bearing ships extraordinarily for they-feared the
Μηδικὸν πῦρ, δυνάμενον καὶ τοὺς λίθους ἀποτεφροῦν)·
Median fire able even the stones to-reduce-to-ash
ἐπισιτισμόν τε πρὸς τούτοις ἐπιχορηγῆσαι, καὶ φίλους
provisioning both in-addition-to these to-supply and friends
ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτούς, κατ᾽ ἐμπορίαν πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον
to-consider them for trade to — Byzantium
στελλομένους, καθάπερ ἀνέκαθεν ἔθιμον ἦν.
being-sent as from-of-old customary it-was

11 Βασιλεὺς δέ, τὰς τοιαύτας ἄσμενος διαλλαγὰς προσδεξάμενος
(the)-emperor and the such gladly reconciliations having-accepted
(εἰρήνην γὰρ διαφερόντως τῆς μάχης ἐτίμα· τὴν μὲν
peace for far-more than-the battle valued the indeed
γὰρ ᾔδει τοὺς λαοὺς διασώζουσαν, τὴν δὲ τοὔμπαλιν
for he-knew the peoples saving the and on-the-contrary
διαφθείρουσαν), τάς τε ξυνθήκας ἐτέλει καὶ τὰς σπονδάς,
destroying the both covenants performed and the treaty
καὶ σῖτον ἐδίδου, ἑκάστῳ ἀνδρὶ μετρῶν ἀνὰ μεδίμνων
and grain gave to-each man measuring at medimnoi
δύο. εἶναι δὲ τοὺς εἰληφότας τὸν σῖτόν φασιν ἄνδρας
two to-be and the having-received the grain they-say men
δισμυρίους πρὸς τοῖς δισχιλίοις, οἳ ἐκ τῶν ἑξήκοντα
twenty-thousand in-addition-to the two-thousand who from the sixty
χιλιάδων τῆς Ῥωσικῆς στρατιᾶς τότε τὸν ὄλεθρον ἔφυγον·
thousands of-the Rus army then the destruction escaped

τὰς γὰρ τριάκοντα καὶ ὀκτὼ χιλιάδας ἡ Ῥωμαϊκὴ αἰχμὴ
the for thirty and eight thousands the Roman spear-point
κατηκόντισε. μετὰ δὲ τὸ προβῆναι τὰς σπονδάς, εἰς
speared-down after and the to-have-gone-forward the treaty into
ὁμιλίαν ὁ Σφενδοσθλάβος τῷ βασιλεῖ συνελθεῖν ἐξαιτεῖ.
conversation — Sphendosthlavos with-the emperor to-come-together requests
ὁ δέ, μηδὲν ἀναδύς, διαχρύσῳ πανοπλίᾳ καθοπλισθείς,
he and nothing having-shrunk-back in-gold-inlaid full-armor having-been-armed
ἔφιππος παρὰ τὴν ὄχθην τοῦ Ἴστρου ἀφίκετο, μυρίανδρον
on-horseback by the bank of-the Ister arrived ten-thousand-man
ἴλην χρυσοφορούντων ἐνόπλων ἱππέων συνεπαγόμενος.
squadron of-gold-wearing armed horsemen bringing-along
καὶ ὁ Σφενδοσθλάβος δὲ ἦκεν ἐπί τινος Σκυθικοῦ ἀκατίου
also — Sphendosthlavos and came on some Scythian boat
παραπλέων τὸν ποταμόν, τῆς κώπης ἠμμένος καὶ σὺν τοῖς
sailing-along the river the oar holding and with the
ἑτέροις ἐρέττων, ὡς εἷς τῶν λοιπῶν. τὴν δὲ ἰδέαν τοιόσδε
others rowing as one of-the rest the and appearance such-as-this
τις ἦν· τὴν ἡλικίαν μεμετρημένος, οὔτε εἰς ὕψος παρὰ τοῦ
some he-was the stature measured neither to height beyond the
εἰκότος ἠρμένος, οὔτε εἰς βραχύτητα συστελλόμενος· δασεῖς
likely raised nor into shortness contracted shaggy
τὰς ὀφρῦς, γλαυκοὺς ἔχων τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, τὴν ῥῖνα σιμός,
the brows gray having the eyes the nose snub
ἐψιλωμένος τὸν πώγωνα, τῷ ἄνωθεν χείλει δασείαις καὶ
shaven the beard on-the upper lip with-thick and
εἰς μῆκος καθειμέναις θριξὶ κομῶν περιττῶς. τὴν δὲ
to length let-down hairs growing-long abundantly the and
κεφαλὴν πάνυ ἐψίλωτο· παρὰ δὲ θάτερον μέρος αὐτῆς
head wholly had-been-shaved at and the-other side of-it
βόστρυχος ἀπηώρητο, τὴν τοῦ γένους ἐμφαίνων εὐγένειαν·
a-lock hung the of-the race showing nobility

εὐπαγὴς τὸν αὐχένα, τὰ στέρνα εὐρύς, καὶ τὴν ἄλλην
well-knit the neck the chest broad and the other
διάπλασιν εὖ μάλα διηρθρωμένος· σκυθρωπὸς δέ τις
build well very jointed sullen and somewhat
καὶ θηριώδης ἐδείκνυτο. θατέρῳ δὲ τῶν ὤτων χρύσειον
and savage he-appeared on-the-one and of-the ears golden
ἐξῆπτο ἐνώτιον, δυσὶ μαργάροις κεκοσμημένον, ἄνθρακος
was-fastened earring with-two pearls adorned of-carbuncle
λίθου αὐτοῖς μεσιτεύοντος. ἐσθὴς τούτῳ λευκή, οὐδέν τι
of-stone them being-between clothing for-him white nothing at-all
τῶν ἑτέρων ὑπαλλάττουσα ἢ καθαρότητι. ὀλίγα γοῦν
from-the others differing than in-cleanness few at-any-rate
ἅττα περὶ διαλλαγῆς τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐντυχών, παρὰ τὸν
things about reconciliation with-the emperor having-conversed by the
ζυγὸν τοῦ ἀκατίου ἐφεζόμενος, ἀπηλλάττετο. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ μὲν
thwart of-the boat sitting departed but the indeed
τῶν Ῥωμαίων πρὸς Σκύθας πόλεμος ὧδε ἐτελεύτα.
of-the Romans against Scythians war thus ended

12 Ὁ δὲ Σφενδοσθλάβος, τὸ Δορύστολον ἀπολιπὼν καὶ
— and Sphendosthlavos — Dorystolon having-left and
τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους προσεπιδοὺς κατὰ τὰς σπονδάς,
the captives having-handed-over-besides according-to the treaty
ἀπέπλει μετὰ τῶν περιλειφθέντων ἑταίρων, ἐπὶ τὴν
sailed-off with the remaining companions to the
πατρίδα ἰέμενος. Πατζινάκαι δὲ παρὰ τὸν ἀπόπλουν
fatherland heading Patzinaks and at the sailing-away
ἐλλοχήσαντες, ἔθνος νομαδικὸν τοῦτο καὶ πολυάνθρωπον,
having-lain-in-ambush people nomadic this and populous
φθειροφάγον τε καὶ φερέοικον, ἐπ᾽ ἁμαξῶν ὡς τὰ πολλὰ
louse-eating both and house-carrying on wagons as the most(-part)
βιωτεῦον, σχεδὸν διέφθειραν ἅπαντας, καὶ αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν
living almost destroyed all and himself too —

Σφενδοσθλάβον τοῖς λοιποῖς συγκατέσφαξαν, ὡς ἐκ τῆς
Sphendosthlavos with-the rest slaughtered so-that from the
τοσαύτης τῶν Ῥῶς στρατιᾶς εὐαριθμήτους ἀνασωθῆναι ἐς
so-great of-the Rus army easily-counted to-have-got-safe-back to
ἤθη τὰ πάτρια. Ἰωάννης δὲ ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, ἐν τέτταρσιν
haunts the ancestral John and the emperor in four
ὅλοις μησὶ τὴν Ῥωσικὴν πανοπλίαν καταγωνισάμενος,
whole months the Rus full-army having-overcome
ὡς φθάσας ὁ λόγος δεδήλωκε, καὶ τὴν Μυσίαν
as having-gone-before the account has-shown and — Mysia
Ῥωμαίοις ἀνασωσάμενος, τό τε Δορύστολον Θεοδωρούπολιν
for-Romans having-recovered — and Dorystolon Theodoroupolis
ἐπ᾽ ὀνόματι τοῦ στρατηλάτου καὶ μάρτυρος Θεοδώρου
after name of-the general and martyr Theodore
μετονομάσας, φυλακήν τε ἀξιόμαχον ταύτῃ παραλιπών,
having-renamed garrison and fit-for-battle in-it having-left
μετὰ μεγίστων τροπαίων ἐπάνεισιν ἐπὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον,
with greatest trophies returns to — Byzantium
τοὺς ἀστικοὺς πρὸ τῶν περιβόλων κατειληφώς, στεφάνοις
the townsmen before the circuit-walls having-found with-crowns
αὐτὸν καὶ σκήπτροις δεξιουμένους, ἐκ χρυσοῦ καὶ λίθων
him and scepters welcoming from gold and stones
ἐξειργασμένοις πολυτελῶν. ἦγον δὲ καὶ χρυσοκόλλητον
wrought costly they-brought and also gold-soldered
λευκόπωλον ἅρμα· οὗ προσεπιβῆναι τοῦτον ἠξίουν, καὶ
white-horsed chariot which to-mount him they-asked and
τὸν νενομισμένον καταγαγεῖν θρίαμβον. ὁ δὲ τοὺς μὲν
the customary to-celebrate triumph he and the indeed
στεφάνους καὶ τὰ σκῆπτρα προσήκατο, καὶ πολλαπλασίως
crowns and the scepters accepted and many-times-over
τούτους δώροις ἠμείψατο· ἐπιβῆναι δὲ τοῦ ἅρματος οὐκ
them with-gifts repaid to-mount but the chariot not

ἠνέσχετο· ἀλλὰ τὴν τῆς θεομήτορος εἰκόνα, ἐνηγκαλισμένην
he-endured but the of-the mother-of-God image holding-in-her-arms
τὸν θεάνθρωπον λόγον, ἣν ἐκ Μυσίας εἴληφεν, ἐπὶ τὸν
the God-man Word which from Mysia he-had-taken on the
τοῦ ἅρματος χρυσήλατον θρόνον ἀνέθηκε, τὰς ἁλουργοὺς
of-the chariot gold-wrought throne set-up the purple
τῶν Μυσῶν στολὰς ὑποθείς, καὶ τὰ στέμματα.
of-the Mysians robes having-placed-beneath and the crowns
αὐτὸς δέ, ἵππῳ κέλητι ἐποχούμενος, μετόπισθεν εἵπετο,
himself and on-a-horse a-racer riding behind followed
τεταινιωμένος τὴν κεφαλὴν διαδήματι, καὶ τοὺς στεφάνους
bound the head with-a-diadem and the crowns
φέρων καὶ τὰ σκῆπτρα ἐν ταῖς χερσίν. οὕτω τὸν θρίαμβον
carrying and the scepters in the hands thus the triumph
καταγαγὼν διὰ μέσης τῆς πόλεως, ἐσθήσεσιν ἁλουργοῖς
having-celebrated through middle of-the city with-garments purple
κεκοσμημένης ἑκασταχοῦ, καὶ δίκην θαλάμου τοῖς τε
adorned on-every-side and like a-chamber with-the both
τῶν δαφνῶν κλάδοις καὶ τοῖς χρυσοϋφέσι πέπλοις οὔσης
of-the laurels branches and with-the gold-woven robes being
συνηρεφοῦς, ἐς τὸν μέγαν τῆς τοῦ Θεοῦ Σοφίας εἰσελαύνει
roofed-over into the great of-the — of-God Wisdom he-drives-into
σηκόν· καὶ τὰς εὐχαριστηρίους εὐχὰς ἀποδούς, τό τε τῶν
precinct and the of-thanksgiving prayers having-rendered the and of-the
Μυσῶν ἐκπρεπέστατον στέφος οἱονεὶ πρωτόλειον δῶρον
Mysians most-splendid crown as-it-were first-fruits gift
τῷ Θεῷ καταθέμενος, εἰς τὴν ἀνακτορικὴν ἑστίαν φοιτᾷ,
— to-God having-dedicated into the palace hearth goes
καὶ τῶν Μυσῶν βασιλέα Βορὴν παραγαγὼν τὰ τῆς
and of-the Mysians king Boris having-brought-forward the of-the
βασιλείας ἀποθέσθαι παράσημα παρεσκεύασε. τὰ δὲ ἦν
kingship to-lay-aside insignia caused these and were

τιάρα περιπόρφυρος, χρυσῷ καὶ μαργάροις κατάστικτος,
tiara purple-bordered with-gold and pearls studded
ἐσθής τε ἁλουργός, καὶ πέδιλα ἐρυθρά. τοῦτον δὲ τῷ
garment both purple and sandals red him and with-the
τῶν Μαγίστρων τετίμηκεν ἀξιώματι. τοιαῦτα ἐν εὐαριθμήτῳ
of-the Magistroi he-honored rank such in easily-counted
καιρῷ παρὰ πᾶσαν ὑπόνοιαν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἰωάννης
time beyond all expectation the emperor John
διαπραξάμενος τρόπαια, τήν τε Ῥωσικὴν αὐθάδειαν καὶ
having-accomplished trophies the both Rus arrogance and
τὰ ἐπηρμένα τούτων φρονήματα ἐμπειρίᾳ πολέμων καὶ
the exalted their thoughts by-experience of-wars and
λελογισμένης ἀνδρείας τόλμῃ καταβαλὼν καὶ κατασπάσας
of-reasoned courage by-daring having-cast-down and having-pulled-down
εἰς γῆν, καὶ τὴν Μυσίαν Ῥωμαίοις καθυποτάξας, παρὰ τὸ
to earth and — Mysia to-Romans having-subjected to —
Βυζάντιον ἐπανελθὼν διεχείμαζε, καὶ τὸ ὑπήκοον δώροις, ὡς
Byzantium having-returned wintered and the subjects with-gifts as
εἰκός, ἐφιλοφρονεῖτο, καὶ θαλείαις ἐθεράπευεν ἑστιάσεσιν.
likely treated-kindly and with-festive entertained banquets

BOOK X

XXV · THE EASTERN CAMPAIGN; THE PATRIARCHS

John crosses the Euphrates, where the under-secretary Niketas, who disobeyed his father, drowns. He takes ransom from Emet and gifts from Miepharkim and finds Nisibis, which bishop James once saved from the Persians with gnats, deserted; the desert turns him back from Ecbatana, and he returns to Byzantium in triumph. The patriarch Basil, accused of foretelling the throne to a magnate, refuses to answer except before a council and is exiled to his monastery; Antony of the Stoudios succeeds him. Leo describes Cappadocian twins joined at the side. In spring John marches through Palestine, finds the Savior's sandals and the Baptist's hair at Mempetze, takes Apameia, receives the surrender of Damascus, takes Borzo and Balanaiai, and besieges Berytos.

1 Θερείας δὲ ὥρας ἐνισταμένης, καὶ σταθηρᾶς αἰθρίας
of-summer and season setting-in and steady clear-sky
κατὰ τὴν περίγειον ἡπλωμένης, τοῦ Βυζαντίου ἀπάρας
over the earth spread-out — from-Byzantium having-set-out
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ κατὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, τῶν τὴν ἄνω
the emperor against the Hagarenes the(-ones) the upper
Συρίαν οἰκούντων, ἐστράτευσε. καὶ δῆτα τὴν μεσογαίαν
Syria inhabiting campaigned and indeed the inland
περιοδεύσας, τὸν Εὐφράτην ἐπεραιώθη. μέγιστος δὲ οὗτος
having-traversed the Euphrates crossed greatest and this
τῶν τὴν Ἀσίαν διατεμνόντων ποταμῶν, καὶ εἷς τῶν
of-the — Asia cutting-through rivers and one of-the
ἐκ τῆς Ἐδὲμ ὁρμωμένων, ὡς ἐκ τῆς θείας γραφῆς
from — Eden issuing as from the divine scripture
μεμαθήκαμεν. ἐνταῦθά τις ἐν ὑπογραφεῦσι τελῶν,
we-have-learned there a-certain among under-secretaries being
Νικήτας ὀνομαζόμενος, εἰς ἄκρον γνώσεως ἐληλακὼς καὶ
Niketas named to height of-knowledge having-advanced and

συνέσεως, ἄγων αὐτὸ τῆς ἡλικίας βιώσιμον, τῷ βασιλεῖ
of-understanding leading the-very of-the age livable(-part) the emperor
κατὰ ταύτην δυστυχῶς τὴν ἐκστρατείαν συνείπετο, πολλὰ
on this unhappily the expedition accompanied much
τοῦ φύντος μὴ τοῦτο πράττειν προσλιπαροῦντος,
the(-one) having-begotten not this to-do entreating
οἰκουρεῖν δὲ μᾶλλον καὶ γηροτροφεῖν τὸν τεκόντα
to-keep-house but rather and to-support-in-old-age the(-one) having-begotten
προσέποντος, καὶ αὐτὸν θεραπεύειν εἰς δύναμιν, περὶ
urging and him to-care-for to power on
γήραος ἐληλακότα οὐδῷ, καὶ πρὸς τὰς τοῦ βίου ὅσον
of-old-age having-come threshold and toward the of-the life all
οὔπω δυσμὰς ἐπειγόμενον. ὁ δέ, τῶν τοῦ πατρὸς ἐντολῶν
but setting hastening he and the of-the father commands
ὡς οὐκ ὤφελεν ἀλογήσας, καὶ παρὰ φαῦλον ἐπισκήψεις
as not he-ought having-disregarded and at little injunctions
τὰς ἐκείνου θέμενος, ὡς εἶχεν ἐνσκευασάμενος ᾔει πρὸς
the his having-set as he-was having-equipped-himself went to
τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἄρτι δὲ τὸν ποταμὸν περαιούμενος πρὸς
the camp just and the river crossing at
τὴν πληθώραν ἰλιγγιάσας τοῦ ὕδατος, τοῦ ἵππου
the abundance having-grown-dizzy of-the water from-the horse
ἐξολισθήσας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν καταφέρεται, τῷ τε ῥοθίῳ
having-slipped into the river is-carried-down by-the and current
παρασυρείς, ἐλεεινῶς ἀποπνίγεται, ἐπίχειρα τῆς παρακοῆς
swept-away pitiably is-drowned wages of-the disobedience
τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ἀπενεγκάμενος πνιγμονήν. ὁ δὲ
the in the Euphrates having-carried-off drowning the and
βασιλεὺς σὺν παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι Συρίαν κατέτρεχεν,
emperor with all the army Syria overran
οὐδενὸς αὐτῷ ἀντιπάλου ἀντικαθισταμένου τῶν δυσμενῶν,
none to-him adversary standing-against of-the enemies

τῇ φήμῃ τῆς ἐφόδου πάντων καταπλαγέντων καὶ
at-the report of-the advance all having-been-stricken and
συγκλεισθέντων ἐπὶ τὰ σφῶν φρούριά τε καὶ πτολίσματα.
having-been-shut-up in the their-own forts both and towns
καὶ δῆτα τὸ Ἔμετ (πόλις δὲ αὕτη ὀχυρὰ καὶ περιφανής)
and indeed — Emet city and this strong and famous
καταλαβὼν καὶ λόγῳ ὑποποιησάμενος, καὶ λύτρα λαβὼν
having-taken and by-word having-won-over and ransom having-taken
ἀριθμὸν ὑπερβαίνοντα, ἐκεῖθεν ὁρμηθεὶς πρὸς τὸ Μιεφαρκὶμ
number surpassing from-there having-set-out toward — Miepharkim
ἠπείγετο. ἄστυ δὲ τοῦτο περιφανὲς καὶ περίβλεπτον,
hastened town and this famous and admired
πλούτῳ τε καὶ βοσκήμασι τῶν ἄλλων ὑπερτεροῦν τῶν
in-wealth both and in-flocks the others surpassing of-the
κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν χῶρον πεπολισμένων. καὶ αὐτὸ δὲ λόγῳ
in the same place built and it too by-word
παραστησάμενος, καὶ πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα δῶρα ἐν χρυσῷ
having-brought-over and very-many and finest gifts in gold
καὶ ἀργύρῳ καὶ χρυσοστίκτοις ὑφάσμασιν ἐταζόμενα πρὸς
and silver and in-gold-spangled fabrics reckoned by
τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ κατοίκων ἐνειληφώς, ἐπὶ τὴν Νίσιβιν ἴεται·
the in it inhabitants having-received toward — Nisibis rushes
καθ' ἣν ὁ μέγας Ἰάκωβος, τῶν τῆς ἐπισκοπῆς οἰάκων
in which the great James of-the of-the episcopate helm
ἐπειλημμένος, Πέρσαις μεγάλῳ στρατῷ ἐπελθοῦσι κατὰ
having-taken-hold Persians with-a-great host having-come-against against
τῆς Νισίβεως ἠμύνατο, σκνιπῶν αὐτοῖς καὶ κωνώπων
— Nisibis warded-off of-gnats against-them and of-mosquitoes
σμήνη ἀντιστρατεύσας, καὶ φυγάδας παρασκευάσας ἐξαυτῆς,
swarms having-sent-to-war and fugitives having-made at-once
καὶ τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ τοὺς δυσμενεῖς καταγωνισάμενος. ἣν
and in-this the way the enemies having-overcome which

καὶ ἀοίκητον εὗρεν ὁ βασιλεύς, τῶν ταύτην οἰκούντων
also uninhabited found the emperor of-the(-ones) it inhabiting
δέει τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐκστρατείας μεταναστάντων, καὶ
from-fear of-the Roman expedition having-migrated and
φυγαδείᾳ χρησαμένων πρὸς τὰ ἐνδότερα.
to-flight having-resorted toward the interior(-parts)
Καταδραμὼν οὖν τὴν περίχωρον, καὶ ὑπόσπονδον Ῥωμαίοις 2
having-overrun then the surrounding(-land) and under-treaty to-Romans
ταύτην θέμενος, ἠπείγετο καὶ μέχρις Ἐκβατάνων ἀφικέσθαι,
this having-made he-hastened also as-far-as Ecbatana to-arrive
ἵνα τὰ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν τυραννεῖα καθέστηκεν, ἀμύθητον
where the of-the Hagarenes royal-seat stands untold
ἄργυρον καὶ χρυσὸν καὶ πλοῦτον παντοδαπὸν ἔνδον
silver and gold and wealth of-every-kind within
κατέχοντα, ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς καὶ ταῦτα ἑλεῖν προθυμούμενος.
holding by assault also these to-take eager
λέγεται γὰρ τῶν ἄλλων πόλεων μᾶλλον, ὅσαι τελοῦσιν
it-is-said for than-the other cities more as-many-as are
ὑπὸ τὸν ἥλιον, πολύολβον καὶ πολύχρυσον τὴν Ἐκβατάνων
under the sun most-wealthy and rich-in-gold the of-Ecbatana
πολιτείαν τελεῖν. αἴτιον δὲ τὸ ἐκ πολλῶν μὲν χώρων
city to-be cause and the from many indeed places
αὐτὴν χρηματίζεσθαι, μηδεμίαν δὲ προτοῦ τῶν δυσμενῶν
it to-get-money none and before of-the enemies
ὑπομένειν καταδρομήν. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐπέσχε τὴν τούτου
to-undergo incursion but for checked the his
ὁρμὴν ἥ τε λειψυδρία τῶν τόπων, καὶ ἡ σπάνις
rush the both want-of-water of-the places and the scarcity
τῶν ἀναγκαίων. ἡ γὰρ ἐπιλεγομένη Καρμανῖτις ἔρημος
of-the necessities the for called Karmanitis desert
διὰ τῶν ἐκεῖσε χωρίων διήκει, τραχεῖαν καὶ ἀνάντη
through the there regions extends rough and uphill

προβαλλομένη ὁδόν, καὶ μήτε ὕδωρ βλυστάνουσα, μήτε
putting-forth road and neither water gushing-forth nor
βοτάνην ἀναβλαστάνουσα, ψαφαρά τις οὖσα καὶ ἄνικμος.
grass sprouting crumbly some being and moistureless
διὰ ταῦτα πρὸς τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν αὐτῷ προσαχθέντα
because-of these-things by the Hagarenes to-him brought
δῶρα ἐνσκευασάμενος, ἐν μυριάσι τριακοσίαις ἀργύρου
gifts having-packed in myriads three-hundred of-silver
καὶ χρυσοῦ ἀριθμούμενα, εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον ἐπανέζευξε,
and of-gold numbered to — Byzantium marched-back
καὶ τόν τε χρυσὸν καὶ τὸν ἄργυρον καὶ τὰ ἐκ Σηρῶν
and the both gold and the silver and the from Seres
ὑφάσματα καὶ ἀρώματα, καὶ ὅσα πρὸς τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν
fabrics and spices and whatever from the Hagarenes
ἀνείληφε δῶρα, διὰ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἐθριάμβευσε, τῶν
he-had-received gifts through the marketplace led-in-triumph the
ἀστικῶν θεωμένων καὶ τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν θαυμαζόντων,
townsmen watching and the multitude of-them marveling
φιλοτίμως τε τοῦτον ὑποδεχομένων, καὶ σὺν εὐφημίαις
munificently both him receiving and with acclamations
προπεμπόντων εἰς τὰ βασίλεια, τοῖς τοιούτοις τροπαίοις
escorting into the palace by-the such trophies
κλεϊζόμενον. τηνικαῦτα καὶ ὁ πατριάρχης Βασίλειος, φθόνῳ
made-famous at-that-time also the patriarch Basil from-envy
τῶν ἐπισκόπων διαβληθεὶς πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα,
of-the bishops having-been-slandered to the emperor
ὡς δή τινι τῶν μέγα δυναμένων χρᾷ τὴν τῆς
that indeed to-someone of-the greatly powerful he-gives-oracles the of-the
ἡγεμονίας ἀρχήν, καὶ τὰ τῆς ἐκκλησίας οὐκ εὐθύνει
leadership rule and the(-affairs) of-the church not directs
καθὰ καὶ πρὸς τῶν θείων κανόνων νενόμισται, εἰς τὸ
as also by the divine canons is-customary into the

βασιλικὸν εἰσεκαλεῖτο δικαστήριον. ἐπεὶ δὲ μὴ ἀπήντα, ἀλλ᾽
imperial was-summoned court since and not he-came but
οἰκουμενικὴν ἀντέλεγεν ἰσχυριζόμενος ἀθροισθῆναι σύνοδον,
ecumenical he-objected insisting to-be-gathered synod
καὶ τηνικαῦτα διαλύσασθαι τὰ ἐγκλήματα· τοῦτο γὰρ
and then to-dissolve the charges this for
βούλεσθαι καὶ τὰ τῶν πατέρων θεόπνευστα παραγγέλματα,
to-wish also the of-the fathers God-inspired precepts
οἰκουμενικὴν ἐπὶ πατριάρχου καθαιρέσει συγκροτεῖσθαι
ecumenical on of-patriarch deposition to-be-convened
σύνοδον· εἰς τὸ κατὰ τὸν Σκάμανδρον τελοῦν φροντιστήριον,
synod into the by the Scamander being monastery
ὅπερ αὐτὸς ἐδείματο, πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως περιορίζεται·
which himself had-built by the emperor is-exiled
ἀνὴρ ἄτροφος σχεδόν τε καὶ ἄσαρκος, ἐξ ἁπαλῶν ὀνύχων
a-man unfed almost both and fleshless from tender nails
ἀσκητικοῖς ἀγῶσιν ὑπὲρ φύσιν ἐγγυμνασάμενος, ἀμπεχόνῃ
in-ascetic contests beyond nature having-been-trained with-a-cloak
κεχρημένος θέρει τε καὶ χειμῶνι μιᾷ, καὶ ταύτῃ μὴ
having-used in-summer both and in-winter one and this not
ἀπεκδυόμενος, ἕως ἂν διερρύη καὶ ἄχρηστος ἐξεγένετο,
taking-off until — it-fell-apart and useless became
βρωτῶν δὲ μὴ γευόμενος ἢ ποτῶν, πλὴν ὕδατος καὶ τῶν
of-foods and not tasting or of-drinks except water and of-the
ἐξ ἀκροδρύων χυμῶν. λέγεται δὲ μηδὲ παρὰ κλίνην
from fruit-trees juices it-is-said and not-even on bed
καθευδῆσαι, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπ᾽ ἐδάφους, παρ᾽ ὅλον αὑτοῦ τὸν καιρὸν
to-have-slept but on ground through whole his the time
τῆς ἀσκήσεως. ἐλάττωμα δὲ τοῦτο μόνον φασὶ προσεῖναι
of-the ascetic-discipline defect and this only they-say to-be-in
τἀνδρί, τὸ τὰς ἀναγωγὰς καὶ ἀναστροφὰς τῶν ἀνδρῶν
the-man the the upbringings and conduct of-the men

περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι διαγινώσκειν, πολυπραγμονοῦντι
of most to-make to-discern meddling
καὶ διερευνωμένῳ πέρα τοῦ δέοντος.
and investigating beyond the needful

3 Ὑπερορίᾳ τοιγαροῦν τοῦ Βασιλείου κατακριθέντος, τοὺς
to-exile therefore — Basil having-been-condemned the
τῆς πατριαρχίας οἴακας Ἀντώνιος ἐγχειρίζεται, ἀνὴρ ἐν τῇ
of-the patriarchate helm Antony is-entrusted-with a-man in the
τοῦ Στουδίου μονῇ τὴν ἀσκητικὴν ἐκ νεότητος πολιτείαν
of-the Stoudios monastery the ascetic from youth way-of-life
ἀναιρετισάμενος, καὶ βίον ἕλκων ἀποστολικόν. πλέον γὰρ
having-chosen and life drawing apostolic more for
τῶν τῇ σαρκὶ ἀποχρώντων ἀμφίων οὐδὲν ἐπεφέρετο,
than-the for-the flesh sufficing clothes nothing he-carried
καίτοι πρὸς τῶν μέγα δυναμένων, καὶ βασιλέων αὐτῶν,
although by the greatly powerful and emperors themselves
πλεῖστα φιλοφρονούμενος διὰ τὴν ἐνοῦσαν αὐτῷ ἀρετήν.
very-much being-treated-kindly because-of the being-in him virtue
οὐ μόνον δέ, ἀλλὰ κἀκ τοῦ προσόντος αὐτῷ ἀξιώματος
not only and but also-from the belonging to-him rank
ποριζόμενος (τῷ τοῦ Συγκέλλου γὰρ τὸ πρότερον
providing with-the of-the Synkellos for the before
ἐτιμᾶτο ἀξιώματι), πάντα τοῖς πένησι διεδίδου, τὸν ἔλεον
he-was-honored rank all to-the poor he-distributed the mercy
μιμούμενος τοῦ Θεοῦ, καὶ γνῶσιν θείαν καὶ ἀνθρωπίνην, εἰ
imitating — of-God and knowledge divine and human if
καί τις ἄλλος, ἐπλούτει. τούτου τῇ ὄψει καὶ τοῖς ἤθεσι
even anyone else was-rich his on-the face and in-the manners
θαυμαστή τις ἐπέλαμπε χάρις ἐν βαθυτάτῃ τῇ πολιᾷ. οὐ γάρ
wonderful some shone grace in deepest the gray-hair not for
τις παρέβαλλε τούτῳ τῶν τρυφώντων καὶ μέγα φυσώντων
anyone came-to him of-the luxuriating and greatly puffed-up

τῇ τῶν ματαίων σκηνῇ, ὃς μὴ σωφρονῶν εὐθὺς
in-the of-the vain(-things) stage who not being-sober-minded at-once
ἀπηλλάττετο, σκιὰν καὶ ὄναρ τὸν βίον τελεῖν παιδευόμενος·
departed shadow and dream the life to-be being-taught
οὐδὲ τοὔμπαλιν συμφοραῖς ἀνηκέστοις περιόδυνον ἕλκων
nor on-the-contrary with-misfortunes incurable full-of-pain dragging
τὴν βιοτήν, ὃς μὴ ἀπέτρεχεν εὐθυμῶν, διδασκόμενος, μὴ
the living who not ran-off cheerful being-taught not
ἐκκακεῖν ἐν ταῖς θλίψεσιν, ἀλλ᾽ ἑαυτὸν ἐπιῤῥίπτειν πρὸς
to-lose-heart in the afflictions but himself to-cast upon
τὸν δυνάμενον σώζειν ἐκ θλίψεως, καὶ παρ᾽ ἐκείνου τὴν
the(-one) able to-save from affliction and from him the
σωτηρίαν ἐπιζητεῖν. τοιοῦτος δή τις ἦν τόν τε βίον
salvation to-seek such indeed someone was the both life
καὶ λόγον ὁ Ἀντώνιος, ἀγγελικός τις καὶ θεῖος τελῶν ὁ
and word — Antony angelic someone and divine being the
ἀνήρ, ὡς ἐν κεφαλαίῳ εἰπεῖν. κατὰ τοῦτον δὴ τὸν καιρὸν
man as in summary to-say at this indeed the time
καὶ δίδυμοι ἄνδρες, ἐκ τῆς τῶν Καππαδοκῶν χώρας
also twin men from the of-the Cappadocians country
ὁρμώμενοι, πολλαχοῦ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐπικρατείας ἐφοίτων,
setting-out in-many-places of-the Roman dominion went-about
οὓς καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ ταῦτα ξυγγράφων πολλάκις κατὰ τὴν
whom also myself the(-one) these-things writing often in —
Ἀσίαν τεθέαμαι, τεράστιόν τι θαῦμα πέλοντας καὶ καινόν.
Asia have-beheld portentous some marvel being and novel
ἄρτια γὰρ αὐτοῖς καὶ ὁλότητα περισώζοντα τὰ τοῦ σώματος
complete for them and wholeness preserving the of-the body
καθίσταντο μόρια· ἀπὸ δὲ μάλης καὶ μέχρι λαγῶνος αἱ
were members from and armpit and as-far-as flank the
πλευραὶ τούτοις ἐκεκόλληντο, ἑνοῦσαι τὰ σωμάτια καὶ
sides to-them were-glued uniting the bodies and

εἰς ἓν συναρμόζουσαι. καὶ ταῖς μὲν ψαυούσαις ἀλλήλων
into one fitting-together and with-the indeed touching one-another
τῶν χειρῶν τοὺς σφῶν περιέπλεκον τένοντας, θατέραις
of-the arms the their embraced necks with-the-others
δὲ βακτηρίας ἔφερον, αἷς βαδίζοντες ἐσκηρίπτοντο,
and staffs they-carried on-which walking they-leaned
τριακοστὸν τῆς ἡλικίας ἔτος ἄγοντες. καὶ σώματα τούτοις
thirtieth of-the age year leading and bodies to-them
εὖ ἐπεφύκει, ἀνθηρὰ πεφηνότα καὶ νεανικά. ἡμιόνῳ δὲ
well had-grown blooming having-appeared and youthful on-a-mule and
κατὰ τὰς μακρὰς ἀποδημίας ὠχοῦντο, θηλυπρεπῶς παρὰ
on the long journeys they-rode like-women on
τὴν ἀστράβην ἑζόμενοι, ἄλεκτόν τι χρῆμα γλυκυθυμίας
the saddle sitting unspeakable some thing of-sweetness-of-temper
καὶ ἐπιεικείας τυγχάνοντες. ἀλλὰ περὶ τούτων μὲν ἅλις.
and of-gentleness possessing but about these indeed enough
4 Ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἰωάννης, αὖθις τοῦ ἦρος ἀναλάμψαντος,
the and emperor John again the spring having-shone-forth
τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς συγκροτήσας δυνάμεις, καὶ ταύτας εἰς τὸ
the Roman having-assembled forces and these to the
ἀκριβὲς καθοπλίσας, τῆς βασιλευούσης ἀπάρας, διὰ
exact having-armed from-the reigning(-city) having-set-out through
τῆς Παλαιστίνης ἐχώρει, γῆς εὐδαίμονος, γάλα τε καὶ μέλι
— Palestine advanced land prosperous milk both and honey
ῥεούσης, προφητικῶς εἰπεῖν. ἐνταῦθα φρουρίῳ προσβάλλει,
flowing prophetically to-say there a-fort attacks
τῷ τῇ Σύρᾳ φωνῇ καλουμένῳ Μέμπετζε· ὃ καὶ πολέμῳ
the in-the Syrian tongue called Mempetze which both by-war
καὶ ταῖς παντοδαπαῖς μηχαναῖς παραστησάμενος, τὰ τοῦ
and by-the of-all-kinds machines having-brought-over the of-the
Σωτῆρος Χριστοῦ σανδάλια ἐκεῖσε ἀνευρηκώς, ἀνείληφεν ὥς
Savior Christ sandals there having-found took-up as

τι δῶρον οὐράνιον, καὶ τὰς τοῦ σεβασμίου τε Προδρόμου
some gift heavenly and the of-the venerable and Forerunner
τρίχας, τοῦ Κήρυκος. καὶ τὰ μὲν αὖθις ἐν τῷ περιπύστῳ
hairs of-the Herald and the indeed again in the renowned
τῆς θεομήτορος σηκῷ, τῷ κατὰ τὴν ἀνακτορικὴν ἑστίαν
of-the mother-of-God precinct the at the palace hearth
δεδομημένῳ, ἀπέθετο, ὥς τινα πολύολβον θησαυρόν· τὰς δὲ
built deposited as some most-wealthy treasure the and
ἐν τῷ τοῦ Σωτῆρος νεῷ, ὃν αὐτὸς ἐκ βάθρων ἀνήγειρεν.
in the of-the Savior temple which himself from foundations raised
ἐκεῖθεν ἀπάρας Ἀπαμείᾳ προσέβαλε, φρούριον δὲ αὖτη
from-there having-set-out Apameia attacked fort and this
ὀχυρὸν καὶ δυσάλωτον. ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην εὐαριθμήτοις
strong and hard-to-take but also this in-easily-counted
ἡμέραις ᾑρηκὼς καὶ καταστρεψάμενος, ἐπὶ Δαμασκὸν
days having-taken and having-subdued against Damascus
μετὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἴεται. οἱ δὲ ταύτην οἰκοῦντες,
with the army rushes the(-ones) and it inhabiting
πολλοῦ τιμώμενα δῶρα ταῖς χερσὶν ἀνειληφότες, πρὸς
at-much valued gifts in-the hands having-taken-up in-front-of
τοῦ ἐμπορίου τῷ βασιλεῖ ὑπηντίαζον, παραιτούμενοί τε τὸν
the trading-place the emperor went-to-meet begging-off both the
τούτου θυμόν, καὶ τοῖς δώροις αὐτὸν ἐξευμενιζόμενοι. ὁ δέ,
his anger and with-the gifts him propitiating he and
φόρους αὐτοῖς τάξας ῥητοὺς καὶ ὑποσπόνδους Ῥωμαίοις
tributes on-them having-fixed stated and under-treaty to-Romans
ἀπεργασάμενος, ἐκεῖθεν ὁρμηθεὶς διὰ τοῦ Λιβάνου (ὄρος
having-made from-there having-set-out through the Lebanon mountain
δὲ ὁ Λίβανος κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνον τὸν χῶρον τραχὺ καὶ μέγιστον
and the Lebanon in that the place rough and very-great
διατεῖνον, τήν τε Φοινίκην καὶ Παλαιστίνην ἀλλήλων
stretching — both Phoenicia and Palestine from-one-another

ἀπείργει) ἐγκαρσίως ἠπείγετο, καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτὴν τὴν ῥαχίαν
separates crosswise he-hastened and on the-very the ridge
ἀφικόμενος, τὴν Βορζῶ, πόλιν ἐρυμνωτάτην, ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς
having-arrived — Borzo city most-strong by assault
εἷλεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἀπάρας ἐς Φοινίκην κάτεισι, καὶ τάς τε
took thence having-set-out into Phoenicia goes-down and — both
Βαλαναίας τὸ φρούριον αἱρεῖ, καὶ τὴν Βηρυτὸν πολιορκεῖ·
Balanaiai the fort takes and — Berytos besieges
ἐν ᾗ καὶ τὴν τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἐν εἰκόνι σταύρωσιν εὑρηκώς,
in which also the of-the Savior in image crucifixion having-found
καὶ ταύτην ἐκεῖθεν ἀνειληφώς, ἐν τῷ τοῦ Σωτῆρος νεῷ,
and it from-there having-taken-up into the of-the Savior temple
ὃν ἐκ βάθρων ἐδείματο, παρεκπέμπει.
which from foundations he-had-built sends-on

XXVI · THE COMET AND THE WARS AFTER JOHN

Leo tells how the icon of the Crucifixion found at Berytos bled when a Jew, taunted by his fellows, stabbed it with a lance. Having taken Berytos, John cannot take Tripolis and reduces the coastal towns. In August a comet appears for eighty days; Symeon the Logothete and Stephen of Nicomedia read it as victory, but it foretold revolts and disasters. After John's death Bardas Skleros revolts for four years, defeats the patrikios Peter at Lapara and Bardas Phokas at Pankaleia, and rules the sea until the fire-ships burn his fleet at Abydos and Phokas drives him to the Arabs. The emperor Basil besieges Sardike in vain, and on the retreat, after a falling star, the Mysians ambush the army; Leo, serving as deacon, barely escapes.

Λέγεται δὲ περὶ ταύτης τῆς θείας εἰκόνος ἐξαίσιόν τι
it-is-said and about this the divine image extraordinary something
συμβεβηκέναι τεράστιον. φασὶ γὰρ κατά τινα ἑστίαν τῆς
to-have-happened portentous they-say for in some house —
Βηρυτοῦ ἄνδρα τὰ Χριστιανῶν πρεσβεύοντα παροικεῖν,
of-Berytos a-man the(-things) of-Christians professing to-dwell

καθ᾽ ἣν καὶ τὴν ῥηθεῖσαν εἰκόνα σεβόμενον ἀναθέσθαι.
in which also the said image revering to-have-set-up
χρόνον δὲ ὕστερον καθ᾽ ἑτέραν οἰκίαν μεταναστεῦσαι, καί,
time and later in another house to-have-moved and
κατὰ θείαν τινὰ πρόνοιαν, λήθῃ περισχεθέντα κατὰ
by divine some providence by-forgetfulness having-been-overtaken in
τὴν προτέραν οἰκίαν τὴν εἰκόνα παραλιπεῖν. ταύτην δὲ τὴν
the former house the image to-have-left this and the
ἑστίαν Ἰουδαῖον παρειληφέναι τινά, ὥστε καὶ κατοικεῖν·
house a-Jew to-have-taken-over some so-that also to-dwell
τὸν δὲ τῶν ὁμοθρήσκων αὐτοῦ τινας εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν
him and of-the fellow-religionists his some on the next-day
ἑστιακέναι. οὓς τῷ δόμῳ ὑπεισελθόντας καὶ πρὸς ἐνώπια
to-have-entertained whom into-the house having-come-in and to in-front
τὴν τοῦ Σωτῆρος σταύρωσιν ἀνατεθειμένην ἀθρήσαντας,
the of-the Savior crucifixion set-up having-beheld
δεινῶς λοιδορεῖσθαι τὸν Ἰουδαῖον, ὡς ἔκσπονδον τῆς σφῶν
terribly to-revile the Jew as outcast of-the their-own
θρησκείας καὶ τὰ τῶν Χριστιανῶν σέβοντα. τὸν δὲ
religion and the(-things) of-the Christians revering him and
ὅρκοις αὐτοὺς διαβεβαιοῦσθαι, ἦ μὴν μὴ τὴν τοιαύτην
with-oaths them to-assure truly indeed not the such
εἰκόνα ἕως τοῦ παρόντος θεάσασθαι. αὖθις δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν
image until the present to-have-seen again and to him
τοὺς παλαμναίους ἐκείνους εἰπεῖν καί, "εἰ μὴ τὰ τῶν
the villains those to-say and if not the(-things) of-the
Χριστιανῶν ὀργιάζεις, ἔργοις ἡμᾶς πληροφόρησον, καὶ
Christians you-celebrate by-deeds us assure and
ταύτην τὴν λόγχην ἀνειληφώς, νύξον τὸ τοῦ Ναζαραίου
this the lance having-taken-up stab the of-the Nazarene
εἰκόνισμα κατὰ τῆς πλευρᾶς, τὸν τρόπον, ὃν οἱ πατέρες
image in the side the way in-which the fathers

ἡμῶν τοπάλαι τοῦτον σταυρώσαντες ἐλόγχευσαν." τὸν δέ,
our of-old him having-crucified pierced him and
τὴν λόγχην μεταχειρισάμενον, ὡς εἶχε θυμοῦ, καὶ μάλιστα
the lance having-handled as he-was of-anger and most
πληροφορεῖν ἐκείνους βουλόμενον, τὸ περιαπτόμενον αὐτῷ
to-assure them wishing the being-fastened to-himself
ἔγκλημα κατεπειγόμενον ἀποτρίψασθαι, νύξαι τὴν τῆς
charge hastening to-wipe-off to-have-stabbed the of-the
εἰκόνος πλευράν. ἅμα δὲ τῇ προσβολῇ τῆς αἰχμῆς,
image side together and with-the thrust of-the point
πλῆθος καταῤῥεῦσαι σὺν ὕδατι αἵματος· τοὺς δὲ δυσσεβεῖς
a-mass to-have-flowed-down with water of-blood the and impious
Ἰουδαίους πεπηγέναι τῷ φρικτῷ τοῦ θεάματος,
Jews to-have-stood-transfixed at-the horror of-the spectacle
καὶ τῆς φήμης διαδοθείσης, τοὺς τὰ Χριστιανῶν
and the report having-spread the(-men) the(-things) of-Christians
σέβοντας εἰσπηδῆσαί τε τὴν τοῦ Ἑβραίου ἑστίαν, καὶ τὴν
revering to-have-leapt-into both the of-the Hebrew house and the
σεπτὴν τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἀνειληφέναι σταύρωσιν, ἔτι τὸ θεῖον
venerable of-the Savior to-have-taken-up crucifixion still the divine
ἐκβλύζουσαν αἷμα, καὶ εἰς ἱερὸν ἀναθεῖναι σηκόν, καὶ
gushing-forth blood and into a-holy to-have-dedicated precinct and
τιμᾷν μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταύτην ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν θεάνθρωπον
to-honor magnificently this the emperor the God-man
μορφὴν ἐκεῖθεν ἀνειληφώς, τῷ Βυζαντίῳ παρέπεμψεν, ὥς
form from-there having-taken-up — to-Byzantium sent-on as
μοι ἤδη δεδήλωται.
by-me already has-been-shown

6 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τάς τε Βαλαναίας καὶ Βηρυτὸν τῷ πολεμεῖν
when and — both Balanaiai and Berytos by-the fighting
ᾕρηκε, Τριπόλει προσβάλλει. καὶ μὴ οἷός τε ὢν ταύτην
he-had-taken Tripolis attacks and not able — being it

πολιορκεῖν ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς (περιβόλοις γὰρ κατὰ τὴν
to-besiege by assault with-circuit-walls for on the
ἤπειρον ἐρυμνοῖς περιείληπται, ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς ἀποτόμου
mainland strong it-is-encompassed on hill a-certain sheer
διατείνουσα· κατὰ θάτερον δὲ μέρος θαλάσσῃ περικλύζεται,
stretching on the-other and side by-sea is-washed-around
ἐπίνειον καὶ προκόλπιον προβαλλομένῃ εὔορμον καὶ
a-harbor and bay putting-forward good-for-anchoring and
εὐχείμερον), ἐκεῖθεν ἀπάρας, τὰς παραλίους πολίχνας
good-for-wintering from-there having-set-out the coastal towns
ὁδῷ προβαίνων ἐξεπολιόρκει. κατὰ τοῦτον δὴ τὸν
on-the-road advancing he-reduced at this indeed the
καιρόν, Αὔγουστος δὲ μὴν ἦγεν ἀρχήν, κομήτης ἐξεφάνη
time August and month was-leading beginning comet appeared
ἀστήρ, χρῆμα θεῖόν τι καὶ καινόν, λογισμὸν ὑπερβαῖνον
star thing divine some and novel reckoning surpassing
ἀνθρώπινον. οὐδὲ γὰρ τοιοῦτόν τι κατὰ ταύτας ὤφθη
human nor for such anything in these was-seen
τὰς γενεάς, οὐδ' ἐπὶ τοσαύτας ἡμέρας ἐπιφαίνειν τὸ πρόσθεν
the generations nor for so-many days to-shine the before
συμβέβηκεν. οὗτος ἀπ' ἀνατολῆς βορειότερος ἀνίσχων,
has-happened this from east more-northerly rising
καὶ εἰς ὕψος ὅ τι πλεῖστον αἰρόμενος, ὡς κυπάριττός
and to height what — most being-raised as cypress
τε ὑψούμενος, εἶτα ἠρέμα κυρτούμενος, πρὸς μεσημβρίαν
and rising-high then quietly curving toward south
ἀπένευεν, ἁπλέτῳ πυρὶ ἐκκαιόμενος, καὶ τηλαυγεῖς καὶ
inclined with-immense fire burning and far-shining and
λαμπρὰς τὰς ἀκτῖνας ἐπαφιείς, πρᾶγμα δείματος καὶ
bright the rays sending-out a-thing of-dread and
φρίκης γέμον τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ὁρώμενος. ἀπ' ἀρχῆς δὲ
shuddering full to-the men being-seen from beginning and

μηνὸς Αὐγούστου, ὡς ἔφην, φανείς, ἐφ' ὅλαις ἡμέραις
of-month August as I-said having-appeared for whole days
ἐπεποίητο τὴν ἐπιτολὴν ὀγδοήκοντα, ἀπὸ μέσων ἀνίσχων
had-made the rising eighty from middle rising
νυκτῶν, καὶ μέχρι σταθηρᾶς ἡμέρας ὁρώμενος. βασιλεὺς
nights and until steady day being-seen (the)-emperor
δέ, τὸ ἀσύνηθες τεράστιον κατιδών, τοὺς περὶ τὴν
and the unaccustomed portent having-caught-sight the(-men) on the
τῶν μετεώρων ἐσχολακότας ἠρώτα παρατήρησιν, ὅ τι
of-the heavenly(-bodies) having-spent-leisure asked observation what —
δὴ καὶ βούλοιτο τὸ τοιοῦτον ἐξαίσιον. οἱ δέ, οὐχ ὡς ἡ
indeed also might-mean the such prodigy they and not as the
τέχνη παρεῖχε τεκμαίρεσθαι, πρὸς δὲ τὸ τοῦ βασιλέως
art afforded to-conjecture according-to but the of-the emperor
βούλημα, τὴν τοῦ κομήτου παρεξηγοῦντο ἐπιτολήν, νίκην τε
wish the of-the comet misinterpreted rising victory both
αὐτῷ κατ' ἐχθρῶν καὶ μακρότητα ἡμερῶν ἐπαγγελλόμενοι
to-him against enemies and length of-days promising
ἔσεσθαι. ἦστην δὲ οἱ ταῦτα παρεξηγούμενοι Συμεώνης
to-be were and the(-two) these-things misinterpreting Symeon
τε, ὁ Λογοθέτης καὶ Μάγιστρος, καὶ ὁ τῆς Νικομηδείας
both the Logothete and Magistros and the — of-Nicomedia
πρόεδρος Στέφανος, ἄνδρες τῶν τότε σοφῶν ὄντες
proedros Stephen men than-the then wise being
ἐλλογιμώτεροι. ἀλλ' οὐχὶ ταῦτα ἡ τοῦ κομήτου παρεδήλου
more-learned but not these-things the of-the comet indicated
ἐπιτολή, ἃ πρὸς χάριν οἱ ἄνδρες τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
rising which for favor the men to-the emperor
ὑπηγόρευον, ἀποστασίας δὲ χαλεπάς, ἐθνῶν τε ἐπιδρομάς,
suggested revolts but grievous of-peoples both incursions
καὶ ἐμφυλίους στάσεις, καὶ μεταναστάσεις πόλεων καὶ
and civil discords and displacements of-cities and

χώρων, λιμοὺς καὶ λοιμούς, καὶ φρικώδεις σεισμούς, καὶ
of-lands famines and plagues and dreadful earthquakes and
πανολεθρίαν σχεδὸν τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς ἐπικρατείας, ἅπερ
utter-ruin almost of-the Roman dominion which
ἡμεῖς ἐκ τῆς τῶν πραγμάτων ἐκβάσεως εἴδομεν.
we from the of-the affairs outcome saw
Μετὰ γὰρ τὴν τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος Ἰωάννου ἐκδημίαν ἀπὸ τοῦ 7
after for the of-the emperor John departure from the
σώματος, Βάρδας Μάγιστρος, ὁ κατ᾽ ἐπωνυμίαν Σκληρός,
body Bardas Magistros the by surname Skleros
φιλαρχίαν καὶ ἀπληστίαν νοσῶν, ἀπάτῃ δὲ μετελθὼν
lust-for-power and insatiability being-sick-with by-deceit and having-pursued
καὶ φενακίσας τὸν πολὺν ὄχλον καὶ εὔκολον, ἀποστασίαν
and having-cheated the great crowd and easy revolt
δεινὴν κατὰ τῶν κρατούντων ἐμελέτησεν· ἐπὶ τετραετῆ
terrible against the rulers devised for four-year
τε ἐνιαυτὸν τὴν Ἀσίαν κατέδραμε, χώρας πυρπολῶν, καὶ
and year — Asia overran lands burning and
πόλεις καταστρεφόμενος, τήν τε Ῥωμαϊκὴν δύναμιν, ἐξ
cities subduing the and Roman force from
ἀντιπάλου παρατάξεως ἀντιτασσομένην αὐτῷ, τρεπόμενος
opposed battle-line arrayed-against him routing
καὶ κατακαίνων ὠμῶς· τοῦτο μὲν ὑπὸ τοῦ Πατρικίου
and slaying savagely this indeed by the Patrikios
Πέτρου καὶ στρατοπεδάρχου δημαγωγουμένην, ὅτε κατὰ
Peter and stratopedarch led when at
τὴν Λάπαραν τὸ πεδίον (μεθόριον δὲ τοῦτο τῆς χώρας
— Lapara the plain border and this of-the land
τῶν Ἀρμενίων) ἡ μάχη συνεκροτεῖτο, ὁπηνίκα καὶ αὐτὸς
of-the Armenians the battle was-joined when also himself
ὁ Πατρίκιος Πέτρος, δορατίῳ βληθεὶς καὶ τοῦ ἵππου
the Patrikios Peter with-a-spear struck and from-the horse

κατενεχθείς, παρ᾽ αὐτὴν ἐξέπνευσε τὴν παράταξιν,
having-been-brought-down at the-very breathed-his-last the battle
πλείστων ὅτι τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν συναναιρεθέντων αὐτῷ·
very-many as-could-be of-the shield-bearers having-been-slain-with him
τοῦτο δὲ ὑπὸ Βάρδα Μαγίστρου τοῦ Φωκᾶ, ὃς πρὸς τῶν
this and by Bardas Magistros — Phokas who by the
κρατούντων τὸ τοῦ Δομεστίκου τῶν Σχολῶν ὑποζωσάμενος
rulers the of-the Domestic of-the scholae having-girded-on
ἀξίωμα, ἀντίπαλος τῷ Σκληρῷ κατὰ τὴν Παγκάλειαν
rank opponent — to-Skleros at — Pankaleia
παρετάξατο. ἱππήλατον τοῦτο πεδίον, τῷ Ἀμωρίῳ
drew-up horse-drivable this plain — to-Amorion
προσέγγιον. ὅπου δὴ καὶ παρὰ τὸ μεταίχμιον ῥάβδῳ
near where indeed also at the no-man's-land with-a-staff
κατὰ τοῦ κρανίου πληγεὶς ὁ Φωκᾶς, τοῦ ἵππου τε
on the skull struck — Phokas from-the horse both
κατενέχθη καὶ εἰς γῆν κατεβλήθη· καὶ κἂν ἥλω
was-brought-down and to earth was-cast-down and even-would he-have-been-taken
τῶν ἐναντίων καὶ ἀκλεῶς παραπώλετο, εἰ μὴ ὡς εἷς
by-the opponents and ingloriously perished if not as one
τῶν πολλῶν παρώφθη παρὰ τῶν δυσμενῶν, ἠγνοηκότων
of-the many he-was-overlooked by the enemies not-knowing
αὐτόν, ἐπελθοῦσα δὲ ἡ νὺξ τοῦτον διέσωσεν. ὁ δὲ
him having-come-on and the night him saved — and
Σκληρός, ταῖς τοιαύταις νίκαις ἐπαρθείς τε καὶ φρενωθείς,
Skleros by-the such victories elated both and puffed-up
ἀνυπόστατός τις καὶ ἀκαταγώνιστος ἐνομίζετο. ἐντεῦθεν
irresistible someone and invincible was-thought thereupon
τήν τε Νίκαιαν, καὶ Ἄβυδον, καὶ Ἀττάλειαν τῷ πολεμεῖν
— both Nicaea and Abydos and Attaleia by-the fighting
παρεστήσατο, καὶ τὴν τῆς Ἀσίας ἐπεποιήσατο Ῥωμαϊκὴν
brought-over and the — of-Asia made Roman

ἐπικράτειαν· καὶ πλείστας τριήρεις προσείληφε, καὶ
dominion and very-many triremes took-in-addition and
θαλασσοκρατῶν μεγάλα τοὺς ἐμπόρους ἐσίνετο, καὶ αὐτὴν
ruling-the-sea greatly the merchants harmed and itself
ἤδη τὴν βασιλεύουσαν, τὰς σιτηγοὺς φορτίδας οὐκ ἐῶν
already the reigning(-city) the grain-carrying freighters not allowing
εἰς αὐτὴν ἀναπλέειν κατὰ τὸ πρότερον· ἕως οὗ ἐκ
into it to-sail-up according-to the former until which from
Βυζαντίου πυρφόροι νῆες πρὸς τῶν κρατούντων λαθραίως
Byzantium fire-bearing ships by the rulers secretly
ἐξαπεστάλησαν. ἃς Βάρδας Μάγιστρος ὁ Παρσακουτηνὸς
were-sent-out which Bardas Magistros — Parsakoutenos
ἄγων, αἰφνίδιον τῇ Ἀβύδῳ προσορμισθείς, τάς τε τριήρεις
leading suddenly — at-Abydos having-put-in the both triremes
τοῦ τυράννου κατέφλεξε, καὶ τὴν τῶν στρατιωτῶν
of-the tyrant burned-up and the of-the soldiers
κατηκόντισε φάλαγγα, καὶ τὸ φρούριον εἵληφεν. αὖθις
speared-down phalanx and the fort took again
δὲ ὁ Φωκᾶς, χεῖρα περὶ αὑτὸν πλείστην στρατιωτῶν
and — Phokas band around himself very-large of-soldiers
ἠθροικώς, τῷ Σκληρῷ ἐπιτίθεται, καὶ τοῦτον τρεψάμενος
having-gathered — Skleros attacks and him having-routed
ἐν Ἐκβατάνοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀγαρηνοὺς φυγεῖν παρεσκεύασεν.
in Ecbatana to the Hagarenes to-flee caused
Εἶτ' αὖθις, ἐπεὶ τὸ λῃστρικὸν τῶν συνωμοτῶν τοῦ Σκληροῦ 8
then again when the brigandish of-the conspirators — of-Skleros
Βάρδα τελέως ἐσκίδνατο, τὰς δυνάμεις ἀνειληφὼς ὁ
Bardas completely was-scattered the forces having-taken-up the
αὐτοκράτωρ Βασίλειος ἠπείγετο κατὰ τῶν Μυσῶν. ἡ γὰρ
emperor Basil hastened against the Mysians the for
ἐκείνων αὐθάδεια καὶ ἀπήνεια, φονικὸν περιπνέουσα, τὴν
their arrogance and cruelty murder breathing the

Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἐσίνετο ἐπικράτειαν, καὶ τὰ τῶν Μακεδόνων
Roman harmed dominion and the(-lands) of-the Macedonians
ἀφειδῶς ἐληΐζετο, ἡβηδὸν ἅπαντας διαφθείρουσα. τῷ
unsparingly plundered from-youth-up all destroying therefore
τοι καὶ θερμότερον ἤπερ ἔδει μᾶλλον κινηθεὶς ἢ
indeed also more-hotly than was-needful rather having-been-moved than
προμηθέστερον, αὐτοβοεὶ καθελεῖν ταύτην ἠπείγετο. ἀλλὰ
more-prudently at-the-first-shout to-destroy it hastened but
τῶν ἐλπίδων ἐπηρείᾳ τύχης ἡμάρτανεν. ἐπεὶ γὰρ τὰς
of-the hopes by-the-spite of-fortune he-missed when for the
ἐστενωμένας καὶ κρημνώδεις ἀτραποὺς διοδεύσας, κατὰ
narrowed and precipitous paths having-traversed at
τὴν Σαρδικὴν ἐπεχωρίασεν, ἣν καὶ Τράλιτζαν ἡ Σκυθικὴ
— Sardike he-sojourned which also Tralitza the Scythian
συνήθεια κέκληκεν, ἐνταῦθα τὸν τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἐπήξατο
usage has-called there the of-the camp fixed
χάρακα, καὶ αὐτὴν παρακαθισάμενος, ἐφ' ἡμέραις εἴκοσιν
palisade and it having-sat-down-before for days twenty
ἐφρούρει. ἀλλ' οὐδὲν εἶχεν ἀνύσειν, τῇ κακοπραγίᾳ τῶν
guarded but nothing could accomplish by-the mismanagement of-the
στρατηγῶν ἐς ῥᾳστώνην καὶ νωθείαν ἀποκλινάσης τῆς
generals into ease and sluggishness having-declined the
στρατιᾶς. τοίνυν πρότερον μὲν τοὺς ἐπὶ χιλὸν καὶ
army therefore first indeed the(-men) for fodder and
χορτάσματα τοῦ χάρακος ἐξιόντας ἐνεδρεύσαντες οἱ
hay from-the palisade going-out having-ambushed the
Μυσοί, πολὺν φόνον εἰργάσαντο, καὶ πλῆθος ὑποζυγίων
Mysians much slaughter worked and a-multitude of-draft-animals
καὶ ἵππων ἀπήγαγον. ἔπειτα τῶν ἑλεπόλεων καὶ τῶν
and horses led-off then of-the siege-engines and of-the
λοιπῶν μηχανημάτων ἀπειρίᾳ τῶν προσαγηοχότων
other machines by-inexperience of-the(-men) having-brought

ταῦτα τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀπρακτησάντων, καὶ πυρποληθέντων
these to-the walls having-failed and having-been-burned
παρὰ τῶν δυσμενῶν· ἐπεὶ καὶ σπάνις τῶν ἀναγκαίων
by the enemies since also scarcity of-the necessities
κατεῖχε τὴν στρατιάν, τῶν συμπεφορημένων ἐπισιτισμῶν
held the army of-the gathered provisions
ἤδη ἀναλωθέντων, τῷ μὴ πεφεισμένως ἀλλ' ἄδην
already having-been-consumed by-the not sparingly but abundantly
κατεμφορεῖσθαι αὐτῶν, ἐνσκευασάμενος συνάμα τῇ
to-gorge on-them having-packed together-with the
στρατιᾷ τὴν ἐπὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον ᾔει. πανημέριος δὲ
army the toward — Byzantium went all-day-long and
διοδεύσας, ἐπί τινα λόχμην διεσκηνίσατο, καὶ τὴν πληθὺν
having-traversed at some thicket encamped and the multitude
διανέπαυε. μήπω δὲ τῆς πρώτης φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς
rested not-yet and the first watch of-the night
συμπεραιωθείσης, ἐξαίφνης ἀστὴρ παμμεγέθης ἐκ τοῦ
having-been-completed suddenly a-star very-huge from the
ἑῴου μέρους τοῦ χάρακος ὁρμηθεὶς καὶ τὰς σκηνὰς
eastern side of-the palisade having-rushed and the tents
περιλάμψας ἀπλέτῳ φωτί, ἐπὶ τὸ ἑσπέριον μέρος παρ'
having-illumined with-immense light onto the western side by
αὐτὴν τὴν ταφρείαν καταπεσών, καὶ εἰς σπινθῆρας συχνοὺς
the-very the trench having-fallen and into sparks many
διαιρεθείς, ἀπεσβέσθη. τὴν αὖθις δὲ τοῦ στρατοῦ
having-been-divided was-quenched the again and of-the army
παρεδήλου διαφθορὰν ἡ τοῦ ἀστέρος καταφορά. ἔνθα γὰρ
indicated destruction the of-the star fall where for
τοιουτότροπόν τι γενέσθαι συμβέβηκε, τοῦ ὑποκειμένου
such-wise something to-happen has-chanced of-the underlying
πανολεθρίαν ἐσήμηνε. τεκμήριον τοῦτο σαφὲς ὁ ἐπὶ τῆς
utter-ruin signified proof this clear the upon the

Τρωϊκῆς πληθύος κατενεχθεὶς ἀστήρ, ὁπηνίκα Πάνδαρος
Trojan multitude brought-down star when Pandaros
τῷ Μενελάῳ ἐπετοξάζετο· ἐκεῖ γὰρ αὐθημερὸν ἡ Τρωϊκὴ
— at-Menelaos was-shooting-arrows there for on-the-same-day the Trojan
φάλαγξ πρὸς τῶν Ἀχαιῶν εἰς φυγὴν ἀγεννῆ συνεκλείετο.
phalanx by the Achaeans into flight ignoble was-shut-up
καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν δὲ πολέμων εὕροι τις ἄν, τὴν
and in the Roman and wars might-find someone — the
ἱστορίαν μετιών, τὸ τοιοῦτον πολλάκις συμβάν, καὶ τὸ
history pursuing the such often having-happened and the
στράτευμα διαφθαρέν, ἵνα τὸ φάσμα ἐπέσκηψεν. εἴδομεν δὲ
army destroyed where the apparition struck we-saw and
καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ τῆς τοῦ προέδρου Βασιλείου ἑστίας τοιοῦτόν
also ourselves on the of-the proedros Basil house such
τι κατενεχθέν· καὶ μήπω καιροῦ συχνοῦ διαῤῥεύσαντος
something brought-down and not-yet time much having-passed
ἐκεῖνόν τε τοῦ βίου ὑπαπελθόντα, καὶ εἰς διαρπαγὴν
him both from-the life having-departed and into plunder
καὶ προνομὴν ἐκδοθέντα τὰ αὐτῷ διαφέροντα.
and pillage having-been-given-over the(-things) to-him belonging
ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῆς τοῦ ἀστέρος φαντασίας ὧδέ πη
but about indeed the of-the star apparition thus somehow
ἐχέτω· τότε δέ, κατὰ τὴν ὑστεραίαν, διά τινος ὑλώδους
let-it-be then and on the next-day through some wooded
καὶ σηραγγώδους αὐλῶνος διῄει τὸ στράτευμα· ἐκεῖνον δὲ
and cavernous defile went the army it and
μόλις παραδραμόν, χαραδρώδεις καὶ ἀνάντεις κατελάμβανε
barely having-run-past ravine-like and uphill it-came-upon
χώρους· ἐν οἷς οἱ Μυσοὶ Ῥωμαίοις ἐπιθέμενοι πλεῖστον
places in which the Mysians on-Romans having-fallen very-great
ὅτι πλῆθος ἀνδρῶν διέφθειραν, καὶ τήν τε βασίλειον
as-could-be multitude of-men destroyed and the both royal

ἀρχὴν καὶ τὸν πλοῦτον εἰλήφεσαν, καὶ τὴν ἀποσκευὴν τῆς
headquarters and the wealth had-taken and the baggage of-the
στρατιᾶς ἐλαφυραγώγησαν ἅπασαν. τότε δὴ καὶ αὐτὸς
army plundered all then indeed also myself
ὁ ταῦτα ἐκτραγῳδῶν ἐκεῖσε παρήμην, τῷ κρατοῦντι
the(-one) these-things lamenting there was-present with-the ruler
δυστυχῶς συνεπόμενος καὶ τῇ τοῦ διακόνου λειτουργίᾳ
unhappily following and the of-the deacon ministry
ὑπηρετούμενος. καὶ κἂν ἐξεχύθη μου παρὰ μικρὸν τὰ
serving and even-would were-poured-out my by a-little the
διαβήματα, καὶ μαχαίρας Σκυθικῆς γέγονα παρανάλωμα, εἰ
steps and of-sword Scythian I-became a-casualty if
μή με θεία τις ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ κινδύνου ἀπήγαγε πρόνοια,
not me divine some from the-very the danger had-led-away providence
ἥτις ἐξιππάσασθαι τάχος πεποίηκε, πρὸ τοῦ καταληφθῆναι
which to-ride-away quickly made before the to-be-seized
τὴν φαραγγώδη πρὸς τῶν δυσμενῶν ἄνοδον, παρελθεῖν
the ravine-like by the enemies ascent to-pass
τε ταύτην, καὶ δρομαίως καταλαβεῖν τὴν ἀκρώρειαν.
both it and at-a-run to-reach the mountain-ridge
μόλις οὖν διὰ δυσβάτων ὀρέων τὸ περιλειφθὲν τοῦ
barely then through impassable mountains the remainder of-the
στρατεύματος τὴν καταδρομὴν διέφυγε τῶν Μυσῶν, τὴν
army the incursion escaped of-the Mysians the
ἵππον σχεδὸν ἀποβαλὸν ἅπασαν καὶ τὴν ἐπικομιζομένην
horse almost having-lost all and the brought-along
ἀποσκευήν, καὶ πρὸς τὰ Ῥωμαϊκὰ ἐπανέζευξεν ὅρια.
baggage and to the Roman marched-back boundaries

Bardas Phokas then revolts and besieges Abydos; Basil routs his army at Chrysopolis, impales Delphinas, and at Abydos Phokas falls from his horse and is beheaded. The comet and pillars of fire foretold more: the Rus capture Cherson and the Mysians Berrhoia, and a star wandering the evening sky presages the earthquake that throws down the dome and west arch of the Great Church, which Basil rebuilds in six years. Leo returns to John's journey home from Syria: angered at the lands the parakoimomenos Basil holds, John is poisoned, it is believed through a eunuch, falls paralyzed, distributes his treasure, confesses, and dies on 10 January, aged fifty-one, after six years and thirty days of rule.

9 Μήπω δὲ τοῦ τοιούτου πάθους τελευταίως ὑπολωφήσαντος,
not-yet and the such disaster finally having-abated
Βάρδας Μάγιστρος ὁ Φωκᾶς κατὰ τῶν κρατούντων
Bardas Magistros — Phokas against the rulers
ἐτραχηλίασε, καὶ τὴν τῆς Ἀσίας Ῥωμαϊκὴν ὑπεποιήσατο
rebelled and the — of-Asia Roman won-over
δύναμιν, καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐπίνεια καὶ πτολίσματα πλὴν
force and on sea harbors and towns except
Ἀβύδου εἷλε· καὶ τριήρεις συχνὰς νεολκήσας, ἐφρούρει
Abydos took and triremes many having-launched guarded
τὸν τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου πορθμόν, οὐκ ἐῶν τὰς φορτίδας
the of-the Hellespont strait not allowing the freighters
ἀνάγεσθαι πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν· στρατιάν τε πλείστην,
to-put-to-sea toward the reigning(-city) army and very-large
ἧς Λέων Μάγιστρος ὁ Μελισσηνὸς ἡγεῖτο, παρὰ τὴν
which Leo Magistros — Melissenos led on the
ἤπειρον τῆς Ἀβύδου καθίδρυσε, τάς τε σφετέρας τριήρεις
mainland — of-Abydos stationed the both their-own triremes
φρουροῦσαν, καὶ πολιορκοῦσαν τὴν Ἄβυδον. αὖθίς τε χάρακα
guarding and besieging — Abydos again and palisade

καρτερὸν πρὸ τοῦ Βυζαντίου ἐπὶ τοῦ τῆς Χρυσῆς πόλεως
strong before — Byzantium on the of-the Golden city
λόφου ἔπηξεν, ἱππικὴν ὅτι πλείστην καὶ πεζικὴν στειλάμενος
hill fixed cavalry as most and infantry having-dispatched
δύναμιν· ἀρχηγοὺς δὲ τῆς στρατιᾶς ταύτης τόν τε
force leaders and of-the army this the both
σύναιμον αὐτοῦ τὸν Πατρίκιον Νικηφόρον, καὶ Καλοκύρην
brother his the Patrikios Nikephoros and Kalokyres
Πατρίκιον, ᾧ ἐπίκλησις Δελφινᾶς προεστήσατο. τούτους
Patrikios to-whom surname Delphinas set-over these
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ αὖθις Βασίλειος, μετὰ δυνάμεως ἀποχρώσης
the emperor in-turn Basil with force sufficient
τὸν Βόσπορον περαιωθείς, ἐξ ἀντιπάλου μάχης ἐτρέψατο·
the Bosporus having-crossed in pitched battle routed
καὶ ζωγρίας συνειληφώς, τὸν μὲν Νικηφόρον καὶ ὁμαίμονα
and alive having-seized — indeed Nikephoros and brother
τοῦ Φωκᾶ πεδήτην ἀποφήνας, εἱρκτῇ συνέκλεισε· τὸν
— of-Phokas a-fettered-man having-made in-prison shut-up —
δέ γε Καλοκύρην τὸν Δελφινᾶ αὐτοῦ που παρὰ
and at-least Kalokyres — Delphinas there somewhere by
τὸν τῆς Χρυσοπόλεως λόφον, ἵνα καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ αὐτῷ
the — of-Chrysopolis hill where also the tent for-him
ἐπήγνυτο, ἀνεσκολόπισε. Βάρδας δὲ ὁ Φωκᾶς, τὴν ἐν
was-pitched impaled Bardas and — Phokas the in
Χρυσοπόλει πανολεθρίαν τῆς στρατιᾶς διενηχηθείς, τήν
Chrysopolis utter-ruin of-the army having-heard-tell the
τε τοῦ ὁμαίμονος σύλληψίν τε καὶ κάθειρξιν, καὶ τὴν
both of-the brother seizure both and imprisonment and the
τοῦ Δελφινᾶ ἐπὶ τοῦ ξύλου προσπαττάλευσιν, τὰς περὶ
— of-Delphinas on the wood nailing the about
αὐτὸν δυνάμεις συνηθροικώς, εἰς Ἄβυδον κάτεισι, τό τε
himself forces having-gathered to Abydos goes-down the both

φρούριον τὸ ἐκεῖσε πειρώμενος πολιορκῆσαι, καὶ πρὸς
fort the there trying to-besiege and to
τὴν Εὐρώπην διαπεράσαι, ὡς καὶ ταύτην ὑποποιήσαιτο.
— Europe to-cross so-that also it he-might-win-over
ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ Βασίλειος, τὴν ἐν Ἀβύδῳ κάθοδον τοῦ
the and emperor Basil the at Abydos descent of-the
τυράννου ἐνωτισθείς, τὴν περὶ αὑτὸν στρατιὰν συναγηοχώς,
tyrant having-heard the about himself army having-gathered
καὶ τὰς πυρφόρους τριήρεις ἐξαρτυσάμενος, ἀντίπαλος
and the fire-bearing triremes having-fitted-out opponent
τούτῳ καθίσταται· καί, περαιωθεὶς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ἐν
to-him stands and having-crossed the Hellespont in
τῷ πρὸ τῆς Ἀβύδου πεδίῳ τὴν βασίλειον σκηνὴν ἐπήξατο,
the before — Abydos plain the royal tent pitched
ὁσημέραι τὰς φάλαγγας συντάττων καὶ ἐξασκῶν, καὶ
daily the phalanxes ordering and training and
γνωματεύων ὅτῳ τρόπῳ τῷ ἀποστάτῃ ἐπέλθοι. μιᾷ
considering in-what way the rebel he-might-attack on-one
τοιγαροῦν τῶν νυκτῶν ἐς λόχους συντάξας τὸ στράτευμα,
therefore of-the nights into ambushes having-arranged the army
διὰ τῆς παρὰ θάλασσαν ἀταρπιτοῦ τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἐπέθετο,
through the along sea path the opponents attacked
καί, ἤδη τῆς ἡμέρας διαφανούσης, τάς τε τριήρεις πάσας
and already the day dawning the both triremes all
ἐνέπρησε, καὶ τοὺς ἐναντίους κατακαίνων οὐκ ἀνίει. Βάρδας
burned and the opponents slaying not let-up Bardas
δὲ ὁ Φωκᾶς, τῷ αἰφνιδίῳ τῆς ἀφίξεως καὶ ἐπιθέσεως
and — Phokas at-the suddenness of-the arrival and attack
τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος ἐκπλαγείς, ἀντιμέτωπος τοῦ χάρακος
of-the emperor stricken face-to-face from-the palisade
ἔξεισι· καὶ δῆτα κατὰ τὸ μεταίχμιον ἀντικαταστάς, καὶ
comes-out and indeed at the no-man's-land having-stood-against and

τοῦ ἵππου ἀθρόον κατενεχθείς, ξίφει τὸν αὐχένα
from-the horse suddenly having-been-brought-down with-sword the neck
ἐκκόπτεται. καὶ τὸ μὲν γιγαντῶδες τούτου σῶμα κατὰ
is-cut-off and the indeed giant-like his body at
τὴν Ἄβυδον τῇ γῇ κατορύττεται· ἡ δὲ κεφαλή, πρὸς
— *Abydos in-the earth is-buried the and head to*
τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐκπεμφθεῖσα καὶ δορατίῳ περιπαρεῖσα,
the reigning(-city) having-been-sent and on-a-spear having-been-impaled
κατὰ τὰς ἀγυιὰς θριαμβεύεται, καὶ τοῖς κατὰ τὴν
through the streets is-led-in-triumph and to-the(-men) in —
Ἀσίαν καταπέμπεται στασιάζουσι. καὶ οὕτω τὰ τῆς
Asia is-sent rebelling and thus the(-things) of-the
ἀποστασίας εἰς σταθηρὰν γαλήνην μετεσκευάζετο.
revolt into steady calm were-changed
Καὶ ἄλλα δὲ παγχάλεπα ἡ τοῦ φανέντος ἀστέρος 10
and other too very-grievous(-things) the of-the having-appeared star
παρεδήλου ἐπιτολή, καὶ οἱ παραδειχθέντες αὖθις πρὸς
indicated rising and the having-been-shown again toward
τὸ βόρειον μέρος ἀωρὶ τῶν νυκτῶν πύρινοι στύλοι, καὶ
the northern side untimely of-the nights fiery pillars and
τοὺς ὁρῶντας ἐκδειματούμενοι. καὶ γὰρ καὶ οὗτοι τήν τε
the(-men) seeing terrifying and for also these the both
συμβᾶσαν πρὸς τῶν Ταυροσκυθῶν τῆς Χερσῶνος ἅλωσιν
having-happened by the Tauroscythians — of-Cherson capture
παρεδήλουν, καὶ τὴν τῆς Βερῤῥοίας κατάσχεσιν παρὰ τῶν
indicated and the — of-Berrhoia seizure by the
Μυσῶν. ἔτι δὲ ὁ πρὸς δύσιν ἐπὶ καταφορὰν τοῦ φωσφόρου
Mysians still and the toward west at setting of-the light-bringer
ἀνίσχων ἀστήρ, ὃς ἑσπερίους ποιούμενος τὰς ἐπιτολάς,
rising star which evening making the risings
οὐδένα στηριγμὸν ἐφ' ἑνὸς διεφύλαττε κέντρου, λαμπρὰς δὲ
no fixity on one kept point bright and

καὶ τηλαυγεῖς τὰς ἀκτῖνας ἐπαφιείς, μεταβάσεις ἐποιεῖτο
also far-shining the rays sending-out changes made
συχνάς, πῆ μὲν βορειότερος ὁρώμενος, πῆ δὲ
frequent at-one-time indeed more-northerly seen at-another and
νοτιώτερος, ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ αὐτὴν τὴν μίαν ἐπιτολὴν καὶ
more-southerly it-is and when even the-very the one rising also
μεταμείβων τὸν αἰθέριον τόπον, καὶ ποιούμενος ἐναργῆ καὶ
changing the ethereal place and making clear and
σύντομον τὴν μετάβασιν· ὡς θαυμάζειν τοὺς ὁρῶντας
swift the change so-that to-marvel the(-men) seeing
καὶ καταπλήττεσθαι, καὶ οὐκ εἰς καλὸν τελευτήσειν οἴεσθαι
and to-be-stricken and not to good to-end to-think
τὴν τοῦ κομήτου ἀλλόκοτον κίνησιν. ὃ δὴ καὶ συνέβαινε
the of-the comet strange motion which indeed also happened
κατὰ τὴν τῶν πολλῶν ὑπόνοιαν. καὶ γὰρ ἑσπέρας
according-to the of-the many supposition and for evening
ἐνισταμένης, ἐν ᾗ μνήμην τοῦ μεγάλου Δημητρίου
setting-in on which memory of-the great Demetrios
καὶ Μάρτυρος τελεῖν παρέλαβεν ἡ συνήθεια, φρικώδης
and Martyr to-celebrate received the custom dreadful
ἐπενεχθεὶς σεισμός, καὶ οἷος οὐκ ἄλλος κατὰ ταύτας δὴ
having-come-upon earthquake and such-as not another in these indeed
συνέβη τὰς γενεάς, τά τε πυργώματα τοῦ Βυζαντίου πρὸς
happened the generations the both towers — of-Byzantium to
γῆν κατερίπωσε, καὶ τὰς πλείους ἑστίας ἀνέτρεψε, τάφον
ground threw-down and the most houses overturned tomb
αὐτὰς τοῖς οἰκοῦσιν ἀπεργασάμενος, τά τε προσέγγια
them for-the inhabitants having-made the both near
τοῦ Βυζαντίου χωρία μέχρις ἐδάφους κατέβαλε, καὶ πολὺν
— of-Byzantium places as-far-as ground cast-down and much
τῶν ἀγροίκων φθόρον ἐποίησεν· οὐ μόνον δέ, ἀλλὰ καὶ
of-the rustics destruction made not only and but also

τὸ ἡμισφαίριον τῆς ὑπερῴας τῆς μεγάλης ἐκκλησίας σὺν
the hemisphere of-the upper(-part) of-the great church with
τῇ πρὸς δύσιν ἀψίδι κατέβαλε καὶ εἰς γῆν κατερίπωσεν·
the toward west arch cast-down and to ground threw-down
ἅπερ αὖθις ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Βασίλειος ἐν ἓξ ἐνιαυτοῖς
which again the emperor Basil in six years
ἐδομήσατο. καὶ οἱ παγχάλεποι δὲ λιμοί, καὶ λοιμοί, αὐχμοί
built and the very-grievous and famines and plagues droughts
τε, καὶ ἐπικλύσεις, καὶ ἀνέμων ἐξαισίων ἐπιφοραί· ὁπηνίκα
both and floods and of-winds extraordinary onsets when
καὶ ὁ ἐν τοῖς Εὐτροπίου στύλος τῇ βίᾳ τῶν κυμάτων
also the in the of-Eutropios pillar by-the force of-the waves
κατηνέχθη, καὶ ὁ ἐν αὐτῷ μοναστὴς ἐναπεπνίγη τοῖς
was-brought-down and the in it monk was-drowned by-the
θαλασσίοις ῥοθίοις δεινῶς· καὶ ἡ ἀφορία δὲ τῆς γῆς,
of-the-sea surges terribly and the barrenness and of-the earth
καὶ τὰ ἐπισκήψαντα χαλεπὰ μετὰ τὴν τοῦ ἀστέρος
and the(-things) having-fallen-upon grievous after the of-the star
ἐπιτολήν, ἅπαντα ἐξεγένοντο. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν κατὰ
rising all came-about but these-things indeed in
μέρος εἰς τοὺς ἑαυτῶν καιροὺς ἡ ἱστορία παραδηλώσει.
detail in the their-own times the history will-indicate
Ὁ δὲ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἰωάννης, τότε τῶν τῆς Συρίας 11
the and emperor John then from-the(-parts) — of-Syria
ἀπάρας (ἐκεῖθεν γάρ, ὅθεν ἐξέβην, ἐπάνειμι), ἐπὶ
having-set-out from-there for whence I-went-out I-return to
τὸ Βυζάντιον ἴετο. ὁρῶν δὲ κατὰ πάροδον τήν τε
— Byzantium went seeing and on the-way — both
Λογγιάδα καὶ τὸν Δριζῆν, χώρας εὐγείους τε καὶ
Longias and — Drizes lands fertile both and
εὐδαίμονας, ἃς πολλοῖς ἱδρῶσι καὶ αἵμασιν ἡ Ῥωμαϊκὴ
prosperous which with-much sweat and with-blood the Roman

στρατιὰ τῇ βασιλείᾳ τὸ πρότερον ἀνεσώσατο, τότε
army for-the empire the before had-recovered then
δὲ παρὰ τοῦ προέδρου Βασιλείου καὶ παρακοιμωμένου
and by the proedros Basil and parakoimomenos
κατεχομένας, ἤσχαλλεν, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, καὶ ἠνιᾶτο, καὶ
held was-vexed as the likely and was-grieved and
τὴν πλεονεκτικὴν ἐκείνου βίαν ὠνείδιζεν. ὁ δὲ ἀναφανδὸν
the grasping his violence reproached he and openly
μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν ἀντιβαίνειν, τὴν τοῦ ἄνακτος δεδιὼς
indeed not was-able to-oppose the of-the lord fearing
ἀγανάκτησιν· λαθραίως δὲ τὰ ἐκείνου ἐμυκτήριζε λόγια,
indignation secretly but the his sneered-at sayings
καὶ τοῦτον, ἤδη βαρὺν αὑτῷ γεγενημένον δεσπότην,
and him already heavy to-himself having-become master
ἀμωσγέπως διενοεῖτο ἀποσκευάσασθαι. ἄρτι δὲ κατὰ τὴν
somehow intended to-get-rid-of just and at the
τῷ Ὀλύμπῳ παρακειμένην τῆς Ἀτρώας πεδιάδα ὁ βασιλεὺς
— to-Olympos lying-near — of-Atroa plain the emperor
ἀφικόμενος, πρὸς τὴν τοῦ πατρικίου Ῥωμανοῦ καὶ τῷ τοῦ
having-arrived at the of-the patrikios Romanos and in-the of-the
Σεβαστοφόρου διαπρέποντος ἀξιώματι ἑστίαν κατήγετο.
Sebastophoros distinguished rank house lodged
ἐνταῦθα λέγεταί τινα τῶν ἐξυπηρετουμένων ἐκτομίαν τῷ
there it-is-said some of-the serving eunuch the
αὐτοκράτορι, εἴτε οἴκοθεν δυσμενῶς πρὸς αὐτὸν διακείμενον,
emperor either of-himself hostilely toward him disposed
εἴτε καὶ πρὸς τούτων, τοῖς καλοῖς βασκαινόντων καὶ
or also by these the good(-things) envying and
μεταβολὰς τῶν πραγμάτων ἱμειρομένων ὁρᾶν, ὑπαχθέντα,
changes of-the affairs desiring to-see having-been-induced
καὶ ὑποσχέσεσι δωρεῶν παρακλαπέντα (ὅπερ δὴ τοῦ
and by-promises of-gifts having-been-beguiled which indeed than-the

προτέρου μᾶλλον καὶ λέγεται καὶ πιστεύεται), δηλητήριον
former more both is-said and is-believed poison
κερασάμενον παρὰ τὸν πότον ἐπιδοῦναι τῷ βασιλεῖ·
having-mixed at the drinking to-have-given to-the emperor
τὸν δέ, μηδέν τι τοιοῦτον φρασάμενον, ὡς σωτήριον
him and nothing at-all such having-suspected as saving
πόμα τὸ δηλητήριον ἐκπιεῖν. τῇ γοῦν ὑστεραίᾳ
drink the poison to-have-drunk-off on-the at-any-rate next-day
νάρκη τε τῶν μελῶν καὶ πάρεσις τοῦ παντὸς σώματος
numbness both of-the limbs and paralysis of-the whole body
αὐτῷ ἐξεγένετο, καὶ ἡ τῶν ἰατρῶν ἐπιστήμη τῷ ἀθρόῳ
to-him came-about and the of-the physicians knowledge at-the suddenness
τοῦ πάθους κενή τις καὶ ἄπρακτος ἀπηλέγχετο, μὴ
of-the affliction empty some and ineffective was-shown not
ἀκριβοῦσα διάγνωσιν τοῦ τοιούτου συμπτώματος. ὁ
attaining diagnosis of-the such symptom the
δὲ βασιλεύς, τὴν πρότερον ἐνοῦσαν αὐτῷ γιγαντώδη
and emperor the formerly being-in him giant-like
ῥώμην αἰφνίδιον καταβληθεῖσαν αἰσθόμενος, ἠπείγετο
strength suddenly cast-down perceiving hastened
καταλαβεῖν τὸ Βυζάντιον· ἐπέσπευδε δὲ καὶ τὴν ἐν τῷ
to-reach — Byzantium hurried and also the in the
τοῦ Σωτῆρος νεῷ, ὃν αὐτὸς ἐδείματο, κατασκευαζομένην
of-the Savior temple which himself had-built being-prepared
τῷ σωματίῳ τούτου σορὸν ἀπαρτισθῆναι ὡς τάχιστα.
for-the body his coffin to-be-completed as quickly-as-possible
συντείνας δὲ τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν, ἐς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν
having-pressed-on and the journey to the reigning(-city)
ἧκε, φιλοφρόνως μὲν ὑποδεχθεὶς πρὸς τῶν ἀστικῶν,
came kindly indeed received by the townsmen
ὀλιγοδρανέων δὲ ἤδη, καὶ ἆσθμα μύχιον καὶ δυσπρόσοδον
feeble and already and breath deep-within and hard-of-access

περιπνέων καὶ ἀναπεμπόμενος. ἄρτι δὲ εἰς τὴν ἀνακτορικὴν
breathing and sending-up just and into the palace
ἑστίαν πεφοιτηκώς, κλινοπετὴς ἐδείκνυτο, τῷ φαρμάκῳ
hearth having-come bedridden he-appeared by-the drug
καταπονούμενος. συνιεὶς δέ, ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἀνασφήλῃ τοῦ
being-worn-down perceiving and that not — he-would-recover from-the
τοιούτου πτώματος (τὸ γὰρ ἐνδομυχοῦν δεινὸν τὰ ἔγκατα
such fall the for lurking-within evil the entrails
χαλεπῶς ἐξεθέριζε), τῶν βασιλικῶν θησαυρῶν ἀφειδῶς
grievously was-reaping of-the imperial treasures unsparingly
ἀπαντλῶν, διεδίδου τοῖς πένησι, καὶ μάλιστα τοῖς
drawing-out he-distributed to-the poor and most to-the(-ones)
λελωβημένοις καὶ βεβρωμένα τῇ ἱερᾷ νόσῳ τὰ σώματα
maimed and eaten-away by-the holy disease the bodies
περιφέρουσιν, οἷς τῶν ἄλλων πενήτων φιλανθρωπότερον
carrying-about to-whom than-the other poor more-humanely
διετίθετο. Νικόλαόν τε, τὸν πρόεδρον Ἀδριανουπόλεως,
he-was-disposed Nicholas and the proedros of-Adrianople
εἰσκαλέσας, ἄνδρα θεῖόν τε καὶ σεβάσμιον, τὰ κατὰ
having-summoned a-man divine both and venerable the in
τὸν βίον αὐτῷ ἀνεκάλυψεν ἀγνοήματα, κρουνοὺς τῶν
the life to-him revealed ignorances streams of-the
ὀφθαλμῶν δακρύων ἐπαφιείς, καὶ τῷ τούτων λουτῆρι
eyes of-tears sending-forth and with-the their bath
τὰ αἴσχη καὶ τὰ ῥυπάσματα τῶν ἐσφαλμένων ῥυπτόμενος,
the shames and the filths of-the faults washing
καὶ τὴν Θεοτόκον ἐπιβοώμενος, ἀρωγὸν εὑρεῖν ἐν ἡμέρᾳ
and the God-bearer calling-upon a-helper to-find in day
τῆς δίκης, ὁπηνίκα παρὰ τῷ υἱῷ αὐτῆς καὶ Θεῷ
of-the judgment when before the son her and God
τὰ τῶν βροτῶν πρακτέα τοῖς ἀδεκάστοις ζυγοῖς καὶ
the of-the mortals deeds by-the incorruptible scales and

σταθμοῖς ταλαντεύεται. τοιαύτην ἐξ ἀδιστάκτου γνώμης
weights are-weighed such from undoubting mind
καὶ συντετριμμένης ψυχῆς τὴν ἐξομολόγησιν ὁ βασιλεὺς
and contrite soul the confession the emperor
ποιησάμενος, τῶν τῇδε μεθίσταται, καὶ πρὸς τὴν
having-made from-the(-things) here departs and to the
ἐκεῖσε μεταβαίνει κατάπαυσιν ἐν μηνὸς Ἰανουαρίου δεκάτῃ,
there passes-over rest in of-month January tenth
ἰνδίκτου δ΄, ἔτους ͵υπε΄, ταφεὶς ἐν τῷ κατὰ τὴν Χαλκῆν
of-indiction 4 of-year 6485 buried in the at the Chalke
τοῦ Σωτῆρος νεῷ, ὃν ἐκεῖνος μεγαλοπρεπῶς ἐκ βάθρων
of-the Savior temple which he magnificently from foundations
ἐδείματο. τοιοῦτον εὗρε τὸ τέλος ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Ἰωάννης
built such found the end the emperor John
τῆς αὐτοῦ βιοτῆς, ἀνὴρ βραχὺς μὲν τὴν ἡλικίαν τοῦ
of-the his life a-man short indeed the stature of-the
σώματος, ἡρωϊκὴν δέ τινα περιφέρων ἰσχύν, γενναῖός τις
body heroic but some carrying-about strength noble someone
γεγονὼς ἐν πολέμοις καὶ ἀκαταγώνιστος, καὶ πρὸς τοὺς
having-been in wars and invincible and toward the
κινδύνους εὔψυχος καὶ μεγαλότολμος· ζήσας μὲν τὸν
dangers stout-hearted and greatly-daring having-lived indeed the
πάντα χρόνον τῆς αὐτοῦ βιοτῆς ἔτη πεντήκοντα πρὸς
all time of-the his life years fifty in-addition-to
τῷ ἑνί, ἰθύνας δὲ τὴν τῆς βασιλείας ἡγεμονίαν εἰς
the one having-directed and the of-the empire leadership for
ἐνιαυτοὺς ἕξ, πρὸς ἡμέραις τριάκοντα.
years six in-addition-to days thirty

NIKEPHOROS PHOKAS

ΠΕΡΙ ΠΑΡΑΔΡΟΜΗΣ ΠΟΛΕΜΟΥ

Skirmishing

Lest time destroy it, the author sets down the method of skirmishing, though it is little needed in the East now that Christ has blunted the sons of Ishmael: with few men the generals of the frontier did what the whole army could not, in the days of the Cilicians and Chambdas. He learned it from Bardas the Caesar; Constantine Meleinos and the emperor Nikephoros used it too, and Nikephoros bade him write it down. Lookouts are to be posted three or four miles apart in the mountain passes, relieved every fifteen days, and moved often; beacon-posts and spies, trapezitai and tasinarioi, warn of the enemy. When the enemy moves, the general must seize the heights and block the roads, so that the raiders turn back or go round by a longer road.

Τὴν τῆς παραδρομῆς μέθοδον παραδοῦναι βουλόμενοι,
the of-the skirmishing method to-hand-down wishing
εἰ τάχα καὶ κατὰ τὸν παρόντα καιρὸν μὴ χρειώδης
if perhaps even at the present time not useful
ἐστὶν εἰς τὰ τῆς ἕω μέρη, ἅτε Χριστοῦ, τοῦ ἀληθινοῦ
it-is for the of-the east parts since Christ the true
Θεοῦ ἡμῶν, τὸ πολὺ τῆς καθ' ἡμῶν δυνάμεως καὶ
God our the great(-part) of-the against us power and
ἰσχύος τῶν τοῦ Ἰσμαὴλ ἐκγόνων ἀμβλύναντος, καὶ τὰς
strength of-the — of-Ishmael descendants having-blunted and the
ἐφόδους αὐτῶν ἀναχαιτίσαντος· ἀλλ' οὖν, ἵνα μὴ τὴν
attacks their having-checked but nevertheless so-that not the
λήθην καὶ ἄγνοιαν ἐπεισαγαγὼν ὁ χρόνος φθείρῃ
forgetfulness and ignorance having-brought-in the time should-destroy
τὸ ταύτης ἐπωφελὲς καὶ ἐξαφανίζῃ, δεῖν ᾠήθημεν
the its usefulness and should-make-vanish to-be-needful we-thought
γραφῇ παραδοῦναι ταύτην· ἵν', εἴ ποτε ταύτης δεήσει
to-writing to-hand-over it so-that if ever of-it there-will-be-need
Χριστιανοῖς, καιροῦ τινος πρὸς τὸ μέλλον καλοῦντος,
for-Christians time some for the future calling

ἕτοιμός ἐστι συνεργὸς ἀγαθὴ τῷ τε κοινῷ παντί, καὶ
ready it-is helper good to-the both common whole and
τοῖς αὐτὴν μεταχειριζομένοις. ἡμεῖς γοῦν ταύτην οὐ
to-the(-men) it handling we at-any-rate it not
μονονοὺκ ἀκοῇ παρειλήφαμεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ πεῖράν τινα παρ᾽
only by-hearsay have-received but also experience some from
αὐτῆς ἐδιδάχθημεν· τὸ μέν, αὐτοὺς σχόντες διδασκάλους
it were-taught — indeed ourselves having-had teachers
καὶ παιδευτὰς τοὺς ταύτην, σχεδὸν εἰπεῖν, ἐφευρόντας
and instructors the(-men) it almost to-say having-invented
τὴν μέθοδον· τὸ δέ, καὶ αὐτοὶ μόνοι ταύτῃ χρησάμενοι,
the method — and also ourselves alone it having-used
καὶ πεῖραν αὐτῆς ἐγκολπωσάμενοί τινα, κατὰ τὸ ἡμῖν
and experience of-it having-taken-to-heart some according-to the for-us
ἐφικτόν. αὕτη τοίνυν κατὰ τοῦτο ἔχει τὸ χρήσιμον, ὅτι περ,
attainable this therefore in this has the usefulness that indeed
οἳ ταύτην μετήλθοσαν, μετ᾽ ὀλίγου μαχίμου λαοῦ μέγιστα
who it pursued with few warlike troops very-great
καὶ ἀξιομνημόνευτα ἐξετέλεσαν ἔργα. καὶ γάρ, ἅτινα μὴ
and memorable accomplished deeds and for which not
κατορθῶσαι ἴσχυσεν ἢ ἐτόλμησεν ἡ Ῥωμαίων σύμπασα
to-achieve was-able or dared the of-Romans whole
στρατιά, ὅτε τὰ τῶν Κιλίκων καὶ τοῦ Χαμβδᾶ
army when the(-affairs) of-the Cilicians and — of-Chambdas
ἤκμαζεν, εἷς ἐνίοτε τῶν ἀρίστων στρατηγῶν, σὺν μόνῳ
flourished one sometimes of-the best generals with alone
τῷ τοῦ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν θέματος λαῷ, φρονίμως καὶ ἐμπείρως
the of-the under him theme troops prudently and skillfully
τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπιτηδευσάμενος, καὶ συνετῶς διατεθεὶς καὶ
the enemies having-handled and wisely disposed and
στρατηγήσας, ἀπήρτισε. τοῦτο δέ φαμεν, οὐχ ὅτι τοῦ
having-been-general completed this and we-say not because than-the

πλείονος τὸ ὀλίγον προκρίνομεν μάχιμον· οὐδ' ὅτι ταύτην
greater the small we-prefer fighting(-force) nor because it
ἐξαίρομεν τῶν λοιπῶν στρατηγημάτων καὶ ἐπιτηδευμάτων
we-exalt above-the other stratagems and practices
τῆς τακτικῆς· ἀλλ' ὅτι στρατηγῶν τοῖς ἀρίστοις αὕτη
of-the tactics but because of-generals for-the best this
συνεργὸς ἀρίστη καθέστηκεν· ἵν', ὅτε μὴ κατὰ πρόσωπον
helper best has-become so-that when not to face
τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀντιτάττεσθαι δύναιντο, ταύτῃ τῇ μεθόδῳ
the enemies to-array-against they-might-be-able this the method
χρώμενοι, ἀβλαβεῖς τε ἑαυτοὺς καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν συντηροῖεν
using unharmed both themselves and the own might-preserve
χώραν. ταύτην Βάρδας ὁ μακαρίτης Καῖσαρ, ὅσα
country this Bardas the late Caesar as-far-as
ἐμὲ γινώσκειν, εἰς ἄκρον κατώρθωκε, καὶ παντελῶς
I to-know to height achieved and wholly
ἀφανισθεῖσαν ἀνενεώσατο (ἵνα μὴ τοὺς παλαιοὺς τῶν
having-vanished renewed so-that not the old of-the
στρατηγῶν ἀπαριθμῶ καθ' ἕκαστον, μόνους δὲ τοὺς πᾶσι
generals I-enumerate by each only and the(-ones) to-all
γνωρίμους καὶ καθ' ἡμᾶς)· ὃς ἐν τοῖς γειτονοῦσι τῇ Ταρσῷ
known and in our(-time) who in the bordering — Tarsus
θέμασι, τῇ τε Καππαδοκίᾳ καὶ τῷ Ἀνατολικῷ στρατηγῶν,
themes the both Cappadocia and the Anatolikon as-general
μυριάκις τὰς τῶν Ταρσέων καὶ λοιπῶν Κιλίκων δυνάμεις
ten-thousand-times the of-the Tarsians and other Cilicians forces
ἐτραυμάτισε, καὶ μέγιστα κατ' αὐτῶν ἀνεστήσατο τρόπαια.
wounded and greatest against them set-up trophies
παρ' οὗ καὶ ἡμεῖς ταύτην γυμνασθέντες τὴν μέθοδον,
from whom also we this having-been-trained-in the method
τὴν ταύτης κἂν ποσῶς παρειλήφαμεν πεῖραν. πρὸς
the of-it even somewhat have-received experience in-addition-to

τούτῳ καὶ Κωνσταντῖνος Πατρίκιος, ᾧ Μελεϊνὸς
this also Constantine Patrikios to-whom Meleinos
ἐπίκλησις, χρόνους πλείστους Καππαδοκῶν στρατηγήσας
surname times very-many of-Cappadocians having-been-general
καὶ ταύτην συνεργὸν ἔχων, οὐκ ἐλάχιστα ἀπειργάσατο
and this helper having not least accomplished
κατορθώματα. σὺν τούτοις καὶ ὁ κύριος Νικηφόρος, ὁ
successes with these also the lord Nikephoros the
ἀοίδιμος βασιλεύς, ταύτην ἄκρως μετῆλθεν· ὃς δήπου
celebrated emperor this supremely pursued who indeed
στρατηγῶν, καὶ ταύτῃ χρώμενος, πάμπολλα καὶ ἀξιάγαστα
as-general and this using very-many and admirable
ἔργα πεποίηκε, μυριάκις, ὡς εἰπεῖν, τοὺς πολεμίους
deeds has-done ten-thousand-times so to-say the enemies
τρεψάμενος, καὶ μέγιστα τούτων στρατεύματα κατακόψας.
having-routed and very-great their armies having-cut-down
οὗ τὰς ἀριστείας, καθ' ὃν ἐστρατήγει καιρόν, συγγράφειν
whose the exploits in which he-was-general time to-write
ἢ ἀπαριθμεῖσθαι, ὀχληρὸν ἔσται τοῖς ἐντυγχάνουσι,
or to-enumerate burdensome will-be to-the(-ones) reading
διά τε τὸ ὑπερβάλλον πλῆθος, καὶ τὸ παρὰ πολλῶν
because-of both the excessive multitude and the by many
γινώσκεσθαι. ὃς ταύτην ἔργῳ μεμαθηκὼς εὔχρηστον
to-be-known who it by-deed having-learned useful
οὖσαν, ἐγγράφως πρὸς κοινὴν λυσιτέλειαν, πῶς δεῖ
being in-writing for common benefit how one-must
χρῆσθαι ταύτῃ, ἐξέθετο· κἀμοὶ παρηγγύησε, καθ' ὅσον
to-use it set-out and-to-me enjoined as-far as
οἷόν τε ἀκριβῶς περὶ αὐτῆς συγγράψαι, καὶ παραδοῦναι
possible — exactly about it to-write and to-hand-down
τοῖς μεθεξῆς. μὴ μόνον δὲ περὶ ταύτης τῆς τῇ ἕῳ
to-the(-ones) after not only and about this the for-the east

προσηκούσης, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ τῆς τῇ ἑσπέρᾳ ὠφελίμου
fitting but also about the for-the west useful
καθεστηκυίας· διὰ τὸ ἐν αὐτῇ πλεῖστά τε στρατηγῆσαι,
being because-of the in it very-many both to-have-been-general
καὶ πεῖραν, ὅσον οἷόν τε ἦν, φύσει τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ
and experience as-much-as possible — was by-nature the our
ἀθροῖσαι. ἀλλὰ περὶ ἐκείνης μὲν ἰδίᾳ καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις
to-have-gathered but about that indeed separately and in other(-places)
εἰρήσεται· νυνὶ δὲ σκοπὸς ἡμῖν περὶ τῆς ἑτέρας διαλαβεῖν.
will-be-told now and aim for-us about the other to-treat
ὅθεν καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου τηρῶν ἐντολήν, συνεργῷ τῇ τοῦ
whence also the his keeping command helper the —
Θεοῦ χάριτι χρώμενος, ἥτις ἐν ἅπασι συνεπιλαμβάνεται
of-God grace using which in all-things lends-a-hand
τοῖς καλοῖς, ὧδέ πως ἀπάρχομαι τῆς ὑποθέσεως.
to-the good(-things) thus somehow I-begin the subject
Περὶ βιγλῶν, καὶ πόσον διάστημα ὀφείλουσιν ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων 1
about watch-posts and how-much distance they-ought from one-another
μία ἑκάστη διΐστασθαι.
one each to-stand-apart
Τοὺς τῶν μεγάλων καὶ ἀκριτικῶν θεμάτων τὴν πρόνοιαν
the(-men) of-the great and frontier themes the care
ἀναδεχομένους, καὶ ὑπὸ τὴν αὐτῶν ἐπικράτειαν τὰς
taking-up and under the their authority the
κλεισούρας ἔχοντας, πάσῃ μηχανῇ, καὶ προθέσει, καὶ
kleisouras having by-every means and purpose and
ἀγρύπνῳ ἐπιμελείᾳ προσήκει σπουδάζειν καὶ ἀγωνίζεσθαι,
sleepless diligence it-befits to-be-zealous and to-strive
τὰς τῶν Ῥωμαίων χώρας διαφυλάττειν τῆς τῶν
the of-the Romans lands to-keep from-the of-the
πολεμίων ἐπιδρομῆς ἀσινεῖς καὶ ἀνεπηρεάστους, βιγλάτορας
enemies incursion unharmed and unmolested lookouts

ἐφιστῶντας ῥωμαλέους καὶ ἐπιτηδείους, καὶ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἰς
setting-over strong and suitable and the roads to
ἄκρον ἐπισταμένους. καὶ εἰ μὲν ὄρη εἰσὶν ὑψηλὰ καὶ
height knowing and if indeed mountains there-are high and
δύσβατα διορίζοντα τὴν πολεμίαν, ἐν τούτοις τὰς βίγλας
hard-to-pass bounding the enemy(-land) in these the watch-posts
ἵστασθαι· ἀπέχειν δὲ τὰς στάσεις τῶν βιγλατόρων ἄχρι
to-be-set to-be-distant and the stations of-the lookouts up-to
μιλλίων γ′ ἢ δ′. καὶ ἡνίκα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἐξερχομένους
miles 3 or 4 and when the enemies coming-out
θεάσονται, δρομαίως ἀπέρχεσθαι εἰς τὸ ἕτερον στασίδιον,
they-will-see at-a-run to-go-off to the other post
καὶ ἀπαγγέλλειν ἃ ἐθεάσαντο, κἀκείνους πάλιν πρὸς τὸ
and to-report what they-saw and-those again to the
ἕτερον στασίδιον σπουδῇ πολλῇ· καὶ οὕτω καθεξῆς μηνύεσθαι
other post with-haste much and thus in-order to-be-informed
τὰ τῶν καβαλλαρίων στασίδια εἰς τοὺς ἐφωμάλους τόπους
the of-the horsemen posts in the level places
ἱστάμενα, καὶ δι᾽ αὐτῶν ἀναμανθάνειν τὸν στρατηγὸν
standing and through them to-learn the general
τὴν τῶν ἐθνῶν ἔφοδον. καρτερεῖν δὲ αὐτοὺς ἡμέρας
the of-the peoples attack to-endure and them days
πεντεκαίδεκα ἐν τῇ τῶν ὁδῶν φυλακῇ, ἐπιφερομένους καὶ
fifteen in the of-the roads guard carrying also
τὴν διαρκοῦσαν αὐτοῖς τροφὴν τῶν αὐτῶν ἡμερῶν· εἶθ᾽
the sufficient for-them food of-the same days then
οὕτως ἀπέρχεσθαι ἑτέρους εἰς τὴν τούτων ὑπαλλαγήν,
thus to-go-off others to the their relief
καλῶς ἀδνουμιαζομένους καὶ εὐτρεπιζομένους παρὰ τῶν
well mustered and made-ready by the
ἀρχόντων, καὶ σῴους καὶ ἀνελλιπεῖς κατὰ τὸν τυπωθέντα
officers and safe and complete according-to the prescribed

ἀριθμὸν ἀποστελλομένους, καὶ μὴ δι᾽ αἰσχρὸν κέρδος
number being-sent and not for shameful gain
οἴκοι καθέζεσθαι παρὰ τῶν ἀρχόντων αὐτῶν ἐαθῶσιν.
at-home to-sit by the officers their let-them-be-allowed
ἔξεστι δὲ τοὺς βιγλάτορας ἀφορᾷν, ἐν οἷς ἄπληκτα
it-is-permitted and the lookouts to-look-out in which encampments
τῶν πολεμίων ἁρμόζει γίνεσθαι, ἐν οἷς ὕδωρ ἐστὶ διαρκές,
of-the enemies it-is-fitting to-be in which water is sufficient
καὶ τόπος ἐφώμαλος· ἑτέρους δὲ βλέπειν, ἐν οἷς ἡ ὁδὸς
and place level others and to-watch in which the road
ἀποτελεῖ στένωμα· ἄλλους δέ, ὅπου ποταμὸς ὑπάρχει
forms a-narrow-pass others and where a-river is
δυσπέρατος. καὶ τούτων οὕτως ἀσφαλῶς φυλαττόντων, οὐ
hard-to-cross and these thus safely guarding not
δυνήσονται οἱ πολέμιοι λάθρα ποιήσασθαι τὴν ἐξέλευσιν.
will-be-able the enemies secretly to-make the coming-out
ἀποστέλλειν τε πιστοὺς ἀνθρώπους καὶ ἐμπειροτάτους,
to-send and trustworthy men and most-experienced
τοῦ ἐφορᾷν αὐτούς, εἴ γε καλῶς καὶ ἀγρύπνως
for-the to-oversee them whether at-least well and sleeplessly
τὰ κατατόπια αὐτῶν διαφυλάττουσι. καὶ οἱ τυπωθέντες
the stations their they-guard and the prescribed
βιγλάτορες σῷοι τῷ ἀριθμῷ καὶ μὴ ἐλλιπεῖς ἀπέρχωνται,
lookouts safe in-the number and not deficient go-off
καὶ μὴ καταλιμπάνωσι τὰς στάσεις αὐτῶν, ἐν αἷς βλέπειν
and not leave the stations their in which to-watch
καὶ φυλάττειν τὰς ὁδοὺς ἐτάχθησαν, μήτε χρονίζειν ἐπὶ τοῖς
and to-guard the roads they-were-assigned nor to-linger at the
αὐτῶν στασιδίοις, ἀλλ᾽ ἐναλλάσσειν τοὺς τόπους καὶ ἀλλαχοῦ
their posts but to-exchange the places and elsewhere

μεταβαίνειν· ἵνα μὴ ἐπὶ πολὺ ἐγχρονίζοντες τοῖς αὐτοῖς
to-move so-that not for long lingering in-the same
τόποις, διαγινωσκόμενοι εὐάλωτοι γίνωνται τοῖς ἐχθροῖς.
places being-recognized easy-to-capture they-become to-the enemies

2 Περὶ τῶν καμινοβιγλίων καὶ κατασκόπων.
about the beacon-posts and spies

Ἀναγκαία δὲ ἡ τῶν καμινοβιγλατόρων ὑπάρχει ὠφέλεια·
necessary and the of-the beacon-watchers is usefulness
καὶ χρὴ τὸν στρατηγὸν καὶ τούτων πολλὴν ποιεῖσθαι
and must the general also of-these much to-make
τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, καὶ ἐν ἐπιτηδείοις τόποις ἐφιστᾷν τὰ
the care and in suitable places to-set the
καμινοβίγλια· ὅπως, ἡνίκα κίνησις τῶν ἐχθρῶν γένηται, καὶ
beacon-posts so-that when movement of-the enemies happens both
οἱ βιγλάτορες ταύτης αἴσθωνται διὰ τῶν καμινοβίγλων,
the lookouts it perceive through the beacon-posts
καὶ ὁ στρατηγὸς τὴν ἐξέλευσιν τῶν ἐχθρῶν προγινώσκῃ,
also the general the coming-out of-the enemies may-know-beforehand
καὶ ποίαν ὁδὸν ἐξελθεῖν μέλλουσι· καὶ αἱ χῶραι, δι᾽ αὐτῶν
and by-what road to-come-out they-are-about and the lands through them
τε καὶ τῶν ἐκσπηλατόρων καταμηνυόμεναι, τοῖς ὀχυρώμασι
both and the scouts being-warned to-the strongholds
καταφεύγωσι, καὶ τὰ τούτων θρέμματα. ἐν δὲ ταῖς ἄκραις
may-flee and the their flocks in and the frontiers
τῶν Ἀρμενιακῶν θεμάτων, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἀρμένιοι οὐ καλῶς οὐδὲ
of-the Armeniac themes since the Armenians not well nor
ἀσφαλῶς τὴν τῶν βιγλῶν ἐκτελοῦσι δουλείαν, ὀφειλόμενόν
safely the of-the watch-posts perform service owed
ἐστι φυλάττεσθαι τὸν ἀπὸ παλαιοῦ κρατήσαντα τύπον ἐν
it-is to-be-kept the from old prevailing custom in
ταῖς βίγλαις τῶν Ἀρμενίων· καὶ ἀνθρώπους ἐπιλέγεσθαι
the watch-posts of-the Armenians and men to-be-picked

καὶ ἀπογράφεσθαι ἐπιτηδείους, λαμβάνοντας μισθὸν ἀπὸ
and to-be-enrolled suitable receiving pay from
τοῦ στρατοῦ ἐπισωρευόμενον, ὑπὲρ ὧν ὁ τοιοῦτος
the army heaped-up in-place-of which the such
στρατὸς τῇ τῶν βιγλῶν λειτουργίᾳ ὑπηρετεῖν ὤφειλεν·
army in-the of-the watch-posts duty to-serve ought
ὡσαύτως καὶ ἀννώναν ἑκάστῳ μηνὶ τὴν τετυπωμένην· καὶ
likewise also ration each month the prescribed and
ὑπαλλάττειν αὐτοὺς καθ' ἕκαστον μῆνα, καὶ δι' αὐτῶν
to-relieve them by each month and through them
τὰς ὁδούς, ἐν αἷς οἱ πολέμιοι ἐξέρχονται, φυλάττειν
the roads in which the enemies come-out to-guard
ἀσφαλῶς. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ αὐτοὶ οἱ μετὰ μισθοῦ καὶ
safely but since not-even they the(-men) with pay and
ἀννώνας, Ἀρμένιοι ὄντες, καλῶς τὴν τῶν βιγλῶν ὑπηρετοῦσι
ration Armenians being well the of-the watch-posts perform
δουλείαν, ἀπὸ τῶν ἀποστελλομένων κατασκόπων χρὴ τὰς
service from the being-sent spies must the
κινήσεις τῶν φωσσάτων ἀναμανθάνειν, καὶ τραπεζίτας
movements of-the armies to-learn and trapezitai
ἐπιλέγεσθαι γενναίους καὶ ἀνδρείους, οὓς οἱ Ἀρμένιοι
to-be-picked noble and brave whom the Armenians
τασιναρίους καλοῦσι, καὶ ἐν ματρικίοις ἀπογράφεσθαι, καὶ
tasinarioi call and in rolls to-be-enrolled and
ἀρχηγοὺς αὐτοῖς ἐφιστᾷν, οἷς, πρὸς τῇ ἀνδρείᾳ,
leaders over-them to-set to-whom in-addition-to the bravery
καὶ πολλὴ ἐμπειρία τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῶν τῆς Συρίας
also much experience of-the roads and of-the — of-Syria
χωρῶν πρόσεστι· καὶ τούτους διηνεκῶς ἀποστέλλειν,
lands is-present and these continually to-send
τοῦ κατέρχεσθαι εἰς τὰς τῶν πολεμίων χώρας, καὶ
for-the to-go-down into the of-the enemies lands and

καινοτομεῖν αὐτὰς καὶ βλάπτειν· καὶ εἴ που δυνηθῶσι,
to-harass them and to-harm and if anywhere they-be-able
τινὰς κατασχεῖν τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ πρὸς τὸν τὴν ἀρχὴν
some to-seize of-the enemies and to the the command
διέποντα στρατηγὸν ἀποκομίζειν, ὅπως δι᾽ αὐτῶν τὰς
holding general to-bring so-that through them the
τῶν ἐχθρῶν κινήσεις καὶ βουλὰς ἀναμανθάνῃ.
of-the enemies movements and counsels he-may-learn

3 Περὶ κινήσεως ἐχθρῶν, καὶ τοῦ προκατασχεθῆναι τὰς
about movement of-enemies and of-the to-be-occupied-first the
δυσχωρίας.
rough-places

Ἀναδιδασκόμενος δὲ ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰς τῶν ἐχθρῶν
being-informed and the general the of-the enemies
κινήσεις, ὀφείλει καὶ αὐτὸς τὸν ἴδιον λαὸν ἐπισυνάγειν
movements ought also himself the own troops to-gather
καὶ ἐξοπλίζειν, καὶ πρὸς τὰς ἄκρας παραγίνεσθαι, καὶ
and to-arm and to the frontiers to-come and
τὸ πεζικὸν ἅπαν ἐπισυνάγειν ἐπὶ τὴν ὁδόν, καθ᾽ ἣν
the infantry all to-gather onto the road by which
ὁρμήσουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι ἐξελθεῖν. καὶ εἰ μὲν μετ᾽ ὀλίγης
will-set-out the enemies to-come-out and if indeed with small
δυνάμεως τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἐξέρχεσθαι ἀναμάθῃ, σπευσάτω
force the enemies to-come-out he-learn let-him-hasten
προσυπαντῆσαι αὐτοῖς, καὶ καταπολεμῆσαι μετὰ τοῦ
to-meet them and to-defeat with the
πεζικοῦ λαοῦ, καὶ τῶν ἱππέων, εἴ γε τὸ τῶν πεζῶν
infantry troops and the horsemen if at-least the of-the foot-soldiers
στράτευμα συναγαγεῖν καὶ συστῆσαι δεδύνηται. καὶ ἐπεὶ
army to-gather and to-assemble he-has-been-able and since
εἰς τὰ στενώματα καὶ τὰς δυσχωρίας ἐπιτηδειότερός ἐστιν
in the narrow-passes and the rough-places more-suitable is

ὁ μετὰ τῶν πεζῶν πόλεμος δέον ἐστί, προκαταλαμβάνειν
the with the foot-soldiers war needful it-is to-occupy-first
καὶ κατέχειν τὰ ὑψηλότερα τῶν ὀρῶν μετ᾽ αὐτῶν, καὶ
and to-hold the higher(-parts) of-the mountains with them and
ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων μερῶν, εἴπερ ἡ θέσις τοῦ τόπου ἐστὶν
from both sides if-indeed the position of-the place is
ἐπιτήδειος, τὰς πεζικὰς διϊστᾶν παρατάξεις. ἐν οἷς δὲ
suitable the infantry to-set-apart battle-lines in which and
ἱππέων ἁρμόζει πόλεμον γίνεσθαι, συνεῖναι τοῖς πεζοῖς
of-horsemen it-fits war to-be to-be-with the foot-soldiers
καὶ ἱππεῖς· ἵνα τὴν τοιαύτην παρασκευὴν καὶ κατάσχεσιν
also horsemen so-that the such preparation and occupation
τῶν στενωμάτων ἀκούοντες οἱ πολέμιοι, ἢ τῆς ὁρμῆς
of-the narrow-passes hearing the enemies either from-the rush
ἐπισχῶσι τὴν φοράν, ἢ καταγωνισθῶσι Θεοῦ συνεργίᾳ.
may-check the onrush or may-be-defeated by-God's help
ὅπου δὲ οὐκ ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν μερῶν ἡ τοῦ τόπου
where and not from both the sides the of-the place
θέσις προσβαλεῖν πόλεμον ἁρμόζει, ἀλλ᾽ ἐξ ἑνός, ὁμοίως
position to-make war fits but from one likewise
κἀκεῖνο τὸ παρέχον μέρος προκατασχεῖν δεῖ. ἐν οἷς
that-too the offering side to-occupy-first must in which
δὲ τὴν προσβολὴν τοῦ πολέμου ἀφ᾽ ὑψηλοῦ βουνοῦ τὸ
and the attack of-the war from high hill the
τοῦ τόπου ἀνεπιτήδειον γενέσθαι διακωλύει, ἀλλὰ μικρόν
of-the place unsuitable to-be prevents but small
τι προσανωφερής ἐστιν ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ τραχεῖα, ἔχουσα
somewhat sloping-upward is the road and rough having
καὶ ῥύακας, ὡς ἐκ τούτων στενωτάτην καὶ αὐτὴν
also gullies so-that from these narrowest also it
εὑρίσκεσθαι, χρὴ τὴν τῶν πεζῶν παράταξιν ὡσαύτως
to-be-found must the of-the foot-soldiers battle-line likewise

ἀπὸ τῶν ὑψηλοτέρων παρασκευάζειν, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν
from the higher(-parts) to-prepare and the road
κρατεῖν καὶ ἀποφράττειν δι᾽ ὁπλιτῶν ἀσπιδοφόρων καὶ
to-hold and to-block through hoplites shield-bearing and
ἀκοντιστῶν· ὄπισθεν δὲ τούτων τοὺς ἐκ χειρῶν λίθους
javelin-men behind and these the(-men) from hands stones
βάλλοντας, σὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονίτας·
throwing with them and also bowmen and slingers
καὶ μετὰ τὴν πρώτην παράταξιν καὶ δευτέραν ἑπομένην
and after the first battle-line also a-second following
αὐτῇ παρασκευάζειν· ἑκατέρωθεν δὲ τῆς παρατάξεως τῆς
it to-prepare on-each-side and of-the battle-line of-the
φυλαττούσης τὴν μέσην ὁδόν, ἀκοντιστὰς καθιστᾷν, ψιλούς
guarding the middle road javelin-men to-station light(-troops)
τε, καὶ σφενδονίτας. εἰ δὲ καὶ ἑτέρας ὁδοὺς λέγεται εἶναι
both and slingers if and also other roads it-is-said to-be
δεξιᾷ καὶ εὐωνύμῳ τῆς παρατάξεως τῆς φυλαττούσης τὴν
on-right and on-left of-the battle-line of-the guarding the
δημοσίαν ὁδόν, ἃς οἱ ἀκρῖται ἀτραποὺς καλοῦσι, δέον καὶ
public road which the borderers paths call needful also
ταύτας κρατεῖσθαι μετὰ πεζῶν, καὶ φυλάττεσθαι ἀκριβῶς·
these to-be-held with foot-soldiers and to-be-guarded exactly
μή ποτε, μανθανόντων τῶν πολεμίων τὴν δημοσίαν ὁδὸν
lest ever learning the enemies the public road
ἐν ἀσφαλείᾳ κρατεῖσθαι μετὰ πλήθους λαοῦ, εἰς ἑτέραν τῶν
in safety to-be-held with multitude of-troops into another of-the
ἐκ πλαγίων ὁρμήσωσι, καί, εἰ μὴ καλῶς καὶ ἀσφαλῶς
from sides they-rush and if not well and safely
φυλάττηται, εὕρωσιν ἐκεῖθεν πάροδον, καὶ γενηθῶσιν ἐκ
it-is-guarded they-find thence passage and get on

πλαγίου ἢ καὶ ἐκ νώτου τῶν παρατάξεων, καὶ περισπασμὸν
flank or also at back of-the battle-lines and distraction
καὶ φόβον τῷ Ῥωμαϊκῷ στρατῷ προξενήσωσιν.
and fear to-the Roman army cause
ἀμφοτέρων δὲ ἀσφαλῶς φυλαττομένων, ἢ πρὸς μάχην
both and safely being-guarded either to battle
τῶν πολεμίων ὁρμώντων Θεοῦ συνεργίᾳ καταισχυνθήσονται,
the enemies rushing by-God's help will-be-put-to-shame
ἢ ὀῤῥωδίᾳ κατασχεθέντες δι᾽ ἄλλης ὁδοῦ, πολλῶν
or by-dread having-been-seized through another road of-many
ἡμερῶν διάστημα ἀπεχούσης, τὴν ὁρμὴν ποιήσονται.
days distance being-away the rush will-make
καὶ ὡς ἐντεῦθεν δύο κακὰ προσγενήσονται τοῖς ἐχθροῖς,
and so thence two evils will-befall the enemies
καταλιποῦσι τὰ τούτων ἄπληκτα καὶ τὴν εὐθεῖαν ὁδόν· ἓν
having-left the their encampments and the straight road one
μέν, ταλαιπωρηθῆναι τῷ τῶν πολλῶν ἡμερῶν διαστήματι·
indeed to-be-distressed by-the of-the many days distance
ἕτερον δέ, τὸ καὶ ἀπώλειαν αὐτοῖς ἐπάγον, τὸ αὐτοὺς
(the)-other and the also destruction to-them bringing the them
μὲν δειλανδρῆσαι καὶ ἀθυμίᾳ ὑποβληθῆναι· τοὺς δὲ
indeed to-be-cowardly and to-despondency to-be-subjected the and
Ῥωμαίους προθυμωτέρους καὶ εὐτολμωτέρους πρὸς τὸν
Romans more-eager and more-daring for the
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι. οἷον δὴ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄνω
against them war to-become such-as indeed also in the upper
χρόνοις ἀλήστῳ τῷ Χαμβδᾷ ἐκ τρίτου παθεῖν συμβέβηκε·
times unforgettable — to-Chambdas for a-third-time to-suffer happened
δὶς μὲν ἐν τοῖς χρόνοις τοῦ ἀοιδίμου καὶ τρισμάκαρος
twice indeed in the times of-the celebrated and thrice-blessed
Κωνσταντίνου τοῦ Πορφυρογεννήτου βασιλέως· ἅπαξ δὲ
Constantine the Porphyrogennetos emperor once and

ἐπὶ τοῦ καλοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμανοῦ, τοῦ μακαρίτου υἱοῦ.
under the good emperor Romanos the late son
καὶ πάντες σχεδὸν τὴν τότε γενομένην πανολεθρίαν τῶν
and all almost the then having-happened utter-ruin of-the
ἀρνητῶν τοῦ Χριστοῦ ἀκριβῶς ἐπίστανται. ἀλλὰ καὶ
deniers — of-Christ exactly know but also
ὁ λαὸς τῶν Ταρσέων καὶ τῆς τῶν Κιλίκων χώρας ἐν
the troops of-the Tarsians and of-the of-the Cilicians land in
διαφόροις τόποις τῶν στενωμάτων παρὰ τῶν τότε τῆς
different places of-the narrow-passes by the then the
ἄκρας προνοουμένων στρατηγῶν κατετροπώθησαν.
frontier caring-for generals were-routed

II · RAIDS AND THE SHADOWING OF THE ENEMY

It is better to attack the enemy secretly on their return, worn out and laden with booty, than in the passes on the way in; the general holds the springs and carries water in skins. He learns a raiding force's numbers from its tracks, hides near the villages it will raid, and falls on it when it scatters. When a great army gathers, he sends spies and gifts to the emirs, and shadows it with scouts on foot and foursomes of horsemen.

4 Περὶ τοῦ ποιεῖσθαι λάθρα τὰς κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἐπιθέσεις,
about the to-make secretly the against the enemies attacks
καὶ περὶ τοῦ προσυπαντᾷν τοὺς πολεμίους, πρὸς τὴν
and about the to-meet the enemies toward the
ἰδίαν ἐπαναστρέφοντας.
own(-land) returning
Χρὴ δὲ καὶ τοῦτο διὰ σκοποῦ καὶ μελέτης ἔχειν
must and also this through aim and study to-have
τὸν στρατηγόν, καὶ πᾶσαν σπουδὴν τίθεσθαι, λάθρα
the general and all zeal to-put secretly

καὶ ἀδοκήτως, εἰ οἷόν τε, τὰς τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἐπιθέσεις
and unexpectedly if possible — the of-the enemies attacks
ποιεῖσθαι. τοῦ γὰρ τοιούτου ἐπιτηδεύματος τυγχάνων ὁ
to-make of-the for such practice attaining the
στρατηγός, καὶ μετ᾽ ὀλιγοστοῦ λαοῦ πολλοὺς τῶν πολεμίων
general even with very-few troops many of-the enemies
κατατροπώσεται. εἰ δέ, ὡς ἀνωτέρω δεδήλωται, καὶ τόπου
will-rout if and as above has-been-shown also place
ἐπιτύχῃ ἐν τοῖς στενώμασιν, ἐκ δύο μερῶν τοῦ κατὰ τῶν
he-find in the narrow-passes from two sides of-the against the
ἐχθρῶν πολέμου τὸ ἐπιτήδειον ἔχοντος, ἀδιστάκτως ἔχεσθαι
enemies war the suitability having unhesitatingly to-hold-to
τοῦ πολέμου· καὶ καλῶς τάσσων τὸν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν λαόν,
the war and well arraying the under him troops
Θεοῦ συνεργίᾳ κατὰ κράτος τοὺς πολεμίους τροπώσεται.
by-God's help by force the enemies he-will-rout
πλὴν κατὰ πολύ ἐστι λυσιτελέστερον καὶ ἁρμοδιώτερον,
but by much it-is more-profitable and more-fitting
ὑπὲρ τοῦ προσυπαντᾷν τοὺς πολεμίους μέλλοντας ἐξιέναι
than the to-meet the enemies being-about to-come-out
κατὰ Ῥωμανίας, ὅτε μᾶλλον ἀπὸ τῶν ἡμετέρων χωρῶν
against Romania when rather from the our lands
πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν ἐπαναστρέφουσι. τότε γὰρ διὰ τὸ
toward the own(-land) they-return then for because-of the
ἐπὶ πολὺ χρονοτριβῆσαι αὐτοὺς ταῖς Ῥωμαϊκαῖς χώραις,
for long to-have-spent-time them in-the Roman lands
μεγάλως συντρίβονται καὶ ταλαιπωροῦνται. εἰ τύχῃ δέ,
greatly they-are-worn-down and are-distressed if it-happen and
καὶ πλῆθος πραγμάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων ἐπιφέρονται καὶ
also multitude of-goods and of-captives they-bring and
κτηνῶν, καὶ αὐτοί τε καὶ οἱ ἵπποι αὐτῶν κατακοπιῶντες,
of-beasts and they both and the horses their being-worn-out

ἐν καιρῷ πολέμου ἐκλελυμένοι εὑρίσκονται, σπεύδοντες
in time of-war exhausted are-found hastening
καὶ ἐπιθυμοῦντες τάχιον τὴν ἰδίαν καταλήψεσθαι χώραν.
and desiring more-quickly the own to-reach country
ἄλλως τε δὲ καὶ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατεύματα ἐν τῇ τῶν
besides — and also the of-the Romans armies in the of-the
ἡμερῶν παρατάσει οὐ μόνον τὰ πλησίον τῶν κλεισουρῶν
days extension not only the(-ones) near the kleisouras
τάχιον ἐπισωρεύονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ πόῤῥω τυγχάνοντα·
more-quickly are-heaped-up but also the(-ones) far-off being
καὶ εἰς πλῆθος ἐπισυνίστανται ἱκανόν, καὶ καλῶς πρὸς
and into multitude assemble sufficient and well for
πόλεμον ἐξαρτύονται καὶ παρασκευάζονται. καὶ τότε
war are-equipped and are-prepared and then
μᾶλλον, καθάπερ προέφημεν, καὶ ἐν ἡμέρᾳ καὶ ἐν νυκτὶ ὁ
rather as we-said-before both by day and by night the
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν πόλεμος ἀδίστακτον ἔχει τὴν νίκην. διὸ χρὴ
against them war undoubted has the victory wherefore must
τὸν στρατηγὸν μηδέπω ἐν τῇ ὑποστροφῇ καταλιμπάνειν.
the general never in the return to-leave(-it)
τὸ δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐξελεύσει τῶν πολεμίων παρασκευάζεσθαι
the and in the coming-out of-the enemies to-prepare
προσυπαντᾷν αὐτοὺς πρὸς πόλεμον ἐν τοῖς στενώμασιν,
to-meet them for war in the narrow-passes
ἀνεπιτηδειότερον μέν ἐστι, καὶ εἰς μάτην ἴσως τὸν κόπον
less-suitable indeed is and in vain perhaps the toil
συνέβη γίγνεσθαι· διὰ τὸ μὴ οὕτως συντόμως δι᾽ ὀλίγων
happened to-be because-of the not so quickly in few
ἡμερῶν δύνασθαι τὸ πεζικὸν συναθροισθῆναι στράτευμα,
days to-be-able the infantry to-be-gathered army
καὶ καλῶς παρασκευασθῆναι. ἄλλως τε δὲ καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι,
and well to-be-prepared besides — and also the enemies

ἀκμῆτες ὄντες καὶ ἀπαρόπλιστοι, δυσκαταγώνιστοι ἔσονται.
unwearied being and still-armed hard-to-overcome will-be
κατὰ τοῦτο δὲ τὸ ὠφέλιμον ἔχει καὶ χρήσιμον, καθὸ
in this and the usefulness it-has and use in-that
ἐμφόβους αὐτοὺς γίγνεσθαι, ὁσάκις ἂν βουληθῶσιν ἐξελθεῖν,
fearful them to-become as-often-as — they-wish to-come-out
τῇ κατασχέσει τῶν στενωμάτων, καὶ τὴν μετ᾽ ὀλίγον
by-the occupation of-the narrow-passes and the after a-little
ἐκκοπεῖν κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν θεμάτων συνεχῆ ἐξέλευσιν.
to-cut-off against the Roman themes continual coming-out
Περὶ προκατασχέσεως ὑδάτων, τῶν ἐν τοῖς στενώμασιν 5
about occupation-in-advance of-waters of-the in the narrow-passes
ὄντων.
being
Ἐν οἷς δὲ τόποις τῶν στενωμάτων καὶ κλεισουρῶν πρὸς
in which and places of-the narrow-passes and kleisouras for
πόλεμον ὁ στρατηγὸς παρασκευάζεται, εἴπερ ἐν τούτοις
war the general prepares if-indeed in these
πηγή ἐστιν ὕδωρ βρύουσα, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἰδίου λαοῦ ταύτην
a-spring is water gushing by the own troops it
σπουδάσῃ κατασχεθῆναι, ὥστε τὸ ἐκεῖθεν ὕδωρ τὸν λαὸν
let-him-hasten to-be-seized so-that the from-there water the troops
ἀπαρύεσθαι. εἰ δὲ τύχῃ ὀλιγοστὸν εἶναι, σπουδάσῃ μὴ
to-draw if and it-happen very-scanty to-be let-him-hasten not
ἐπιθολοῦσθαι τοῦτο, καὶ ὡς μὴ οὐ μικρὰ ἐκ τούτου λύπη
to-be-muddied it and so-that not no small from this distress
τὸν λαὸν καὶ ἀνάγκη ἐπισυμβήσεται. πηγῆς δὲ ἔγγιστα μὴ
the troops and need will-befall of-a-spring and very-near not
οὔσης, ἐξ ἧς τὴν πόσιν καὶ ἀναψυχὴν ὁ λαὸς ἐφευρίσκῃ,
being from which the drink and refreshment the troops may-find
καὶ μάλιστα ἐν καιρῷ θέρους, ἀσκοὺς διορισάτω ἐν ἑκάστῃ
and most in time of-summer skins let-him-appoint in each

ἑκατονταρχίᾳ δέκα ἐπιφέρεσθαι, καὶ δι᾽ αὐτῶν τὸ ὕδωρ
company-of-a-hundred ten to-be-carried and through them the water
ἐπικομίζεσθαι, καὶ ἐν ὥρᾳ τῆς μάχης εἰς πόσιν καὶ ἀναψυχὴν
to-be-brought and in hour of-the battle for drink and refreshment
τοῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ἀγωνιζομένοις ἐπιχορηγεῖσθαι. ἀλλὰ
to-the(-men) in the war contending to-be-supplied but
περὶ μὲν τῶν ἐν τοῖς στενώμασι μελλόντων πρὸς πόλεμον
about indeed the(-men) in the narrow-passes being-about for war
ἐξαρτύεσθαι, ἱκανῶς εἰρήσθω. εἰ δὲ καὶ νυκτοπόλεμον δεήσει
to-be-equipped sufficiently let-it-be-said if and also night-battle it-will-need
ἐν ταῖς τοιαύταις δυσχωρίαις γενέσθαι, καὶ τοῦτο πάνυ
in the such rough-places to-be also this very
ὠφέλιμον. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων ἐν ἑτέρᾳ διηγήσει δηλώσω.
useful but about indeed these in another account I-shall-show
τῆς δὲ παραδρομῆς ἄρξομαι τὴν εἰσήγησιν· ἥτις ἐπωφελὴς
of-the and skirmishing I-shall-begin the introduction which beneficial
καὶ ἀναγκαία τυγχάνουσα, δι᾽ ὀλίγου καὶ εὐαριθμήτου
and necessary being through small and easily-counted
λαοῦ πολλὰ τῶν πολεμίων πλήθη ἀπρακτεῖν παρασκευάζει,
troops many of-the enemies multitudes to-be-ineffective makes
Θεοῦ δὲ νεύσει ὡς τὰ πολλὰ καὶ καταγωνίζεται.
of-God and by-nod as the much(-part) also overcomes

6 Περὶ παραδρομῆς τῶν μονοκούρσων, καὶ στοχασμοῦ τῆς
about skirmishing of-the single-raids and estimate of-the
τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτῶν ποσότητος.
of-the troops their quantity

Τὰ τῶν πολεμίων κοῦρσα τὰ λεγόμενα μονόκουρσα ἀπὸ
the of-the enemies raiding-forces the called single-raids from
τῆς ἰδίας χώρας ἐξερχόμενα, πεζῶν ἄνευ, ἔθος αὐτοῖς
the own land coming-out of-foot-soldiers without custom for-them
σπουδῇ τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι, καὶ μηδαμοῦ ἀπληκεύοντας
with-haste the march to-make and nowhere encamping

τὴν ὅλην νύκτα διαβιβάζειν· ἀλλὰ πρὸς μικρὸν τοὺς
the whole night to-pass but for a-little the
ἵππους διαναπαύειν, πρὸς τὸ τὰς ταγὰς καὶ μόνον τούτοις
horses to-rest for the the rations and only to-them
ἀποδοῦναι. ὡς ἐπίπαν γὰρ τὰ μονόκουρσα μετ᾽ ὀλιγοστοῦ
to-give as on-the-whole for the single-raids with very-few
καὶ ἐκλεκτοῦ λαοῦ τὴν ἐξέλευσιν ποιοῦνται. σπεύδουσι
and picked troops the coming-out make they-hasten
δὲ τάχιστα καταλαβεῖν, ἐν οἷς χωρίοις τὴν ἐπίθεσιν καὶ
and most-quickly to-reach in which places the attack and
ἐκδρομὴν ἐβουλεύσαντο ποιῆσαι. τοῦ οὖν στρατηγοῦ παρά
sally they-planned to-make the then general from
τε τῶν καμινοβιγλίων καὶ τῶν βιγλατόρων τὴν τούτων
both the beacon-posts and the lookouts the their
ἐξέλευσιν ἀναμανθάνοντος, σπουδῇ πολλῇ τὰ ἐν ταῖς
coming-out learning with-haste much the in the
ἄκραις καταλαμβανέτω χωρία, προαποστέλλων τουρμάρχην
frontiers let-him-seize places sending-ahead a-tourmarch
εἴτε ἕτερον ἄρχοντα, τῶν ἐμπειροτάτων καὶ χρησίμων,
or another officer of-the most-experienced and useful
μετὰ ἐκλεκτῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ καλοϊππαράτων, τοῦ
with picked officers and well-mounted(-men) for-the
προσυπαντῆσαι, καὶ μετὰ ἐμπειρίας τούτους θεάσασθαι,
to-meet and with experience them to-observe
καὶ παραμεῖναι, καὶ τῷ στρατηγῷ καταμηνύειν ἐν ᾧ
and to-stay-beside and to-the general to-report in which
τόπῳ κατέλαβον, εἰ δυνατὸν διασκοπεῖν, καὶ τὴν τοῦ λαοῦ
place they-arrived if possible to-examine also the of-the troops
αὐτῶν ποσότητα. οὐ μόνον γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς θέας δυνατόν
their quantity not only for from the sight possible
ἐστιν ἀριθμῆσαι αὐτοὺς καὶ καταστοχάσασθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ
it-is to-count them and to-estimate but also

ἐκ τῆς τούτων ὁπλῆς. πλῆθος γὰρ χόρτου ἐρημίαις
from the their hoof-track multitude for of-grass in-desolate-places
ὑπάρχον, καὶ τοῖς ποσὶ τῶν ἀλόγων καταπατούμενον, οἱ
being and by-the feet of-the beasts trampled the
τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐμπειρότατοι δύνανται ἐκ τούτου τὴν τοῦ
of-the men most-experienced are-able from this the of-the
λαοῦ ποσότητα, εἰ καὶ μὴ ἀκριβῶς, καταστοχάσασθαι.
troops quantity if even not exactly to-estimate
ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς τῶν ποταμῶν περάμασιν·
likewise and also in the of-the rivers crossings
ἀκριβέστερον δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν τούτων ἀπλήκτων, ἡνίκα
more-exactly and also from the their encampments when
ἐκεῖθεν ἀπαίρουσιν. ὁ δὲ στρατηγός, τοῦ κούρσου τῶν
from-there they-set-out the and general of-the raiding-force of-the
πολεμίων τὴν ἄφιξιν ἀναμανθάνων, καὶ τῶν χωρίων, ἐν
enemies the arrival learning and the places in
οἷς τὰς ἐκδρομὰς ποιήσασθαι μέλλουσι, στοχασάμενος,
which the sallies to-make they-are-about having-estimated
πλησίον τούτων γινέσθω· καὶ ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ τόπῳ ἑαυτὸν
near them let-him-be and in suitable place himself
ἀποκρύψας μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ, βίγλας τε καβαλλαρίων
having-hidden with the troops his watch-posts and of-horsemen
πανταχοῦ ἀποστείλας, ἡνίκα περὶ αὐτῶν καταμηνυθείη, καὶ
everywhere having-sent when about them it-be-reported and
θεαθῶσιν ἐξελαύνοντες καὶ διασκορπιζόμενοι, ἐξέλθῃ
they-be-seen riding-out and scattering let-him-come-out
εἰς τὸ σκόρπισμα, καὶ τούτοις ἐντυγχάνων ἀπόνως αὐτοὺς
to the scattering and them encountering without-toil them
καταγωνίσεται. εἰ δὲ συμβῇ τινας τῶν χωριτῶν κρατηθῆναι
will-overcome if and it-happen some of-the villagers to-be-seized
παρ᾽ αὐτῶν πρὸ τοῦ ἐξελάσαι, καὶ ἀναμαθεῖν τήν τε
by them before the to-ride-out and to-learn the both

τοῦ στρατηγοῦ παρουσίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν χωρίων ἐπέλευσιν,
of-the general presence and the of-the villages attack
καὶ οὐ θαῤῥήσουσιν ἐξελάσαι, ἄπρακτοι σπουδαίως πρὸς
and not they-will-dare to-ride-out unsuccessful hastily to
τὴν ἰδίαν ὑποστρέψουσι χώραν, μόνον τὸν κόπον καὶ τὴν
the own they-will-return land only the toil and the
συντριβὴν καὶ ταλαιπωρίαν ὑποστάντες.
wearing-down and distress having-undergone

Περὶ συναθροίσεως καὶ κινήσεως φωσσάτου· καὶ περὶ 7
about gathering and movement of-an-army and about
τοῦ παραχωρεῖν τοὺς πραγματευτὰς εἰσέρχεσθαι καὶ
the to-allow the traders to-go-in and
κατασκοπεῖν.
to-spy

Παρασκευὴν δὲ καὶ κίνησιν μεγάλου φωσσάτου ἀκούων,
preparation and also movement of-a-great army hearing
ἐν ᾧ καιρῷ μάλιστα εἴωθε τὰ μεγάλα συναθροίζεσθαι
in which time most is-wont the great to-be-gathered
φωσσάτα, ἤγουν τῷ Αὐγούστῳ μηνί· ἐν γὰρ τῷ τοιούτῳ
armies namely in-the August month in for the such
καιρῷ ἀπό τε Αἰγύπτου, Παλαιστίνης τε καὶ Φοινίκης, καὶ
time from both Egypt Palestine both and Phoenicia and
τῆς Κοίλης Συρίας, πλήθη ἀνήρχοντο ἐν Κιλικίᾳ, καὶ ἐν
the Hollow Syria multitudes went-up into Cilicia and in
ταῖς χώραις Ἀντιοχείας, τοῦ Χάλεπε, καὶ προσλαμβάνοντες
the lands of-Antioch — of-Aleppo and taking-in-addition
καὶ Ἄραβας τῷ Σεπτεμβρίῳ μηνὶ τὴν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων
also Arabs in-the September month the against Romans
ἐποιοῦντο ἐξέλευσιν· ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ τοίνυν καιρῷ, ὅτε ἡ
made coming-out in the such therefore time when the
συνάθροισις τοῦ φωσσάτου τῶν πολεμίων μέλλει γίνεσθαι,
gathering of-the army of-the enemies is-about to-be

συνεχέστερον τοὺς τραπεζίτας ἀποστέλλειν, ἤτοι τὰ
more-continually the trapezitai to-send namely the
τασινάκια, καὶ κατασκόπους πλείστους τῶν χρησίμων καὶ
tasinakia and spies very-many of-the useful and
πιστῶν. παραχωρεῖν δὲ καὶ πραγματευτὰς εἰσέρχεσθαι·
trustworthy to-allow and also traders to-go-in
προσποιεῖσθαι δὲ καὶ φιλίαν πρὸς τοὺς κρατοῦντας ἀμηράδας
to-feign and also friendship toward the ruling emirs
τῶν ταῖς ἄκραις ἡμῶν παρακειμένων κάστρων· καὶ γράφειν
of-the at-the frontiers our lying-near forts and to-write
πρὸς αὐτούς, καὶ ἀνθρώπους μετὰ κανισκίων ἀποστέλλειν·
to them and men with gift-baskets to-send
ὅπως διὰ τῆς πολυειδοῦς ταύτης πολυπραγμοσύνης
so-that through the manifold this inquisitiveness
δυνηθῇ σαφῶς ἀναδιδάσκεσθαι τὰς τῶν πολεμίων βουλὰς
he-may-be-able clearly to-be-informed-of the of-the enemies counsels
καὶ μελέτας, καὶ τὰ πλήθη τῶν ἐπισωρευομένων φωσσάτων
and plans and the multitudes of-the being-heaped-up armies
ἱππέων τε καὶ πεζῶν, καὶ τοὺς τούτων ἀρχηγούς,
of-horsemen both and of-foot-soldiers and the their leaders
καὶ ἐν ποίαις χώραις τὴν ἐπέλευσιν ποιεῖν βούλονται.
and in what lands the attack to-make they-wish
καταμηνυόμενος δὲ τὴν τοῦ φωσσάτου ἀποκίνησιν, καὶ διὰ
being-informed-of and the of-the army departure and through
ποίας ὁδοῦ τὴν ἐξέλευσιν κατὰ Ῥωμανίας ποιεῖσθαι μέλλει,
what road the coming-out against Romania to-make it-is-about
ἐπισυνάγειν ἅπαντα τὰ στρατεύματα, καὶ πρὸς τὰς ἄκρας
to-gather all the armies and to the frontiers
παραγίνεσθαι, ἀποστέλλειν δὲ τουρμάρχην ἐμπειρότατον,
to-come to-send and a-tourmarch most-experienced
εἴτε ἕτερόν τινα τῶν μεγάλων καὶ χρησίμων ἀρχόντων,
or another someone of-the great and useful officers

μετὰ ἱππέων ἐπιλέκτων προσυπαντῆσαι τοῖς πολεμίοις
with horsemen picked to-meet the enemies
πρὸ τοῦ τὴν εἰσβολὴν εἰς τὰς ἡμῶν χώρας ποιήσασθαι·
before the the invasion into the our lands to-make
ἵνα καὶ ἐπακολουθῶσιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ παραμένωσι, καὶ τὰς
so-that also they-may-follow them and may-stay-beside and the
ἀποκινήσεις αὐτῶν τῷ στρατηγῷ καταμηνύωσιν.
departures their to-the general may-report
Περὶ παραμονῆς φωσσάτου, καὶ ἀκολουθήσεως. 8
about staying-beside an-army and following
Ἡ δὲ παραμονὴ αὐτῶν οὕτως ὀφείλει γίνεσθαι. τοῦ
the and staying-beside their thus ought to-be of-the
στρατηγοῦ μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ λαοῦ ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ καὶ
general with all the troops in suitable and
ὀχυρῷ τόπῳ παρατρέχοντος, καὶ τῶν χωρίων διὰ τῶν
strong place running-alongside and the villages through the
ἐκσπηλατόρων φυγαδευομένων ἐν τοῖς κάστροις, ἤ, μὴ
scouts being-put-to-flight into the forts or not
ὄντων κάστρων, ἐν ὄρεσιν ὑψηλοῖς καὶ ὀχυρωτάτοις
being forts into mountains high and most-strong
καὶ ἀνεπιβουλεύτοις, ὁμοίως καὶ πάντα τὰ κτήνη αὐτῶν·
and safe-from-plots likewise also all the beasts their
δέον ἀποστέλλειν καὶ τὸν ὀφείλοντα παραμένειν
it-is-needful to-send and the(-one) owing to-stay-beside
ἀπὸ δευτέρας ὥρας ἢ καὶ τρίτης τῆς ἡμέρας. καὶ εὐχὴν
from second hour or also third of-the day and prayer
λαμβάνοντας τοῦ στρατηγοῦ, ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι τὸν λαὸν
receiving from-the general to-take-up the troops
αὐτοῦ, καὶ τοὺς παρασυρτάτους, καὶ ὁρμᾷν πρὸς τὴν
his and the led-horses and to-set-out toward the
ὁδόν, καθ' ἣν οἱ πολέμιοι διέρχονται, τὴν ἀποσκευὴν
road by which the enemies pass-through the baggage

αὐτοῦ καὶ τοὺς παριππαράτους καταλιμπάνων μετὰ τοῦ
his and the spare-mounts leaving with the
στρατηγοῦ, μηδὲν ἄλλο ἐπιφερομένους ἢ μιᾶς ἡμέρας
general nothing other carrying than of-one day
τροφήν, καὶ αὐτὴν μετὰ ἐνδείας, ἄρτους μόνους καὶ τυρόν,
food and it with scantiness loaves only and cheese
ἢ καὶ τάριχα, καὶ τὰς τῶν ἵππων καὶ ἡμιόνων ταγάς.
or also salt-fish and the of-the horses and mules rations
εἰς χωρίον δὲ ἀπληκεύων, τάς τε χρείας καὶ τὴν τῶν
in a-village and encamping the both needs and the of-the
ἀλόγων τροφὴν ἐφευρίσκων, διαναπαυσάτω ἐκεῖσε τὸν
beasts food finding let-him-rest there the
λαὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸν ἵππον, ἕως ὥρας ἐννάτης τῆς ἡμέρας,
troops his and the horse until hour ninth of-the day
βίγλας κρατῶν ἐν ὑψηλοτέροις τόποις. καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκεῖνος
watch-posts holding in higher places and himself that-very
ὁ τοῦ λαοῦ ἀρχηγός, ἐν περιωπῇ ὑψηλοτάτῃ ἀνερχόμενος,
the of-the troops leader on lookout most-high going-up
ἀποσκοπεῖν ὀφείλει καὶ βλέπειν κονιορτοὺς τῶν πολεμίων
to-look-out ought and to-see dust-clouds of-the enemies
καὶ καπνούς· καὶ ὡς ἐκ τούτου κατανοεῖν καὶ στοχάζεσθαι,
and smokes and so from this to-perceive and to-estimate
ἐν οἷς διέρχονται καὶ ἀπληκεῦσαι μέλλουσιν. ὑπὸ γὰρ
in which they-pass-through and to-encamp they-are-about by for
τῶν ἐμπείρων ἀνδρῶν καὶ οἱ τόποι, ἐφ' οἷς προσήκει
the experienced men also the places on which it-befits
ἄπληκτα γίνεσθαι, διαγινώσκονται. ἡνίκα δὲ αἴσθωνται
encampments to-be are-recognized when and they-perceive
τοῦ τόπου, ἐν ᾧ ηὐλίσαντο οἱ πολέμιοι, παραυτίκα
the place in which encamped the enemies at-once
δηλώσι τῷ στρατηγῷ περὶ τούτου. κἀκεῖνος μετὰ τοῦ
let-them-show to-the general about this and-he with the

ἰδίου στρατοῦ θώρακας ἀμπεχομένου καὶ τὰ λεγόμενα
own army mail-coats wearing and the called
ἐπανωκλίβανα μὴ λευκὰ ὄντα, ἐπὶ χεῖρας ἕκαστος τὸ
over-mail-coats not white being at hand each the
μεταχειριζόμενον ὅπλον κατέχων, τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν ποιείτω.
handled weapon holding the journey let-him-make
τοῦ δὲ ἡλίου ὑποκλίναντος, καὶ τῶν εἰς λείαν ἐκ τοῦ
the and sun having-declined and of-the for plunder from the
φωσσάτου ἐξερχομένων πολεμίων ὑποστρεφόντων πρὸς τὰς
army coming-out enemies returning to the
σκηνὰς αὐτῶν, καὶ τὰ φοῦλκα τούτους φυλάττοντα, τότε
tents their and the units them guarding then
συνεισέρχεσθαι καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ πλησιάζειν τῷ τῶν ἐχθρῶν
to-go-in-with also himself and to-draw-near to-the of-the enemies
φωσσάτῳ. μετὰ σκοποῦ δὲ ὁδοιπορείτω καὶ προσοχῆς
army with aim and let-him-march and attention
ἀκριβοῦς, καὶ λαθραίως· καὶ ἑαυτὸν ὑποκρυπτέτω, τοῦ
exact and secretly and himself let-him-hide for-the
μὴ θεαθῆναι παρὰ τῶν πολεμίων. νυκτὸς δ' ἤδη
not to-be-seen by the enemies night and already
καταλαμβανούσης, πλησίον γενέσθω τοῦ ἀπλήκτου· καὶ εἰ
overtaking near let-him-be of-the encampment and if
μέν ἐστι βουνὸς ὑψηλός, ἐν ᾧ ηὐλίσαντο οἱ πολέμιοι, ἐξ
indeed there-is a-hill high on which encamped the enemies from
ἑνὸς μέρους ἢ καὶ ἐκ δύο πλησίον τοῦ ἀπλήκτου αὐτῶν,
one side or also from two near the encampment their
ἀπόνως τὴν παραμονὴν ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ τόπῳ φυλάξουσιν.
without-toil the staying-beside in that the place they-will-keep
ἀποβάντες γὰρ τῶν ἵππων καὶ πεζῇ ἐν τῷ βουνῷ
having-dismounted for from-the horses and on-foot on the hill
ἀνερχόμενοι ἄνδρες δύο τῷ ἀριθμῷ ἢ καὶ τρεῖς, καὶ
going-up men two in-the number or also three and

πλησιάζοντες τῷ ἀπλήκτῳ, ἀπὸ τῶν ὑψηλῶν ἐκείνων καὶ
drawing-near to-the encampment from the high those and
ὀχυρωτάτων βουνῶν, τῶν μὴ δυναμένων ἄνοδον εὐχερῆ
most-strong hills of-the not able ascent easy
παρέχειν τοῖς πολεμίοις, ὁρᾷν τὸ φωσσάτον, καὶ τὰς
to-afford to-the enemies to-see the army and the
φωνὰς τοῦ λαοῦ ἐνωτίζεσθαι, καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἵππων καὶ
voices of-the troops to-hear and the of-the horses and
ἡμιόνων χρεμετισμούς. ἀποστέλλειν δὲ καὶ ἕτερα τέσσαρα
mules neighings to-send and also other four
τετράδια ἵστασθαι ἐφίππους καὶ αὐτοὺς ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν
foursomes to-stand mounted also themselves on-this-side and-that
τοῦ φωσσάτου, ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων διακεχωρισμένα· ὥστε καὶ
of-the army from one-another separated so-that also
αὐτοὺς ἀκούειν τοὺς χρεμετισμοὺς τῶν ἵππων καὶ ἡμιόνων,
they to-hear the neighings of-the horses and mules
καὶ τὴν τοῦ λαοῦ ὀχλαγωγίαν. εἰ δὲ ἐν τῷ τοῦ ἀπλήκτου
and the of-the troops tumult if and in the of-the encampment
τόπῳ τοιοῦτος ὀχυρώτατος βουνὸς οὐκ ἔστι, καὶ ὡσαύτως
place such most-strong hill not is also likewise
τέσσαρα τετράδια ἀποστέλλεσθαι, τοῦ ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν
four foursomes to-be-sent for-the on-this-side and-that
τοῦ φωσσάτου ἡσύχως ἵστασθαι, καὶ σύσσημα παρέχειν
of-the army quietly to-stand and signals to-give
ἀλλήλοις σημαντικὰ ὑποχωρήσεως, εἴγε δεήσοι, εἴτε διὰ
to-one-another signifying of-withdrawal if-indeed it-should-need either by
συρισμοῦ, εἴτε διὰ λόγου καὶ ἐπιλαλιᾶς. ὑπαλλάττεσθαι δὲ
whistle or by word and talk to-be-relieved and
αὐτοὺς παρ᾽ ἑτέρων, εἴτε δεύτερον τῇ νυκτί, ἢ καὶ ἅπαξ,
them by others either twice in-the night or also once
πρὸς τὸ καὶ αὐτοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἵππους αὐτῶν διαναπαύεσθαι.
for the both themselves and the horses their to-rest

ἀπέρχεσθαι δὲ τὸν τουρμάρχην, εἴτε ἑτέραν τινὰ κεφαλήν,
to-go-off and the tourmarch or another some head
εἰς τὴν τούτων ἀπαλλαγήν, καὶ ἐπιβλέπειν, ποῦ καὶ πῶς
to the their relief and to-observe where and how
ἵστανται, καὶ τοὺς ἀντ᾽ ἐκείνων πάλιν καλῶς ἐφιστῶν
they-stand and the(-men) instead-of them again well setting-over
ὑποστρέφειν ἐν ᾧ καὶ ἵστατο πρότερον. ταραχῆς δὲ
to-return in which also he-stood before disturbance and
ἐξακουομένης κίνησιν δηλούσης τοῦ κούρσου, τὰ τέσσαρα
being-heard movement showing of-the raiding-force the four
τετράδια μικρὸν ἀναποδιζέτωσαν, μὴ μέντοι δὲ μακρόθεν
foursomes a-little let-them-draw-back not however and far-off
γινέσθωσαν· τῷ δὲ τουρμάρχῃ μηνυέτωσαν τὴν τῶν
let-them-be to-the and tourmarch let-them-report the of-the
πολεμίων ἀποκίνησιν. αὐτὸς δὲ μηνυέτω τῷ στρατηγῷ, δι᾽
enemies departure himself and let-him-report to-the general by
οἵας ὁδοῦ τὴν ὁρμὴν ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ἐν οἵᾳ ὥρᾳ· ἵνα τὸν
what road the rush they-made and at what hour so-that the
καιρὸν καὶ τὴν ὥραν τῆς ἀποκινήσεως αὐτῶν ἀναμανθάνων
time and the hour of-the departure their learning
ὁ στρατηγὸς δύνηται στοχάσασθαι, ἐν οἵοις χωρίοις
the general may-be-able to-estimate at what places
καταλάβωσιν ἄχρι πρωΐας. οἱ δὲ ἀποστελλόμενοι
they-will-arrive until morning the(-men) and being-sent
παρὰ τοῦ τουρμάρχου καταμηνύσαι τῷ στρατηγῷ, ἐν ᾧ
by the tourmarch to-report to-the general in which
τόπῳ ὁ στρατηγὸς ηὐλίζετο, τὴν τοῦ κούρσου ἀποκίνησιν.
place the general was-encamped the of-the raiding-force departure
ἐπὰν δ᾽ οὐχ εὑρήσωσιν ἐκεῖσε αὐτόν, ἀλλ᾽ ὑποδοχαρίους
when and not they-find there him but receivers
τοὺς παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ καταλειφθέντας, δέον ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ
the(-men) by him left needful in that the

τόπῳ γενομένους φωνῆσαι· τοὺς δὲ ὑποδοχαρίους ἀκριβῶς
place having-come to-call-out the and receivers exactly
διασκοπουμένους, ἡνίκα τῆς φωνῆς αἴσθωνται, ἑνωθῆναι,
watching when the voice they-perceive to-be-united
καὶ διὰ τάχους τῷ στρατηγῷ τούτους προσάξαι, εἴτε εἰς
and with speed to-the general them to-bring or to
ἑτέρους πάλιν ἀγαγεῖν ὑποδοχαρίους, τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἴσως
others again to-lead receivers the general perhaps
πάλιν μετακινήσαντος. χρὴ γὰρ αὐτόν, εἴτε ἅπαξ, εἴτε
again having-moved must for him either once or
καὶ δίς, ἐν νυκτὶ μεταπληκεύειν διὰ πολλὴν ἀσφάλειαν,
also twice in night to-shift-camp for much safety
πρὸς τὸ μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων ἐνεδρευθῆναι, ἔχειν δὲ
for the not by the enemies to-be-ambushed to-have and
αὐτὸν καὶ βίγλας διπλᾶς, εἰς φυλακὴν αὐτοῦ ἀσφαλεῖς.
him also watch-posts double for guard his safe

III · FOLLOWING THE RAIDERS

When the raiders move, the general follows unseen: the tourmarch sends three pairs of scouts after them, each in sight of the one before, with foursomes behind to carry reports back. He camps when they camp and watches for ambushes. Before dawn he hides his army on their flank and falls on the Emir's thinned array when the raiders scatter to plunder; if it is too strong he attacks the raiders, and he holds the passes when they turn for home.

9 Περὶ τῆς κινήσεως τοῦ κούρσου, καὶ ἀκολουθήσεως.
about the movement of-the raiding-force and following
Τοῦ στρατηγοῦ τοίνυν τὴν κίνησιν τοῦ κούρσου
the general therefore the movement of-the raiding-force
ἀναμανθάνοντος, παραυτίκα καὶ ἕτερον ἄρχοντα μεθ'
learning at-once also another officer with

ἱππέων ἐκλεκτῶν, ὑποτασσόμενον τῷ τουρμάρχῃ τῷ
horsemen picked subordinate to-the tourmarch the
ἀκολουθοῦντι τῷ κούρσῳ, ἀποστέλλειν πρὸς αὐτόν· ἔχων
following the raiding-force to-send to him having
μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ὁ ἀποστελλόμενος ἕνα τῶν παρὰ τοῦ
with himself the(-one) being-sent one of-the by the
τουρμάρχου πεμφθέντων, καταμηνύσαι τὴν τοῦ κούρσου
tourmarch sent to-report the of-the raiding-force
κίνησιν τῷ στρατηγῷ, τοῦ παρ' αὐτοῦ ὁδηγηθῆναι εἰς
movement to-the general for-the by him to-be-guided to
τὸ εὐχερῶς ἑνωθῆναι. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ στρατηγὸς ὄπισθεν
the easily to-be-united and himself too the general behind
τοῦ ἀποστελλομένου ἄρχοντος ἀποκινησάτω μετὰ τοῦ ὑπ'
the being-sent officer let-him-move-off with the under
αὐτὸν λαοῦ, καὶ σπευσάτω καταλαβεῖν τὸν τουρμάρχην·
him troops and let-him-hasten to-overtake the tourmarch
ὅπως ὄπισθεν καὶ αὐτὸς τοῦ τουρμάρχου τῷ κούρσῳ
so-that behind also himself the tourmarch the raiding-force
τῶν πολεμίων ἀκολουθῇ. ἡ γὰρ ἀκριβὴς καὶ ἄπταιστος
of-the enemies he-may-follow the for exact and unfailing
ἀκολούθησις ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν τῶν πολεμίων ὀφείλει
following from the rear of-the enemies ought
γίνεσθαι, κατὰ τὰ ἐκείνων ἴνιχνα καὶ τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν.
to-be along the their tracks and the journey
ὁ δὲ τουρμάρχης κατὰ τὸ κοῦρσον τῶν πολεμίων
the and tourmarch after the raiding-force of-the enemies
ἀποκινήσῃ τρία ζευκτά, ἐμπείρους καὶ ἐπιτηδείους ἄνδρας
moves-off three pairs experienced and suitable men
ἀναλαμβανόμενος, παραγίνεσθαι τῇ ὁδῷ τῶν πολεμίων·
taking-up to-come to-the road of-the enemies
καὶ τυπώσας τὸ πρῶτον καὶ δεύτερον καὶ τρίτον ζευκτόν,
and having-prescribed the first and second and third pair

πῶς ὀφείλουσι περιπατεῖν καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις κατακολουθεῖν,
how they-ought to-go-about and the enemies to-follow
ὑποστρεφέσθω πρὸς τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ. τὸ δὲ πρῶτον
let-him-return to the troops his the and first
ζευκτὸν πλησίον τῶν πολεμίων περιπατείτω, ἀκοῦον καὶ
pair near the enemies let-it-go-about hearing both
τὴν τοῦ λαοῦ ὀχλαγωγίαν, καὶ τοὺς χρεμετισμοὺς τῶν
the of-the troops tumult and the neighings of-the
ἵππων. τὸ δὲ δεύτερον, τὸ τοῦ πρώτου ἀκόλουθον,
horses the and second the of-the first following
ὁδοιπορείτω, ὅσον δύνανται ὁρᾷν τὸ ἔμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ,
let-it-march as-far-as they-can to-see the in-front of-it
καὶ ὁρᾶσθαι ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ· καὶ μήτε πλησίον γίνεσθαι, μήτε
and to-be-seen by it and neither near to-be nor
μακρύνεσθαι, ὥστε μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι. τρία δὲ τετράδια ὄπισθεν
to-be-far-off so-that not to-be-seen three and foursomes behind
τῶν τριῶν ζευκτῶν ἀποκαταστήσει, ὁρῶν τὸ πρῶτον
the three pairs he-will-station seeing the first
τετράδιον τὸ τρίτον ζευκτόν, τὸ δὲ δεύτερον τετράδιον
foursome the third pair the and second foursome
ὡσαύτως ὁρῶν τὸ πρῶτον. τὸ δὲ τρίτον τετράδιον, τὸ
likewise seeing the first the and third foursome the
ἀκόλουθον τοῦ δευτέρου, ἓξ ἐχέτω ἄνδρας· ἵνα οἱ ἐξ
following of-the second six let-it-have men so-that the from
αὐτῶν δύο τὰ ὑπὸ ζευκτοῦ μηνυόμενα ἀποκομίζωσι
them two the(-things) by pair reported may-carry
τῷ τουρμάρχῃ, ὁ δὲ τουρμάρχης τῷ στρατηγῷ. ἐὰν
to-the tourmarch the and tourmarch to-the general if
γὰρ ὀξύτερον βαδίζωσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, ὀφείλει μηνύειν τὸ
for more-quickly walk the enemies ought to-report the
πρῶτον ζευκτὸν περὶ τούτου· ἵνα καὶ ὁ τουρμάρχης καὶ
first pair about this so-that also the tourmarch and

ὁ στρατηγὸς ὀξύτερον καὶ αὐτοὶ βαδίζωσι, καὶ μὴ ἐπὶ
the general more-quickly also themselves may-walk and not for
πολὺ μακρύνωσι τῶν πολεμίων. εἰ δὲ σχολαίτερον πάλιν
long be-far-off from-the enemies if and more-slowly again
βαδίζουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ ὁ τουρμάρχης καὶ ὁ στρατηγὸς
walk the enemies also the tourmarch and the general
ὡσαύτως σχολαίτερον περιπατείτωσαν· ἵνα μήτε πλησίον
likewise more-slowly let-them-go-about so-that neither near
γινόμενοι διαγινώσκωνται, μήτε μακρυνόμενοι οὔτε τὴν τῶν
being they-be-recognized nor being-far-off neither the of-the
ἐπακολουθούντων διοίκησιν ἐπιγινώσκωσιν, οὔτε παρ᾽ ἐκείνων
following disposition they-recognize nor by them
ἐπιγινώσκωνται· ὅπερ οὐ τὴν τυχοῦσαν ἐπάγει βλάβην.
be-recognized which not the chance brings harm
ἄλλως τε δὲ καὶ τῶν πολεμίων ἀπληκευόντων πρὸς τὸ
besides — and also the enemies encamping for the
ταγίσαι τοὺς ἵππους, καὶ περὶ τούτου καταμηνυόμενος ὁ
to-give-rations-to the horses and about this being-informed the
στρατηγός, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ τόπῳ ἀπληκευέτω πρὸς
general also himself in suitable place let-him-encamp for
τὸ τοὺς ἵππους ταγίσαι, ἐξώβιγλα ἀποστέλλων εἰς
the the horses to-give-rations-to outer-watch-posts sending for
φυλακὴν ἑαυτοῦ. καὶ ἡνίκα πάλιν τὴν κίνησιν τῶν πολεμίων
guard of-himself and when again the movement of-the enemies
καταμηνυθείη, παραυτίκα καὶ αὐτὸς κινήσει ἐπακολουθῶν,
be-reported at-once also himself will-move following
ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν ἑαυτοῦ ἀποστέλλων ἀνὰ τριάκοντα ἱππεῖς,
on-this-side and-that of-himself sending by thirty horsemen
μὴ πόῤῥω, ἀλλὰ σύνεγγυς, τὰς τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ φωνὰς
not far but near the of-the troops his voices
ἐνωτιζομένους. καὶ ὄπισθεν αὐτοῦ ἐπακολουθοῦντα ἄρχοντα
hearing and behind him following an-officer

ἐχέτω μεθ' ἱππέων, οὓς δὴ σάκα ὀνομάζουσι. μήκοθεν δὲ
let-him-have with horsemen whom indeed saka they-name from-afar and
ὁδοιπορείτω ὁ στρατηγός, καὶ πᾶσαν ποιείτω ἀσφάλειαν
let-him-march the general and all let-him-make safety
τοῦ μὴ διαγνωσθῆναι ὡς ὄπισθεν αὐτοῖς ἐπακολουθεῖ· ἀλλ'
for-the not to-be-recognized that behind them he-follows but
ἀσφαλῶς μὲν περιπατεῖν, καὶ τοὺς πλησίον πολεμίων
safely indeed to-go-about and the(-men) near enemies
ἐπακολουθοῦντας παραγγέλλειν ἀκριβῶς ἀποσκοπεῖν, μὴ
following to-charge exactly to-look-out lest
λόχους τινὰς οἱ πολέμιοι καταλείψωσιν εἰς ἔνεδραν τῶν
ambushes some the enemies leave for ambush of-the
ἐπακολουθούντων αὐτοῖς καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ. ὅπερ
following them and of-himself the general which
παρὰ τῶν Ταρσιτῶν πολλάκις γέγονε. καὶ ἐπακολουθοῦντος
by the Tarsians often has-happened and following
αὐτοῖς τοῦ τουρμάρχου, καὶ μὴ ἀκριβῶς τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν
them the tourmarch and not exactly the in-front
σκοποῦντος ῥύακας καὶ τοὺς τόπους τοὺς δυναμένους
watching gullies and the places the able
λαὸν ἀποκρύπτειν, ἀπροόπτως τῇ ἐνέδρᾳ τούτων
troops to-hide unawares into-the ambush their
περιπεπτώκασι. διὰ ταῦτα πολλῆς δεῖται ἀγχινοίας
have-fallen because-of these-things much needs shrewdness
καὶ ἀκριβείας ὁ ἐπακολουθῶν, ἵνα μὴ τοιοῦτόν τι
and exactness the(-one) following so-that not such anything
συμβῇ γενέσθαι. πρὸ δὲ τοῦ διαυγάσαι δεῖ τὸν στρατηγόν,
happen to-be before and the to-dawn must the general
ἐπεὶ διέγνω τὸ ἐν ποίοις τόποις καὶ χωρίοις ἐξελάσαι
when he-recognized the in what places and villages to-ride-out
μέλλουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, εἴτε δεξιὰ εἴτε εὐώνυμα αὐτῶν
are-about the enemies whether to-right or to-left their

ἐπικλῖναι, ἐν οἷς ὀχυρώτερος αὐτῷ τόπος καθορᾶται. καὶ
to-turn in which stronger to-him place is-seen and
ὀξύτερον βαδίσας καὶ ἐκ πλαγίου αὐτῶν γενόμενος ὡς ἀπὸ
more-quickly having-walked and on flank their having-become about from
μιλίων δύο, πρὸ τοῦ τὴν ἡμέραν, ὡς λέλεκται, διαυγάσαι,
miles two before the the day as has-been-said to-dawn
ἵνα μὴ τὸν κονιορτὸν θεασάμενοι οἱ πολέμιοι τὴν
so-that not the dust having-seen the enemies the
παρουσίαν τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἐπιγνώσωσι, τὸν ὀχυρὸν τόπον
presence of-the general may-recognize the strong place
ὁ στρατηγὸς καταλαμβάνων τὸν ἴδιον ἀποκρυψάτω λαόν.
the general taking the own let-him-hide troops
κἀκεῖνος μετ᾽ ὀλίγων ἱππέων πλησιέστερον γενέσθω τῶν
and-he with few horsemen nearer let-him-be of-the
πολεμίων· καὶ εἰς ὑψηλὴν περιωπὴν ἀνερχόμενος, καθαρῶς
enemies and onto high lookout going-up clearly
ὁρᾷν τοὺς πολεμίους σπευσάτω. καὶ τούτων εἰς ἐξέλευσιν
to-see the enemies let-him-hasten and these to coming-out
ὁρμώντων καὶ διασκορπιζομένων πρὸς λείαν, καρτερησάτω
rushing and scattering for plunder let-him-hold-out
ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ τόπῳ ἄχρι τρίτης ἢ καὶ
the general in that the place until third or also
τετάρτης ὥρας τῆς ἡμέρας, τὴν παράταξιν τοῦ Ἀμηρᾶ
fourth hour of-the day the battle-array of-the Emir
θεωρῶν, καὶ ἀκριβῶς τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ λαοῦ στοχαζόμενος.
watching and exactly the multitude of-the troops estimating
ἐπεὶ δ᾽ οἱ μέλλοντες ἐξελάσαι πόῤῥω που τῆς
when and the(-men) being-about to-ride-out far somewhere from-the
παρατάξεως τοῦ Ἀμηρᾶ γεγόνασιν· ὡς μὴ δυνατόν ἐστι
battle-array of-the Emir have-become so-that not possible it-is
πάλιν τούτους ὑποστρέφειν, ἢ ἐπιγνῶναι τὸν κατὰ τῆς
again them to-return or to-recognize the against the

παρατάξεως τοῦ Ἀμηρᾶ ἀναφθέντα πόλεμον, ἕκαστον
battle-array of-the Emir kindled war each
σπεύδοντα τὰ χωρία καταλαβεῖν, καὶ λείαν ὅτι πλείστην
hastening the villages to-reach and plunder as most
πορίσασθαι· τὰς ἰδίας παραταγὰς ὡς δεῖ εὐτρεπίσας,
to-procure the own battle-lines as is-needful having-made-ready
κατὰ τῆς τοῦ Ἀμηρᾶ παρατάξεως ὀλιγανδρούσης τὴν
against the of-the Emir battle-array short-of-men the
ἐπέλευσιν ποιησάτω, καὶ Θεοῦ συνεργίᾳ τῆς νίκης κρατήσει,
attack let-him-make and by-God's help the victory will-win
καὶ τελείαν πανολεθρίαν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐργάσεται.
and complete utter-ruin for-the enemies will-work
εἰ δὲ κατὰ τῆς παρατάξεως ἐπελθεῖν οὐ θαῤῥήσει, πολλὴν
if and against the battle-array to-advance not he-will-dare great
καὶ ἀξιόλογον δύναμιν ὁρῶν ἐν αὐτῇ, ὑπὲρ τὴν ἰδίαν· τότε
and considerable force seeing in it beyond the own then
ἐκ πλαγίου καὶ μακρόθεν διὰ κρυπτῆς καὶ ἐπιτηδείας
from flank and from-afar through hidden and suitable
ὁδοῦ ὁρμάτω σὺν ἐλασίᾳ τῇ προσηκούσῃ, καταλαβεῖν
road let-him-set-out with charge the fitting to-overtake
τὸ σκόρπισμα τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ δι' ὅλης τῆς ἡμέρας
the scattering of-the enemies and through whole the day
ἐπιδραμεῖν αὐτοῖς ἀγωνίσεται, διεσκεδασμένοις οὖσι, καὶ
to-attack them he-will-strive dispersed being and
ἀξιόλογον ἔργον, Θεοῦ συμμαχίᾳ, ἐπιτελέσει. ὀφείλει οὖν
considerable deed by-God's alliance will-accomplish he-ought then
καὶ ἄρχοντα τῶν χρησίμων μετὰ ὀλιγοστῶν ἱππέων
also an-officer of-the useful with very-few horsemen
ὄπισθεν ἔχειν, βλέποντα καὶ ἀποσκοποῦντα τὴν τοῦ Ἀμηρᾶ
behind to-have watching and looking-out-for the of-the Emir
παράταξιν, καὶ τὰ περὶ αὐτῆς, ὡς ἂν ὁδοιπορείῃ,
battle-array and the(-things) about it how — it-may-march

καταμηνύειν αὐτῷ. εἰ δὲ καὶ φοῦλκον, τὸ εἰς φυλακὴν τῶν
to-report to-him if and also a-unit the for guard of-the
διασκορπιζομένων πρὸς λείαν πολεμίων ὑπάρχον, συναντήσει
scattering for plunder enemies being will-meet
ὁ στρατηγὸς πλῆθος ἔχον, διχῇ τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ διέλῃ,
the general multitude having in-two the troops his let-him-divide
καὶ ἔμπροσθεν μὲν ἀποστείλῃ τοὺς ὀφείλοντας μετὰ τοῦ
and in-front indeed let-him-send the(-men) owing with the
φούλκου συνάψαι πόλεμον. τούτων δὲ συῤῥαγέντων, εὐθὺς
unit to-join war these and having-clashed at-once
καὶ ὁ στρατηγὸς μετὰ τῆς παρατάξεως αὐτοῦ πλησίον
also the general with the battle-array his near
ἐπακολουθῶν ὀξέως καὶ εὐτόλμως μετὰ κραυγῆς καὶ
following sharply and daringly with shouting and
ἀλαλαγμοῦ σὺν ἐλασίᾳ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ὁρμησάτω, καὶ τούτους,
war-cry with charge against them let-him-rush and them
Θεοῦ βοηθείᾳ, τροπωσάμενος καταδιώξει καὶ τελείως
by-God's help having-routed will-pursue and completely
καταγωνίσεται. εἰ οὖν Θεοῦ συνεργίᾳ εὐοδωθῇ ὁ στρατηγός,
will-overcome if then by-God's help be-prospered the general
καὶ τοὺς εἰς λείαν ἐκδραμόντας πολεμίους κατατροπώσηται,
and the for plunder having-run-out enemies he-rout
εἰ μὲν μεγάλην καὶ ἀξιόλογον δουλείαν ἐργάσηται, εἰκός
if indeed great and considerable service he-accomplish likely
ἐστι τοὺς ἐχθροὺς πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑποστρέψαι μετ᾽
it-is the enemies to the own land to-return with
αἰσχύνης. εἰ δὲ ἔτι ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ χρονίσαι μελετῶσι, τὸν
shame if but still in the our(-land) to-linger they-plan the
ἴδιον λαὸν ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀναλαμβανόμενος μήκοθεν γενέσθω
own troops the general taking-up from-afar let-him-be
τῶν πολεμίων, ἐν ἐπιτηδείοις δηλονότι χωρίοις, καὶ τὸν
from-the enemies in suitable evidently places and the

λαὸν αὐτοῦ κατάκοπον ὄντα ἐπὶ ἡμέρας τρεῖς διαναπαυσάτω,
troops his worn-out being for days three let-him-rest
μόνους τοὺς παραμένειν ὀφείλοντας, ὡς ἤδη ἐξεθέμεθα,
only the(-men) to-stay-beside owing as already we-laid-down
ἀποστέλλων ἑκάστῃ ἡμέρᾳ. πρὸς ὑποστροφὴν δὲ ὁρμῶντας
sending each day toward return and setting-out
τούτους ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐπιγνούς, παραυτίκα τάχει πολλῷ
them the general having-recognized at-once with-speed much
ἄρχοντα τῶν χρησίμων ἀποστείλας, τὸ πεζικὸν στράτευμα
an-officer of-the useful having-sent the infantry army
εἰς τὰς δυσχωρίας τῶν ὁδῶν ἐπισωρευσάτω· καὶ αὐτὸς
into the rough-places of-the roads let-him-heap-up and himself
δὲ ὁ στρατηγὸς σπευσάτω, μὴ ἐν νυκτὶ μηδὲ ἐν ἡμέρᾳ
too the general let-him-hasten not in night nor in day
ἑαυτὸν ποσῶς ἂν ἀναπαῦσαι, ἀλλὰ σὺν τάχει πολλῷ
himself at-all — to-rest but with speed much
ἔμπροσθεν αὐτῶν γενέσθω, καὶ καλῶς παρασκευάσας ἅπαν
in-front-of them let-him-be and well having-prepared all
τὸ τῶν πεζῶν καὶ ἱππέων αὐτοῦ στράτευμα, τὸν κατ᾽
the of-the foot-soldiers and horsemen his army the against
αὐτῶν πόλεμον διάθοιτο, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω ἐπιλεπτῶς
them war he-may-arrange as above minutely
ἐξεθέμεθα. καὶ οὕτως ποιῶν, χάριτι Χριστοῦ, καὶ δυνάμει
we-set-out and so doing by-grace of-Christ and by-power
καὶ πρεσβείαις τῆς παναχράντου αὐτοῦ μητρός, τῆς κατὰ
and by-intercessions of-the all-immaculate his mother the against
τῶν ἐχθρῶν μάχης κρατήσει. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτως.
the enemies battle he-will-win and these-things indeed so

The enemy's horse rides ahead to raid while the baggage-train and the infantry come through the passes and camp to await it. The general routs the scattered raiders, or else the camp, from ambushes on either side of its road or at its pasture, since few horsemen guard it; and he seizes the narrows before the raiders return.

Περὶ τοῦ διαχωρισμοῦ τοῦ κούρσου, καὶ τοῦ λαοῦ ὄπισθεν 10
about the separation of-the raiding-force and of-the troops behind
ἐπακολουθοῦντος.
following
Ἃ δὲ ἡμεῖς ἐθεασάμεθα, ἐκθέσθαι οὐδαμῶς κατοκνήσομεν.
what and we saw to-set-out in-no-way we-shall-shrink-from
τὸ τῶν πολεμίων φωσσάτον διαφόρως, οἵ τε ἱππεῖς
the of-the enemies army in-different-ways the and horsemen
σὺν τῷ πεζῷ ὁμοῦ τῆς χώρας καὶ τῶν πόλεων
with the infantry together from-the land and from-the cities
αὐτῶν συνεξήρχοντο· καὶ ἐπὶ δυσὶν ἡμέραις ὁμοῦ
their came-out-together and for two days together
συμπεριπατήσαντες, ἔσθ' ὅτε καὶ πλείοσιν, ἀπ' ἀλλήλων
having-walked-together it-is when also more from one-another
διεχωρίζοντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἱππεῖς, οἱ τὰς ἡμετέρας χώρας
separated and the indeed horsemen the(-men) the our lands
κατατρέχειν καὶ λεηλατεῖν βουλόμενοι, προὐλάμβανον
to-overrun and to-plunder wishing went-ahead
ἡμερῶν τινων διάστημα, τοῦ πεζικοῦ λαοῦ αὐτῶν
of-days some distance the infantry troops their
ἀφεστηκότος· διὰ τὸ σπεύδειν αὐτοὺς ἀμηνυτὶ τοὺς
standing-off because-of the to-hasten them unannounced the
οἰκήτορας τῶν χωρίων καταλαβεῖν, οἴκοι μένοντας. τὸ δὲ
inhabitants of-the villages to-seize at-home staying the and

τοῦλδον μετὰ τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῆς τούτων ἀποσκευῆς,
baggage-train with the foot-soldiers and the their baggage
ὄπισθεν ἑπόμενον, ἡνίκα τὰς δυσχωρίας καὶ τὰ στενὰ
behind following when the rough-places and the narrows
διῆλθεν, ἐπιτήδειον διασκοπῆσαν τόπον πρὸς φυλακὴν
it-passed-through suitable having-examined place for guard
αὐτῶν καὶ ἀσφάλειαν, τὰς σκηνὰς πηξάμενοι ἐν αὐτῷ
their and safety the tents having-pitched in it
ηὐλίζοντο, τοὺς εἰς κοῦρσον ἐκδραμόντας ἱππεῖς ἐκεῖσε
encamped the to raiding-force having-run-out horsemen there
προσεκδεχόμενοι· ἵνα τοὺς ὑποστρέφοντας καλῶς τὰς
awaiting so-that the(-ones) returning well the
δυσχωρίας διαβιβάσωσιν. ὁ οὖν στρατηγός, τὴν ἐξέλευσιν
rough-places they-may-bring-through the then general the coming-out
αὐτῶν καταμηνυόμενος, τὰς παραμονὰς ἀποστελλέτω, καὶ
their being-informed-of the stayings-beside let-him-send and
πάντα ποιείτω κατὰ τὴν ἀνωτέρω διάταξιν. καὶ εἰ
all-things let-him-do according-to the above arrangement and if
μὲν εὐχερές ἐστι τῷ στρατηγῷ, τοὺς εἰς τὴν λείαν
indeed easy it-is for-the general the(-men) to the plunder
ἐκδραμόντας διεσκεδασμένους καταλαβεῖν, καὶ τούτους
having-run-out dispersed to-overtake and them
κατατροπώσασθαι, ἔργῳ τοῦτο σπευσάτω πληρῶσαι. εἰ δὲ
to-rout in-deed this let-him-hasten to-fulfill if but
διά τινα σφάλματα καὶ τὰς συμβαινούσας ἐναντιώσεις
because-of some mistakes and the happening oppositions
ἐμπόδιον προσυπαντήσει αὐτῷ, εἰς τὸν κατὰ τοῦ φωσσάτου
hindrance will-meet him for the against the army
πόλεμον παρασκευασθήτω· καὶ τὸν τόπον, ἐν ᾧ τὰς
war let-him-be-prepared and the place in which the
σκηνὰς ἐπήξαντο, ἀκριβῶς διασκοπησάτω, μή ποτε
tents they-pitched exactly let-him-examine lest ever

ποταμός ἐστιν ἀσφάλειαν αὐτοῖς προξενῶν, ἢ ῥύαξ. καὶ
a-river is safety for-them providing or gully and
πρὸς τὴν θέσιν τοῦ τόπου δεῖ καὶ αὐτὸν παρασκευασθῆναι,
toward the position of-the place must also himself to-be-prepared
καὶ σπουδῇ πολλῇ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τὸ πεζικὸν στράτευμα, εἰ
and with-haste much to himself the infantry army if
δυνατόν, ἐπισυναγαγεῖν. προσδοκῶντος δὲ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
possible to-gather expecting and the general
τὴν τούτων ἀποκίνησιν καὶ ἐν ἑτέρῳ ἀπλήκτῳ μετάβασιν,
the their departure and into another encampment change
ἢ τυχὸν δι᾽ αὐτομόλων τοῦτο πυνθανομένου, δέον
or perhaps through deserters this learning it-is-needful
ἱππεῖς ἀποστεῖλαι νυκτός, ἀρχηγοὺς ἔχοντας τῶν ἐμπείρων
horsemen to-send by-night leaders having of-the experienced
ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἀξιολόγων, καὶ δύο ἐγκρύμματα παρασκευάσαι
men and notable and two concealments to-prepare
ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν τῆς ὁδοῦ, δι᾽ ἧς γενήσεται ἡ τῶν
on-this-side and-that of-the road through which will-be the of-the
πολεμίων διέλευσις. ἐξ αὐτῶν δὲ τῶν ἀποσταλέντων
enemies passage from the-very and the having-been-sent
ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας ἐπιλεξάμενος, εἰς λόχον καταστησάτω, χωρία
a-hundred men having-picked into ambush let-him-set villages
φυλάττοντας τὰ πλησίον τῆς παρόδου τῶν πολεμίων
guarding the(-ones) near the passage of-the enemies
διακείμενα. καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν στρατηγὸν χρὴ ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ
lying and himself the general must in suitable
τόπῳ μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ ἵστασθαι κεκρυμμένον,
place with all the troops his to-stand hidden
καὶ ἐκ περιωπῆς ἐφορῶντα τὴν τῶν πολεμίων διάβασιν.
and from lookout overseeing the of-the enemies crossing

οἱ οὖν ἱππεῖς τῶν πολεμίων, οἱ εἰς συλλογισμὸν
the then horsemen of-the enemies the(-ones) for gathering
χρειῶν τὰ χωρία διερευνώμενοι τὰ πλησίον τούτοις
of-needs the villages searching the(-ones) near them
συμπαρακείμενα, ἡνίκα ἐν τοῖς φυλαττομένοις χωρίοις
lying-alongside when in the guarded villages
εἰσέλθωσι, καὶ τῶν ἵππων ἀποβάντες τὰς οἰκίας
they-go-in and from-the horses having-dismounted the houses
ἀναψηλαφῶσι τῶν χωριτῶν, κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, οἱ εἰς τὸν
grope-through of-the villagers against them the in the
λόχον ἱστάμενοι ἑκατὸν ἱππεῖς ὁρμησάτωσαν, καὶ ὅσους
ambush standing hundred horsemen let-them-rush and as-many-as
ἀνελεῖν δυνηθῶσιν, εἴτε ζωγρῆσαι, παραυτίκα πρὸς φυγὴν
to-kill they-are-able or to-take-alive at-once to flight
ὁρμήσωσιν, ὑποφεύγοντες τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν ἀναμεταξὺ τῶν δύο
let-them-set-out fleeing-along the road the in-between of-the two
ἐγκρυμμάτων διερχομένην, ἐφελκόμενοί τε τοὺς πολεμίους
concealments passing-through drawing-after-them and the enemies
πρὸς δίωξιν. καταδιωκόμενοι δὲ ταῖς ἐνέδραις περιπεσεῖν
to pursuit being-pursued and into-the ambushes to-fall
τοὺς πολεμίους παρασκευάσουσι. τότε οὖν ἐξερχέσθωσαν
the enemies they-will-cause then therefore let-them-come-out
τὰ ἑκατέρωθεν ἱστάμενα ἐγκρύμματα, καὶ σφοδρῶς τὴν κατ᾽
the on-each-side standing concealments and violently the against
αὐτῶν ὁρμὴν ποιησάτωσαν, καὶ πολλοὺς τῶν πολεμίων
them rush let-them-make and many of-the enemies
ἔργον μαχαίρας ποιήσονται. τοῦ δὲ στρατηγοῦ ταῦτα
work of-sword will-make the and general these-things
ὁρῶντος, παραυτίκα καὶ αὐτὸς μετὰ τῶν πλειόνων τοῦ
seeing at-once also himself with the greater(-part) of-the
σὺν αὐτῷ λαοῦ ἐν ὁρμήματι σφοδροτάτῳ τὴν προσβολὴν
with him troops in onset most-violent the attack

εἰς τὴν παράταξιν τῶν πολεμίων ποιείτω· τοὺς δέ γε
on the battle-array of-the enemies let-him-make the and at-least
ὑπολοίπους τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ κατὰ νώτου τῶν πολεμίων
remaining(-ones) of-the troops his at back of-the enemies
γενέσθαι, καὶ συνάψαι πόλεμον παρασκευασάτω. καὶ εἰ
to-get and to-join war let-him-cause and if
μή τι ἐμπόδιον ἐξ ἡμετέρων ἁμαρτιῶν γένηται, τῶν
not some hindrance from our sins happen the
πολεμίων ὑπερισχύσουσιν. εἰ δέ γε ἰσχυρῶς μαχόμενοι
enemies they-will-overpower if and at-least strongly fighting
οἱ πολέμιοι ἀντισχεῖν δυνηθῶσι, καὶ στῶσιν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
the enemies to-hold-out be-able and stand in the same
τόπῳ τὰ ἀχθοφόρα ζῶα ἀποφορτίσαντες, ἄπληκτον
place the burden-bearing animals having-unloaded encampment
δῆθεν ποιούμενοι ἐκ πολλῆς περιστάσεως, καὶ πειρῶνται
as-it-were making from much straits and try
τοῦ ἀντιπαρατάξασθαι, πολλὴν ἐκ τούτου ἐφευρήσουσι τὴν
the to-array-against much from this they-will-find the
δυσχέρειαν. ἀλλ᾽ ὅμως χρὴ καὶ τὸν στρατηγὸν κύκλῳ
difficulty but nevertheless must also the general in-a-circle
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπαγαγεῖν τὸν πόλεμον, καί, εἰ δυνατόν, καὶ
against them to-bring the war and if possible also
πεζικὸν λαὸν τῇ αὐτῇ τοῦ πολέμου ἡμέρᾳ καταλαβεῖν
infantry troops on-the same of-the war day to-overtake
τάχει πολλῷ παραγενέσθαι, τοῦτο παρασκευάσαι. εἰ δὲ
with-speed much to-arrive this to-cause if but
τοῦτο ἀδύνατόν ἐστι διὰ τὸ πόῤῥω τούτους τυγχάνειν,
this impossible is because-of the far them to-be
τοὺς προσήκοντας τῶν ἱππέων τῶν ἵππων ἀποβῆναι
the(-men) fitting of-the horsemen from-the horses to-dismount
διορισάτω, καὶ πεζῇ τοῖς πολεμίοις μετὰ τῶν ἱπποτῶν
let-him-appoint and on-foot the enemies with the horsemen

μάχεσθαι, τόξοις καὶ σφενδόναις καὶ δόρασι σὺν ἀσπίσι
to-fight with-bows and slings and spears with shields
χρωμένους. δεῖ οὖν τὸν στρατηγὸν καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀποσκευὴν
using must then the general also the his baggage
ἀγαγεῖν, καὶ τὸ τοῦλδον, εἴ γε πλησίον τυγχάνει, καὶ
to-bring and the baggage-train if at-least near it-happens and
σύνεγγυς τῶν πολεμίων ἀπληκεῦσαι, εἰς ἔκπληξιν αὐτῶν
close-by the enemies to-encamp for consternation their
καὶ ἀπόγνωσιν. εἰ δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ τόπῳ ὕδωρ τοπαράπαν
and despair if and in the-very the place water at-all
οὐκ ἔστι, καὶ τοῦτο πολλὴν ἀθυμίαν αὐτοῖς προξενήσει·
not is also this much despondency for-them will-cause
καὶ εἰ μὴ τελέως τούτους καταγωνίσηται, ἀλλ' οὖν
and if not completely them he-overcome but nevertheless
πολλούς γε τούτων ἀνδραποδίσει, πλείστους δὲ καὶ
many at-least of-them will-enslave very-many and also
θανατώσει, καὶ τραυματίας ἐργάσεται, καὶ τὸ ἀλαζονικὸν
will-put-to-death and wounded will-make and the boastful
αὐτῶν καταβαλεῖ φρόνημα· ὥστε μὴ ἀδεῶς κατατολμᾷν
their will-cast-down spirit so-that not fearlessly to-dare
κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν χωρίων τὰς ἐφόδους ποιεῖσθαι.
against the Roman villages the attacks to-make
εἰ δὲ μὴ πρότερον ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐπιγνῷ τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ
if and not before the general recognize the from the
ἀπλήκτου αὐτῶν ἐν ἑτέρῳ ἀπλήκτῳ μετάβασιν, ἤ,
encampment their into another encampment change either
ὡς ἔφην, δι' αὐτομόλων, ἢ διὰ δεσμωτῶν· ὅπως ἐν
as I-said through deserters or through prisoners so-that in
νυκτὶ ἀποστείλας παρασκευάσῃ ἐν τῇ παρόδῳ αὐτῶν τὰ
night having-sent he-may-prepare in the passage their the
ἐγκρύμματα· καὶ ἐν ἡμέρᾳ ὁδοιπορούντων τῶν πολεμίων
concealments and in day marching the enemies

φανερῶς παρασκευασάμενος τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν διάθηται
openly having-prepared the against them may-arrange
πόλεμον· εἴ γε οὐ πάντη ὀλιγοστὸν καὶ εὐαρίθμητον
war if at-least not wholly very-few and easily-counted
κέκτηται στράτευμα. ὁ γὰρ κατὰ τὸ τοῦλδον αὐτῶν
he-possesses army the for against the baggage-train their
πόλεμος, συντόμως, οὐδέποτε ἐναντίωσιν ἢ βλάβην τῷ
war in-brief never opposition or harm to-the
ἡμετέρῳ στρατῷ προὐξένησεν, ὀλίγους ἔχον μαχίμους ἱππεῖς
our army caused few having fighting horsemen
εἰς φυλακὴν ἑαυτοῦ· ἀλλ᾽ ὁσάκις ἂν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν συνήφθη
for guard of-itself but as-often-as — against them was-joined
πόλεμος, πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατὸς καὶ
war many of-them the of-the Romans army both
ἠνδραποδίσατο καὶ ἀνεῖλε· καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ
enslaved and killed and many of-the draft-animals and
ἡμιόνων αὐτῶν πεφορτισμένα ἀνελάβοντο. εἰ δὲ καὶ τὸ
mules their laden took-up if and also the
πεζικὸν στράτευμα ἐν ἡμέρᾳ πολέμου τύχῃ, τὸ ὡπλισμένον
infantry army in day of-war happen the armed
δηλονότι καὶ πρὸς πολέμους γεγυμνασμένον, κύκλῳ κατ᾽
evidently and for wars trained in-a-circle against
αὐτῶν στρατηγικῶς παρασκευάσῃ τὸν πόλεμον, καὶ τελείῳ
them like-a-general prepare the war and to-complete
τούτους ἀφανισμῷ παραδῷ. τοιαῦτα γὰρ γενέσθαι ἐν τῷ
them destruction he-hand-over such-things for to-happen in the
τούλδῳ τῶν πολεμίων, ἀλλὰ καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐν τῷ
baggage-train of-the enemies but also by them in the
ἡμετέρῳ, καὶ ἐθεασάμεθα, καὶ ἐν ἱστορικοῖς ἀνέγνωμεν,
our(-one) both we-saw and in historians we-read
καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἀρχαιοτέρων μεμαθήκαμεν. διὰ ταῦτα
and from the more-ancient have-learned because-of these-things

μὲν οὖν ὠφέλιμος ὁ κατὰ τοῦ τούλδου πόλεμος, ὡς
indeed then useful the against the baggage-train war as
μὴ φέρων τινὰ βλάβην ἢ ἐναντίωσιν, μᾶλλον δὲ νίκην
not bringing any harm or opposition rather but victory
καὶ εὔκλειαν. εἰ γὰρ καὶ μὴ τὴν νικῶσαν εὕρῃ εἰς
and good-fame if for even not the winning(-one) find in
τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτὸ πόλεμον ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων στρατός, ἀλλ᾽
the against it war the of-the Romans army but
οὖν οὐδεμίαν βλάβην ὑποστήσεται. εἰ δέ, ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ
nevertheless no harm will-undergo if but in which place
πρότερον ηὐλίζοντο, διέμειναν ἐν αὐτῷ, μηδαμῶς τῶν
before they-encamped they-remained in it in-no-way from-the
ἐκεῖσε ἀπάραντες διὰ τὴν τοῦ τόπου ὀχυρότητα, τὸ
there having-set-out because-of the of-the place strength the
κοῦρσον ἀπεκδεχόμενοι, καὶ ὡσαύτως ὁ στρατηγὸς κατ᾽
raiding-force awaiting also likewise the general against
αὐτῶν ἐπάξει τὸν πόλεμον· μή ποτε ἐμβραδύνοντος διὰ
them will-bring the war lest ever while-he-delays because-of
τὴν τοῦ πεζικοῦ ἰδίου λαοῦ ἐπισώρευσιν, ἢ διὰ ἄλλην
the of-the infantry own troops heaping-up or because-of other
τινὰ πρόφασιν, ὑποστρέψῃ τὸ κοῦρσον, καὶ διακωλύσῃ
some pretext should-return the raiding-force and should-prevent
τὸν πόλεμον. οὕτως δὲ χρὴ τὸν στρατηγὸν κατ᾽
the war thus and must the general against
αὐτῶν ἐπελθεῖν. διασκοπῆσαι διὰ τῶν ἀποστελλομένων
them to-advance to-examine through the being-sent
βιγλατόρων τὰ συμπαρακείμενα χωρία, καὶ σύνεγγυς ὄντα
lookouts the lying-alongside villages and close-by being
τοῦ ἀπλήκτου τῶν πολεμίων· κἀκεῖσε ἀποκρύψαι ἱππεῖς
of-the encampment of-the enemies and-there to-hide horsemen
ἐκλεκτοὺς ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ τόπῳ, μετὰ ἄρχοντος ἐμπειροτάτου
picked in suitable place with officer most-experienced

καὶ ἀνδρείου. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς εἰσέρχονται τροφὰς
and brave and when into them they-go-in provisions
διερευνώμενοι, κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ὁρμησάτωσαν.
searching against them let-them-rush
ἑτέρους δὲ ἱππεῖς εἰς λόχον ἀπαρτίσαι εἰς βοήθειαν καὶ
other and horsemen into ambush to-make-ready for help and
ἐκδίκησιν τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ἀποσταλέντων· καὶ εἴ γε
avenging of-the in-front having-been-sent and if at-least
τούτους βουληθῶσιν ἐπιδιῶξαι οἱ τῶν πολεμίων ἱππεῖς,
them should-wish to-pursue the of-the enemies horsemen
ἐπιθήσονται κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, καὶ τρέψονται, καὶ καταδιώξουσι·
they-will-attack against them and will-rout and will-pursue
διὰ τὸ ἀείποτε ὀλιγοστοὺς εἶναι τοὺς ἱππεῖς, τοὺς εἰς
because-of the always very-few to-be the horsemen the(-ones) for
φυλακὴν τοῦ τούλδου. τῶν πολεμίων ἐν τοῖς χωρίοις μὴ
guard of-the baggage-train of-the enemies into the villages not
εἰσερχομένων, εἰ καὶ ἀδύνατον τοῦτο τυγχάνει, διορισάτω
going-in if even impossible this happens let-him-appoint
ὁ στρατηγὸς τοὺς ἀποστελλομένους παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ τῶν
the general the being-sent by him of-the
ἐμπείρων ἀνδρῶν βιγλάτορας, καὶ διασκοπησάτωσαν, ἐν
experienced men lookouts and let-them-examine in
ᾧ μέρει τοῦ ἀπλήκτου αὐτῶν τὰς καμήλους οἱ πολέμιοι
what part of-the encampment their the camels the enemies
εἰς νομὴν ἐξάγουσι. καὶ διαχωρισάτω εἴτε τουρμάρχην,
to pasture lead-out and let-him-detach either a-tourmarch
εἴτε τοποτηρητὴν χρήσιμον, μεθ᾽ ἱππέων ἀνδρείων· καὶ
or a-topoteretes useful with horsemen brave and
σκοπησάτωσαν ῥύακα, εἰ εὕρηται ἐν τῷ τόπῳ ἐπιτήδειος·
let-them-look-for a-gully if it-is-found in the place suitable
καὶ παρασυρθῶσιν ἐν αὐτῷ κεκρυμμένοι, ἕως οὗ πλησίον
and let-them-be-drawn-along in it hidden until — near

γένωνται· καὶ τότε φανερῶς κατὰ τῶν καμήλων τὴν
they-get and then openly against the camels the
ἐπίθεσιν ποιήσωνται. εἰς δύο δὲ τὸν λαὸν οἱ
attack let-them-make into two and the troops the(-men)
ἀποσταλέντες διαμερισάτωσαν· καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡμίσεις τὰς
having-been-sent let-them-divide and the indeed half the
νεμομένας καμήλους καὶ τοὺς ὄνους ἀναλαμβανέτωσαν, οἱ
grazing camels and the donkeys let-them-take-up the
δὲ ἄλλοι εἰς φυλακὴν καὶ ἐκδίκησιν καὶ βοήθειαν αὐτῶν
and others for guard and avenging and help their
ἔστωσαν. καὶ εἰ τύχῃ φοῦλκον ἔξω τοῦ φωσσάτου τῶν
let-them-be and if it-happen a-unit outside the army of-the
πολεμίων ἱστάμενον, καὶ ἐπέλθῃ κατὰ τῶν εἰς τὰς
enemies standing and advance against the(-men) on the
καμήλους ἐπιθεμένων, ἢ καὶ ἐκ τοῦ φωσσάτου ἐξέλθωσιν
camels having-attacked or also from the army come-out
ἱππεῖς καταδιώκοντες, οἱ ὄπισθεν ὄντες τούτους
horsemen pursuing the(-men) behind being them
καταγωνίσονται. παραυτίκα δὲ καὶ ὁ στρατηγός, οὐ
will-overcome at-once and also the general not
πόῤῥω ὤν, ἀλλὰ πλησίον ἐν τῷ ἐγκρύμματι, κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
far being but near in the concealment against them
ἐξελθέτω· καὶ καθὼς ὁρᾷ συναφθέντα τὸν πόλεμον, οὕτω
let-him-come-out and as he-sees joined the war so
καὶ διατιθέτω, ἢ σφοδρῶς κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἐπέλθῃ, ἢ
also let-him-dispose either violently against the enemies he-advance or
τῶν ἀποσταλέντων τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐπικρατεστέρων ὄντων,
the having-been-sent of-the troops his stronger being
ἐν τάξει καὶ μὴ διεσκεδασμένως τὴν ἐπέλευσιν κατὰ τοῦ
in order and not dispersedly the attack against the
ἀπλήκτου ποιήσηται. καὶ ἅπαντα τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ, ἱππεῖς τε
encampment he-make and all the troops his horsemen both

καὶ πεζοὺς ἀγαγών, ἐπεὶ τὴν τοῦ τόπου θέσιν ἐξεπίσταται,
and foot-soldiers having-led when the of-the place position he-knows-well
διαμερίσῃ τὰ κατατόπια ταῖς τάξεσι πάσαις τῶν τε
he-may-distribute the stations to-the ranks all of-the both
ἱππέων καὶ πεζῶν, καὶ τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν διάθηται πόλεμον,
horsemen and foot-soldiers and the against them may-arrange war
εἰ οἷόν τέ ἐστι, κύκλῳ. εἰ δὲ ποταμός ἐστιν, ἢ ῥύαξ,
if possible — it-is in-a-circle if and a-river is or gully
ὡς ἀνωτέρω εἰρήκαμεν, ἀντὶ χάρακος τοὺς πολεμίους
as above we-have-said instead-of palisade the enemies
φυλάττων, εἰ μὲν ὁπωσοῦν πόρον δέχεται, κἀκεῖθεν λαὸν
guarding if indeed in-any-way ford it-admits there-too troops
ἐπιστήσῃ. παρασκευάσῃ δὲ καὶ σκηνὰς αὐτῶν πῆξαι,
let-him-set let-him-cause and also tents their to-pitch
πρὸς τὸ ἐνδείξασθαι, μέλλοντα αὐτὸν ἀπληκεῦσαι ἐκεῖσε,
for the to-show about-to him to-encamp there
εἰς ἐκθρόησιν αὐτῶν· καὶ οὕτως ποιεῖσθαι τὸν πόλεμον.
for alarm their and so to-make the war
καὶ εἰ καλῶς καὶ εὐτάκτως καὶ ἀνδρείως διάθηται τὰ
and if well and in-good-order and bravely he-dispose the(-things)
περὶ τοῦ πολέμου, μεγάλως εὐοδωθήσεται. εἰ δέ γε τῇ
about the war greatly he-will-be-prospered if but at-least on-the
πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οὐ δυνήσεται τούτους κατατροπώσασθαι,
first day not he-will-be-able them to-rout
ἰσχυρῶς αὐτῶν ἀνθισταμένων, καὶ πεζικὴν ἐχόντων δύναμιν,
strongly them resisting and infantry having force
καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ τόπου θέσεως βοηθουμένων, δέον καὶ
and from the of-the place position being-helped it-is-needful also
παραμεῖναι αὐτοῖς, καὶ πλεῖον πεζικὸν προσκαλέσασθαι.
to-stay-beside them and more infantry to-summon
καὶ ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ τοὺς ψιλοὺς κατ᾽ αὐτῶν καὶ τοὺς
and in the night the light(-troops) against them and the

σφενδονήτας βάλλειν παρασκευάσῃ· καὶ πυρὰ πλεῖστα
slingers to-shoot be-cause and fires very-many
ἀνάπτειν γύροθεν αὐτῶν· καὶ ἀνδρείως καὶ εὐτόλμως
to-kindle round-about them and bravely and daringly
παραινέσαι τοῖς ψιλοῖς τοῦ ἐκ χειρὸς μάχεσθαι καὶ
to-exhort the light(-troops) for-the from hand to-fight and
προκινδυνεύειν, ἕως ἂν εἰσέλθωσιν ἔνδον τοῦ ἀπλήκτου τῶν
to-run-risks-in-front until — they-go-in within the encampment of-the
πολεμίων, καὶ ἵππους καὶ ἡμιόνους καί τινα πράγματα
enemies and horses and mules and some goods
νυκτὸς ἀναλάβωνται, πλήττοντες συνεχῶς καὶ ἀναιροῦντες
by-night they-take-up striking continually and killing
τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ εἰ ὅλως Θεοῦ βοηθείᾳ τοιοῦτον πρὸς
the enemies and if at-all by-God's help such-thing at
ἓν μέρος γένηται, καὶ θεαθῇ καὶ ἐπιγνωσθῇ ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων
one part happen and be-seen and be-recognized by the other
τάξεων, ὁρμήσουσι καὶ αὐτοὶ θανάτου καταφρονοῦντες εἰς
ranks they-will-rush also themselves death despising to
ἁρπαγὴν τῶν λαφύρων, διὰ τὴν τοῦ κέρδους ἐλπίδα,
seizing of-the spoils because-of the of-the gain hope
καὶ περιγενήσονται τούτων τῇ τοῦ Θεοῦ χάριτι ῥᾳδίως.
and will-prevail-over them by-the — of-God grace easily
εἰ δὲ καὶ μὴ τελέως τούτους κατατροπώσεται διά τινα
if and even not completely them he-will-rout because-of some
τυχὸν σφάλματα καὶ ἀποτυχίαν, ἀλλ' οὖν πολλοὺς
perhaps mistakes and failure but nevertheless many
τούτων καὶ χειρώσεται καὶ ἀναιρήσει, καὶ λάφυρα πλεῖστα
of-them both will-subdue and will-kill and spoils very-many
ὁ λαὸς αὐτοῦ λήψεται. οὕτως δὲ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ τὰ
the troops his will-take thus and the general the(-things)
περὶ τῶν πολέμων τοῦ φωσσάτου διενεργοῦντος, χρὴ καὶ
about the wars of-the army carrying-out must also

ἄρχοντα τῶν χρησίμων καὶ ἐμπείρων μετὰ τεσσαράκοντα
an-officer of-the useful and experienced with forty
ἱππέων μήκοθεν ἀποστεῖλαι, φυλάττειν τὴν ὁδόν, ἣν
horsemen from-afar to-send to-guard the road by-which
ὑποστρέφειν μέλλει τὸ τῶν πολεμίων κοῦρσον. καὶ ἡνίκα
to-return is-about the of-the enemies raiding-force and when
τούτους θεάσηται πρὸς τὸ φωσσάτον αὐτῶν ἐρχομένους
them he-see toward the army their coming
καὶ ἔμπροσθεν αὐτῶν, ὡς ἔθος ἐστὶ τοῖς Ταρσίταις, τὸ
and in-front-of them as custom is for-the Tarsians the
λεγόμενον παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς βέρεδον, ἐρχόμενον σύνεγγυς αὐτῶν,
called among them beredon coming close-by them
καταμηνύσαι τῷ φωσσάτῳ τὴν τοῦ κούρσου αὐτῶν
to-report to-the army the of-the raiding-force their
παρουσίαν· εὐθέως ὁ εἰς τὴν βίγλαν ἀποσταλεὶς ἄρχων
presence at-once the into the watch-post having-been-sent officer
μηνυέτω τῷ στρατηγῷ. καὶ εἰ μὲν ἴδῃ τὸ βέρεδον μήκοθεν
let-him-report to-the general and if indeed he-see the beredon from-afar
πολὺ τῆς παρατάξεως τοῦ κούρσου ἐρχόμενον, ἀποστελεῖ
much of-the battle-array of-the raiding-force coming he-will-send
ἄρχοντα τῶν χρησίμων μετ᾽ ἐκλεκτῶν ἱππέων, ἐπιθέσθαι
an-officer of-the useful with picked horsemen to-attack
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, εἰ δυνατόν, ἀδοκήτως, καὶ κατακυριεύσει
against them if possible unexpectedly and will-master
τούτων ῥᾳδίως. εἰ δὲ πλησίον καὶ σύνεγγυς τῆς παρατάξεως
them easily if but near and close-by the battle-array
τοῦ κούρσου ἔμπροσθεν αὐτῶν περιπατεῖ, μὴ ἀποστειλάτω
of-the raiding-force in-front-of them it-goes not let-him-send
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν· ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀρκεσθήτω πρὸς ἃ ὁ Θεὸς
against them but rather let-him-be-content with what — God
αὐτῷ συνήργησεν εἰς τὸν κατὰ τοῦ φωσσάτου πόλεμον·
for-him helped-to-achieve in the against the army war

καὶ ὑποστρεφέσθω μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ λαοῦ, ἐπιλαμβανόμενος
and let-him-return with all the troops taking-hold-of
τῶν ἐπιτηδείων καὶ ὀχυρωτέρων τόπων. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ τῶν
the suitable and stronger places since and the of-the
πολεμίων φωσσάτον διὰ τοῦτο διῆλθε πάσας τὰς
enemies army because-of this passed-through all the
δυσχωρίας, ἐκδεχόμενον τὴν τοῦ κούρσου παρουσίαν, ἵνα
rough-places awaiting the of-the raiding-force presence so-that
τὰ παρὰ τοῦ κούρσου κατασχεθέντα, εἴτε ἀνδράποδα
the(-things) by the raiding-force seized whether captives
εἶεν εἴτε κτήνη, καλῶς σὺν αὐτοῖς διασώσῃ διαβιβάζον
they-be or beasts well with them it-may-save bringing-through
τὰς δυσχωρίας· δέον τὸν στρατηγὸν ἀγωνίσασθαι
the rough-places it-is-needful the general to-strive
ἔμπροσθεν αὐτῶν γενέσθαι, καὶ τοὺς στενωποὺς κατασχεῖν
in-front-of them to-get and the narrow-lanes to-seize
μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ λαοῦ πεζῶν καὶ ἱππέων, καὶ τὸν κατ᾽
with all the troops of-foot-soldiers and horsemen and the against
αὐτῶν πόλεμον ἐπιμελέστερον ἀπαρτίσαι, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω
them war more-carefully to-make-ready as above
δεδήλωται. καὶ μηδέποτε ὑποστρέφοντες αὐτοὶ ἀπολέμητοι
has-been-shown and never returning they unfought-with
καταλειφθῶσιν. εἰ γὰρ καλῶς τὰ τοῦ πολέμου ἐν ταῖς
be-left if for well the(-things) of-the war in the
δυσχωρίαις διάθοιτο, μεγάλως αὐτοὺς κατατροπώσεται. εἰ δὲ
rough-places he-arrange greatly them he-will-rout if but
διὰ τὸ μὴ ἔχειν πλείστην καὶ ἀξιόλογον πεζικὴν δύναμιν,
because-of the not to-have very-much and considerable infantry force
ἀδυνατεῖ πρὸς τὸ μεγάλως αὐτοὺς κατατροπώσασθαι, ἀλλ᾽
he-is-unable for the greatly them to-rout but
οὖν τέως οὕσπερ ἠχμαλώτευσαν (εἰ καὶ μὴ πάντας)
nevertheless meanwhile whom-indeed they-took-captive if even not all

ἀναῤῥύσεται κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, καὶ οὐκ ὀλίγους τῶν πολεμίων
he-will-rescue against them and not few of-the enemies
καὶ τραυματίσει καὶ δορυαλώτους ποιήσεται.
both will-wound and spear-captives will-make

V · AMBUSHES IN THE PASSES

A general with few men can still rout the enemy: infantry hidden on both sides of a road near a strong place, his cavalry close behind, and up to a hundred picked horsemen in ambush in a place their leader knows. When the raiders dismount to search the villages, sixty or seventy horsemen charge them and then flee, drawing the pursuit past the infantry into the cavalry's concealment. If the enemy comes out suddenly in mass before the armies can gather, the general must clear the threatened villages and show himself by night as if to give battle, so that the enemy dares not ride out. Where the enemy's camp-surveyors ride ahead to lay out the camp, three hundred horsemen hidden near it can take them.

Περὶ τοῦ ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν ἵστασθαι τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐν ταῖς 11
about the on-this-side and-that to-stand the foot-soldiers in the
δυσχωρίαις.
rough-places

Χρὴ τὸν στρατηγὸν καὶ ἄλλως ἀγωνίσασθαι τοὺς πολεμίους
must the general also otherwise to-strive the enemies
τροπώσασθαι, εἰ καὶ ὀλίγος ἐστὶν ὁ περὶ αὐτὸν λαός.
to-rout if even few is the about him troops
τόπον κατασκοπησάτω ἐπιτήδειον καὶ ὀχυρώτατον, ἤ τι
a-place let-him-spy-out suitable and most-strong or some
παραπλήσιον κάστρον· ὡς ἐπιδέχεσθαι τὴν τοῦ ὀχυροῦ
similar fort so-that to-admit the of-the strong
τόπου θέσιν μετὰ πεζῶν κρατεῖσθαι, καὶ ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν
place position with foot-soldiers to-be-held and on-this-side and-that
τῆς ὁδοῦ εἰς λόχους τὸ πεζικὸν ἀποκρύπτειν στράτευμα.
of-the road into ambushes the infantry to-hide army

τοῦ δὲ πεζικοῦ ὄπισθεν ὁ στρατηγὸς σύνεγγυς μετὰ
the and infantry behind the general close-by with
τοῦ ἱππικοῦ στρατεύματος στήτω, πάνυ τῶν πεζῶν
the cavalry army let-him-stand very the foot-soldiers
ἔγγιστα. ἔχειν τε καὶ τὸ ἱππικὸν ἔγκρυμμα καὶ πεζοὺς
nearest to-have both and the cavalry concealment and foot-soldiers
πλησίον αὐτοῦ, καὶ σχεδὸν συνηνωμένως κατὰ τὸ ὄπισθεν
near him and almost united at the rear
μέρος ἱστάσθω. ἀποσταλήτωσαν δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν ἐνέδραν
side let-it-stand let-there-be-sent and also into the ambush
παρὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἄνδρες ἐπίλεκτοι, καὶ ἵππους ταχεῖς
by the general men picked and horses swift
ἔχοντες, ἄχρι τῶν ἑκατόν, ἀρχηγὸν ἔχοντες ἀνδρεῖον
having up-to the hundred a-leader having brave
καὶ ἐμπειρότατον, καὶ γινώσκοντα χωρίον ἐπιτήδειον, ἐν
and most-experienced and knowing a-place suitable in
ᾧ κρύψῃ τὸν ἴδιον λαόν. νυκτὸς δὲ τὸν τοιοῦτον
which he-may-hide the own troops by-night and the such
τόπον καταλαμβανέτω, καὶ καλῶς αὐτοὺς ἀποκρυψάτω.
place let-him-take and well them let-him-hide
ἡνίκα δὲ διαυγάσῃ, εἰς περιωπὴν ἀνελθὼν βλεπέτω, τῶν
when and it-dawn onto lookout having-gone-up let-him-watch of-the
πολεμίων περιπατούντων, τὴν τούτων διάβασιν. ὁρῶν δὲ
enemies going-about the their crossing seeing and
τοὺς εἰς λείαν ἐκτρέχοντας καὶ τὰ χωρία διερευνῶντας,
the(-men) for plunder running-out and the villages searching
πρὸς τὸ ἐπισυναγαγεῖν λάφυρά τε καὶ χρήματα, καὶ
for the to-gather spoils both and goods and
εἴ τι ἕτερον ἐφευρεῖν δυνηθῶσι, καρτερησάτω ἕως
if anything other to-find they-be-able let-him-hold-out until
ἂν θεάσηται αὐτοὺς τῶν ἵππων ἀποβαίνοντας, καὶ
— he-see them from-the horses dismounting and

τοὺς ἵππους τῶν χωρίων ἀνερευνωμένους. τότε τῶν μετ᾽
the horses of-the villages searching-out then of-the with
αὐτοῦ ἱππέων εἴτε ἑβδομήκοντα ἢ ἑξήκοντα, πλείους
him horsemen either seventy or sixty more
δηλονότι τοὺς οἰκείους τῶν πολεμίων ὄντας (πλείονες
evidently the own(-men) than-the enemies being more-numerous
γὰρ τῶν πολεμίων τῷ ἀριθμῷ εἶναι ὀφείλουσιν οἱ
for than-the enemies in-the number to-be ought the(-men)
τοῦ στρατηγοῦ), διορισάσθω τούτους ἀνδρείῳ ὁρμήματι
of-the general let-him-appoint these with-brave onset
σὺν ὀξυτάτῃ τῶν ἵππων ὁρμῇ ἐπιθέσθαι τοῖς ἀντιπάλοις,
with sharpest of-the horses rush to-attack the adversaries
καὶ Θεοῦ συνεργίᾳ εὐοδωθήσεται. εἰ δὲ συμβῇ τούτους
and by-God's help he-will-be-prospered if and it-happen these
ἐπιδιωχθῆναι παρὰ τῶν πολεμίων, δέον προαπαντῆσαι
to-be-pursued by the enemies it-is-needful to-go-to-meet
αὐτοῖς μετὰ τῶν ὑπολειφθέντων αὐτῷ τεσσαράκοντα,
them with the left-behind him forty
καὶ τοὺς μὲν κατασχεθέντας δεσμώτας ἢ ἀναιρῆσαι,
and the indeed seized prisoners either to-kill
ἢ ἔμπροσθεν ἀποστεῖλαι, ἀπελθεῖν τάχιον, καὶ τὸ
or in-front to-send to-go-off more-quickly and the
ὀχύρωμα καταλαβεῖν. κἀκεῖνος ἐμπείρως μαχόμενος καὶ
stronghold to-reach and-he skillfully fighting and
ἀνθιστάμενος τοῖς πολεμίοις, καὶ ποτὲ μὲν ὑποστρέφων
resisting the enemies and at-one-time indeed returning
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, ποτὲ δὲ ὑποφεύγων, ἐρεθίσει αὐτοὺς
against them at-another and fleeing will-provoke them
πρὸς δίωξιν. καὶ εἰ ἄχρι τῶν τόπων καταδιώξωσιν, ἐν
to pursuit and if as-far-as the places they-pursue in
οἷς οἱ πεζοὶ ἀποκρύπτονται, καὶ τούτους τινὲς τῶν
which the foot-soldiers are-hidden and these some of-the

πολεμίων διέλθωσι, τότε οἱ πεζοὶ τῶν ἐγκρυμμάτων
enemies pass-through then the foot-soldiers from-the concealments
ἐξερχόμενοι ἀντιστήσονται τοῖς διώκουσι πολεμίοις, καὶ
coming-out will-resist the pursuing enemies and
ἀπωθήσονται. οἱ δὲ τοὺς πεζοὺς διελθόντες πολέμιοι
will-repel the and the foot-soldiers having-passed-through enemies
ἐμπεσοῦνται τῷ ἐγκρύμματι τῶν ἱππέων, καὶ ἄρδην ἅπαντες
will-fall-into the concealment of-the horsemen and utterly all
ἀπολοῦνται· ὑπὸ γὰρ τοῦ τόπου οἱ πεζοὶ βοηθούμενοι
will-perish by for the place the foot-soldiers being-helped
οὐκ ἐάσουσι τοὺς διώκοντας διελθεῖν· ἀλλὰ τὴν δίωξιν
not will-allow the pursuers to-pass-through but the pursuit
καταλείψουσι καὶ ἄπρακτοι πάντες ὑποστρέψουσι, τοὺς
will-abandon and unsuccessful all will-return the
ἤδη προκατασχεθέντας τῶν οἰκείων ἀπολέσαντες.
already seized-beforehand of-the own(-men) having-lost

12 Περὶ ἀθρόας ἐξελεύσεως τῶν πολεμίων, πρὸ τοῦ τὰ
about massed coming-out of-the enemies before the the
Ῥωμαϊκὰ ἐπισυναχθῆναι στρατεύματα.
Roman to-be-gathered armies
Εἰ δέ γε τῶν πολεμίων ἐξέλευσις ἀθρόα καὶ σύντομος
if but at-least of-the enemies coming-out massed and quick
γένηται, οἷα πολλάκις παρ' αὐτῶν εἴωθε γίνεσθαι,
happen such-as often by them is-wont to-happen
μήπω τῶν βασιλικῶν στρατευμάτων ἐπισωρευθέντων,
not-yet the imperial armies having-been-heaped-up
ἀλλὰ μόνου τοῦ στρατηγοῦ· μηδὲ αὐτοῦ δυνηθέντος
but only the general not-even himself having-been-able
διὰ τὸ σύντομον τῆς αὐτῶν ἐξελεύσεως τὸν ὀλίγον
because-of the quickness of-the their coming-out the small
λαὸν τοῦ ἰδίου θέματος ἐπισυναγαγεῖν· ἀλλ' ὀλίγον ἔχῃ
troops of-the own theme to-gather but small he-have

καὶ εὐαρίθμητον· ὁρᾷ δὲ τοὺς πολεμίους πρὸς λείαν
and easily-counted he-see and the enemies for plunder
σπεύδοντας καὶ ἐπειγομένους· ἐπιγνῷ δὲ τὴν χώραν, ἐν
hastening and pressing-on he-recognize and the land in
ᾗ τὴν ὁρμὴν ποιοῦνται, μήπω ἐκσπηλευθεῖσαν, καὶ εἰς
which the rush they-make not-yet cleared-of-people and into
τὰ κάστρα ἢ εἰς τὰ ὀχυρώματα φυγαδευθεῖσαν· χρὴ
the forts or into the strongholds put-to-flight it-is-needful
τῆς τοιαύτης χώρας εἴτε τὸν τουρμάρχην εἴτε ἑτέρους
of-the such land either the tourmarch or other
ἄρχοντας σπουδῇ πολλῇ ἀποστεῖλαι, καὶ ἔμπροσθεν τῶν
officers with-haste much to-send and in-front-of the
πολεμίων γενέσθαι καί, ὡς οἷόν τε ὦσι, καὶ τοὺς τῶν
enemies to-get and as possible — they-be also the of-the
χωρίων οἰκήτορας καὶ τὰ τούτων κτήνη φυγαδεῦσαι καὶ
villages inhabitants and the their beasts to-put-to-flight and
ἐκσπηλεῦσαι. ὁρῶντα δὲ τὸν στρατηγὸν τοὺς πολεμίους
to-clear seeing and the general the enemies
ἤδη μέλλοντας πρὸς τὸ τῆς ἡμέρας διάφαυσμα τοῖς
already about toward the of-the day dawn the
χωρίοις ἐπιθέσθαι, ὄπισθεν αὐτοὺς ἐπακολουθοῦντα, καθὼς
villages to-attack behind them following as
ἀνωτέρω εἰρήκαμεν, τῇ αὐτῇ νυκτὶ δεῖ ἐμφανισθῆναι
above we-have-said on-the same night he-must to-show-himself
τοῖς πολεμίοις, πρὸς πόλεμον δῆθεν παρασκευαζόμενον·
to-the enemies for war as-it-were preparing
ἵν' ὡς ἐκ τούτου δυνηθῇ τὴν ὁρμὴν αὐτῶν ἀναστεῖλαι,
so-that as from this he-may-be-able the rush their to-check
καὶ ἀβλαβῆ τὴν χώραν διατηρῆσαι. καὶ εἰ μὲν ποταμός
and unharmed the land to-preserve and if indeed a-river
ἐστιν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ δυσπέρατος, καὶ μέλλουσι τοῦτον
is on the road hard-to-cross and are-about it

διαπερᾶν οἱ πολέμιοι, ἢ στένωμα ἢ δυσχωρία ἐν τῇ
to-cross the enemies or narrow-pass or rough-place on the
ὁδῷ, ἡνίκα τὸν ποταμὸν οἱ πλείους διαπεράσωσιν, ἢ
road when the river the more(-part) cross or
εἰς τὸ στένωμα χωρηθῶσιν, εἰς τὸν ὄπισθεν λαὸν αὐτῶν
into the narrow-pass move to the rear troops their
ἀποστεῖλαι. καὶ αὐτὸν ἐκεῖνον τὸν στρατηγὸν παραγενέσθαι
to-send and himself that the general to-come
μετὰ ἐκλεκτῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ καλοϊππαράτων, καὶ
with picked officers and well-mounted(-men) and
ἐμφανισθῆναι τοῖς πολεμίοις, καὶ πρὸς μάχην δῆθεν κατ᾽
to-show-himself to-the enemies and for battle as-it-were against
αὐτῶν παρασκευασθῆναι, τοῦ συμβαλεῖν πόλεμον· τοὺς
them to-be-prepared for-the to-join war the
παριππαράτους καὶ ἐνταγιστράτους διαχωρίζων ἐξ αὐτοῦ,
spare-mounts and ration-bearers separating from himself
καὶ εἰς ὀχυρώματα εἴτε κάστρον ἀποστέλλων, εἰ τύχῃ
and into strongholds or fort sending if it-happen
πλησίον. εἰ δὲ ποταμὸς οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδὲ δυσχωρία ἐν τῇ
near if but a-river not is nor rough-place on the
ὁδῷ, καὶ ὡσαύτως δεῖ μικρόν τι παραβουλεύσασθαι
road also likewise must-be small something to-devise
καὶ πρὸς μάχην ὁρμῆσαι, ἕως οὗ καὶ ἐπιδιωχθῇ παρ᾽
and for battle to-rush until — also he-be-pursued by
αὐτῶν τῇ νυκτί· ἵνα διαγινώσκοντες σαφῶς οἱ πολέμιοι
them in-the night so-that recognizing clearly the enemies
τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐπακολουθοῦντα, συσταλῶσι, καὶ μηδαμῶς
the general following they-may-be-checked and in-no-way
ἐξελάσαι τολμήσωσι, καὶ τὴν ἐπίθεσιν κατὰ τῶν χωρίων
to-ride-out dare and the attack against the villages
ποιήσωνται. καὶ τούτου γενομένου, τῆς μελλούσης
make and this having-happened from-the about

γενέσθαι ἐπιδρομῆς ἐν τοῖς χωρίοις καὶ αἰχμαλωσίας
to-be incursion in the villages and captivity
ῥύσεται αὐτούς, καὶ ἐλευθερώσει. μετὰ πολλῆς δὲ
he-will-rescue them and will-free with much and
ἀκριβείας καὶ διασκέψεως ποιείτω τὴν ἔνδειξιν καὶ κατ᾽
exactness and consideration let-him-make the show and against
αὐτῶν προσβολήν, δι᾽ ὀλίγων καὶ ἐκλεκτῶν, ὡς ἔφημεν,
them attack through few and picked as we-said
ἱππέων, καὶ εὐθέως ὑποστρεφέσθωσαν φεύγοντες πρὸς τὸν
horsemen and at-once let-them-return fleeing toward the
στρατηγὸν καὶ τὸ ὀχύρωμα, καὶ μὴ ἀμέτρως καὶ παρὰ
general and the stronghold and not immoderately and beyond
τὸ δέον ἐφορμάτωσαν κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν. λαοῦ γὰρ ἴσως
the needful let-them-charge against the enemies of-troops for perhaps
παρὰ τὴν αὐτῶν δύναμιν αὐτοῖς ἐπιφορτισθέντος, πολεμίας
beyond the their power on-them having-been-laden of-enemy
χειρὸς θᾶττον γενήσονται παρανάλωμα· καὶ μάλιστα, εἰ
hand more-quickly they-will-become a-casualty and most if
τύχῃ πανσέληνον εἶναι τὴν νύκτα. εἰ δὲ ἀφεγγής ἐστι
it-happen full-moon to-be the night if but moonless it-is
καὶ ζοφώδης, ἀβλαβῶς τὴν τοιαύτην πρᾶξιν ἐργάσονται,
and gloomy unharmed the such deed they-will-accomplish
καὶ δυοῖν θάτερον πάντως φανεῖεν κατωρθωκότες·
and of-two the-other-one certainly they-would-appear having-succeeded
ἢ μηδόλως ἐξελάσαι πρὸς λείαν τοὺς πολεμίους
either not-at-all to-ride-out for plunder the enemies
παρασκευάσαντες, ἤ, εἴπερ καὶ ὅλως ἐκδράμωσιν, ἄχρι
having-caused or if-indeed even at-all they-run-out until
τοῦ αὐγάσαι τὴν ἡμέραν τελείως οὐδαμῶς ἐξελάσαι
the to-dawn the day completely in-no-way to-ride-out
κατατολμήσουσι, καὶ τότε ὀλίγοι τινές. οἱ γὰρ πλείους τὸν
will-dare and then few some the for more(-part) the

παρὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ πόλεμον ὑφορώμενοι τῆς τοῦ Ἀμηρᾶ
from the general war suspecting from-the of-the Emir
παρατάξεως οὐκ ἀποστήσονται. καὶ οὕτως ποιοῦντος τοῦ
battle-array not will-stand-off and so doing the
στρατηγοῦ, ἐκφύγωσιν οἱ τῶν χωρίων οἰκήτορες εἴς τε τὰ
general may-escape the of-the villages inhabitants into both the
ὀχυρώματα καὶ τὰ κάστρα, καὶ ἀβλαβεῖς διατηρηθῶσιν.
strongholds and the forts and unharmed be-preserved
13 Περὶ τοῦ ἐνεδρεῦσαι κατὰ τῶν λεγομένων μινσουρατόρων
about the to-ambush against the called camp-surveyors
ἐν τοῖς ἀπλήκτοις.
in the encampments
Τῶν δὲ πολεμίων φωσσατικῶς τὰς χώρας ἡμῶν
of-the and enemies army-wise the lands our
δῃούντων, καὶ κοῦρσα πόῤῥωθεν μὴ ἀποστελλόντων, ἀλλ᾽
ravaging and raiding-forces far not sending but
ἑαυτοὺς ἀσφαλιζομένων, σπουδάσει δι᾽ ἑτέρας μηχανῆς
themselves securing he-will-hasten through another device
τραυματίσαι αὐτούς. διασκοπῆσαι δὲ χρὴ καὶ στοχάσασθαι,
to-wound them to-examine and he-must also to-estimate
ἀφ᾽ οὗ τόπου τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὑπάρχει ἄπληκτον, καὶ ἐν
from which place the of-the enemies is encampment and in
ποίῳ τῇ ἐπιούσῃ μέλλει ἀπληκεύειν. καὶ εἰ μακρότατόν
what on-the following it-is-about to-encamp and if very-long
ἐστι τὸ διάστημα τοῦ ἀπλήκτου, ὡσεὶ μιλίων ἕξ, καὶ δέκα,
is the distance of-the encampment about miles six and ten
καὶ ἐπέκεινα, ὥστε τὸ τῆς ὁδοῦ μῆκος δύνασθαι κατακόπους
and beyond so-that the of-the road length to-be-able worn-out
αὐτούς τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους αὐτῶν ἐργάσασθαι· πλησίον
them both and the horses their to-make near
τοῦ τόπου, ἐν ᾧ μέλλουσι καταλύειν, διασκοπήσας, καὶ
the place in which they-are-about to-halt having-examined and

εὑρὼν λόχον ἐπιτήδειον, μαχίμους καὶ ἐκλεκτοὺς ἄνδρας
having-found ambush suitable warlike and picked men
ἱππότας τριακοσίους, ἢ καὶ τούτων ἔλαττον, ἀπολεξάμενος,
horsemen three-hundred or also than-these fewer having-picked-out
ἐν αὐτῷ ἀποκρύψεις. καταστήσεις δὲ καὶ ἑτέραν ἐνέδραν
in it you-will-hide you-will-set and also another ambush
μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ λαοῦ σου ἐν ἐπιτηδείῳ τόπῳ, ἔχοντι
with all the troops your in suitable place having
καὶ ὀχύρωμα εἰς ἀσφάλειαν αὐτοῦ. εἰ δὲ καὶ κάστρον
also stronghold for safety its if and also a-fort
πλησίον τύχῃ, ἐστὶ καὶ αὐτὸ εἰς περισσοτέραν σου
near it-happen it-is also it for greater your
σωτηρίαν καὶ ὠφέλειαν. καὶ εἰ χρεία γένηται τῶν πεζῶν,
safety and benefit and if need arise of-the foot-soldiers
ἐξελθέτωσαν καὶ αὐτοὶ τοῦ κάστρου, συμμαχοῦντες
let-them-come-out also themselves from-the fort fighting-alongside
καὶ ἐπιβοηθοῦντές σοι. οἱ δὲ προτρέχοντες τοῦ λαοῦ
and helping you the and running-ahead of-the troops
τῶν πολεμίων καταλαβεῖν τὸν τόπον πρὸς τὸ εὐτρεπίσαι
of-the enemies to-reach the place for the to-make-ready
τὰ ἑαυτῶν ἄπληκτα, ὡς εἰώθει, οὓς μινσουράτορας
the their-own encampments as was-customary whom camp-surveyors
εἴθισται Ῥωμαίοις καλεῖν, καὶ ἀσχολουμένων ἐν αὐτοῖς,
it-is-customary for-Romans to-call and being-busy in them
ἐξελθέτωσαν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν οἱ παρὰ σοῦ ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ
let-them-come-out against them the(-men) by you in the first
λόχῳ πλησίον τοῦ ἀπλήκτου προκαταστάντες ὀξέως σὺν
ambush near the encampment stationed-beforehand sharply with
ἐλασίᾳ πολλῇ, καὶ τούτους βοηθείᾳ Θεοῦ χειρώσονται. καὶ
charge much and them by-help of-God will-subdue and
εἴγε τούτους οἱ ἐχθροὶ καταδιώξουσιν ἕως τοῦ τόπου, ἐν
if-indeed them the enemies will-pursue as-far-as the place in

ᾧπερ δυνατὸν ἔγκρυμμα κατέστησας, ἐξερχόμενος κατ'
which-indeed strong concealment you-set coming-out against
αὐτῶν ἀνδρικῷ καὶ γενναίῳ ὁρμήματι ὑπερισχύσεις τῶν
them with-manly and noble onset you-will-overpower the
διωκόντων, καὶ τρόπαιον μνήμης ἄξιον ἀνεγερεῖς. καὶ εἴγε
pursuers and trophy of-memory worthy you-will-raise and if-indeed
συμβῇ δυνάμεις τῶν πολεμίων καταλαβεῖν, ἀντιμαχομένας
it-happen forces of-the enemies to-overtake fighting-against
σοι, ἔχων τὴν τοῦ ὀχυρώματος βοήθειαν καὶ τῶν πεζῶν,
you having the of-the stronghold help and of-the foot-soldiers
οὕτως καταισχυνεῖς αὐτούς, καὶ πολλοὺς τῶν οἰκείων
thus you-will-put-to-shame them and many of-the own(-men)
ἀποβαλόντας ἀπράκτους παρασκευάσεις ὑποστρέψαι.
having-lost unsuccessful you-will-cause to-return

VI · WHEN THE HORSE LEAVES THE FOOT

Raiders may leave their camp at evening, so that it looks full though its horsemen are gone. Two men who watched it on earlier nights judge from its noise, its horses' neighing, and the ground its tents cover whether many are missing, while horsemen search the roads for tracks. If the camp is strong the general catches the raiders scattered in the villages; if the news comes too late, he prepares to fight the main army on the march.

14 Περὶ τῆς ὑποχωρήσεως τῶν ἱππέων ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν,
about the withdrawal of-the horsemen from the foot-soldiers
ὁδοιπορούντων ὁμοῦ.
marching together
Χρὴ οὖν καὶ τοῦτό σε ἀκριβῶς, ὦ στρατηγέ, σκοπεῖν,
must then also this you exactly O general to-consider
καὶ τῶν πολεμίων ἀγωνιζομένων διαλαθεῖν σε, καὶ
and the enemies striving to-escape-the-notice-of you and

κοῦρσα ἀποστέλλειν, καὶ τὰς χώρας ἡμῶν ληΐσασθαι,
raiding-forces to-send and the lands our to-plunder
ἄγρυπνον ἔχειν τὸν νοῦν· μή ποτέ σε ἡ ἐπίνοια καὶ
sleepless to-have the mind lest ever you the design and
μηχανὴ αὐτῶν διαλάθῃ. ὅπερ γὰρ λέξω, καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις
device their escape-you which for I-shall-say also in other(-cases)
οἱ αὐτοὶ ἐξειργάσαντο. ὁμοῦ γὰρ αὐτῶν τῶν τε ἱππέων
the same accomplished together for them the both horsemen
καὶ πεζῶν σὺν τῇ ἀποσκευῇ ὁδοιπορούντων, καθὼς
and foot-soldiers with the baggage marching as
ταῖς ὄπισθεν καὶ διελθούσαις ἡμέραις ἐποίουν οἱ εἰς
in-the past and gone-by days they-did the(-men) to
κοῦρσα ἐξελάσαι βουλόμενοι, ἡνίκα πρὸς δυσμὰς ὁ
raiding-forces to-ride-out wishing when toward west the
ἥλιος καταντήσῃ, ἡ μὲν ἀποσκευὴ αὐτῶν καὶ ἅπαν τὸ
sun arrives the indeed baggage their and all the
ὑπουργικὸν σὺν τῷ πεζῷ τούτῳ στρατεύματι καὶ τοῖς εἰς
serving(-part) with the infantry this army and the for
φυλακὴν αὐτῶν καταλιμπανομένοις πολεμισταῖς ἱππεῦσι τὰς
guard their left-behind warrior horsemen the
σκηνὰς πηξάμενοι, ὡς ἔθος αὐτοῖς ἀπληκεύουσιν, οἱ
tents having-pitched as custom for-them encamp the(-men)
δὲ εἰς κοῦρσον ἑτοιμασθέντες, καὶ τὰς ἡμετέρας χώρας
and for raiding-force having-been-made-ready and the our lands
καταδραμεῖν βουλόμενοι, πρὸς τὸ μὴ κονιορτὸν αὐτῶν
to-overrun wishing for the not dust their
φανῆναι, ἀμφὶ δείλην ὀψίαν πρὸς κοῦρσον ὁρμῶσι. τῷ δὲ
to-appear about evening late to raiding-force set-out to-the and
παραμεῖναι ὀφείλοντι τῷ τῶν πολεμίων φωσσάτῳ, εἴτε
to-stay-beside obliged the of-the enemies army whether
τουρμάρχης ἐστὶν εἴθ' ἕτερος ἄρχων, μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ
tourmarch he-is or another officer with the troops his

ἐρχόμενον χρὴ πλησιάσαι τῷ τόπῳ, ἐν ᾧ αὐλίζονται.
coming it-is-needful to-draw-near to-the place in which they-encamp
ἐπειδή, τῆς νυκτὸς καταλαμβανούσης, ὀφείλουσι τότε
since of-the night overtaking they-ought then
κατὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς εἰσέρχεσθαι, καὶ πλησιάζειν ταῖς σκηναῖς
according-to the custom to-go-in and to-draw-near to-the tents
αὐτῶν, μετὰ πρώτην ὥραν ἢ καὶ δευτέραν τῆς νυκτός. καὶ
their after first hour or also second of-the night and
ἐὰν οὐχ εὑρήσωσιν ἐν τῷ ἀπλήκτῳ τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων
if not they-find in the encampment the of-the enemies
ἱππεῖς, διὰ τὸ ἤδη αὐτοὺς εἰς κοῦρσον πορευθῆναι,
horsemen because-of the already them to raiding-force to-have-gone
οὐκ ἔστι δυνατὸν ἄλλως τούτους, τοὺς τὴν παραμονὴν
not is possible otherwise these the the staying-beside
πεπιστευμένους ἄρχοντας, τοῦτο ἀκριβῶς διαγνῶναι, καὶ
entrusted officers this exactly to-discern and
τῷ στρατηγῷ τὸ ἀληθὲς καταμηνύσαι, εἰ μὴ οὕτως
to-the general the truth to-report if not thus
ὡς λέξω. δεῖ τοίνυν τοὺς καθ' ἑκάστην ἡμέραν πρὸς
as I-shall-say must therefore the(-men) on each day for
παραμονὴν ἀποστελλομένους, ἐκ τῶν παραμεινάντων
staying-beside being-sent from the(-men) having-stayed-beside
τὰς ὄπισθεν καὶ διελθούσας ἡμέρας τὸ φωσσάτον, καὶ
the past and gone-by days the army and
εἰς τετράδια ἱσταμένους, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω εἰρήκαμεν,
in foursomes standing as above we-have-said
δύο ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐμπειροτάτους καὶ ἀνδρείους τῶν
two from them most-experienced and brave of-the(-men)
εἰς τὴν παραμονὴν ἀπερχομένων παρὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ
to the staying-beside going-off from the general
λαμβάνειν· ἵνα καλῶς παρ' αὐτῶν ἀναδιδάσκωνται, οἷα
to-take so-that well by them they-may-be-informed what

πρότερον κἀκεῖνοι ἐνήργησαν καὶ ἐθεάσαντο. αὐτοὺς δὲ
before also-those did and saw them and
τοὺς δύο ἀναμίξας ἑνὶ τῶν τεσσάρων τετραδίων ὁ
the two having-mixed with-one of-the four foursomes the
τουρμάρχης ἀποστειλάτω κατὰ τὸν προεκτεθέντα τύπον
tourmarch let-him-send according-to the set-out-before pattern
τῆς παραμονῆς, ἐγγίσαι τῷ φωσσάτῳ, πρὸς τὸ ἀκούειν
of-the staying-beside to-draw-near to-the army for the to-hear
τὰς φωνὰς αὐτῶν, καὶ τοὺς χρεμετισμοὺς τῶν ἵππων.
the voices their and the neighings of-the horses
οἱ οὖν δύο ἄνδρες οἱ πρότερον παραμείναντες ἐν
the then two men the(-ones) before having-stayed-beside in
ἄλλοις ἀπλήκτοις τῷ φωσσάτῳ, ὅτε καὶ ὁ λαὸς αὐτῶν
other encampments the army when also the troops their
ἅπας συνῆν καὶ συνηπλήκευε, δυνήσονται στοχάσασθαι
all were-together and encamped-together will-be-able to-estimate
ἀπό τε τῆς τοῦ λαοῦ ὀχλαγωγίας καὶ ταραχῆς, καὶ τοῦ
from both the of-the troops tumult and disturbance and the
χρεμετισμοῦ τῶν ἵππων, ἀπό τε τοῦ χώρου, ἐν ᾧ τὰς
neighing of-the horses from and the space in which the
σκηνὰς ἐπήξαντο. οὐ γὰρ εὑρεθήσεται ὁ χῶρος τὸ τρίτον
tents they-pitched not for will-be-found the space the third
μέρος ἔχων, ὃν ἐν τοῖς ὄπισθεν ἀπλήκτοις κατεῖχον, ὅτε
part having which in the past encampments they-held when
ἅπαντες ὁμοῦ ἠπλήκευον. καὶ ἐκ τούτου δυνατόν ἐστι
all together encamped and from this possible it-is
στοχάσασθαι καὶ κατανοῆσαι, ὡς ἐπιλείπει ὁ λαὸς τῶν
to-estimate and to-perceive that is-lacking the troops of-the
πολεμίων ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ χώρῳ, καὶ μὴ εἶναι σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐν
enemies in that the space and not to-be with them in
τῷ ἀπλήκτῳ. καὶ πῶς γὰρ οὐ δυνατὸν τοῦτο στοχάσασθαι,
the encampment and how for not possible this to-estimate

ὁπόταν ἓξ χιλιάδες ἀνδρῶν, πλεῖον ἢ ἔλασσον, καὶ ἵππων
whenever six thousands of-men more or less and of-horses
ἄχρι τῶν δώδεκα ἐπιλείπωσιν ἐκ τοῦ ἀπλήκτου, οὓς
up-to the twelve are-lacking from the encampment whom
πάντας ὁμοῦ εἶναι οἱ πρώην παραμείναντες ἑώρων
all together to-be the(-men) formerly having-stayed-beside saw
καὶ κατεστοχάζοντο; διὰ οὖν τὸ ἀμφίβολον, πρὸς τὸ
and estimated because-of then the doubt for the
καὶ τελείαν λαβεῖν τοὺς παραμένοντας περὶ τούτου
also complete to-take the(-men) staying-beside about this
τῆς ἀληθείας κατάληψιν, δέον καὶ τοῦτο τὸν εἰς
of-the truth apprehension it-is-needful also this the to
τὴν παραμονὴν ἀποσταλέντα τουρμάρχην διαπράξασθαι.
the staying-beside having-been-sent tourmarch to-accomplish
ἱππότας ὀκτώ, ἄνδρας τῶν ἐμπειροτάτων καὶ τὰς ὁδοὺς
horsemen eight men of-the most-experienced and the roads
εἰς ἄκρον ἐξησκημένους ἀπολεξάμενος, διορίσασθαι, εἴτε
to the-utmost trained having-picked-out to-appoint either
δεξιᾷ εἴτε εὐώνυμα ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν, ἐν ᾧ ὁ τουρμάρχης
on-right or on-left from the rear in which the tourmarch
ἵσταται, ἔμπροσθεν γενέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων, ἀφισταμένους
stands in-front to-get of-the enemies standing-off-from
τῶν σκηνῶν μιλίου τὸ ἥμισυ· καὶ ἔμπροσθεν γενομένους
the tents of-a-mile the half and in-front having-got
ἀκριβῶς ἐρευνῆσαι, καὶ τὰς ὁδοὺς ἀναψηλαφῆσαι. καὶ
exactly to-search and the roads to-grope-over and
εἰ ἄρα οἱ τῶν πολεμίων ἱππεῖς διῆλθον, καὶ ἄχρι τῶν
whether then the of-the enemies horsemen passed-through and up-to the
διακοσίων ὑπῆρχον, διαγνώσουσι τὴν τούτων διάβασιν
two-hundred were they-will-discern the their crossing
οἱ ἀποσταλέντες, μήτοι γε ἄχρι τῶν δώδεκα χιλιάδων
the(-men) having-been-sent much-less — up-to the twelve thousands

ἵπποι, πλέον ἢ ἔλασσον. τὰ γὰρ ἴχνη τῶν τοσούτων ἵππων,
horses more or less the for tracks of-the so-many horses
ὡς προσφάτως διελθόντων, σαφῶς οἱ ἀποσταλέντες
as freshly having-passed clearly the(-men) having-been-sent
διαγνώσονται, καὶ τάχει πολλῷ πρὸς τὸν τουρμάρχην
will-discern and with-speed much to the tourmarch
ὑποστρέφοντες περὶ τούτου ἀπαγγειλάτωσαν, καὶ διὰ
returning about this let-them-report and through
ποίας ὁδοῦ τὴν ὁρμὴν ἐποιήσαντο. ὁ δὲ τουρμάρχης
what road the rush they-made the and tourmarch
παραυτίκα σπουδῇ πολλῇ τῷ στρατηγῷ καταμηνυσάτω
at-once with-haste much to-the general let-him-report
περὶ τούτου, καὶ διὰ ποίας ὁδοῦ ἐπορεύθησαν. δεῖ οὖν τὸν
about this and through what road they-went must then the
στρατηγὸν πρὸς ταῦτα βουλεύσασθαι μετὰ τῶν συνόντων
general about these-things to-deliberate with the being-with
αὐτῷ στρατηγῶν, καὶ λοιπῶν ἐμπείρων. καὶ εἰ μὲν ὁρᾷ
him generals and other experienced(-men) and if indeed he-sees
τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα δύναμιν ἔχον τοῦ ἀντιπαρατάξασθαι
the his-own army power having for-the to-array-against
τῷ τῶν πολεμίων φωσσάτῳ, πρὸς τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν μάχην
the of-the enemies army for the against them battle
παρασκευασθήτω· εἴγε πλησίον ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ τῶν πεζῶν
let-him-be-prepared if-indeed near is also the of-the foot-soldiers
αὐτοῦ στράτευμα, δυνάμενον τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἑνωθῆναι αὐτῷ.
his army able on-the same day to-be-united with-him
εἰ οὖν ἐστιν ὁ χῶρος, ἐν ᾧ οἱ πολέμιοι αὐλίζονται,
if then is the space in which the enemies encamp
ὀχύρωμα ἔχων εἰς ἐκείνων ἀσφάλειαν, ἢ ῥύακα δυσδιάβατον,
a-stronghold having for their safety or gully hard-to-cross
οὐ χρὴ πρὸς τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐξαρτύεσθαι πόλεμον.
not it-is-needful for the against them to-prepare war

εἰ δὲ ἐφόμαλός ἐστι πανταχόθεν, μάλιστα δὲ καὶ τῶν
if but level it-is on-all-sides most and also the
πεζῶν δυναμένων καταλαβεῖν ἐν ἡμέρᾳ τῆς τοῦ πολέμου
foot-soldiers being-able to-arrive in day of-the of-the war
προσβολῆς, παρασκευασθήτω πρὸς τοῦτο. εἰ δὲ ὁ χῶρος
attack let-him-be-prepared for this if and the space
ὀχυρότητα ἔχει, ὡς ἔφημεν, καὶ τὸ πεζικὸν στράτευμα
strength has as we-said and the infantry army
ἐπιλείπει, δέον ὁρμῆσαι τάχει πολλῷ πρὸς τὸ τοὺς
is-lacking it-is-needful to-set-out with-speed much for the the
κουρσεύοντας τῶν πολεμίων καταλαβεῖν· καὶ ἄρχοντα μὲν
raiding of-the enemies to-overtake and an-officer indeed
χρήσιμον ἀποστεῖλαι, τοῦ ἐπιλαβέσθαι τῶν ἰχνῶν τῶν
useful to-send for-the to-take-hold-of the tracks of-the
πρὸς τὴν ἐκδρομὴν τοῦ κούρσου ὁρμησάντων πολεμίων.
for the sally of-the raiding-force having-set-out enemies
αὐτὸς δὲ μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ λαοῦ ἐκ πλαγίου περιπατῶν
himself and with all the troops from flank going-about
σπευσάτω ὀξύτερον βαδίζων πλησίον γενέσθαι, καθὼς τὰς
let-him-hasten more-quickly walking near to-get as the
ὁδοὺς ἐπίσταται, ἐν αἷς οἱ πολέμιοι περιπατοῦσι. καὶ
roads he-knows in which the enemies go-about and
μετὰ ἀσφαλείας περιπατείτω. ἡνίκα δὲ τὸ διάφαυσμα τῆς
with safety let-him-go-about when and the dawn of-the
ἡμέρας ἐγγίσῃ, ἀποστειλάτω βιγλάτορας εἰς κατασκοπὴν
day draw-near let-him-send lookouts for spying
τῶν πολεμίων· καὶ εἰς ὑψηλοὺς βουνοὺς ἀνερχόμενοι
of-the enemies and onto high hills going-up
ἀγωνισάσθωσαν θεάσασθαι αὐτούς. ὁ δὲ στρατηγός,
let-them-strive to-see them the and general
ἡμέρας γενομένης, τὸν ἑαυτοῦ λαὸν ἀποκρυπτέτω, ἵνα
day having-come the his-own troops let-him-hide so-that

μή, τὸν κονιορτὸν αὐτοῦ οἱ πολέμιοι θεασάμενοι, μᾶλλον
not the dust his the enemies having-seen rather
ἐνεδρευθῇ παρ᾽ αὐτῶν. καταμηνυόμενος δὲ ἢ παρὰ τῶν
he-be-ambushed by them being-informed and either by the(-men)
ἐπακολουθούντων τῷ κούρσῳ, ἢ παρὰ τῶν εἰς ἐπισκοπὴν
following the raiding-force or by the(-men) for watching
καὶ βίγλαν ἀποσταλέντων, ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ ἡ παράταξίς ἐστι
and watch-post having-been-sent in which place the battle-array is
τῶν πολεμίων ἡ τὸν ἀρχηγὸν αὐτῶν ἔχουσα, ὀλίγους
of-the enemies the(-one) the leader their having few
τινὰς μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ λαβὼν ὁ στρατηγὸς καὶ εἰς ὑψηλὴν
some with himself having-taken the general and onto high
σκοπιὰν ἀνερχόμενος, σπευσάτω οἰκείοις ὀφθαλμοῖς τὴν
lookout going-up let-him-hasten with-his-own eyes the
τῶν πολεμίων παράταξιν θεάσασθαι. ταύτην δὲ θεασάμενος,
of-the enemies battle-array to-see it and having-seen
ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτῶν διεσκορπίσθη πρὸς
since also the multitude of-the troops their was-scattered for
λείαν, στοχαζέσθω μετὰ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
plunder let-him-estimate with the(-men) with him the multitude of-the
παρατάξεως τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ τὴν τοῦ ἰδίου λαοῦ ἰσχύν.
battle-array of-the enemies and the of-the own troops strength
καὶ ἐὰν πλεῖόν ἐστι τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα τῶν πολεμίων,
and if more is the his-own army than-the enemies
ὁρμησάτω κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, ὡς ἤδη ἀνωτέρω διετυπώσαμεν·
let-him-set-out against them as already above we-prescribed
καὶ εἰ παράσχῃ αὐτῷ Θεὸς βοήθειαν, καὶ δυνηθῇ τὴν
and if afford to-him God help and he-be-able the
παράταξιν αὐτῶν τραυματίσαι καὶ καταδιῶξαι, μέγα ἔργον
battle-array their to-wound and to-pursue great deed
καὶ μνήμης ἄξιον ἐπιτελέσει. εἰ δὲ πλῆθός ἐστι τοῦ λαοῦ
and of-memory worthy he-will-accomplish if but multitude is of-the troops

ἐν τῇ τῶν ἐχθρῶν παρατάξει, δέον ἐστὶ σπουδάσαι τὸν
in the of-the enemies battle-array needful it-is to-strive the
στρατηγὸν ἔμπροσθεν γενέσθαι, ἐν οἷς χωρίοις οἱ πολέμιοι
general in-front to-get in which villages the enemies
τὰς ἐκδρομὰς ἐποιήσαντο, ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν αὐτῶν γενόμενον.
the sallies made from the rear their having-got
καὶ τούτων διεσκεδασμένων ἐπιτυγχάνων, καὶ τῇ ἐλασίᾳ
and these dispersed coming-upon and by-the charge
ἐκλελυμένων καὶ αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν ἵππων αὐτῶν, εὐχερῶς
exhausted both themselves and the horses their easily
τούτους καταγωνίσεται δι᾽ ὅλης τῆς ἡμέρας, ἀναψηλαφῶν
them he-will-overcome through whole the day groping-for
αὐτοὺς ἐν τοῖς χωρίοις· κἀκείνους μὲν λόγῳ ἀνδραπόδων
them in the villages and-those indeed in-the-status of-captives
καταστήσει, καὶ ὡς βούλεται τοῖς κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
he-will-set and as he-wishes with-the(-things) against them
χρήσεται. τοὺς δὲ γεωργοὺς ἐλευθερώσει τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας,
he-will-deal the and farmers he-will-free from-the captivity
καὶ εἴ τι ἂν ἔτυχον τῶν αὐτῶν λαβεῖν. εἰ δέ γε
and if anything — they-happened of-the same to-take if and at-least
καὶ φούλκῳ συναντήσῃ τῷ εἰς φυλακὴν ἐπακολουθοῦντι
also a-unit he-meet the for guard following
τῶν ἐξελαυνόντων, παρασκευασθήτω πρὸς τὸν κατὰ τοῦ
of-the riding-out let-him-be-prepared for the against the
φούλκου πόλεμον, καθὼς ἔμπροσθεν ἐξεθέμεθα, καὶ Θεοῦ
unit war as before we-laid-out and by-God's
συνεργίᾳ τῆς κατ᾽ αὐτῶν μάχης κρατήσει. εἰ δὲ τοῖς ἐν
help the against them battle he-will-win if but for-the(-men) in
τῇ αὐτῇ νυκτὶ παραμεῖναι σταλεῖσι τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐναντία
the same night to-stay-beside sent with-the enemies opposing
ἀπηντήκασι συναντήματα, διὰ τὸ μήπω προκαταλαβεῖν
have-met encounters because-of the not-yet to-have-reached-first

αὐτούς, καὶ εἰς τοὺς τόπους γενέσθαι, ἐν οἷς τὸ φωσσάτον
them and into the places to-get in which the army
βλέπειν ἠδύναντο, καὶ τὰς φωνὰς αὐτῶν ἐνωτίζεσθαι· καὶ
to-see they-could and the voices their to-hear and
τὸ κοῦρσον αὐτῶν προεξῆλθεν, ὡς ἔφημεν, πρὶν τὴν περὶ
the raiding-force their went-out-before as we-said before the about
τούτου ἀκριβῆ λαβεῖν αὐτοὺς τῆς ἀληθείας κατάληψιν·
this exact to-take them of-the truth apprehension
καὶ ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου συναντήματος βραδῦναι καὶ χρονίσαι
and from the such encounter to-be-slow and to-delay
συνέβη τὴν πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν ἀποστελλομένην βεβαίαν
happened the to the general being-sent sure
ἀπαγγελίαν τοῦ πράγματος, καὶ τὸ πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν
report of-the matter and the to the general
ἀποστελλόμενον μανδάτον· εἰ μὲν πρὸς ὥραν ἐννάτην τῆς
being-sent message if indeed about hour ninth of-the
νυκτὸς καὶ ἐπέκεινα καταμηνυθῇ ὁ στρατηγὸς περὶ τούτου,
night and beyond be-informed the general about this
καὶ ὁρᾷ τὸ στενὸν τοῦ καιροῦ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ κοῦρσον
and sees the narrowness of-the time since also the raiding-force
τῶν πολεμίων ἔτι τῆς ἡμέρας ἐπικρατούσης τὴν κίνησιν
of-the enemies still the day prevailing the movement
ἐποιήσατο, καὶ δι᾽ ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς πόῤῥω που
made and through whole the night far somewhere
γενέσθαι ἔμελλε, καὶ οὐ δυνατόν, τούτους διεσκεδασμένους
to-be was-about and not possible these dispersed
καταλαβεῖν· χρὴ αὐτὸν εἰς τὸν κατὰ τοῦ φωσσάτου
to-overtake must him for the against the army
εὐτρεπισθῆναι πόλεμον. καὶ εἰ μὲν διημερεῦσαι βουληθῶσιν
to-be-made-ready war and if indeed to-spend-the-day they-wish
ἐν ᾧ αὐλίζονται τόπῳ, παρασκευασθῆναι αὐτὸν εἰς
in which they-encamp place to-be-prepared him for

τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν μάχην, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω τὸν κατὰ τοῦ
the against them battle as above the against the
φωσσάτου πόλεμον γενέσθαι ἐξεθέμεθα. ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἂν
army war to-be we-set-out but not —
διημερεύσουσιν ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ χώρῳ, διὰ τὸ κατεπείγεσθαι
they-will-spend-the-day in the-very the space because-of the to-be-pressed
ταῖς ἱππικαῖς αὐτῶν δυνάμεσι ταῖς εἰς λείαν ἐκδραμούσαις
to-the cavalry their forces the(-ones) for plunder having-run-out
τάχιον ἑνωθῆναι. καὶ ὁδοιπορούντων αὐτῶν ἐπιτυγχάνων
more-quickly to-be-united and marching them coming-upon
ὁ στρατηγός, προθύμως εἰς τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ὁρμησάτω
the general eagerly into the against them let-him-set-out
πόλεμον, καθὼς καὶ περὶ τοῦ ἐν τῇ ὁδοιπορίᾳ φωσσάτου
war as also about the in the march army
διακεχωρισμένου τοῦ κούρσου προειρήκαμεν. καὶ πάντα
separated from-the raiding-force we-said-before and all-things
ἐπιμελῶς ποιοῦντος τοῦ στρατηγοῦ κατὰ τὴν προτέραν
carefully doing the general according-to the former
διάταξιν, τὴν τοῦ Θεοῦ ἔχων βοήθειαν καὶ τῆς ἁγίας καὶ
arrangement the — of-God having help and of-the holy and
παναχράντου μητρὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ Θεοτόκου, μεγάλην καὶ
all-immaculate mother his and God-bearer great and
ἀξιόλογον δουλείαν ἐπιτελέσει.
considerable service he-will-accomplish

The general must guard against surprise: the enemy learns his camp from prisoners and deserters. His watchers report at once every movement, its road, and its numbers, but he also keeps double or triple watch-posts, outer and inner, on the roads by night and on the heights by day, shifts camp twice a night, and leaves receivers behind. Near the enemy he sends his baggage-train to a fort and carries two or three days' food on swift mules. Each theme or tagma marches apart by night in silence. The Tarsians once feigned a small raid, and the hasty general fell into their ambush because the tourmarch searched poorly; the hollows must be searched and the army divided, with a battle-line ahead and the general's behind, before striking the Emir's thinned array.

Περὶ ἀσφαλείας. 15

about safety

Δεῖ οὖν σέ, ὦ στρατηγέ, πᾶσαν ἀσφάλειαν καὶ φυλακὴν
must then you O general all safety and guard
ἔχειν, τοῦ μὴ αἰφνιδιασμὸν ὑποστῆναι, καὶ ἀδοκήτως τοὺς
to-have for-the not surprise to-undergo and unexpectedly the
πολεμίους κατὰ σοῦ τὴν ἔφοδον ἐργάσασθαι. ἕξεις
enemies against you the attack to-make you-will-have
δὲ τὴν φυλακὴν καὶ ἀσφάλειαν, εἴγε καθ' ἑκάστην
and the guard and safety if-indeed on each
ἡμέραν ἀποστέλλονται παρὰ σοῦ οἱ ὀφείλοντες
day are-sent by you the(-men) owing
παραμένειν τῷ τῶν πολεμίων φωσσάτῳ, ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ
to-stay-beside the of-the enemies army in which place
αὐλίζονται. ἐκείνων γὰρ διὰ σπουδῆς τιθεμένων καὶ
they-encamp they for with zeal making(-it) and
πᾶσαν μηχανὴν καταβαλλομένων, ἀδοκήτως σοι ἐντυχεῖν,
every device laying-down unexpectedly you to-meet
τοῦ καταγωνίσασθαί σε, εἰς βλάβην μὲν καὶ ἀπώλειαν
for-the to-overcome you to harm indeed and destruction

τοῦ χριστωνύμου λαοῦ, καὶ ἀδοξίαν τῶν κραταιοτάτων
of-the Christ-named people and dishonor of-the most-mighty
Ῥωμαίων· εἰς ἔπαρσιν δὲ καὶ γαυρίαμα τῶν ἀλαζόνων τῆς
Romans to exaltation and also boasting of-the boastful —
Ἄγαρ υἱῶν καὶ ἀρνητῶν Χριστοῦ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἡμῶν· συμβαίνει
of-Hagar sons and deniers of-Christ — of-God our it-happens
γὰρ κατασχεθῆναι παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς δεσμώτας τῶν ἡμετέρων, ἢ
for to-be-seized among them prisoners of-the ours or
καὶ αὐτομόλους γενέσθαι, καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτῶν μαθεῖν, ἐν ποίῳ
also deserters to-become and from them to-learn in what
τύπῳ αὐλίζῃ. ἵν᾽ οὖν μὴ νυκτὸς τὰς ἱππικὰς δυνάμεις
manner you-encamp so-that then not by-night the cavalry forces
αὐτῶν ἀνελόμενοι ἐξελάσωσι καταλαβεῖν σε, καὶ ἀδοκήτως
their having-taken-up they-ride-out to-overtake you and unexpectedly
ἐπιπέσωσι· διὰ ταῦτα δέον τοὺς παραμένοντας,
fall-upon because-of these-things it-is-needful the(-men) staying-beside
ἡνίκα τῆς ταραχῆς τοῦ λαοῦ τῶν πολεμίων αἴσθωνται
when the disturbance of-the troops of-the enemies they-perceive
πρὸς κίνησιν, εὐθέως τάχει πολλῷ καταμηνύσαι, ὅτι τε
for movement at-once with-speed much to-report that and
ὁ λαὸς διεταράχθη πρὸς κίνημα· πάλιν δὲ ἀποκινούντων,
the troops were-disturbed for movement again and moving-off
δι᾽ οἵας ἂν ὁδοῦ τὴν πορείαν ποιῶνται· καὶ αὖθις
through what — road the march they-make and again
καταμηνύειν, ὅ τι τε πλῆθος λαοῦ ἀπεκίνησαν, καὶ ἣν
to-report what — both multitude of-troops moved-off and which
ὁδὸν πορεύονται, εἴτε ἅπαντες σὺν τῷ πεζικῷ, εἴτε οἱ
road they-go whether all with the infantry or the
ἱππεῖς μόνοι. ὁ δὲ στρατηγὸς μὴ θαῤῥείτω μόνον εἰς τὰ
horsemen alone the and general not let-him-trust only in the
ἐρχόμενα πρὸς αὐτὸν μανδάτα τῶν παραμενόντων τοῖς
coming to him messages of-the(-men) staying-beside the

πολεμίοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ βίγλας ἐχέτω διπλᾶς, ἐξώβιγλα
enemies but also watch-posts let-him-have double outer-watch-posts
καὶ ἐσώβιγλα, ἔστιν ὅτε καὶ τριπλᾶς· καὶ ἐν νυκτὶ μὲν
and inner-watch-posts it-is when also triple and in night indeed
τὰς ὁδοὺς φυλάττειν, καὶ ἐν οἷς τόποις διάβασιν ὑφορᾶται
the roads to-guard and in which places crossing is-suspected
πολεμίων· ἐν ἡμέρᾳ δέ, μὴ μόνον τὰς ὁδοὺς φυλάττειν τοὺς
of-enemies in day and not only the roads to-guard the
βιγλάτορας, ἀλλὰ καὶ εἰς τόπους ἀνέρχεσθαι ὑψηλοτάτους·
lookouts but also to places to-go-up most-high
πρὸς τὸ δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς εὐχερῶς ὁρᾷν μὴ μόνον καπνοὺς
for the to-be-able them easily to-see not only smokes
καὶ κονιορτούς, ἀλλὰ καὶ λαοὺς τῶν πολεμίων, εἴπερ
and dust-clouds but also troops of-the enemies if-indeed
ἔρχωνται. πλείονας δὲ εἶναι τὰς βίγλας ἔφημεν, διὰ
they-come more and to-be the watch-posts we-said because-of
τό, εἴ ποτε συμβῇ τὴν πρώτην ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων
the if ever it-happen the first by the enemies
ἁλῶναι, ἡ μετ' ἐκείνην, τοὺς πολεμίους θεωροῦσα,
to-be-taken the(-one) after that the enemies seeing
τῷ στρατηγῷ τὴν τῶν ἐχθρῶν καταμηνύῃ ἔλευσιν. καὶ
to-the general the of-the enemies may-report coming and
δὶς δὲ ἐν νυκτὶ μεταπληκεύειν δεῖ τὸν στρατηγόν, καὶ ἐν
twice too in night to-shift-camp must the general and in
ἡμέρᾳ ὡσαύτως. καὶ μεταπληκεύων μὲν τοὺς βιγλάτορας
day likewise and shifting-camp indeed the lookouts
μετ' αὐτοῦ λαμβανέτω· καταλιμπανέτω δὲ ἐν ᾧ
with himself let-him-take let-him-leave and in which
τόπῳ ηὐλίζετο ἓξ ἄνδρας ἢ ὀκτώ, τοὺς ὑποδοχαρίους
place he-was-encamped six men or eight the receivers
καλουμένους, μετὰ καί τινος ἄρχοντος τῶν χρησίμων·
called with also some officer of-the useful

ἵνα οἱ πεμπόμενοι παρὰ τῶν παραμενόντων τοῖς
so-that the(-men) sent by the(-men) staying-beside the
ἐχθροῖς μανδάτα φέροντες, προσερχόμενοι, δι᾽ αὐτῶν
enemies messages carrying arriving through them
τῷ στρατηγῷ ἀποκομίζωνται ἐν ᾧ δὲ πάλιν τόπῳ
to-the general may-be-brought in which and again place
ὁ στρατηγὸς ἀπληκεύσει, τὰ ἐξώβιγλα ἀποστελλέτω.
the general will-encamp the outer-watch-posts let-him-send
ἔστωσαν δὲ ἀνὰ τέσσαρες ἄνδρες ἐν ἑκάστῳ σταδίῳ·
let-there-be and by four men in each stade
ἵνα, τῶν δύο καθευδόντων νυκτός, οἱ δύο γρηγορῶσιν.
so-that of-the two sleeping by-night the two may-keep-awake

16 Περὶ διαχωρισμοῦ τοῦ τούλδου.
about separation of-the baggage-train

Δεῖ οὖν σε, ὦ στρατηγέ, καὶ τοῦτο παραφυλάττειν, καὶ
must then you O general also this to-watch-for and
ἡνίκα πλησιάσαι μέλλῃς τοῖς πολεμίοις, τὸ τοῦλδον ἀπὸ
when to-draw-near you-are-about to-the enemies the baggage-train from
σοῦ διαχωρίζειν καὶ ἀποστέλλειν μήκοθεν, ἐν ὀχυρῷ τόπῳ
you to-separate and to-send from-afar in strong place
ἢ ἐν κάστρῳ, ἄνδρα τινὰ τῶν χρησίμων καὶ ἐμπείρων
or in fort man some of-the useful and experienced
ἐφιστῶν, προνοεῖσθαι αὐτοῦ· καὶ ἱππεῖς μαχίμων ἀνδρῶν
setting-over to-take-care-of it and horsemen of-fighting men
ὀλίγους τινὰς παρέχειν τῷ ἄρχοντι τοῦ τούλδου, ὅπως
few some to-provide to-the officer of-the baggage-train so-that
δι᾽ αὐτῶν αἱ βίγλαι κρατῶνται εἰς φυλακὴν τοῦ τούλδου.
through them the watch-posts be-held for guard of-the baggage-train
ἡνίκα δὲ πάλιν ἐν χρείᾳ τούτου γένηται, καταμηνύειν
when and again in need of-it be-be to-report
τῷ ἐμπεπιστευμένῳ τὴν πρόνοιαν αὐτοῦ ἄρχοντι, ἐλθεῖν
to-the entrusted the care of-it officer to-come

ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ διωρίσθη τοῦ ἑνωθῆναί σοι. τοῦ μέντοι
in which place was-appointed for-the to-be-united with-you of-the however
τούλδου ἀπὸ σοῦ διαχωριζομένου, ἀναλαμβάνειν σε δεῖ
baggage-train from you being-separated to-take-up you must
ἐπισιτισμὸν τοῦ λαοῦ καὶ ταγὰς τῶν ἵππων, δύο ἡμερῶν
provisioning of-the troops and rations of-the horses of-two days
ἢ τριῶν, βασταζομένας εἰς ταχεῖς ἡμιόνους, ἢ καὶ ἵππους
or three being-carried on swift mules or also horses
ἐν τοῖς σαγμοσελλίοις. ἡνίκα δὲ μέλλῃς κούρσῳ
on the pack-saddles when and you-are-about (the)-raiding-force
τῶν πολεμίων ἀκολουθῆσαι νυκτός, ἅπαν τὸ μάχιμον
of-the enemies to-follow by-night all the fighting
στράτευμα τεθωρακισμένον ἔστω, ἑκάστου τὸ ἐπιτήδειον
army armored let-it-be of-each the suitable
πρὸς τὸ πολεμεῖν ὅπλον ἐν χερσὶν ἔχοντος. ἀλλὰ καὶ
for the to-make-war weapon in hands having but also
τὸ λεγόμενον σάκα ὄπισθεν ἔχε, ἐπακολουθοῦν σοι. καὶ
the called saka behind have following you and
εἰ μὲν διὰ δυσβάτων τόπων ἡ πορεία τῶν πολεμίων
if indeed through impassable places the march of-the enemies
γένηται, δέον ἰδίως ἓν ἕκαστον θέμα, ἢ καὶ τάγμα,
happen it-is-needful separately one each theme or also tagma
εἰ πάρεισιν, ὁδοιπορεῖν· ὁ μὲν στρατηγὸς ἔμπροσθεν,
if they-are-present to-march the indeed general in-front
ἑπόμενος τῷ τουρμάρχῃ τῷ ἀκολουθοῦντι τοῖς πολεμίοις
following the tourmarch the following the enemies
κατὰ πολὺ πόῤῥω· εἶθ' οὕτως καὶ τὰ λοιπά, εἴτε θέματα
by much far then thus also the others whether themes
εἶεν εἴτε τάγματα, καθὲν τῷ ἑτέρῳ ἐφεπόμενον· διὰ
they-be or tagmata each-one the other following because-of
τὸ καὶ καλῶς ὁδοιπορεῖν ἐν νυκτί, καὶ ἄνευ κραυγῆς

καὶ θορύβων. τῷ δὲ τουρμάρχῃ, τῷ ἐπακολουθοῦντι
and noises to-the and tourmarch the following
τῷ κούρσῳ, παραγγεῖλαι καὶ ἐξασφαλίσασθαι, ἀκρίβειαν
the raiding-force to-command and to-make-sure exactness
ἔχειν ὑπερβάλλουσαν καὶ ἐγρήγορσιν, μή ποτε οἱ πολέμιοι
to-have surpassing and wakefulness lest ever the enemies
αἰσθόμενοι ἐπακολουθεῖσθαι αὐτοὺς παρὰ σοῦ, διαχωρίσωσι
having-perceived to-be-followed them by you separate
μὲν τοὺς ἐκλεκτοὺς αὐτῶν μαχίμους τοὺς πλείονας τοῦ ὑπ᾽
indeed the picked their fighting(-men) the more(-part) of-the under
αὐτὸν λαοῦ, καὶ ἀποκρύψωσιν εἰς λόχους, καὶ ἀδοκήτως
him troops and hide into ambushes and unexpectedly
κατὰ σοῦ ἐπίθωνται· ἐπειδὴ τοιαύτην ἐνέδραν παρὰ τῶν
against you attack since such ambush by the
Ταρσιτῶν ἐν τοῖς ἄνω χωρίοις γενομένην εἴδομεν. τοῦ
Tarsians in the upper places having-happened we-saw of-the
γὰρ στρατηγοῦ τότε θεωμένου κονιορτοὺς τῶν εἰς λείαν
for general then seeing dust-clouds of-the for plunder
ἐξελαυνόντων, οὐκ ἐν ἀληθείᾳ, ἀλλ᾽ ἐν σχήματι κούρσου,
riding-out not in truth but in show of-raiding-force
ὀλίγων καὶ τούτων εὐτελεστέρων, καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπελθεῖν
of-few and these more-worthless and against them to-advance
ἐπειγομένου, καὶ τοῦ τουρμάρχου τοῦ ἐπακολουθοῦντος
hastening and the tourmarch the following
τῷ κούρσῳ καταμελήσαντος, καὶ μὴ τοὺς λόχους καλῶς
the raiding-force having-neglected and not the ambushes well
ἐρευνήσαντος, ἀδοκήτως τῷ ἐγκρύμματι περιπέπτωκε.
having-searched unexpectedly into-the concealment he-has-fallen
καὶ ἵνα μὴ τοιοῦτον γένηται, δεῖ σε, ὦ στρατηγέ,
and so-that not such-thing happen must you O general
πολλὴν τὴν ἀσφάλειαν ποιεῖσθαι, καὶ ἐρευνᾷν τοὺς κοίλους
much the safety to-make and to-search the hollows

τῶν τόπων καὶ ἀποκρύφων, διὰ καβαλλαρίων ἵππους
of-the places and hidden through horsemen horses
ἐχόντων ταχεῖς καὶ ἀκριβῆ εἴδησιν τῶν τόπων· καὶ περὶ
having swift and exact knowledge of-the places and about
τὸ διάφαυσμα διχῇ διελεῖν τὸ στράτευμα, εἴγε εἰς πλῆθός
the dawn in-two to-divide the army if-indeed in multitude
ἐστι, καὶ εἰς τρεῖς ἀριθμεῖται χιλιάδας· καὶ τοὺς μὲν
it-is and in three is-numbered thousands and the indeed
παραϊππαράτους καὶ τὰς ταγὰς τῶν ἵππων ἐπιφερομένους
spare-mounts and the rations of-the horses carrying
μήκοθεν ἀποστέλλειν ἐν ὀχυρῷ τόπῳ. τὰς δὲ παρατάξεις
from-afar to-send in strong place the and battle-lines
οὕτως δεῖ παρασκευάσαι, διὰ τὰς τῶν πολεμίων
thus must-one to-prepare because-of the of-the enemies
ἀδοκήτους ἐνέδρας. καὶ ἡ μὲν πρώτη ἐχέτω ἀρχηγὸν τῶν
unexpected ambushes and the indeed first let-it-have a-leader of-the
ἀξιολογωτέρων στρατηγῶν, καὶ τὸ τρίτον μέρος τοῦ ὑπὸ
more-notable generals and the third part of-the under
σὲ λαοῦ, καὶ ὄπισθεν μὲν τοῦ τουρμάρχου ὁδοιπορείτω. σὺ
you troops and behind indeed the tourmarch let-it-march you
δὲ μετὰ τῆς μεγάλης παρατάξεως ἐπακολούθει τῇ πρώτῃ,
and with the great battle-line follow the first
ἔχων καὶ τὸ σάκα ὄπισθέν σου μετ᾽ ὀλίγων ἱππέων
having also the saka behind you with few horsemen
ἐπακολουθοῦν· ἵνα, εἰ συμβῇ κατὰ σοῦ ἐνεδρεῦσαι τοὺς
following so-that if it-happen against you to-ambush the
πολεμίους, καὶ τοὺς πλείονας αὐτῶν μαχίμους ἄνδρας εἰς
enemies and the more their fighting men into
λόχους καταστῆσαι, καὶ ἐπελθεῖν τῷ αὐτοῖς ἐπακολουθοῦντι
ambushes to-set and to-attack the them following
τουρμάρχῃ, δέξηται τοῦτον ἐπιβοηθοῦσα ἡ πρώτη καὶ
tourmarch may-receive him helping the first and

ἔμπροσθέν σου περιπατοῦσα παράταξις. εἶτα πολέμου μετ'
in-front-of you going-about battle-line then war with
αὐτῆς συῤῥαγέντος, καὶ τῶν πολεμίων διασκορπιζομένων
it having-broken-out and the enemies scattering
ἐν τῇ μάχῃ καὶ τὴν τάξιν λυόντων, εὑρὼν αὐτοὺς
in the battle and the order breaking having-found them
διεσκεδασμένους ὑπερισχύσεις αὐτῶν. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων πρὸς
dispersed you-will-overpower them the and enemies for
τὴν τοιαύτην ἐνέδραν μὴ παρασκευασθέντων, ἀλλὰ πρὸς
the such ambush not having-been-prepared but for
τὸ ἐκδραμεῖν καὶ τὰς χώρας ληΐσασθαι κατεπειγομένων,
the to-run-out and the lands to-plunder pressing
χρὴ πρὸ τοῦ διαυγάσαι τὰς τάξεις τοῦ ὑπὸ σὲ
it-is-needful before the to-dawn the ranks of-the under you
στρατεύματος εἰς τόπους ἀποκρύψαι, πρὸς τὸ μὴ τοῖς
army into places to-hide for the not by-the
πολεμίοις φωραθῆναι, καὶ ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις ἐγκρύμμασι
enemies to-be-detected and in the such concealments
καρτερῆσαι ἄχρι τρίτης ὥρας ἢ καὶ τετάρτης τῆς ἡμέρας,
to-hold-out until third hour or also fourth of-the day
ἕως ἂν οἱ πολέμιοι πρὸς λείαν ἐξελάσωσι· καὶ τούτων
until — the enemies for plunder ride-out and these
πόῤῥω γινομένων τῆς τοῦ Ἀμηρᾶ παρατάξεως, μετ' ὀλίγων
far getting the of-the Emir battle-array with few
ἀνδρῶν καταλιμπανομένης, καὶ μὴ πλῆθος ἐχούσης λαοῦ,
men being-left and not multitude having of-troops
κατ' αὐτῆς ἐπελθεῖν. καὶ τρεῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν παρατάξεις
against it to-advance and three indeed in-front battle-lines
ἀποστεῖλαι ἰσομετώπους, προσβαλεῖν πόλεμον· σὲ δὲ μεθ'
to-send of-equal-front to-make war you and with
ἑτέρων τριῶν ἢ καὶ τεσσάρων παρατάξεων, ταῖς πρώταις
other three or also four battle-lines the first

ἑπόμενον, πλησίον ἐπακολουθεῖν. καὶ ἡνίκα αἱ πρῶται
following near to-follow and when the first
παρατάξεις τῆς ἐκ χειρῶν μάχης ἄρξωνται, καθὼς ὁρᾷς
battle-lines the from hands battle begin as you-see
τοὺς οἰκείους ἀγωνιζομένους, οὕτω καὶ βοήθειαν παρέχειν.
the own(-men) contending so also help to-provide
καὶ πρῶτον μὲν τὰς ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν συνεπομένας
and first indeed the on-this-side and-that following-with
παρατάξεις προαποστεῖλαι, τοῖς πολεμίοις συναφθῆναι,
battle-lines to-send-ahead with-the enemies to-be-joined
καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἄκρων, εἰ δυνατόν, καὶ ἐκ πλαγίου
and from the wings if possible and from flank
προσβαλεῖν, καὶ ἐκ χειρὸς μάχεσθαι· εἶτα καὶ σὲ αὐτόν,
to-attack and from hand to-fight then also you yourself
εἰ χρή, συμβαλεῖν, εἴπερ ἄρα μὴ ἐπικρατέστερος ὁ ὑπὸ
if needful to-join(-battle) if-indeed then not stronger the under
σὲ λαὸς γέγονεν. ἀλλὰ μετ᾽ ὀλίγου λαοῦ, ὡς ἔφημεν, τῆς
you troops has-become but with few troops as we-said the
παρατάξεως τοῦ Ἀμηρᾶ καταλιμπανομένης, οὐ δυνήσεται
battle-array of-the Emir being-left not will-be-able
ἀντισχεῖν περὶ τὰς τρεῖς χιλιάδας τὸ ὑπὸ σὲ ἀριθμούμενον
to-hold-out about the three thousands the under you numbered
στράτευμα. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μέν, ὡς ἡ πεῖρα διδάσκει,
army but these-things indeed as the experience teaches
ἐκτίθεμεν· σὲ δὲ πρὸς τὴν κατεπείγουσαν τοῦ καιροῦ χρείαν
we-set-out you and to the pressing of-the time need
τε καὶ περίστασιν διατεθῆναι δεῖ. οὐ γὰρ ἡ παράδοσις
both and circumstance to-be-disposed must not for the tradition
δίδωσιν, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς ἡ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐνισχύσει βοήθεια, ἡ τοῦ
gives but as the — of-God will-strengthen help the of-the
πολέμου ἔκβασις ἐπακολουθεῖ. εἰ δὲ μετὰ μόνου τοῦ ἰδίου
war outcome follows if and with only the own

θέματος ὑπάρχεις, ὦ στρατηγέ, καὶ ὀλίγον ἐστὶ τὸ ὑπὸ
theme you-are O general and small is the under
σὲ στράτευμα, καὶ ὡσαύτως δεῖ σε μετ᾽ ἀσφαλείας πόῤῥω
you army also likewise must you with safety far
τὴν τοῦ κούρσου τῶν πολεμίων ἀκολούθησιν ποιεῖσθαι,
the of-the raiding-force of-the enemies following to-make
πρὸς τὸ μὴ παρ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπιγνωσθῆναι, καὶ κατὰ μόνων
for the not by them to-be-recognized and against only
τῶν εἰς τὰ χωρία ἐξελαυνόντων καὶ διασκορπιζομένων
the(-men) into the villages riding-out and scattering
τὴν ἐπίθεσιν ποιεῖσθαι, ὡς ἀνωτέρω δεδήλωται.
the attack to-make as above has-been-shown

VIII · AGAINST A GREAT ARMY

When the whole enemy army invades and keeps together, the general sets ambushes: some three hundred horsemen in a village the foragers will search, two thousand in a concealment, and three thousand with infantry in a strong place, never shutting himself in a fort. A hundred strike the foragers; the pursuit is drawn in good order onto the concealment, which charges shouting; if the enemy holds, the trumpet draws it onto the greater ambush. Each case must be met as it comes, since providence weighs the end of a war.

17 Περὶ τῶν μετὰ πολλῆς δυνάμεως ἐπιτρεχόντων πολεμίων
about the with great force overrunning enemies
τὰς χώρας ἡμῶν, καὶ τῆς μετὰ ἐγκρυμμάτων παρασκευῆς.
the lands our and of-the with concealments preparation
Εἰ δέ γε τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ἅπαν, ἱππέων τε καὶ πεζῶν,
if but at-least the of-the enemies whole of-horsemen both and foot-soldiers
ἄθροισμα μετὰ μεγάλης καὶ βαρείας δυνάμεως τὰς ἡμῶν
gathering with great and heavy force the our

χώρας ἐξελθὸν ἐπιτρέχει τε καὶ ληΐζεται, καὶ ἐμβαθῦναί
lands having-come-out overruns both and plunders and to-go-deep
τε καὶ διερευνήσασθαι ταύτας διαμελετᾷ· εἰ τύχῃ δέ,
both and to-search-through them plans if it-happen and
καὶ τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν στράτευμα
also the Roman at the same time army
ἐπισυνηγμένον εἶναι, καὶ τὴν τούτου παρουσίαν ἀκουτισθῶσιν
gathered to-be and the its presence hear
οἱ πολέμιοι, ἀσφάλειαν μὲν πολλὴν τοῦ ἰδίου λαοῦ
the enemies safety indeed much of-the own troops
ποιοῦνται, μὴ ἐῶντές τινας, φυλακῆς ἄνευ, ἐν τοῖς χωρίοις
they-make not allowing any guard without in the villages
διασκορπίζεσθαι. ἐνέδρας δὲ μᾶλλον κατὰ τοῦ ἡμετέρου λαοῦ
to-scatter ambushes but rather against the our troops
ἐξεργάζεσθαι μηχανῶνται, καὶ καταλαβεῖν αὐτοὺς ἀδοκήτως
to-work-out they-contrive and to-overtake them unexpectedly
σπεύδουσι, διῶξαί τε, καὶ καταγωνίσασθαι. ὀφείλεις δὲ καὶ
they-hasten to-pursue both and to-overcome you-ought and also
αὐτὸς πᾶσαν ἀσφάλειαν ἐπιδείκνυσθαι, τοῦ μὴ ἀδοκήτως
yourself all safety to-show for-the not unexpectedly
εὑρεθῆναι παρ᾽ αὐτῶν, ἀντιμηχανήσασθαι δὲ μᾶλλον
to-be-found by them to-counter-contrive and rather
πρὸς τὸ αὐτοὺς τροπώσασθαι, καὶ γενναῖόν τι καὶ
for the them to-rout and noble something and
ἀξιόλογον ἐργάσασθαι. καὶ αὐτῶν τραυματιζομένων παρὰ
considerable to-accomplish and them being-wounded by
σοῦ, οὐδαμῶς ἐγχρονίσουσι τὰς ἡμετέρας χώρας λῃΐζόμενοι.
you in-no-way will-linger the our lands plundering
χρεὼν οὖν ἐστί σοι, διασκοπῆσαι χωρία ἐπιτήδεια, ἐν οἷς
needful then it-is for-you to-examine villages suitable in which
οἱ ἐκτρέχοντες τῶν πολεμίων εἰσέρχονται, τροφῶν
the(-men) running-out of-the enemies go-in of-provisions

καὶ λαφύρων ἀναψηλαφήσεως ἕνεκα· καὶ λόχον ἐν αὐτοῖς
and of-spoils searching for-the-sake and ambush in them
ἱππικὸν καταστῆσαι, τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπιθέσθαι μέλλοντα.
cavalry to-set the against them to-attack about-to
ἔστωσαν δὲ οἱ ἱππεῖς οἱ εἰς τὸν λόχον ἀποστελλόμενοι
let-them-be and the horsemen the(-ones) into the ambush being-sent
τῶν διακοσίων ἐπέκεινα, ἀρχηγὸν ἔχοντες ἀνδρεῖον, καὶ
of-the two-hundred beyond a-leader having brave and
πάνυ εἰς τὰς τοιαύτας ἐνέδρας ἐμπειρότατον. ὁ δὲ τοῦ
wholly in the such ambushes most-experienced the and of-the
ὅλου στρατεύματος ἀρχηγός, ἓξ ἢ πέντε χιλιάδας ἱππέων
whole army leader six or five thousands of-horsemen
ἔχων πολεμιστὰς καὶ τὴν τοῦ Θεοῦ βοήθειαν, οὐ πλειόνων
having warriors and the — of-God help not of-more
ἐν χρείᾳ γενήσεται. ταύτας τοίνυν διχῇ διελὼν τοὺς μὲν
in need will-be them therefore in-two having-divided the indeed
δισχιλίους ἔμπροσθεν εἰς ἐπιτήδειον λόχον καταστησάτω·
two-thousand in-front into suitable ambush let-him-set
ἐν ᾧ καὶ σκοπιά ἐστιν ὑψηλή, ἀπόβλεψιν ἔχουσα, τοῦ
in which also lookout is high view having for-the
μήκοθεν τοὺς διωκομένους τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ διώκοντας
from-afar the(-men) being-pursued of-the troops his and pursuing
ὁρᾷν. ὄπισθεν δὲ τῶν δισχιλίων τοὺς τρισχιλίους, καὶ
to-see behind and the two-thousand the three-thousand and
πεζὸν στράτευμα σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐν ἀποκρύφῳ τόπῳ εἰς
infantry army with them in hidden place into
ἐνέδραν καταστῆσαι δεῖ, τοῦ τόπου ὀχυρότητα ἔχοντος·
ambush to-set it-is-needful the place strength having
εἰ τύχῃ δὲ καὶ κάστρον πλησίον, ἕξει κἀκεῖνο εἰς
if it-happen and also fort near he-will-have that-too for
βοήθειαν. μὴ σκοπείτω δὲ ὁ στρατηγός, μηδὲ κατὰ νοῦν
help not let-him-consider and the general nor in mind

τοῦτο ἐχέτω, ἐὰν πλήθη πολεμίων ἐπιτεθῶσιν αὐτῷ καὶ
this let-him-have if multitudes of-enemies attack him and
σφοδρὸς γένηται πόλεμος, ἔνδοθεν τοῦ κάστρου γενέσθαι,
violent become war within the fort to-get
πρὸ τοῦ τὸν ἴδιον περισῶσαι λαόν. τοῦτο γὰρ οὐ μόνον
before the the own to-save troops this for not only
ἀδοξίαν καὶ καταφρόνησιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ βλάβην ἐπάγει, καὶ
dishonor and contempt but also harm brings and
τῆς χώρας ἀφανισμὸν καὶ πανολεθρίαν.
of-the land destruction and utter-ruin
ἀλλ' ἔξωθεν ἐν τοῖς ὀχυρώμασι τοῖς πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου
but outside in the strongholds the(-ones) near the fort
μετὰ τοῦ πεζικοῦ στρατεύματος ἰσχυρῶς ἀντιμαχέσθω,
with the infantry army strongly let-him-fight-back
ἀνάγκῃ περιπεσών· ἅτε πολλὴν ἐκ τοῦ τόπου ἔχων βοήθειαν,
by-necessity having-fallen since much from the place having help
καὶ τὸν τοῦ κάστρου πεζὸν λαὸν εἰς συμμαχίαν αὐτοῦ. ὁ
and the of-the fort infantry troops for alliance his the
οὖν ἀρχηγὸς τῶν τριακοσίων, τῶν εἰς φυλακὴν τῶν
then leader of-the three-hundred of-the(-men) for guard of-the
χωρίων ἀποσταλέντων, εἰς περιωπὴν ἱστάμενος καὶ ὁρῶν
villages having-been-sent on lookout standing and seeing
τοὺς πολεμίους ἐν τοῖς χωρίοις εἰσερχομένους, ἡνίκα τῶν
the enemies into the villages going-in when from-the
ἵππων ἀποβάντες τὰς οἰκίας τῶν χωρίων ἀναψηλαφῶσιν,
horses having-dismounted the houses of-the villages they-grope-through
ἑκατὸν καὶ μικρόν τι πλέον ἐκ τοῦ λαοῦ τῶν
a-hundred and small something more from the troops of-the
τριακοσίων διαχωρίσας ἀποστειλάτω, διορισάμενος αὐτοῖς
three-hundred having-separated let-him-send having-appointed to-them
ὀξέως κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἐπιθέσθαι. πλείονες δὲ ἔστωσαν
sharply against the enemies to-attack more and let-them-be

οἱ ἀποστελλόμενοι τῶν εἰς τὰ χωρία εἰσερχομένων
the(-men) being-sent than-the into the villages going-in
πολεμίων. καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν οὕτως ἐπιθέμενοι χάριτι
enemies and against them thus having-attacked by-grace
Χριστοῦ πολλοὺς καὶ ἀνελοῦσι, καὶ δεσμώτας λήψονται. οἱ
of-Christ many both will-kill and prisoners will-take the
δὲ περιττεύοντες τοῦ λαοῦ ἡμῶν, ὅσοι τῶν πολεμίων
and remaining of-the troops our as-many-as of-the enemies
τῶν ἰδίων ἵππων ἐπιβῆναι δυνηθῶσι καὶ φυγῇ χρήσωνται,
the own horses to-mount be-able and to-flight resort
ἐπιμελῶς τούτους διώξουσιν, ἕως ἂν παρὰ τῶν φούλκων
carefully them will-pursue until — by the units
τῶν πολεμίων, τῶν ἱσταμένων εἰς φυλακὴν τῶν ἑταίρων
of-the enemies the(-ones) standing for guard of-the companions
αὐτῶν, ἐπιδιωχθῶσιν. ὁρῶν δὲ τοὺς διώκοντας ὁ τῶν
their they-be-pursued seeing and the pursuers the of-the
τριακοσίων ἄρχων μὴ εἰς πλῆθος ὄντας, ἀλλ᾽ ἀσυντάκτως
three-hundred officer not in multitude being but disorderly
καὶ ἀκρατῶς διώκοντας, καρτερησάτω ἐν τῷ ἐγκρύμματι,
and unrestrainedly pursuing let-him-hold-out in the concealment
ἕως οὗ οἱ διωκόμενοι τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ καταλάβωσι
until — the(-men) being-pursued of-the troops his reach
καὶ διέλθωσιν. εἶθ᾽ οὕτως καὶ αὐτὸς σφοδρῶς κατὰ τῶν
and pass-through then thus also himself violently against the
πολεμίων ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐγκρύμματος ἐξελθών, μετὰ τῶν σὺν
enemies from the concealment having-come-out with the(-men) with
αὐτῷ ὁρμησάτω, καὶ εὐοδωθήσεται τῇ τοῦ Χριστοῦ δυνάμει
him let-him-rush and he-will-be-prospered by-the — of-Christ power
καὶ χάριτι. λήψεται γὰρ καὶ δορυαλώτους, καὶ πολλοὺς
and grace he-will-take for both spear-captives and many
καὶ ἀναιρήσει καὶ τραυματίσει. τῶν οὖν πολεμίων ἔτι
both will-kill and will-wound of-the then enemies still

προστιθεμένων, καὶ εἰς πλῆθος αὐξανομένων, καὶ σφοδρῶς
being-added and to multitude increasing and violently
ἐπιδιωκόντων, τοὺς μὲν κατασχεθέντας δεσμίους, τούς
pursuing the indeed seized prisoners the
τε ἵππους αὐτῶν καὶ ὅπλα ἔμπροσθεν ἀποστειλάτω, τοῦ
both horses their and arms in-front let-him-send for-the
καταλαβεῖν ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ ὁ στρατηγὸς ἵσταται. κἀκεῖνος
to-reach in which place the general stands and-he
εὐτάκτως ὑποφευγέτω μετὰ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ, ἐρεθίζων
in-good-order let-him-flee with the(-men) with him provoking
τοὺς πολεμίους πρὸς δίωξιν καὶ ἐμπείρως ἐφελκόμενος·
the enemies to pursuit and skillfully drawing(-them)-after
μηδεὶς δὲ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ γινωσκέτω, ἐν οἷς τόποις τὰ
no-one and of-the troops his let-him-know in which places the
ἐγκρύμματα τοῦ στρατηγοῦ ἵστανται, εἰ μὴ μόνος ὁ ἄρχων
concealments of-the general stand if not alone the officer
αὐτῶν. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐπιτιθεμένων αὐτῷ μετὰ πλήθους
their of-the and enemies attacking him with multitude
λαοῦ, καὶ ἀκρατῶς διωκόντων, ὑποστροφὰς ποιείτωσαν
of-troops and unrestrainedly pursuing turnings-back let-them-make
οἱ ὄντες ἀνδρεῖοι καὶ γενναιότατοι, καὶ ἵππους εὐτόνους
the(-men) being brave and most-noble and horses vigorous
ἔχοντες, καὶ πληττέτωσαν τοὺς διώκοντας· ἵνα καὶ τοὺς
having and let-them-strike the pursuers so-that also the
τραυματίας τῶν ἰδίων διασώσωσι, καὶ ἵππων ἀτονούντων
wounded of-the own they-may-save and horses being-spent
ἢ καὶ πληττομένων ἑτέρων ἐπιβῆναι παρασκευάσωσιν.
or also being-struck others to-mount they-may-cause
εἶθ' οὕτως ἐπιδιδόντας τοὺς χαλινοὺς τῶν ἵππων μετ'
then thus giving the reins of-the horses with
ἐλασίας μακρυνθῶσι μικρὸν τῶν διωκόντων· ἵνα καὶ
charge let-them-get-far-off a-little from-the pursuers so-that also

τοῦ βάρους τοῦ ἐπικειμένου αὐτοῖς τῶν πολεμίων μικρὸν
of-the weight of-the pressing on-them of-the enemies a-little
κουφισθῶσι, κἀκεῖνοι, ὀξύτερον τοὺς ἵππους ἐλαύνοντες
they-be-lightened and-those more-sharply the horses driving
πρὸς δίωξιν, ἀτόνους καὶ λειποψυχοῦντας ἐργάσωνται.
for pursuit spent and fainting they-may-make
ἐγγιζόντων δὲ τῷ ἐγκρύμματι τῶν διωκομένων τοῦ
drawing-near and to-the concealment of-the being-pursued of-the
λαοῦ ἡμῶν, εἴτε δεξιᾷ εἴτε εὐώνυμα διελθέτωσαν· ἵνα
troops our either on-right or on-left let-them-pass-through so-that
τοῦ ἐγκρύμματος ἐξερχομένου μὴ κατὰ τόπον αὐτοῖς
the concealment coming-out not in place them
συναντήσωσι, καὶ ἀλλήλους παραβλάψωσι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα
they-meet and one-another harm after and these-things
τῶν διωκομένων σὺν αὐτοῖς οὖσιν ἐν τῷ ἐγκρύμματι,
of-the(-men) being-pursued with them being in the concealment
ὑποστρεφόντων. καὶ ἐκ δύο μερῶν τῆς ὁρμῆς αὐτῶν
returning and from two sides the rush their
κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων γινομένης, εἰς ὠφέλειαν καὶ τοῦτο
against the enemies happening to benefit also this
τοῦ ἡμετέρου λαοῦ γενήσεται. ἔστω δὲ ὁ τόπος τοῦ
of-the our troops will-be let-it-be and the place of-the
ἐγκρύμματος ἐπιτήδειος πρὸς τὸ καλῶς αὐτοὺς ἀποκρύπτειν·
concealment suitable for the well them to-hide
στένωμα δὲ ἢ δυσχωρίαν εἰς τὴν ἔξοδον μηδαμῶς ἐχέτω,
narrow-pass and or rough-place at the exit in-no-way let-it-have
ἀλλ' ἐφόμαλος ἔστω καὶ εὐρύχωρος, μηδὲν παρεμποδίζων
but level let-it-be and spacious nothing hindering
τὴν κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων αὐτῶν ὁρμὴν καὶ ὀξεῖαν ἐπίθεσιν,
the against the enemies their rush and sharp attack
καὶ μάλιστα περὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους ὄντων. ἐπὶ γὰρ τοσούτου
and most about the two-thousand being with for so-great

ἀριθμοῦ πλατεῖαν καὶ εὐθεῖαν εἶναι δεῖ τὴν ἔξοδον τοῦ
number broad and straight to-be must the exit of-the
τοιούτου χωρίου. καὶ ἡ περιωπὴ δέ, ἐν ᾗ ἵσταται βλέπων
such place and the lookout and in which stands watching
ὁ τοῦ λαοῦ τοῦ ἐν τῷ ἐγκρύμματι ἀρχηγός, ἐπιτηδεία ἔστω,
the of-the troops of-the in the concealment leader suitable let-it-be
ὥστε καθορᾶν ἀπὸ πολλοῦ διαστήματος τοὺς διώκοντας
so-that to-see-down from much distance the pursuing
πολεμίους, καὶ τὴν ποσότητα τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτῶν στοχάζεσθαι,
enemies and the quantity of-the troops their to-estimate
καὶ κατανοεῖν, ὅπως τὴν δίωξιν ποιοῦνται. ἐγγισάντων δὲ
and to-perceive how the pursuit they-make having-drawn-near and
τῶν διωκόντων ἐπὶ τῷ ἐγκρύμματι, ἐπικαλεσάμενοι τὴν
the pursuers at the concealment having-called-upon the
τοῦ Θεοῦ βοήθειαν, ὀξεῖ καὶ σφοδροτάτῳ καὶ ἀνδρείῳ
— of-God help with-sharp and most-violent and brave
ὁρμήματι μετὰ κραυγῆς καὶ ἀλαλαγμοῦ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
onset with shouting and war-cry against them
ὁρμησάτωσαν. ὑποστρεφέσθωσαν δὲ καὶ οἱ διωκόμενοι·
let-them-rush let-them-turn-back and also the(-men) being-pursued
καὶ ἐκ δύο μερῶν τῆς ὁρμῆς αὐτῶν κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων
and from two sides the rush their against the enemies
γεγενημένης, εἰς ὠφέλειαν καὶ τοῦτο τοῦ ἡμετέρου στρατοῦ
having-happened to benefit also this of-the our army
γενήσεται. καὶ εἰ ἀκολούθως πάντα κατὰ τὸν παρόντα
will-be and if consistently all-things according-to the present
πραχθείη διορισμόν, ἔχοντες πρὸ πάντων καὶ τὴν τοῦ Θεοῦ
be-done prescription having before all-things also the — of-God
βοήθειαν συνεφαπτομένην αὐτοῖς, οἵα τότε καταστροφὴ
help taking-hold-with them what-sort then overthrow
καὶ ὄλεθρος τῶν πολεμίων γενήσεται, οἱ πεῖραν τῶν
and destruction of-the enemies will-be the(-men) experience of-the

τοιούτων ἔχοντες ἴσασι. καὶ πῶς γὰρ ἄρα, τῶν ἵππων τῇ
such-things having know and how for then of-the horses by-the
μακρᾷ καὶ συντόνῳ διώξει ἠτονηκότων, καὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν
long and intense pursuit having-been-spent and of-the men
τῷ πολλῷ πόνῳ τῆς μάχης ἐκλελοιπότων, οὐ τὰ κακῶν
by-the much toil of-the battle having-failed not the of-ills
ἔσχατα τούτοις συμβήσεται; εἰ δέ, ὅπερ πάντη ἀνέλπιστόν
extremes for-them will-happen if but which wholly unhoped-for
ἐστιν, ἰσχύσωσιν οἱ πολέμιοι ἀντιστῆναι, πάσης αὐτῶν
is be-strong the enemies to-resist all their
τῆς δυνάμεως ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ πολέμῳ παραγενομένης, καὶ
the force in the such war having-arrived and
καρτερὰ μάχη γένηται πανστρατὶ αὐτῶν μαχομένων, διὰ
stout battle happen with-all-the-army them fighting because-of
τὸ τὴν ἧτταν αὐτῶν ἀνακαλέσασθαι, καὶ κατὰ δεύτερον
the the defeat their to-recall and on second
λόγον τοῦτο συμβῇ· δεῖ τὸν τοῦ στρατοῦ ἀρχηγὸν ἀπὸ
account this happen must the of-the army leader from
συνθήματός τινος καὶ διορισμοῦ καὶ σάλπιγγος ἀνακλητικῆς
signal some and command and trumpet of-recall
διαχωρίσαι τοὺς οἰκείους τῆς ἐκ χειρῶν μάχης, νῶτα
to-separate the own(-men) the from hands battle backs
διδόντων αὐτῶν (πλὴν μὴ σὺν ἐλασίᾳ καὶ φυγῇ ἀκόσμῳ,
giving them but not with charge and flight disorderly
ἀλλ' εὐτάκτως), ἐρεθίζειν τε τοὺς πολεμίους πρὸς δίωξιν.
but in-good-order to-provoke and the enemies to pursuit
ἐπικειμένων δὲ τῶν παρατάξεων τῶν πολεμίων καὶ
pressing-on and the battle-lines of-the enemies and
διωκουσῶν, τῇ μείζονι ἐνέδρᾳ περιπεσοῦνται. καὶ
pursuing into-the greater ambush they-will-fall and
διωκόμενοι ἐν ἑνὶ μέρει τῆς ἐνέδρας, ὡς ἔφημεν,
being-pursued in one part of-the ambush as we-said

διερχόμενοι, ὑπόταν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν οἱ ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ
passing-through when against them the(-men) in the great
ἐνέδρᾳ ὄντες ὁρμήσωσιν, ὑποστρεφέσθωσαν παραυτίκα
ambush being rush let-them-turn-back at-once
καὶ οἱ διωκόμενοι, καὶ εὑρεθήσονται ἐκ δύο μερῶν
also the(-men) being-pursued and they-will-be-found from two sides
τοῖς πολεμίοις μαχόμενοι· καὶ πολλὴν τοῦτο τῷ στρατῷ
with-the enemies fighting and much this to-the army
προξενίσει τὴν ὠφέλειαν. εἰ οὖν οἱ διώκοντες ἄχρι τῆς
will-cause the benefit if then the pursuers as-far-as the
ἐνέδρας καταλάβωσι, καὶ ἀπροόπτως ταύτῃ περιπέσωσι,
ambush reach and unawares into-it fall
καὶ τολμηρῷ καὶ ἀνδρείῳ ὁρμήματι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐγκρύμματος
and with-daring and brave onset from the concealment
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐφορμήσωσι, τῇ τοῦ Χριστοῦ χάριτι κατὰ
against them charge by-the — of-Christ grace by
κράτος τούτους ἡττήσουσι, καὶ μέγα κλέος ἑαυτοῖς
force them they-will-defeat and great glory for-themselves
περιποιήσονται. εἰ δὲ διά τινα σφάλματα μὴ τελέως
will-acquire if but because-of some mistakes not completely
δυνηθῶσι τῶν παρατάξεων τῶν ἐχθρῶν περιγενέσθαι,
they-be-able the battle-lines of-the enemies to-overcome
ὡς δύναμιν βαρεῖαν ἐχόντων, καὶ ἰσχυρῶς πανστρατὶ
as force heavy having and strongly with-all-the-army
αὐτῶν μαχομένων, ἔχων καὶ τὸ πεζῶν στράτευμα
them fighting having also the of-foot-soldiers army
συμμαχούντων σοι, σὺ μᾶλλον αὐτῶν ὑπερισχύσεις. καὶ
fighting-alongside you you rather them will-overpower and
εἰ μὴ κατὰ κράτος ἡττηθῶσιν, ἀλλ᾽ οὖν πολλοὺς
if not by force they-be-defeated but nevertheless many
αὐτῶν μαχαίρας ἔργον ποιήσῃς, πλείονας δὲ τούτων καὶ
of-them of-sword work you-will-make more and of-them also

ἀνδραπόδων λόγῳ κατάσχῃς, καὶ φόβῳ μεγάλῳ καὶ
of-captives in-the-status you-will-hold and to-fear great and
καταπλήξει ὑποβληθῶσιν· ὡς μηκέτι τολμᾷν ἀδεῶς τὰς
consternation they-will-be-subjected so-that no-longer to-dare fearlessly the
χώρας κατατρέχειν καὶ ληΐζεσθαι, μᾶλλον δὲ σπεύσουσι τὴν
lands to-overrun and to-plunder rather but they-will-hasten the
ἰδίαν καταλαβεῖν. καὶ ταῦτα μέν, καθὼς οἱ πρὸ ἡμῶν
own to-reach and these-things indeed as the(-men) before us
ἡμῖν παρέδοσαν, καὶ ἡ ἀπὸ τοῦ μακροῦ χρόνου ἐμπειρία,
to-us handed-down and the from the long time experience
συνεγραψάμεθα. σοὶ δὲ πρὸς τὴν εἰκὸς ἐπερχομένην
we-wrote for-you and to the likely coming
περίστασιν προσήκει διαγενέσθαι. οὐ γὰρ ὡς αἱ τῶν
circumstance it-befits to-get-through not for as the of-the
ἀνθρώπων βουλαί, ἀλλ' ὡς ἡ ἄνωθεν πρόνοια τὰ καθ'
men counsels but as the from-above providence the(-things) in
ἕκαστον ταλαντεύσῃ, καὶ τὸ τοῦ πολέμου ἕπεται πέρας.
each weighs also the of-the war follows end

If the enemy still ravages the land in a mass, the general harries its foragers from the other side and ambushes its outlying units: a few of his men dressed as farmers, unarmed, bareheaded, with short wooden pikes, drive cattle between villages at the eleventh hour and draw the pursuers onto the ambush, with a second ambush two miles behind it, at sunset, so that night ends the fight. With five or six thousand men he should rather face the enemy openly. The army must be trained, paid in full, and free, as the old emperors' tactical books ordain: it is shameful that tax-gatherers and theme judges beat and fetter soldiers, who should be judged by their own general and tourmarch.

Περὶ τοῦ, πότε δεῖ τὸν στρατηγὸν ἐκ δύο μερῶν τῶν 18
about the when must the general from two sides of-the
πολεμίων παραδρομὴν ποιῆσαι.
enemies skirmishing to-make
Εἰ δὲ ἔτι ἐπιμείνουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι, ὅπερ ἀνέλπιστόν
if but still remain the enemies which unhoped-for
ἐστι μετὰ τὸ οὕτως τραυματισθῆναι, τὰς χώρας
is after the thus to-have-been-wounded the lands
ἡμῶν φωσσατικῶς πυρπολοῦντες, κατακαίοντές τε καὶ
our army-wise burning burning-down both and
διαφθείροντες, μηδαμοῦ εἰς κοῦρσον μήκοθεν τὸν λαὸν
destroying nowhere into raiding-force from-afar the troops
αὐτῶν τολμῶντες ἀποστέλλειν, χρὴ τὸν στρατηγὸν
their daring to-send must the general
ἀξιόλογον δύναμιν εἰς τὸ ἕτερον μέρος τῶν πολεμίων
considerable force to the other side of-the enemies
ἀποστεῖλαι, ἐν ᾧ αὐτὸς μὴ παρατρέχει· καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ
to-send in which himself not runs-alongside and the(-men) from
τριῶν ἢ τεσσάρων μιλίων τοῦ φωσσάτου παρεκτρέχουσιν
three or four miles of-the army running-out

ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι καὶ τραυματίζειν, πρὸς τὸ
on-this-side and-that to-attack and to-wound for the
διακωλύειν αὐτοὺς τροφὰς ἀναλαμβάνειν· ἵνα ὡς ἐκ
to-prevent them provisions to-take-up so-that as from
τούτου σπάνιν ἔχοντες τροφῶν ἀναγκασθῶσιν ὑποστρέψαι.
this scarcity having of-provisions they-be-forced to-return
εἰ δὲ ὁρᾷς, ὦ στρατηγέ, τοὺς πολεμίους ἔτι ἑαυτοὺς
if but you-see O general the enemies still themselves
παραφυλάττοντας, καὶ μὴ πόῤῥω ἐξελαύνειν τοὺς εἰς
guarding and not far to-ride-out the(-men) for
συλλογὴν χρειῶν ἀποστελλομένους παραχωροῦντας, καὶ
collection of-needs being-sent allowing also
ταύτην τὴν ἐνέδραν εἰς βλάβην αὐτῶν ἐπινοήσασθαι δεῖ.
this the ambush for harm their to-devise must-you
τὰ φοῦλκα διασκοπῆσαι τῶν πολεμίων, τὰ εἰς φυλακὴν
the units to-examine of-the enemies the(-ones) for guard
αὐτῶν ἐξερχόμενα καὶ πόῤῥω τοῦ φωσσάτου ἱστάμενα.
their coming-out and far from-the army standing
καὶ οἷον ἐξ αὐτῶν βραδύτερον ὑποστρέφει εἰς τὰς σκηνὰς
and which from them more-slowly returns to the tents
αὐτῶν, ἴσως καρτεροῦν ἕως οἱ τὰ πλησίον αὐτῶν χωρία
their perhaps holding-out until the the near them villages
ἀνερευνῶντες ἑταῖροι πρὸς τὰς σκηνὰς αὐτῶν ὑποστρέψουσι,
searching companions to the tents their return
κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐνεδρεῦσαι ἐπείχθητι. καὶ δι᾽ ἐμπείρων
against it to-ambush hasten and through experienced
βιγλατόρων εἰ δυνατὸν στοχάσασθαι τὴν ποσότητα τῶν
lookouts if possible to-estimate the quantity of-the
εἰς τὸ φοῦλκον ἱσταμένων πολεμίων, καὶ τούτων πλείονας
in the unit standing enemies and than-these more
μαχίμους ἄνδρας τῶν ἱππέων ἀπολεξάμενος λόχον γενέσθαι
fighting men of-the horsemen having-picked-out ambush to-be

τοῖς ἐχθροῖς παρασκευάσεις, ἀρχηγὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς ἐφιστῶν
for-the enemies you-will-prepare a-leader over them setting
ἀνδρεῖον καὶ ἐμπειρότατον. διορίσασθαί τε αὐτὸν ὀλίγους
brave and most-experienced to-direct and him few
τινὰς τοῦ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν λαοῦ χιτῶνας ἀμφιάσασθαι γεωργῶν·
some of-the under him troops tunics to-put-on of-farmers
συμμίξαι τε αὐτοῖς τῇ ἀληθείᾳ καί τινας τῶν ἀγροτῶν
to-mix and with-them in-the truth also some of-the rustics
καὶ γεωργικῶν. ἀόπλους δὲ πάντας εἶναι, καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς
and farmers unarmed and all to-be and the heads
ἀσκέπους· τινὰς δὲ καὶ ἀνυποδέτους· ἐφίππους δὲ ἅπαντας,
uncovered some and also unshod mounted and all
ξυλοκόντια κατέχοντας πάνυ κοντά, πρὸς τὸ ἀπατῆσαι τοὺς
wooden-pikes holding very short for the to-deceive the
πολεμίους, καὶ δόξαν αὐτοῖς ἐμποιῆσαι, ὡς οὐκ εἶεν τοῦ
enemies and opinion in-them to-create that not they-are of-the
στρατοῦ, ἀλλὰ γεωργοί τινες, οἱ λεγόμενοι οἰκοφύλακες.
army but farmers some the called house-guards
μὴ πλείους δὲ τούτους εἶναι τῶν εἴκοσι. εἰσαγαγεῖν
not more and them to-be than-the twenty to-lead-in
δὲ αὐτοὺς ἐν χωρίοις ἀνὰ ἓξ ἢ καὶ πλείονας πλησίον
and them into villages by six or also more near
ἀλλήλων, ἔχοντας κτήνη τινὰ ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς χωρίοις,
one-another having beasts some in the same villages
εἴτε ὑποζύγια εἶεν καὶ βόες, εἴθ᾽ ἵπποι τε καὶ ἡμίονοι.
whether draft-animals they-be and oxen or horses both and mules
περὶ δὲ ἐνδεκάτην ὥραν τῆς ἡμέρας διορίσασθαι αὐτοὺς
about and eleventh hour of-the day to-appoint them
ἐμφανισθῆναι τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἀπὸ χωρίου εἰς ἕτερον χωρίον
to-show-themselves to-the enemies from village to another village

δρομαίως εἰσερχομένους καὶ περισπωμένους, ὅπως τὰ κτήνη
at-a-run going-in and being-busy so-that the beasts
αὐτῶν ἀναλάβωνται, καὶ πρὸς τὰ ὀχυρώματα διασώσωσι.
their they-may-take-up and to the strongholds may-save
τούτους τοίνυν ἡνίκα οἱ εἰς τὸ φοῦλκον ἱστάμενοι
these therefore when the in the unit standing
πολέμιοι θεάσωνται, τὰ μὲν τῶν κτηνῶν αὐτῶν
enemies see the indeed of-the beasts their
παρέλκοντας, τὰ δὲ ἀπελαύνοντας, καὶ ἀγρότας εἶναι
dragging-off the and driving-away and rustics to-be
καὶ γεωργοὺς τούτους ὑποτοπήσουσιν, ἀκρατῶς καὶ
and farmers these they-will-suppose unrestrainedly and
ἀφυλάκτως τούτους ἐπιδιώξουσι. διωκόμενοι δὲ οἱ
unguardedly them will-pursue being-pursued and the(-men)
τὸ σχῆμα τῶν οἰκοφυλάκων καὶ γεωργῶν ὑποδύντες,
the guise of-the house-guards and farmers having-put-on
σπουδάσουσι καταλαβεῖν, ἐν ᾧ τὸ ἔγκρυμμα ἵσταται·
will-hasten to-reach in which the concealment stands
καὶ τούτους οἱ πολέμιοι διώκοντες περιπεσοῦνται τῇ
and them the enemies pursuing will-fall into-the
ἐνέδρᾳ ἀπαραφυλάκτως. ἐπὰν δὲ τοῖς λοχήσασι
ambush unguardedly when and to-the(-men) having-lain-in-ambush
προσεγγίσωσιν, εὐτάκτῳ φρενὶ καὶ ὁρμῇ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν οἱ
they-draw-near with-orderly mind and rush against them the
τοιοῦτοι ἐφορμήσαντες συρράγείτωσαν. καὶ δῆλον ὡς οὐκ
such(-men) having-charged let-them-clash and clear that not
ἀντιστήσονται κἂν πρὸς μικρὸν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἀλλὰ νῶτα
will-resist even for little the enemies but backs
δόντες πολλοὶ τούτων καὶ ἀναιρεθήσονται, καὶ δορυάλωτοι
having-given many of-them both will-be-killed and spear-captives
γενήσονται. εἰ δὲ σύνεγγυς ὁ χῶρος εἴη τῆς τῶν ἐχθρῶν
will-become if but close-by the space be of-the of-the enemies

στρατιᾶς, ἐν ᾧ τὰ τοιάδε τελεῖται, καὶ πλῆθος τοῦ
army in which the such-things are-done and multitude of-the
λαοῦ τῶν πολεμίων εἰς ἐκδίκησιν τῶν διωκομένων
troops of-the enemies for avenging of-the(-men) being-pursued
ἐξέλθοι, χρὴ τὸν στρατηγὸν καὶ ὄπισθεν τῆς τοιαύτης
come-out must the general also behind the such
ἐνέδρας καὶ ἕτερον λαὸν τόπον εἰς ἐπιτήδειον εἰς ἔγκρυμμα
ambush also other troops place into suitable into concealment
καταστῆσαι, ἀπέχον τῆς προτέρας ἐνέδρας μίλια δύο.
to-set being-distant from-the former ambush miles two
καὶ εἴγε, ὡς ἔφημεν, τοὺς ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ ἐνέδρᾳ λαὸς
and if-indeed as we-said the(-men) in the first ambush troops
τῶν πολεμίων ἐπιδιώξει, οἱ τοῦ δευτέρου ἐγκρύμματος
of-the enemies will-pursue the(-men) of-the second concealment
ἐξερχόμενοι κατ᾽ αὐτῶν τοὺς μὲν οἰκείους περισώσουσι,
coming-out against them the indeed own(-men) will-save
τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους κατατραυματίσουσι καὶ θανατώσουσι.
the and enemies will-wound and will-put-to-death
δεῖ οὖν τὴν τοιαύτην μηχανήν, ὦ στρατηγέ, περὶ δυσμὰς
must then the such device O general about setting
ἡλίου ἐξεργάσασθαι· ἵνα, ἐὰν πλήθη πολεμίων ἐπίθωνται
of-the-sun to-carry-out so-that if multitudes of-enemies attack
τοῖς ἐν τῇ ἐνέδρᾳ, ἡ νὺξ καταλαβοῦσα καὶ τὸν πόλεμον
the(-men) in the ambush the night having-overtaken and the war
διαλύσασα, ἀβλαβῆ τὸν ὑπὸ σὲ λαὸν διατηρήσῃ.
having-dissolved unharmed the under you troops may-preserve

Περὶ καταστάσεως καὶ ἐξοπλίσεως καὶ γυμνασίας στρατοῦ. 19
about establishment and arming and training of-army

Εἰ δέ γε θαῤῥήσουσι κοῦρσον διαχωρίσαι, εὐφυῶς δεῖ σε
if but at-least they-will-dare raiding-force to-separate cleverly must you
τούτους ἐπιτηδεύσασθαι, ἀποστέλλοντα τῶν ὑπὸ σέ τινα
them to-practice-upon sending of-the under you some(-one)

ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ ἐμπειρίᾳ κεκοσμημένον, μετὰ καθωπλισμένου
with-bravery and experience adorned with armed
λαοῦ καὶ ἐξαρκοῦντος, τοὺς διεσκεδασμένους τῶν πολεμίων
troops and sufficient the dispersed of-the enemies
κατατρέχειν, καὶ ἀναιρεῖν, καὶ δεσμώτας ποιεῖν. σοῦ
to-overrun and to-kill and prisoners to-make your
δὲ μηδέποτε καταλυέτω ἡ παράταξις· ἵνα, εἰ συμβῇ
and never let-it-break-up the battle-array so-that if it-happen
φούλκοις πολεμίων περιτυχεῖν πλῆθος ἔχουσι λαοῦ, πρὸς
units of-enemies to-come-upon multitude having of-troops for
φυλακὴν δηλαδὴ τῶν ἐξελθόντων πολεμίων ἐπακολουθοῦσι,
guard evidently of-the having-come-out enemies following
τὴν ἰδίαν ἔχων παράταξιν συνισταμένην, πόλεμον μετὰ
the own having battle-array assembled war with
τοῦ φούλκου συνάπτων στρατηγικῶς καὶ ἐμπείρως, ὡς
the unit joining generalship-wise and skillfully as
ἐξεθέμεθα, καταγωνίσῃ τούτους, καὶ τελείῳ παραδώσῃς
we-set-out you-may-overcome them and to-complete you-may-hand-over
ἀφανισμῷ. ταῦτα δὲ εἰς τὴν σὴν ἀσφάλειαν, ὦ στρατηγέ,
destruction these-things and for the your safety O general
καὶ τοῦ λαοῦ φυλάττεσθαι ὑπεμνήσαμεν, εἴγε ὀλιγοστόν
and of-the troops to-observe we-have-reminded if-indeed very-few
ἐστι τὸ ὑπὸ σὲ στράτευμα, καὶ εὐαρίθμητον, καὶ τοῦ
is the under you army and easily-counted and than-the
τῶν πολεμίων πολὺ ἐλαττούμενον. εἰ δὲ περὶ τὰς ἓξ ἢ
of-the enemies much falling-short if but about the six or
πέντε χιλιάδας ἀπαριθμεῖται τὸ ὑπὸ σὲ μάχιμον, μᾶλλον
five thousands is-numbered the under you fighting(-force) rather
κατὰ πρόσωπον ἀντιτάξασθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐπείχθητι. καὶ
to face to-array-against the enemies hasten and
οὕτως διὰ μηχανικῶν στρατηγημάτων καὶ ἐπιτηδεύσεων,
thus through contriving stratagems and practices

εἰ χρή, καὶ ἀδοκήτων κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπιθέσεων, καὶ εἰ
if needful and unexpected against them attacks and if
καλῶς καὶ ἐμπείρως τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν μηχανήσῃ πόλεμον,
well and skillfully the against them you-contrive war
ἔχων τὴν Χριστοῦ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἡμῶν ἀκαταμάχητον βοήθειαν
having the of-Christ — of-God our invincible help
συνεπαμύνουσαν, μεγάλα κατὰ τῶν ἐχθρῶν νίκης ἐργάσῃ
helping-to-defend great against the enemies of-victory you-will-raise
τρόπαια. οὐκ ἐνὸν δὲ ἄλλως στρατηγικῶς καὶ ἐμπείρως
trophies not possible and otherwise generalship-wise and skillfully
πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον παρασκευασθῆναί σε, εἰ μὴ πρότερον
for the war to-be-prepared you if not before
ἐξασκήσῃς καὶ ἐκπαιδεύσῃς τὸ ὑπὸ σὲ στράτευμα, ἐθίζων
you-train and you-educate the under you army accustoming
αὐτὸ καὶ ἐγγυμνάζων εἴς τε τὴν τῶν ὅπλων μεταχείρισιν,
it and exercising to both the of-the arms handling
καὶ πόνων καὶ ταλαιπωριῶν τὸ δριμύ τε καὶ ἐπίπονον
and of-toils and of-hardships the keenness both and laboriousness
καρτερεῖν· καὶ μὴ χαυνότητι καὶ ῥαθυμίᾳ, μέθῃ
to-endure and not to-slackness and to-indolence to-drunkenness
τε καὶ τρυφαῖς καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις ἀσωτίαις τὸ ἑαυτῶν
both and to-luxuries and to-the other profligacies the their
πᾶν ἐπιτρέπειν. προσήκει γε μήν, τάς τε ῥόγας
whole to-entrust it-befits at-least however the both pay
αὐτῶν καὶ σιτηρέσια ἀνελλιπῶς τούτους λαμβάνειν· ἄλλας
their and allowances unfailingly them to-receive other
τε δωρεὰς καὶ εὐεργεσίας, πλείους τῶν ἐθίμων καὶ
both gifts and benefits more than-the customary and
διατετυπωμένων· ἵνα τὸ ἀνενδεὲς ἔχοντες ἐκ τούτων
prescribed so-that the lacking-nothing having from these
δύνωνται καὶ ἵππους καλλίστους ἐπικτᾶσθαι, καὶ τὰς
they-may-be-able also horses finest to-acquire and the

ἄλλας αὐτῶν πανοπλίας, καὶ χαιρούσῃ ψυχῇ, καὶ προθύμῳ
other their full-armors and with-rejoicing soul and eager
καὶ ἀγαλλομένῃ καρδίᾳ προκινδυνεύειν αἱρῶνται τῶν
and exulting heart to-run-risks-in-front they-may-choose for-the
βασιλέων ἡμῶν τῶν ἁγίων, καὶ παντὸς τοῦ Χριστιανικοῦ
emperors our the holy and all the Christian
πληρώματος. τὸ δὲ κρεῖττον πάντων καὶ ἀναγκαιότερον,
fullness the and better of-all and more-necessary
ὅπερ τὸ πρόθυμον αὐτῶν διεγείρει, καὶ τὴν ἀνδρείαν αὔξει,
which the eagerness their rouses and the bravery increases
καὶ τῶν ἀτολμήτων ἐρεθίζει κατατολμᾶν, τὸ τελείαν
and the(-things) undared provokes to-dare the complete
ἔχειν ἐλευθερίαν τὰς ἑαυτῶν οἰκίας καὶ τῶν ὑπηρετουμένων
to-have freedom the their-own houses and of-the serving
αὐτοῖς στρατιωτῶν, καὶ τοὺς περὶ αὐτοὺς ἅπαντας.
them soldiers and the(-men) about them all
τοῦτο γὰρ ἀρχῆθεν καὶ ἀπὸ παλαιοῦ εἰς αὐτοὺς
this for from-the-beginning and from old for them
καὶ συνετηρεῖτο καὶ διεφυλάττετο· καὶ εὑρήσεις τοῦτο
both was-kept and was-guarded and you-will-find this
νενομοθετημένον παρὰ τῶν πάλαι ἁγίων καὶ μακαρίων
legislated by the of-old holy and blessed
βασιλέων, καὶ ἐν τοῖς τακτικοῖς βιβλίοις αὐτῶν
emperors and in the tactical books their
ἐγγεγραμμένον. πρὸς δέ γε τῇ ἐλευθερίᾳ χρὴ αὐτοὺς
written-in besides and at-least the freedom must they
καὶ τῆς δεούσης ἀπολαύειν τιμῆς, καὶ μὴ καταφρονεῖσθαι
also of-the due to-enjoy honor and not to-be-despised
καὶ ἀτιμοῦσθαι. αἰσχύνομαι γὰρ εἰπεῖν, καὶ τύπτεσθαι
and to-be-dishonored I-am-ashamed for to-say also to-be-beaten
τοὺς τοιούτους ἄνδρας, τοὺς μὴ προτιμῶντας τῆς ἰδίας
the such men the(-men) not preferring the own

ζωῆς ὑπὲρ θεραπείας τῶν ἁγίων βασιλέων, καὶ τῆς
life for service of-the holy emperors and of-the
τῶν Χριστιανῶν ἐλευθερίας καὶ ἐκδικήσεως· καὶ ταῦτα
of-the Christians freedom and avenging and these-things
παρὰ φορολόγων ἀνθρωπαρίων, καὶ μηδεμίαν τῷ κοινῷ
by tax-gathering wretched-men and no to-the common
προξενούντων ὠφέλειαν, ἀλλ᾽ ἢ μόνον ἐκπιεζόντων καὶ
providing benefit except — only squeezing and
ἐκτριβόντων τοὺς πένητας, καὶ ἐξ ἀδικίας καὶ πολλῶν
grinding the poor and from injustice and much
αἱμάτων πενήτων ἑαυτοῖς πολλὰ τάλαντα χρυσίου
blood of-(the)-poor for-themselves many talents of-gold
ἐπισυναγόντων. δεῖ δὲ αὐτοὺς μηδὲ παρὰ τῶν θεματικῶν
gathering must and they not-even by the theme
κριτῶν ἀτιμοῦσθαι, καὶ ὡς ἀνδράποδα κατασύρεσθαι καὶ
judges to-be-dishonored and like slaves to-be-dragged and
μαστίζεσθαι, δεσμά τε καὶ κλοιὰ (ὦ τῆς συμφορᾶς)
to-be-whipped chains both and collars oh the misfortune
περιτίθεσθαι τοὺς ἐκδίκους καί, μετὰ Θεόν, σωτῆρας
to-be-put-on the avengers and after God saviors
Χριστιανῶν, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἁγίων βασιλέων καθ᾽ ἑκάστην,
of-Christians and for the holy emperors on each(-day)
ὡς εἰπεῖν, ἀποθνήσκοντας· αὐτοῦ τοῦ νόμου παρακελεύοντος,
as to-say dying itself the law commanding
ἕκαστον ἄρχοντα τοῦ ἰδίου λαοῦ ἐξουσιάζειν, καὶ τούτους
each officer of-the own troops to-have-authority and them
κρίνειν. καὶ τίνος ἑτέρου ἆρα λαὸς οἰκεῖος ὁ τοῦ θέματος,
to-judge and of-whom else then troops own the of-the theme
εἰ μὴ μόνον τοῦ στρατηγοῦ, ὃν ὁ βασιλεὺς ὁ ἅγιος
if not only of-the general whom the emperor the holy
ἐν αὐτῷ προχειρίζεται; διὰ τοῦτο γὰρ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν
over it appoints because-of this for also from the

ἀρχαιοτάτων Ῥωμαίων καὶ τοῦ νόμου τὴν τοῦ ἰδίου
most-ancient Romans and the law the of-the own
θέματος ἐξουσίαν ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκέκτητο, κρίνων τοὺς
theme authority the general possessed judging the(-men)
ἐγκαλοῦντας ἐπὶ στρατιωτικοῖς πράγμασι, καὶ διοικῶν
bringing-charges in military matters and administering
τὰ ἐν τῷ θέματι ἀνακύπτοντα, ἔχων συνεργὸν τὸν
the(-things) in the theme arising having fellow-worker the
κριτὴν καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ συνεργούμενος· συνεργῶν δὲ καὶ τῷ
judge and by him being-helped helping and also the
πρωτονοταρίῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τοῖς τὰς τοῦ δημοσίου
protonotarios and the others the(-men) the of-the public
δουλείας ἐγκεχειρισμένοις. εἶχε δὲ καὶ ὁ τουρμάρχης
services entrusted-with had and also the tourmarch
τῆς ἰδίας αὐτοῦ τούρμας παρὰ τοῦ νόμου καὶ τῆς
of-the own his tourma from the law and the
βασιλικῆς προστάξεως ἐπ᾽ ἐξουσίας τὰς κρίσεις, κατὰ
imperial command in authority the judgments according-to
τοὺς ἐπικρατήσαντας τύπους καὶ τὰ τούτων προνόμια. εἰ
the prevailing customs and the their privileges if
μὲν οὖν τὴν πάλαι κατάστασιν ὁ τῶν ἁγίων βασιλέων
indeed then the old state the of-the holy emperors
λάβῃ στρατός, καὶ τὰ λυποῦντα καὶ εἰς πενίαν
take army and the(-things) distressing and into poverty
αὐτοὺς ἄγοντα πόῤῥω γένωνται τούτων· μεγάλην λήψονται
them bringing far become of-these great they-will-take
προθυμίαν, καὶ χαράν, καὶ ἀγαλλίασιν· καὶ γενναιότεροι καὶ
eagerness and joy and exultation and more-noble and
εὐτολμώτεροι ἔσονται, ἀκαταγώνιστοί τε καὶ ἀκαταμάχητοι
more-daring they-will-be invincible both and unconquerable
τοῖς πολεμίοις ὀφθήσονται. καὶ τούτων οὕτως γινομένων, οὐ
to-the enemies they-will-appear and these thus happening not

μόνον τὰς ἰδίας οἱ ἅγιοι ἡμῶν βασιλεῖς ἐκδικήσουσι χώρας,
only the own the holy our emperors will-avenge lands
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἑτέρας πλείστας τῶν πολεμίων καθυποτάξουσιν.
but also other very-many of-the enemies will-subjugate

X · INVADING THEIR LAND; SIEGES

When the enemy lingers in great force, the general should invade its land, as the emperor Leo's book on strategy relates: while the Cilicians besieged Mistheia, Nikephoros Phokas ravaged the country of Adana and drew them home, and the generals of the Anatolikoi, Cappadocia, and Lykandos did the same against the Tarsians and against Alem son of Chambdas. When the villagers have fled to the mountains, he holds the entrances and attacks the enemy's camp by night from the heights. A fort that can stand a siege is stocked for four months or more; around a besieged fort he burns all food, and the very roofs if wood is short, and strikes the besiegers by night or by ambushes, and can bring in men and grain by a feigned attack at midnight.

Περὶ τῶν ἐγχρονιζόντων πολεμίων κατὰ τῆς χώρας ἡμῶν, 20
about the lingering enemies in the land our
ἵνα ὁ ἡμέτερος στρατὸς κατὰ τῆς χώρας αὐτῶν ἐπέλθῃ.
so-that the our army against the land their may-advance
Τῶν πολεμίων μετὰ μεγάλης καὶ βαρείας δυνάμεως
of-the enemies with great and heavy force
τὰς χώρας ἡμῶν περιπολούντων, ἐκτριβόντων τε, καὶ
the lands our going-around wearing-down both and
ἀφανιζόντων, καὶ πολιορκίας κάστρων διαμελετώντων·
destroying and sieges of-forts planning
φυλαττομένων δέ, τοῦ μὴ παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν
guarding-themselves and for-the not by the Roman
στρατευμάτων ἐνεδρευθῆναι, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον αὐτοὺς
armies to-be-ambushed but rather them

ἐνεδρεῦσαι μηχανωμένων· εἰ μὴ ἀξιόλογος Ῥωμαϊκὴ
to-ambush contriving if not considerable Roman
δύναμις εἰς ἀντιπαράταξιν τούτων ἐστί, δυναμένη τούτους
force for opposing-array of-these is able them
καταγωνίσασθαι· τοῦτο δεῖ σε, ὦ στρατηγέ, διαπράξασθαι,
to-overcome this must you O general to-accomplish
ὅπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄνω χρόνοις γέγονε, καθὼς ἡ συντεθεῖσα
which also in the upper times happened as the composed
στρατηγικὴ βίβλος παρὰ τοῦ ἀοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου
generalship book by the celebrated and most-wise
βασιλέως Λέοντος διαλαμβάνει. ἣν καὶ οἱ ἐντυχόντες
emperor Leo treats which also the(-men) having-read
σαφῶς τὰ περὶ τῶν λεχθησομένων ἐπίστανται. τὸ γὰρ
clearly the(-things) about the to-be-said know the for
κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ ὁ τῶν Κιλίκων ἅπας λαὸς μετὰ βαρείας
in that time the of-the Cilicians whole troops with heavy
δυνάμεως κατὰ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν ἐξελθών, καὶ
force against the theme of-the Anatolikoi having-come-out and
τὸ κάστρον Μισθείας σφοδρῶς πολιορκῶν, τῷ τηνικαῦτα
the fort of-Mistheia violently besieging to-the then
ἀρχηγῷ τοῦ στρατοῦ ὁ βασιλεύων προστέταχε, μετὰ τῶν
leader of-the army the reigning(-one) ordered with the
θεμάτων καὶ ταγμάτων κατὰ τῆς τῶν Κιλίκων χώρας
themes and tagmata against the of-the Cilicians land
ἐπιστρατεῦσαι· δύο δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν, τοῦ τε Ἀνατολικοῦ
to-campaign two and of-the generals of-the both Anatolikon
καὶ τοῦ Ὀψικίου, ὑπολείπεσθαι, τοῦ πρὸς ἐκδίκησιν, ὡς
and of-the Opsikion to-be-left-behind for-the to avenging as
οἷόν τε, τοῦ τε κάστρου καὶ τῆς λοιπῆς χώρας τοῖς
possible — of-the both fort and of-the other land the
πολεμίοις ἀντικαθίστασθαι. ὁ μέντοι τῶν στρατευμάτων
enemies to-oppose the however of-the armies

δημαγωγὸς (ἦν δὲ τότε Νικηφόρος ὁ ἐπίκλην Φωκᾶς),
leader he-was and then Nikephoros the by-surname Phokas
διὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς τοῦ Μαυριανοῦ λεγομένης κατὰ
through the road the(-one) — of-Maurianos called against
τῆς χώρας Ἀδάνης τὴν ἐπέλευσιν ποιησάμενος, λείαν ὅτι
the land of-Adana the attack having-made plunder as
πλείστην ἠλάσατο. τούτῳ πρὸς συνάντησιν λαὸς ὁ
most drove to-this-man for meeting troops the(-one)
τῆς Ἀδάνης ἐξῆλθε, καὶ ὡς ἀπὸ μιλίων δύο τῆς πόλεως
— of-Adana came-out and as from miles two of-the city
αὐτῶν ἀντιταξάμενοι, ἅμα τῷ συμπεσεῖν ἀλλήλοις
their having-arrayed-against together-with the to-clash with-one-another
νῶτα μεταβαλόντες οἱ τοῦ Ἰσμαὴλ ἀκόσμῳ φυγῇ
backs having-turned the(-men) — of-Ishmael in-disorderly flight
καὶ σποράδην εὐθὺ τῆς πόλεως ὥρμησαν. ὁ δέ γε
and scattered straight-for the city rushed the and at-least
τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν στρατευμάτων ἡγούμενος ὅσους τῶν
of-the Roman armies leading as-many-as of-the
Ἰσμαηλιτῶν ἔνδον πυλῶν γενέσθαι μὴ δυνηθέντας εὗρε, τοὺς
Ishmaelites within gates to-get not having-been-able he-found the
μὲν μαχαίρᾳ συνέκοψε, τοὺς δὲ πρὸς δουλείαν ἠγάγετο.
indeed with-sword cut-down the and into slavery led
τοῦ δὲ ἄστεος ἐγγύθι στρατοπεδευσάμενος, ἀμπελώνων
of-the and town near having-encamped of-vineyards
καὶ δένδρων τὰ ἔγκαρπα ἅπαντα κατατεμών, τό τε
and of-trees the fruit-bearing(-ones) all having-cut-down the and
πέριξ τῆς πόλεως λαμπρόν τε καὶ εὔκοσμον ἀπημαύρωσε.
around of-the city brilliant both and beautiful obscured
τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄχρι θαλάσσης ἐπιδραμὼν ὁ λαὸς
on-the and next-day as-far-as sea having-overrun the troops
αὐτοῦ, αἰχμαλωσίαν ὅτι πλείστην καὶ κτήνη πάμπολλα
his captives as most and beasts very-many

ἀναλαβόμενος, καὶ δι᾽ ὅλης τῆς ἡμέρας ὁδοιπορήσας, ἐν
having-taken-up and through whole the day having-marched on
τῷ Κύδνῳ ποταμῷ, ὃς Ἱέραξ ἐγχωρίως κέκληται, ἔξωθεν
the Kydnos river which Hierax locally is-called outside
τῆς γεφύρας, ἐν ᾗ ἡ ὁδὸς πρὸς Ἄδανα φέρει, ἠπλήκευσε.
the bridge on which the road toward Adana leads encamped
τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν, τὴν ἰδίαν καταλήψεσθαι
on-the and following having-set-out from-there the own to-reach
ἐπορεύετο. τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων τοίνυν οἱ τὴν Μίσθειαν
he-went the of-the Romans therefore the — Mistheia
περικαθήμενοι πολέμιοι κατὰ τῆς ἑαυτῶν χώρας ἐπίθεσιν
besieging enemies against the their-own land attack
ἀκουτισθέντες, τὴν πολιορκίαν λύσαντες τάχει πολλῷ
having-heard-of the siege having-broken-up with-speed much
πρὸς ἐκδίκησιν τῆς ἰδίας χώρας ὑπέστρεψαν. ἀλλ᾽
for avenging of-the own land returned but
ἀπρακτήσαντες τῶν ἀμφοτέρων διήμαρτον. ὁ γὰρ τῶν
having-failed of-the both they-missed the for of-the
Ῥωμαϊκῶν στρατευμάτων ἡγούμενος μετὰ πολλῶν σκύλων
Roman armies leader with many spoils
τε καὶ λαφύρων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων διὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῦ
both and booty and captives through the road —
Καρυδίου λεγομένης τὰ Ῥωμαίων ἤδη κατέλαβε.
of-Karydion called the(-lands) of-Romans already reached
πρὸς τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ στρατηγήσαντες τῶν
in-addition-to this and also the(-men) having-been-generals of-the
Ἀνατολικῶν καὶ Καππαδοκίας ἐν τοῖς ἄνω χρόνοις, τῶν
Anatolikoi and of-Cappadocia in the upper times the
Ταρσιτῶν κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς χώρας τὴν ἐξέλευσιν
Tarsians against the Roman land the coming-out
ποιουμένων, δι᾽ ἄλλης ὁδοῦ ἐν ταῖς χώραις αὐτῶν
making through another road into the lands their

εἰσερχόμενοι, ποτὲ μὲν αὐτοὶ ἐκεῖνοι, ποτὲ δέ τινας
going-in at-one-time indeed they those at-another and some
τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτῶν ἀποστέλλοντες, κατὰ τὸ ἐγχωροῦν τούτους
of-the troops their sending as the possible them
κατετραυμάτιζον. ὁ δέ γε τὴν ἡγεμονίαν τῆς Λυκανδοῦ
wounded the(-one) and at-least the command — of-Lykandos
καὶ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀκριτικῶν θεμάτων ἐγκεχωρισμένος ἐν τοῖς
and of-the there frontier themes entrusted-with in the
αὐτοῖς χρόνοις, ὁσάκις ἂν Ἀλὴμ ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Χαμβδᾶ κατὰ
same times as-often-as — Alem the son — of-Chambdas against
Ῥωμανίας τὴν ἐξέλευσιν ἐποιήσατο, ἢ ἐν τῇ ἰδίᾳ χώρᾳ
Romania the coming-out made or in the own land
χρείας ἀναγκαίας αὐτὸν κατεπειγούσης μετέβη, κατὰ τῆς
need necessary him pressing passed against the
χώρας τοῦ Χάλεπε καὶ τῆς Ἀντιοχείας ἐπιτιθέμενος, μεγάλην
land — of-Aleppo and — of-Antioch attacking great
ἐν αὐτοῖς βλάβην εἰργάζετο· καὶ τοὺς συγγενεῖς αὐτοῦ,
in them harm worked and the relatives his
καὶ ἀρχηγοὺς τῶν φωσσάτων, μεγάλους καὶ περιφανεῖς,
and leaders of-the armies great and illustrious
δορυαλώτους εἶλε, καὶ τοὺς τούτων μαχίμους ἄνδρας, καὶ
spear-captives took and the their fighting men and
πλεῖστα φρούρια. τὸ αὐτὸ δὲ καὶ ἐν τῇ τῶν Κιλίκων χώρᾳ
very-many forts the same and also in the of-the Cilicians land
διεπράττετο, ὡς τῇ Λυκανδῷ συνορούσῃ. καὶ αὐτοὺς τοίνυν,
he-accomplished as — to-Lykandos bordering and them therefore
ὦ στρατηγέ, ὅτε μετ᾽ ἐπιτηδεύσεως καὶ ἐνέδρας τραυματίζειν
O general when with practice and ambush to-wound
τοὺς πολεμίους ἀπορήσεις, διὰ τὸ ἑαυτοὺς ἐπιμελῶς
the enemies you-will-be-at-a-loss because-of the themselves carefully
ἀσφαλίζεσθαι καὶ παραφυλάττειν· οὔτ᾽ αὖ πάλιν ἀξιόλογον
to-secure and to-guard nor in-turn again considerable

ἔχεις δύναμιν, πρὸς τὸ φανερῶς αὐτοῖς ἀντιμάχεσθαι· τοῦτο
you-have force for the openly them to-fight-against this
δεῖ σε διαπράττειν· καὶ εἴτε αὐτὸν σὲ κατὰ τῆς χώρας τῶν
must you to-accomplish and either yourself you against the land of-the
πολεμίων ἐπείγεσθαι, καταλιμπάνοντα ἄνδρα τῶν ἄλλων
enemies to-press leaving a-man of-the other
στρατηγῶν ἀξιολογώτερον, μετὰ καὶ στρατεύματος τοῦ
generals more-notable with also army the
πρὸς παραδρομὴν καὶ πρόνοιαν τῶν θεμάτων ἐξικανοῦντος·
for skirmishing and care of-the themes sufficient
εἴτε, σοῦ τὴν παραδρομὴν ποιοῦντος, τὸν κρείττονα τῶν
or you the skirmishing making the better of-the
στρατηγῶν, καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ πολυπειρίᾳ ὀνομαστὸν
generals and for bravery and much-experience famous
καὶ ἐπαινούμενον, μετὰ ἱππικῆς καὶ πεζικῆς ἀξιολόγου
and praised with cavalry and infantry considerable
δυνάμεως κατὰ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων ἀποστέλλειν χώρας,
force against the of-the enemies to-send land
καὶ χρονίζειν ἐν αὐτῇ, καὶ πυρπολεῖν, καὶ ἀφανίζειν, καὶ
and to-linger in it and to-burn and to-destroy and
κάστρα πολιορκεῖν· ἵνα τοῦτο ἀκούοντες οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ
forts to-besiege so-that this hearing the enemies even
μὴ βουλομένου τοῦ ἀρχηγοῦ αὐτῶν, ἀναγκάσωσιν αὐτὸν
not wishing the leader their they-may-compel him
ἐπαναζεῦξαι πρὸς τὴν τῆς ἰδίας χώρας ἐκδίκησιν.
to-march-back for the of-the own land avenging
ὁπόταν δὲ τὰς χώρας ἡμῶν καλῶς ἐκσπηλεύσῃς, καὶ
whenever and the lands our well you-clear and
φυγαδεύσῃς καὶ τὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς οἰκοῦντα λαὸν καὶ τὰ τούτων
you-put-to-flight both the in them dwelling people and the their
θρέμματα ἐν ὄρεσιν ὑψηλοῖς καὶ δυσβάτοις, καὶ βουληθῶσιν
flocks into mountains high and impassable and wish

οἱ πολέμιοι ψηλαφῆσαι καὶ ἀνερευνήσασθαι τὰ τοιαῦτα
the enemies to-grope-over and to-search the such
ὄρη, κἀκεῖθεν τούτους ἀνδραποδίσασθαι, καὶ πανστρατὶ
mountains and-from-there them to-enslave and with-all-the-army
πλησιάσαι τοῖς τοιούτοις τόποις θελήσωσι, καὶ τὰς σκηνὰς
to-draw-near to-the such places they-wish and the tents
ἐκεῖσε πήξασθαι· ὀφείλεις καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν τοῖς μέρεσιν ἐκείνοις
there to-pitch you-ought also yourself in the parts those
πλησίον γενέσθαι, εἰς ἐκδίκησιν τῶν οἰκείων. καὶ εἴγε
near to-be for avenging of-the own(-men) and if-indeed
τὸν χῶρον θεάσῃ, ἐν ᾧ οἱ πολέμιοι αὐλίζονται, ὄρος
the space you-see in which the enemies encamp mountain
ἔχοντα ἢ τόπον ὑψηλὸν καὶ ἐπιτήδειον πρὸς τὸ νυκτὸς
having or place high and suitable for the by-night
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπιθέσθαι, τοῦτο μελετήσεις. καὶ διασκοπήσας
against them to-attack this you-will-plan and having-examined
καλῶς τὴν τοῦ τόπου θέσιν, καὶ βοήθειαν ἐκεῖθεν ἔχων,
well the of-the place position and help from-there having
τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν παρασκευάσῃς πόλεμον νυκτός, μετὰ
the against them you-may-prepare war by-night with
πεζικῆς δυνάμεως καὶ ἱππέων, καθὼς περὶ νυκτοπολέμου
infantry force and horsemen as about night-battle
κατωτέρω εἴρηται. καὶ μεγάλως αὐτοὺς τραυματίσεις
below has-been-said and greatly them you-will-wound
καὶ ἐκθροήσεις, καὶ παρασκευάσεις ἐκεῖθεν ὑποχωρῆσαι.
and you-will-alarm and you-will-cause from-there to-withdraw
καρτερούντων δὲ ἔτι ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ χώρῳ, καλῶς ἑαυτοὺς
holding-out and still in that the space well themselves
ἀσφαλιζόμενοι καὶ παραφυλάττοντες, καὶ βουλομένων
securing and guarding and wishing
ἀνερευνῆσαι τὰ ὄρη, ἐν οἷς τὰ καταφύγια τῶν χωριτῶν
to-search the mountains in which the refuges of-the villagers

τυγχάνει, δέον φυλαχθῆναι καὶ προκατασχεθῆναι παρὰ
are it-is-needful to-be-guarded and to-be-occupied-first by
σοῦ τὰς εἰσόδους διά τε ἀκοντιστῶν καὶ ψιλῶν. καὶ
you the entrances through both javelin-men and light(-troops) and
τούτων καλῶς φυλαττομένων, ἐν οἷς ἡ καταφυγὴ τῶν
these well being-guarded in which the refuge of-the
γεωργῶν σὺν τῶν φαμιλιῶν καὶ τῶν τέκνων αὐτῶν
farmers with the households and the children their
γέγονεν, εἰ βουληθῶσι διὰ τῶν στενωπῶν καὶ δυσβάτων
has-been if they-wish through the narrow-lanes and impassable
ἐκείνων ὁδῶν εἰσελθεῖν, ἡττηθήσονται· καὶ μάλιστα πεζικῆς
those roads to-go-in they-will-be-defeated and especially infantry
[δυνάμεως αὐτοῖς ἐπιθεμένης. εἰ δ' αὐτοὶ μετὰ πεζικῆς]
force them having-attacked if but they with infantry
βουληθῶσιν ἐπελθεῖν, καὶ τὰ ὄρη διερευνήσασθαι, ἐν
wish to-advance and the mountains to-search into
ἐνδοτέροις καὶ ὀχυρωτέροις καὶ ἀνεπιβουλεύτοις τόποις
more-inward and stronger and safe-from-plots places
εἰσαγαγεῖν τοὺς τῶν χωρίων οἰκήτορας ἐπείχθητι· σοῦ
to-lead-in the of-the villages inhabitants hasten you
μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ λαοῦ τὰς εἰσαγούσας κατ' αὐτῶν ὁδοὺς
with all the troops the leading against them roads
δηλαδὴ καταλαμβάνοντός τε καὶ ἀσφαλῶς διαφυλάττοντος.
evidently occupying both and safely guarding

21 Περὶ πολιορκίας κάστρου.
about siege of-a-fort

Πρὸς πολιορκίαν δὲ κάστρου κατανοῶν εὐτρεπιζομένους
for siege and of-a-fort perceiving making-ready
τοὺς πολεμίους, δέον καὶ σέ, ὦ στρατηγέ, ὅσα
the enemies it-is-needful also you O general as-many-as
πολιορκεῖσθαι δυνατὸν (εἰσὶ γὰρ πολλὰ κάστρα μὴ
to-be-besieged possible there-are for many forts not

δεδιότα πολιορκίαν), ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις πρὸ τῆς τῶν ἐχθρῶν
fearing siege in the such before the of-the enemies
ἐξελεύσεως παρασκευάσαι τὸν ἐν αὐτοῖς καταφεύγοντα
coming-out to-prepare the into them fleeing
λαὸν μηνῶν τεσσάρων τροφὰς καθένα ἕκαστον, εἰ
people of-months four provisions each one if
δυνατὸν καὶ πλειόνων, καθ' ὅσον συνορᾷς ἔσεσθαι τὴν
possible also of-more as far you-foresee to-be the
πολιορκίαν, ἀποτίθεσθαι. καὶ τῶν ἐν ταῖς κιστέρναις
siege to-store-up and of-the in the cisterns
ὑδάτων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πάντων, ὅσα
waters to-take-care and of-the others all as-many-as
πολιορκουμένους ἐκδικεῖν καὶ βοηθεῖν δύνανται. ταῦτα γάρ,
besieged(-men) to-defend and to-help are-able these-things for
διὰ τὸ πλῆθος, τῇ παρούσῃ γραφῇ ἐκθεῖναι κατὰ μέρος
because-of the multitude in-the present writing to-set-out in detail
ἐάσομεν. περὶ γὰρ τοιούτων καὶ ἑτέρων πολιορκητικῶν
we-shall-leave about for such and other siege
μηχανημάτων, καὶ τοῦ, πῶς χρὴ τοὺς ἔνδον τοῖς ἔξωθεν
engines and of-the how must the(-men) within the outside
ἀντιμάχεσθαι, ἀκριβῶς πρὸ ἡμῶν καὶ λελογισμένως οἱ
to-fight-against exactly before us and reasonedly the(-men)
τὰ τακτικὰ καὶ στρατηγικὰ ἀναγραψάμενοι ἐξέθεντο.
the tactics and generalship having-written-up set-out
ἡμεῖς δὲ περὶ παραδρομῆς καὶ κατασχέσεως κλεισουρῶν
we and about skirmishing and occupation of-kleisouras
προσταχθέντες εἰπεῖν, τὰ ταύτῃ συντελοῦντα καὶ
having-been-ordered to-tell the(-things) to-it contributing and
ἐφαρμόζοντα κατὰ τὸ ἐνὸν ἐκθεῖναι κατεπειγόμεθα.
fitting as the possible to-set-out we-press-on
τῶν πολεμίων τοίνυν τὸ κάστρον περικαθισάντων, καὶ
of-the enemies therefore the fort having-sat-around and

πρὸς πολιορκίαν χωρούντων, εἰ μέν, ὡς ἔθος ἐστὶ
to siege advancing if indeed as custom is
τοῖς βουλομένοις στενοχωρεῖν τοὺς πολιορκουμένους,
for-the(-men) wishing to-press-hard the besieged
ἀπληκεύσουσι δηλονότι τοῦ κάστρου κυκλόθεν, πρὸς τὸ
they-will-encamp evidently of-the fort all-around for the
μὴ δύνασθαί τινας τῶν ἡμετέρων μήτε εἰσέρχεσθαι μήτε
not to-be-able any of-the ours neither to-go-in nor
ἐξέρχεσθαι· ἐπεὶ ἐν ὀχυροῖς τόποις καὶ δυσβάτοις σχεδὸν
to-go-out since in strong places and impassable almost
τὰ πλεῖστα ἡμῶν ἵδρυνται κάστρα· εὐχερῶς τούτοις οὕτως
the most our are-set forts easily them thus
ἀπληκεύσουσι, χάρακος καὶ ἀσφαλείας ἄνευ, ἰσχύσεις, ὦ
encamping of-palisade and safety without you-will-be-able O
στρατηγέ, καθ' ἓν μέρος νυκτὸς μετὰ πεζικοῦ στρατεύματος
general at one part by-night with infantry army
ἐπιθέσθαι· καὶ μετὰ συνθήματος ὁμοῦ καὶ τοὺς ἔνδον
to-attack and with signal together also the(-men) within
ἐξελθεῖν παρασκευάσεις ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ ὥρᾳ, καὶ συνάψαι
to-come-out you-will-cause in the-very the hour and to-join
καὶ αὐτούς, εἰ δυνατόν, πόλεμον. καὶ τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ τόπου
also themselves if possible war and the from the place
ἔχων βοήθειαν τούτους καταγωνίσῃ. ἔργον δὲ τοῦτο
having help them you-will-overcome work and this
προνοίας Θεοῦ. εἰ δὲ διὰ τὴν τοῦ χώρου δυσχέρειαν
of-providence of-God if but because-of the of-the space difficulty
καὶ σκληρότητα οὐ θαῤῥήσουσιν οὕτως κυκλόθεν καὶ
and roughness not they-will-dare thus all-around and
διεσπαρμένως ἀπληκεῦσαι, ἀλλ' ἐκ δύο μερῶν ἢ ἐξ ἑνὸς
dispersedly to-encamp but from two sides or from one
ἅπας ὁ λαὸς αὐτῶν στρατοπεδεύσει, δέον πρότερον
all the troops their will-camp it-is-needful first

πᾶσαν τροφὴν ἀνθρώπων τε καὶ ἀλόγων πυρπολῆσαι
all food of-men both and of-beasts to-burn
καὶ τελείως ἐξαφανίσαι, καὶ μηδὲν εἰς χρείαν ἀλόγων ἢ
and completely to-destroy and nothing for use of-beasts or
ἀνθρώπων πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου ἢ πόῤῥω καταλιπεῖν ἐν
of-men near the fort or far to-leave in
τοῖς χωρίοις. εἰ δὲ καὶ ξύλον ἐπιλείπει, ἐπὶ τοῦ τόπου ὄρους
the villages if and also wood is-lacking at the place mountain
μὴ ὄντος, καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ στέγη τῶν οἰκημάτων πυρπολῆσαι.
not being even the-very the roofs of-the dwellings to-burn
εἰ γὰρ καὶ ξύλων ἐν χρείᾳ γένωνται οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ
if for also of-wood in need become the enemies and
τροφῶν ἐνδεεῖς ὦσιν, ἀνάγκη τὸν λαὸν αὐτῶν ἐξέρχεσθαι
of-provisions lacking be necessity the troops their to-go-out
μακρότερον πρὸς συλλογὴν τῶν χρειῶν. σοῦ δὲ ἐμπείρως
farther for collection of-the needs you and skillfully
καὶ στρατηγικῶς διατιθεμένου, δυνήσῃ τούτους μετὰ
and generalship-wise disposing you-will-be-able them with
ἐγκρυμμάτων τραυματίζειν καὶ κατατροποῦσθαι· ὡς ἐκ
concealments to-wound and to-rout so-that from
τούτου, τῇ τῶν τροφῶν ἐνδείᾳ ἀναγκαζόμενοι, τὴν
this by-the of-the provisions lack being-forced the
πολιορκίαν λύσουσιν. εἰ δὲ ὁρᾷς αὐτοὺς ἐπικαρτεροῦντας,
siege they-will-break-up if and you-see them persisting
καὶ τῇ πολιορκίᾳ ἐπιμένοντας, καὶ τοὺς ἔνδον
and in-the siege remaining and the(-men) within
στενοχωρουμένους, δέον καὶ πρὸς νυκτοπολέμους
being-hard-pressed it-is-needful also to night-battles
δημοσίως χωρῆσαι, πεζικὸν συναγηοχὼς στράτευμα ἅμα
publicly to-proceed infantry having-gathered army together-with
ἱππεῦσιν. ὃ ἁρμοζόντως κατὰ τὴν τοῦ τόπου θέσιν
horsemen which fittingly according-to the of-the place position

τούτοις συνταξάμενος, τὸν ἐν νυκτὶ πόλεμον παρασκευάσεις
with-these having-arranged the in night war you-will-cause
γενέσθαι, καθὼς παρακατιὼν περὶ νυκτοπολέμου δηλώσω.
to-happen as going-on-below about night-battle I-shall-show
καὶ τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ καταγωνίσῃ αὐτούς, καὶ ἀναγκάσεις
and in-this the way you-will-overcome them and you-will-compel
τὴν τοῦ κάστρου πολιορκίαν λιπεῖν. εἰ δέ τις αἰτία τὸν τῆς
the of-the fort siege to-leave if but some cause the of-the
νυκτὸς πόλεμον διακωλύσῃ, καὶ οἱ ἔνδον πολιορκούμενοι
night war prevent and the(-men) within besieged
ἐνδεεῖς λαοῦ τοῦ βοηθοῦντός εἰσι, τροφῶν δὲ σπάνιν
lacking troops the(-ones) helping are of-provisions and scarcity
οὐκ ἔχουσι, δυνήσῃ καὶ ἑτέρων ἀνδρῶν προσθήκην
not they-have you-will-be-able also of-other men addition
ἐπαγαγεῖν, ὥσπερ καὶ τροφῆς, εἴγε ἐνδεεῖς εἶεν, τρόπῳ
to-bring-in as also of-food if-indeed lacking they-be in-a-manner
τοιῷδε. συναγαγὼν ἅπαν τὸ ὑπὸ σὲ στράτευμα καὶ διχῇ
such-as-this having-gathered all the under you army and in-two
αὐτοὺς διελών, οἱ μὲν ἡμίσεις τούτων ἀναλαβέτωσαν
them having-divided the(-ones) indeed half of-them let-them-take-up
καθεῖς ἀνὰ σίτου μοδίους τέσσαρας εἰς οὓς ἐποχοῦνται
each by of-grain modii four on which they-ride
ἵππους· παρέχων αὐτοῖς καὶ εὐζώνους ἑτέρους ἱππεῖς, μηδὲν
horses providing them also light-armed other horsemen nothing
ἐπιφερομένους πλὴν τὰ ὅπλα αὑτῶν, καὶ πρὸς μόνην αὐτῶν
carrying except the arms their and for only their
φυλακὴν εἶναι. σὺ δὲ μετὰ τοῦ λοιποῦ μαχίμου στρατεύματος
guard to-be you and with the remaining fighting army
ἐν ἑτέρῳ μέρει κατὰ τὴν ὥραν, ἣν οἱ τὸν σῖτον
in another part at the hour in-which the(-men) the grain
ἐπιφερόμενοι πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου μέλλουσι γενέσθαι,
carrying near the fort are-about to-be

περὶ μέσην νύκτα ἀθρόως μετὰ κραυγῆς καὶ σαλπίγγων
about middle night in-a-mass with shouting and trumpets
φάνηθι, ὡς ἤδη πολεμίσων αὐτούς. τῶν δὲ πρὸς τὸν
appear as already going-to-fight them of-the and for the
σὸν πόλεμον παρασκευαζομένων, καὶ τὴν ὁρμὴν πρὸς σὲ
your war preparing and the rush toward you
ποιουμένων, ἄδειαν εὑρόντες οἱ τὸν σῖτον ἐπιφερόμενοι,
making freedom having-found the(-men) the grain carrying
ἀποκομίσουσί τε αὐτὸν ἐν τῷ κάστρῳ, καὶ ἀσινεῖς πάλιν
will-carry-in both it into the fort and unharmed again
νοστήσουσι. καὶ διὰ τῆς τοιαύτης μηχανῆς καὶ ἀνδρῶν
will-return and through the such device both of-men
ἐπιβολὴν καὶ τροφῆς παράσχῃς αὐτοῖς, εἴγε ἀμφοτέρων
addition and of-food you-may-provide them if-indeed of-both
ἐν χρείᾳ εἰσί, καὶ σωτηρίας οἱ πολιορκούμενοι τύχωσιν.
in need they-are and safety the besieged may-obtain

If the enemy divides, sending half or a third of its men a day's ride away for supplies, the general hides near them by night, waits until the eleventh hour, follows the unit back to the villages, and attacks at sunset, so that night prevents a rally. When the enemy turns for home he sends his infantry ahead to the kleisourai, wherever the road, from Seleukeia and the Taurus to Melitene and beyond the Euphrates, and goes ahead with his horse, leaving another general to harry their rear. He exhorts his men, Romans who will stand firm against men of flesh and not stone; and if the enemy tries to slip through by night, he falls on their rearguard with foot and horse and pursues.

22 Περὶ διαχωρισμοῦ λαοῦ τῶν ἡμίσει πολεμίων, ἢ καὶ τοῦ
about separation of-troops of-the half enemies or also of-the
τρίτου μέρους.
third part
Εἰ δὲ μὴ πρὸς πολιορκίαν κάστρου εὐτρεπίζοντο οἱ
if but not for siege of-a-fort were-making-ready the
πολέμιοι, ἀλλὰ μετὰ πολλῆς καὶ σφοδρᾶς δυνάμεως τὰς
enemies but with much and violent force the
ἡμετέρας χώρας περινοστοῦσι, χρὴ τὸν στρατηγοῦντα
our lands roam must the(-one) generaling
τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν δυνάμεων ἐπιμελῶς τοὺς γεωργοὺς
of-the Roman forces carefully the farmers
ἤτοι τοὺς τῶν χωρίων πολίτας καὶ τὰ αὐτῶν ἅπαντα
namely the of-the villages citizens and the their all
παρακελεύσασθαί τε καὶ παρασκευάσασθαι, ἐν κάστροις καὶ
to-command both and to-arrange in forts and
ὀχυροῖς τόποις διασώσασθαι, τοὺς δὲ τῶν πολεμίων πρὸς
strong places to-save the(-men) and of-the enemies for
λείαν ἐξερχομένους ὡς νουνεχεῖς καὶ ἀγρύπνους τραυματίζειν·
plunder coming-out as sensible and sleepless to-wound

ἵνα εἶεν δεδοικότες πόῤῥω τοῦ στρατεύματος αὐτῶν
so-that they-be fearing far from-the army their
ἐξελαύνειν, καὶ τροφὰς ἐπικομίζεσθαι· κἀντεῦθεν στενοχωρίᾳ
to-ride-out and provisions to-bring and-thence by-straits
τροφῶν συσχεθήσονται. πλήν, ὡς ἔφημεν, πλῆθος λαοῦ
of-provisions they-will-be-held-fast but as we-said multitude of-troops
ἔχοντες ἑτέραν ἴσως μέθοδον μετελεύσονται. διαχωρίζοντες
having another perhaps method they-will-pursue separating
ἐνίοτε τοὺς ἡμίσεις τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτῶν, ἢ καὶ τὸ τριτημόριον,
sometimes the half of-the troops their or also the third-part
ἀποστελοῦσι πόῤῥω ἡμέρας ὁδοῦ διάστημα, ἢ καὶ ἐπέκεινα
they-will-send far of-a-day of-road distance or also beyond
ἀπέχον τοῦ φωσσάτου αὐτῶν ἐν χωρίοις τισίν, ἐν
being-distant from-the army their in villages some in
οἷς ἐλπίζουσι πλείονας δαπάνας ἐφευρεῖν. καὶ ἀνάγκη
which they-hope more supplies to-find and necessity
τούτους ἐπὶ δυσὶν ἡμέραις, ἢ καὶ τρισίν, ἔξω τοῦ
them for two days or also three outside the
φωσσάτου αὐτῶν διάγειν. τοῦτο γοῦν πυθόμενος καὶ
army their to-spend this at-any-rate having-learned and
νοήσας, ὦ στρατηγέ, δέον κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐνεδρεῦσαι
having-perceived O general it-is-needful against them to-ambush
μετὰ λελογισμένης διασκέψεως, καὶ πλησίον αὐτῶν ἐν
with reasoned consideration and near them in
νυκτὶ γενέσθαι, καὶ τόπον ἐπιτήδειον ἐφευρίσκοντα τὸ ἴδιον
night to-be and place suitable finding the own
στράτευμα ἀποκρύψαι. ἐπεὶ οὖν οὐκ εἰς δύο καὶ τρία χωρία,
army to-hide since then not into two and three villages
ἀλλὰ καὶ εἰς πλείονα ἐρευνήσοντες τροφὰς διασκορπίζονται,
but also into more going-to-search provisions they-scatter
εἰκὸς δέ ἐστι καὶ τὸ λεγόμενον φοῦλκον εἰς φυλακὴν αὐτῶν
likely and it-is also the called unit for guard their

ἵστασθαι· δεῖ τὸ ὑπὸ σὲ στράτευμα διχῇ διελεῖν, ἀσφάλειαν
to-stand must the under you army in-two to-divide safety
ποιούμενος, μὴ φωραθῆναι ἢ διαγνωσθῆναί σε παρὰ τῶν
making not to-be-detected or to-be-recognized you by the
ἀνερευνώντων πολεμίων τοὺς λόχους, ἵνα μὴ ὑπ' αὐτῶν
searching enemies the ambushes so-that not by them
μᾶλλον ἐνεδρευθῇς· καρτερῆσαι δὲ ἐν τῷ ἐγκρύμματι ἄχρι
rather you-be-ambushed to-hold-out and in the concealment until
ἑνδεκάτης ὥρας τῆς ἡμέρας, ἤδη τοῦ ἡλίου πρὸς δύσιν
eleventh hour of-the day already the sun toward west
ὄντος. καὶ εἰ μὲν ὑποστρέψειεν, ὡς ἔθος ἐστί, τὸ φοῦλκον
being and if indeed it-should-return as custom is the unit
ἐν οἷς χωρίοις αὐλίζονται οἱ ἑταῖροι αὐτῶν, ἐν τοῖς
in which villages encamp the companions their in the
μήκοθεν χωρίοις ἀποστελεῖς οὓς ἔμπροσθεν διεχώρισας,
far-off villages you-will-send whom before you-separated
ὄπισθεν αὐτῶν ἐπακολουθῶν, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ σύνεγγυς αὐτοῖς
behind them following and from the near them
παρεπόμενος. καὶ ὡς ἂν ἡ τοῦ τόπου θέσις δίδωσι, λάθρα
accompanying and as — the of-the place position gives secretly
καὶ ἄνευ κραυγῆς ὀξέως πορευόμενος ἀπόκρυψον ἑαυτόν,
and without shouting swiftly going hide yourself
ἕως οὗ ἔγγιστα γένῃ τῶν χωρίων. ὅτε δὲ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν
until — nearest you-be of-the villages when and not possible it-is
ἀποκρύπτεσθαι ὑπό του ῥύακος τὸν ὑπὸ σὲ λαόν, ἀλλ'
to-be-hidden by some gully the under you troops but
ἀνάγκη εἰς φανερὸν γενέσθαι· τότε σὺν ἱππασίᾳ νεανικῇ
necessity into open to-come then with riding youthful
κατὰ τῶν εἰς τὰ χωρία ὄντων πολεμίων ἡ ὁρμὴ παρὰ
against the in the villages being enemies the rush by
τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ἀποσταλέντων γενέσθω. καὶ ἀδοκήτως
the in-front having-been-sent let-it-be and unexpectedly

τούτοις ἐπιθέμενοι καὶ ἀναιρήσουσι πολλούς, τινὰς δὲ καὶ
them having-attacked also they-will-kill many some and also
ζῶντας ἀνδραπόδων λόγῳ κατάσχωσιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τὸ
alive of-captives in-the-status may-hold if and also the
φοῦλκον τὸ εἰς φυλακὴν αὐτῶν ἔξωθεν τῶν χωρίων ἔτι
unit the for guard their outside the villages still
ἵσταται, κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ πρῶτον τὴν ὁρμὴν ποιείτωσαν περὶ
stands against it first the rush let-them-make about
δυσμὰς ἡλίου, ὡς ἔφην, οἱ ἔμπροσθεν ἀποσταλέντες.
setting of-the-sun as I-said the(-men) in-front having-been-sent
καὶ σοῦ ὄπισθεν παρεπομένου μετὰ τοὺς προηγουμένους
and you behind accompanying after the(-men) going-before
σου, πρὸς πόλεμον συμβαλεῖν συντεταγμένος, καὶ αὐτὸς
you for war to-join arrayed also yourself
ὁρμήσεις κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, καὶ καταγωνίσῃ τούτους τῇ τοῦ
you-will-rush against them and you-will-overcome them by-the —
Χριστοῦ χάριτι. εἰ δέ γε οἱ τῶν πολεμίων ἀρχηγοί,
of-Christ grace if but at-least the of-the enemies leaders
οἱ ἐκεῖσε ὄντες, πολλὴν ἔχοντες δύναμιν, συστῆναι
the(-ones) there being much having force to-rally
δυνηθῶσι, καὶ τὴν ἧτταν ἀνακαλέσασθαι ἀγωνίσωνται,
be-able and the defeat to-recall strive
ὅπερ ἀδύνατόν ἐστι, τῆς νυκτὸς ἤδη ἐπιλαμβανομένης
which impossible is of-the night already taking-hold
οὐδὲν συμβήσεταί σοι τῶν ἐναντίων. οὕτως τοίνυν
nothing will-happen to-you of-the adverse(-things) thus therefore
ποιοῦντός σου, καὶ θαυμάσονται καὶ πτοηθήσονταί σου
doing you both they-will-marvel and will-be-terrified-of you
οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ οὐκ ἀδεῶς θαῤῥήσουσιν ἐξέρχεσθαι τοῦ
the enemies and not fearlessly will-dare to-come-out from-the

φωσσάτου αὐτῶν· κἀντεῦθεν ἀνάγκη τούτους τροφῶν
army their and-thence necessity them of-provisions
ὑστερημένους πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν παλινοστῆσαι χώραν.
being-short toward the own to-return land

23 Περὶ τῆς ὑποστροφῆς τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ τῆς κατασχέσεως
about the return of-the enemies and of-the occupation
κλεισούρας.
of-the-kleisoura

Ὑποστρεφόντων δὲ τῶν πολεμίων καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν
returning and of-the enemies and the own
ἐπειγομένων καταλήψεσθαι, δέον τὰς πεζικὰς δυνάμεις
pressing to-reach it-is-needful the infantry forces
πρὸς τὰς κλεισούρας προαποστεῖλαι, καὶ τὰς ὁδούς, δι᾽
to the kleisouras to-send-ahead and the roads through
ἃς μέλλουσι διελθεῖν, κατασχεῖν. δι᾽ οἵας γὰρ ὁδοῦ
which they-are-about to-pass to-occupy through what for road
διελθεῖν βουληθῶσιν, ἀπό τε τῶν ἐν Σελευκείᾳ κλεισουρῶν
to-pass they-wish from both the in Seleukeia kleisouras
καὶ τοῦ τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν θέματος, καθὰ τὰ Ταυρικὰ ὄρη
and of-the of-the Anatolikoi theme as the Taurus mountains
τήν τε Κιλικίαν διορίζουσι, Καππαδοκίαν τε καὶ Λυκανδόν·
— both Cilicia divide Cappadocia both and Lykandos
πρὸς τούτοις δὲ καὶ τὰ παρακείμενα Γερμανίκειάν
in-addition-to these and also the(-places) lying-beside Germanikeia
τε καὶ Ἀδατᾶν, καὶ τὸ Καησοῦν καὶ τοῦ Δαουθᾶ, Μελιτήνην
both and Adata and — Kesoun and — of-Daoutha Melitene
τε, καὶ τὰ Καλούδια· καὶ τὰ πέραθεν τοῦ Εὐφράτου
both and — Kaloudia and the(-places) beyond the Euphrates
ποταμοῦ διορίζοντα τήν τε τοῦ Χανζῆτι λεγομένην χώραν
river dividing the both — of-Chanzit called land
καὶ τὴν πολεμίαν ἄχρι Ῥωμανουπόλεως· ἐν ὅλοις τοῖς
and the enemy(-land) as-far-as Romanoupolis in whole the

τοιούτοις θέμασι, δι᾽ οἵας ἂν ὁδοῦ ὑποστρέφοντες διελθεῖν
such themes through what — road returning to-pass
πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν βουληθῶσιν, ἀδιστάκτως τῇ τοῦ Θεοῦ
toward the own they-wish unhesitatingly by-the — of-God
βοηθείᾳ τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπείχθητι διαθέσθαι πόλεμον, καὶ
help the against them hasten to-arrange war and
τὴν νικῶσαν εὑρήσεις τῇ αὐτοῦ χάριτι. ἡνίκα δὲ πρὸ
the victory you-will-find by-the his grace when and before
τεσσάρων σταθμῶν ἤτοι ἀπλήκτων ἐπιγνῷς τὴν ὁδόν,
four stages namely encampments you-learn the road
δι᾽ ἧς ὥρμησαν οἱ πολέμιοι, σοὶ μὲν τῷ τοῦ παντὸς
through which set-out the enemies for-you indeed the of-the whole
λαοῦ ἡγεμόνι τάχει πολλῷ ἔμπροσθεν αὐτῶν γενέσθαι
troops leader with-speed much in-front-of them to-be
προσήκει, καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰς πεζικὰς δυνάμεις, τὰς ἐν
it-befits and to-reach the infantry forces the(-ones) in
τῇ κλεισούρᾳ ἀποσταλείσας· καταλιπεῖν δὲ τὸν κρείττονα
the kleisoura having-been-sent to-leave and the better
τῶν λοιπῶν στρατηγῶν, πρὸς τὸ παρατρέχειν αὐτοῖς,
of-the other generals for the to-run-alongside them
διὰ τὰ ὄπισθεν κοῦρσα καὶ τὰς ἐκδρομὰς αὐτῶν.
because-of the rear raiding-forces and the sallies their
ἔχειν δὲ μεθ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἱππικὸν στράτευμα,
to-have and with himself also the remaining cavalry army
πειθόμενον τῷ λόγῳ αὐτοῦ, καὶ διορίσασθαι αὐτό, ὡς
obeying the word his and to-appoint it that
ἡνίκα οἱ πολέμιοι ὡς ἀπὸ δύο ἀπλήκτων τῇ κλεισούρᾳ
when the enemies as from two encampments to-the kleisoura
πλησιάσωσι, καὶ αὐτὸν μετὰ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος
draw-near also him with all the army
διελθεῖν, καὶ καταλαβεῖν, ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ ὁ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
to-pass-through and to-reach in which place the against them

ἐξαρτύεται πόλεμος. σοῦ δὲ καταλαμβάνοντος ἐν τῇ
is-being-equipped war you and reaching in the
κλεισούρᾳ καὶ τὰς πεζικὰς τάξεις ἑνουμένου, δέον
kleisoura and the infantry ranks being-united it-is-needful
σπουδάσαι, καὶ ἕτερον μάλιστα πεζικὸν λαὸν ἐπισυνάξαι,
to-hasten and other especially infantry troops to-gather
ὅσον ἂν δυνηθῇς· παραινέσαι τε αὐτοῖς παῤῥησίᾳ,
as-much-as — you-be-able to-exhort and them with-frankness
πρὸς ἀνδρείαν αὐτοὺς ἐπαλείφων καὶ εὐτολμίαν, ἐποτρῦναι
to bravery them anointing and daring to-urge-on
δὲ καὶ τὸ πρόθυμον αὐτῶν, οἷα στρατηγὸς ἄριστος,
and also the eagerness their as general best
μελισταγεῖ παραινέσει, "Ἄνδρες," λέγων, "Ῥωμαῖοι,
with-honey-dripping exhortation men saying Romans
στῶμεν ἀκλινῶς καὶ ἑδραίως· στῶμεν ἀνδρικῶς καὶ
let-us-stand unbendingly and firmly let-us-stand manfully and
γενναίως. δείξωμεν ἐχθροῖς βραχίονα καὶ ἰσχύν· δείξωμεν,
nobly let-us-show to-enemies arm and strength let-us-show
ὡς πρὸς κρείσσονας τὴν ὁρμὴν ἔχουσιν, ὡς πρὸς τοὺς
that against stronger(-men) the rush they-have that against the(-men)
βάλλειν μᾶλλον ἢ βάλλεσθαι μέλλοντας παρατάττονται.
to-strike rather than to-be-struck about-to they-are-arrayed
μὴ γὰρ λίθος φύσις αὐτοῖς, ἢ χαλκός, ὡς μὴ τραύματα
not for stone nature to-them or bronze so-that not wounds
δέχεσθαι· μήτε ἐκ σιδήρου τὸ σῶμα, ὡς μὴ τῷ κόπῳ
to-receive nor from iron the body so-that not by-the toil
ἐκλύεσθαι καὶ ἀποναρκᾷν." προσέτι τούτοις ὑποδεικνύων
to-be-exhausted and to-grow-numb besides to-these showing
καὶ τὴν τοῦ τόπου δυσχέρειαν, ἐν ᾧ μέλλουσι πρὸς μάχην
also the of-the place difficulty in which they-are-about for battle
παρασκευασθῆναι, καὶ ὅσην αὐτοῖς παρέχει βοήθειαν.
to-be-prepared and how-much to-them it-affords help

μετὰ δὲ τὸ καλῶς αὐτοὺς παραθῆξαι καὶ διεγεῖραι, καὶ
after and the well them to-have-whetted and to-have-roused and
προθυμοτέρους καὶ εὐτολμωτέρους ἐργάσασθαι, καταστήσεις
more-eager and more-daring to-have-made you-will-station
αὐτοὺς ἐν οἷς τόποις ὀφείλουσι τοῖς ἐχθροῖς μάχεσθαι. καὶ
them in which places they-ought the enemies to-fight and
πρῶτον μὲν τὰ ὑψηλὰ τῶν ὀρέων καταλαβεῖν δέον, καὶ
first indeed the heights of-the mountains to-occupy it-is-needful and
πάσας τὰς ὁδοὺς κρατῆσαι καὶ ἀσφαλίσασθαι. ἐν οἷς δὲ
all the roads to-hold and to-secure in which and
καὶ ἱππεῖς ἐγχωρεῖ σὺν τοῖς πεζοῖς μάχεσθαι, καταστήσεις
also horsemen it-is-possible with the foot-soldiers to-fight you-will-station
καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐν ἐπιτηδείοις τόποις. ἐν πάσαις δέ σου
also them in suitable places in all and your
ταῖς παρατάξεσιν ἀρχηγοὺς τῶν χρησίμων ἐπιστῆσαί σε
the battle-lines leaders of-the useful to-set-over you
δεῖ, καὶ τἄλλα πάντα φυλάξαι καὶ πρᾶξαι, ὅσα ἐν
must and the-other all to-keep and to-do as-many-as in
ἀρχῇ τοῦ λόγου περὶ τοῦ, πῶς δεῖ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐν
beginning of-the account about the how one-must the enemies in
ταῖς δυσχωρίαις μάχεσθαι, ἐξεθέμεθα. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων
the rough-places to-fight we-set-out of-the and enemies
πλησίον καταλαμβανόντων, καὶ αἰσθομένων τῆς παρὰ σοῦ
near arriving and perceiving the by you
γενομένης ἀσφαλείας ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ, καὶ ὡς ἀμήχανον διελθεῖν
having-been-made security on the road and that impossible to-pass
αὐτούς, εἴπερ παραβολώτερον τοῦτο τολμήσουσι πρᾶξαι,
them if-indeed more-recklessly this they-will-dare to-do
οὐκ εὐτυχῶς αὐτοῖς τὸ βούλευμα παραστήσεται. ἀλλὰ παρὰ
not successfully for-them the plan will-turn-out but by
τοῦ σοῦ λαοῦ δηούμενοί τε καὶ συμπνιγόμενοι, καὶ ἄκοντες
the your troops being-ravaged both and being-choked and unwilling

τὰ νῶτα δώσουσι, σπεύδοντες δι᾽ ἑτέρας ὁδοῦ τὴν ἰδίαν
the backs they-will-give hastening through another road the own
καταλήψεσθαι. τούτων δ᾽ οὕτως ὑποστρεφόντων ἀγεννῶς
to-reach of-these and thus returning ignobly
καὶ ἀκόσμως, ὁ λαός σου, τούτους θεώμενος, ὅσης
and disorderly the troops your them beholding with-how-much
χαρᾶς καὶ θυμηδίας πλησθήσονται, λόγῳ παραστῆσαι τοῦτο
joy and delight they-will-be-filled in-word to-present this
ἀδύνατον. τῶν οὖν πολεμίων, ὡς λέλεκται, ὑποστρεφόντων,
impossible of-the then enemies as has-been-said returning
τότε καταδίωξον ὄπισθεν αὐτῶν, ἔμπροσθεν ἀποστέλλων
then pursue behind them in-front sending
ἱππεῖς μετὰ ταχέων ψιλῶν· καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ὀξύτερον
horsemen with swift light(-troops) and yourself too more-quickly
περιπατῶν τοῦ καταλαβεῖν αὐτοὺς ἐπείχθητι. οἱ δὲ ἐχθροὶ
going-about for-the to-overtake them hasten the and enemies
διὰ τὸ φεύγειν αὐτούς, τάχει τὰς δυσχωρίας διελθεῖν
because-of the to-flee them with-speed the rough-places to-pass
καὶ τὸν ἐν αὐταῖς διαφυγεῖν πόλεμον, καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν
and the in them to-escape war and the own
καταλήψεσθαι· ἐπεὶ πλησίον τῆς κλεισούρας γενήσονται,
to-reach when near the kleisoura they-will-get
τοῦθ᾽ ὑποπτεύοντες, πρὸς τὸ μὴ πάλιν ἔμπροσθεν αὐτῶν τὰς
this suspecting for the not again in-front-of them the
πεζικὰς τάξεις γενέσθαι, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν αὐτῶν κατασχεῖν· ἂν
infantry ranks to-be and the road their to-occupy if
ἐν νυκτὶ τὴν ὁδοιπορίαν πειραθῶσι ποιήσασθαι, συντόμως
in night the march they-try to-make quickly
τούτους καταλάβῃς, τῶν ἵππων αὐτῶν ἀτονησάντων ἀπὸ
them you-may-overtake the horses their having-flagged from
τῆς χρονίας ὁδοιπορίας, καὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐκλελοιπότων
the lengthy march and the men having-failed

ἐπιτύχῃς, νυκτὸς ὁδοιπορούντων· καὶ εὗρες, στρατηγέ,
you-may-come-upon by-night marching and you-found general
τὸ ἀεί σοι ἐπιζητούμενον. καταλαμβάνοντός σου δὲ
the always by-you sought overtaking you and
τούτους νυκτός, δέον παραυτίκα πόλεμον συνάψαι εἰς
them by-night it-is-needful at-once war to-join against
τὸ λεγόμενον σάκα, μετὰ πεζῶν, συνεπακολουθούντων
the called saka with foot-soldiers following-with
αὐτοῖς καὶ ἱππέων. ἑτέρους δὲ τῶν ψιλῶν μεθ᾽ ἱππέων
them and horsemen others and of-the light(-troops) with horsemen
ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν τῆς ὁδοῦ ἔμπροσθεν γενέσθαι τῶν
on-this-side and-that of-the road in-front to-be of-the
πολεμίων ἀπόστειλον, καὶ ἐκ πλαγίου καὶ αὐτοὺς πόλεμον
enemies send and from flank also them war
προσβαλεῖν πρόσταξον. καὶ οὕτως ποιοῦντός σου, οὐ
to-attack command and thus doing you not
δυνήσονται ἀντιστῆναι, ἀλλὰ πρὸς φυγὴν ὁρμήσουσι. καὶ
they-will-be-able to-resist but to flight they-will-rush and
εἰ τοῦτο νυκτὸς πράξουσι, καταδίωξον αὐτούς, καὶ τελείῳ
if this by-night they-do pursue them and to-complete
τούτους παραδώσεις ἀφανισμῷ.
them you-will-hand-over destruction

If the enemy camps for the night, the general attacks from behind and on both flanks, leaving open only the road home, so that they flee one by one, while light troops creep up and break into the tents. On level ground he seizes the passes ahead instead, since every road into the enemy's land runs through mountains, and where a road narrows, infantry on both sides and an ambush behind the rearguard destroy them. The treatise ends with a doxology.

24 Περὶ νυκτοπολέμου.

about night-battle

Εἰ δὲ εἰς ἑτέραν ἔλθωσι βουλήν, κατὰ τὸ δοκοῦν αὐτοῖς,
if and to another they-come counsel according-to the seeming to-them
λυσιτελοῦσαν, καὶ ἡνίκα σε καταλαβόντα αἴσθωνται νυκτὸς
profitable and when you having-overtaken they-perceive by-night
ἀπληκεύσωσι, τὰς σκηνὰς πηξάμενοι, τότε νυκτοπόλεμον
they-encamp the tents having-pitched then night-battle
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐργάσῃ. πλὴν οὕτως σε τὸν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
against them you-will-work but thus you the against them
χρὴ διαθεῖναι πόλεμον. σὺ μὲν ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν μετὰ
must to-arrange war you indeed from the rear with
πεζικῆς παρατάξεως τὴν προσβολὴν ποιήσεις. τὰς δὲ
infantry battle-line the attack will-make the and
λοιπὰς πεζικὰς τάξεις διελεῖν χρὴ εἰς ἓξ μερίδας, καὶ
other infantry ranks to-divide must into six portions and
τρεῖς μὲν κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν τῶν πολεμίων ἐκ πλαγίου
three indeed at the right of-the enemies from flank
αὐτῶν, τρεῖς δὲ κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον καταστῆσαι, εἴγε
their three and at the left to-set if-indeed
εἰς μῆκος ἡ τοῦ τόπου θέσις τὸ ἑαυτῶν ἄπληκτον
into length the of-the place position the their-own encampment
καταστῆσαι καταναγκάσῃ, ἀπεχούσας ἀλλήλων ὡσεὶ
to-set compel being-distant from-one-another about

τόξου βολήν, ἢ καὶ μικρὸν ἔλαττον· μόνην ἀνεῳγμένην
of-a-bow shot or also a-little less alone opened
καὶ ἀφύλακτον καταλιμπάνουσαι τὴν ὁδόν, τὴν πρὸς τὰ
and unguarded leaving the road the toward the
οἰκεῖα τοὺς πολεμίους διασώζουσαν· ὅπως σφοδροτάτου
own(-lands) the enemies saving so-that most-violent
αὐτοῖς ἐπιτεθέντος τοῦ πολέμου, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἀνεῳγμένην
on-them having-been-launched the war and the road opened
ἐφευρίσκωσι, καὶ ἀπάτῃ τοῦ διασωθῆναι καὶ τὸν πόλεμον
they-may-find and by-deceit of-the to-be-saved and the war
διαφυγεῖν καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν καταλαβεῖν, ἐπιβῶσι τῶν
to-escape and the own to-reach they-may-mount the
ἵππων, καὶ δι᾽ αὐτῆς πρὸς φυγὴν ὁρμήσωσι, μόνην
horses and through it to flight may-set-out alone
ἕκαστος τὴν ἰδίαν περιποιούμενος σωτηρίαν. εἰ δὲ οὐκ
each the own securing safety if but not
ἐπίμηκες πεποιήκεσαν τὸ ἑαυτῶν ἄπληκτον, ἀλλ᾽ ἡ τοῦ
oblong they-had-made the their-own encampment but the of-the
τόπου θέσις κυκλοτερὲς αὐτὸ ἀπειργάσατο, χρή σε τὰς
place position circular it made must you the
πεζικὰς ἱστάντα παρατάξεις γυρόθεν, παρασκευασθῆναι
infantry setting battle-lines round-about to-be-prepared
ταύτας προστάξαι πρὸς πόλεμον· μόνην δέ, ὡς ἔφημεν,
these to-command for war alone and as we-said
τὴν ὁδὸν ἄφετον καὶ ἀνεῳγμένην καταλιπεῖν, τὴν πρὸς
the road free and opened to-leave the toward
τὰ ἴδια τούτων φέρουσαν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ διατάξασθαι τοὺς
the own their leading after and the to-arrange the
πεζοὺς τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον, παραπληκεῦσαι τοῖς πολεμίοις
foot-soldiers in-this the way to-encamp-beside the enemies
προστάξεις, καὶ πυρὰ εἰς πλῆθος ἀνάψαι πολλά. ἐν μιᾷ δὲ
you-will-command and fires to multitude to-kindle many in one and

ἑκάστῃ παρατάξει τῶν πεζῶν καὶ ἄρχοντα καταστήσεις
each battle-line of-the foot-soldiers also an-officer you-will-set
τῶν χρησίμων καὶ ἀνδρείων· σὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ ἱππεῖς ἐν μιᾷ
of-the useful and brave with them and horsemen in one
ἑκάστῃ παρατάξει, ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν ἱσταμένους, εἴγε καὶ
each battle-line from the rear standing if-indeed also
ὁ χῶρος δίδωσιν, ἔχοντας ἀρχηγοὺς ἄνδρας ἀξιολόγους.
the space allows having leaders men notable
πείθεσθαί τε αὐτοῖς προστάξεις καὶ ἅπαντα τὸν λαὸν
to-obey and them you-will-command also all the troops
τῶν πεζικῶν τάξεων. μετὰ δὲ τὸ οὕτως παρασκευασθῆναι,
of-the infantry ranks after and the thus to-be-prepared
διαχωρίσαι χρὴ τῶν ψιλῶν ἀνδρείους καὶ ταχεῖς τοῖς
to-separate it-is-needful of-the light(-troops) brave(-men) and swift in-the
ποσί, καὶ ἔμπροσθεν ἀποστεῖλαι, τοῦ σιγῇ κατελθεῖν, καὶ
feet and in-front to-send for-the in-silence to-go-down and
ἔγγιστα τῶν πολεμίων γενέσθαι, καὶ διορίσασθαι αὐτοῖς, ἵνα
nearest the enemies to-get and to-direct to-them that
πρῶτον μὲν οἱ ἐν τῷ μέσῳ ἱστάμενοι τὴν προσβολὴν
first indeed the(-men) in the middle standing the attack
ποιήσωνται, εἶθ' οὕτως οἱ ἔμπροσθεν. καὶ εἰ μὲν ἐξ
make then thus the(-men) in-front and if indeed from
ἀμφοτέρων τῶν μερῶν ἡ τοῦ τόπου θέσις ὑψηλοτέρως
both the sides the of-the place position higher
φέρει, τὰς πεζικὰς τάξεις κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων ***
brings the infantry ranks against the enemies (lacuna)
βαλλόμενοι οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς ἐκ χειρῶν καὶ σφενδονῶν λίθοις
being-struck the enemies by-the from hands and slings stones
καὶ τόξοις ἄνωθεν ἐξ ἑκατέρων, εὐχερῶς καταλυθήσονται.
and bows from-above from each-side easily will-be-destroyed

εἰ δὲ μὴ οὕτως ἔχει ἡ τοῦ τόπου θέσις, ἀλλ' ἐξ
if but not so holds the of-the place position but from
ἑνὸς μέρους τὸ ὑψηλὸν ὑπέρκειται, καὶ ὡσαύτως ἐκεῖθεν
one side the height lies-above also likewise from-there
εὐχερέστερον τῶν λίθων καὶ τόξων τὰς βολὰς κατ' αὐτῶν
more-easily of-the stones and bows the shots against them
πεμπέτωσαν. πλὴν ἐκ τοῦ ἐφομάλου ἐπιμελέστερον ἔχεσθαι
let-them-send but from the level more-carefully to-hold-to
δεῖ τῆς μάχης. εἰ δὲ βουληθῶσιν οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιβῆναι
one-must the battle if and wish the enemies to-mount
ἵππων, καὶ κατ' αὐτῶν ὁρμῆσαι, οὐδὲν μὲν τοῖς ψιλοῖς
horses and against them to-rush nothing indeed to-the light(-troops)
δεινὸν ἐργάσονται, τοῦ τόπου βοηθοῦντος αὐτοῖς· ἑαυτοῖς
terrible they-will-do the place helping them on-themselves
δὲ μᾶλλον μεγάλην προξενήσουσι βλάβην. συγκαταβήτωσαν
and rather great they-will-cause harm let-them-go-down-together
δὲ πᾶσαι αἱ πεζικαὶ τάξεις ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν μερῶν,
and all the infantry ranks from both the sides
καὶ σαλπισάτωσαν ἅπασαι μετὰ κραυγῆς καὶ ἀλαλαγμοῦ.
and let-them-sound-trumpets all with shouting and war-cry
ἔπειτα καὶ ὁ στρατηγὸς ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν ἰσχυρῶς
then also the general from the rear strongly
ἁψάτω τοῦ πολέμου. καὶ εἰ ἔτι καρτεροῦσιν οἱ
let-him-take-hold of-the war and if still hold-out the
πολέμιοι, καὶ μὴ πρὸς φυγὴν ὁρμήσουσιν, οἱ ταχεῖς ψιλοὶ
enemies and not to flight will-set-out the swift light(-troops)
καὶ οἱ ἔμπροσθεν ἀποσταλέντες παρορμηθήτωσαν παρὰ
and the(-men) in-front having-been-sent let-them-be-urged by
τῶν ἀρχόντων αὐτῶν, ἔνδον εἰς τὰς σκηνὰς χωρῆσαι τῶν
the officers their within into the tents to-advance of-the
πολεμίων. εὐχερὲς γὰρ τοῦτο ἔσται αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ
enemies easy for this will-be for-them from the of-the

τόπου σκληρότητος. καὶ ἡνίκα ἄρξωνται ἀναλαμβάνειν
place roughness and when they-begin to-take-up
ἵππους ἢ ἡμιόνους καὶ πράγματα τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ
horses or mules and goods of-the enemies and
ἀνθρώπους ἀνδραποδίζειν, καὶ ἀρχὴ τοιαύτη γένηται,
men to-enslave and beginning such happen
ὁρμήσουσιν ἅπαντες εἰς τὴν τοιαύτην διαρπαγήν, καὶ
will-rush all to the such plunder and
ἀφειδῶς ἔνδον χωρήσουσι τῶν σκηνῶν, ξίφει αὐτοὺς
unsparingly within will-advance of-the tents with-sword them
κατακόπτοντες. καὶ τότε πρὸς φυγὴν ὁρμήσουσιν ἅπαντες,
cutting-down and then to flight will-set-out all
ὅσοι μὲν ἰσχύσουσιν ἐπιβῆναι ἵππων, οἱ δὲ καὶ
as-many-as indeed will-be-able to-mount horses the(-others) and also
πεζῇ, ὡς ἂν δυνηθῶσιν ὄρεσί τε καὶ φάραγξι κρυβῆναι,
on-foot as — they-be-able in-mountains both and ravines to-be-hidden
καὶ σωτηρίας τυχεῖν. καὶ εἰ τοιοῦτον τῇ βοηθείᾳ τοῦ
and safety to-obtain and if such-thing by-the help —
Θεοῦ γένηται τὸ τοῦ πολέμου πέρας διὰ πρεσβειῶν τῆς
of-God happen the of-the war end through intercessions of-the
παναχράντου μητρὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ θεοτόκου, δόξαν μὲν οἱ
all-immaculate mother his and God-bearer glory indeed the
ἅγιοι βασιλεῖς λήψονται, καὶ κράτος ἅπαν τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν
holy emperors will-take and might all the Roman
στράτευμα· μηκέτι τῶν πολεμίων κατὰ πρόσωπον αὐτῶν
army no-longer the enemies to face of-them
στῆναι δυναμένων. εἰ δέ γε ὁμαλοῦ ἐπιτύχωσι χώρου
to-stand being-able if but at-least level they-come-upon space
τῆς ἡμέρας ἐπιφαινούσης, καὶ εἰς αὐτὸν καταλύσωσι,
of-the day appearing and in it they-halt
τὰς σκηνὰς πηξάμενοι, καὶ οὐκ εὐχερῶς ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ
the tents having-pitched and not easily in the such

τόπῳ τὸν ἐν νυκτὶ πόλεμον ἁρμόζει γενέσθαι· δεῖ τὸν
place the in night war it-fits to-be must the
στρατηγὸν μετὰ πασῶν τῶν πεζικῶν τε καὶ ἱππικῶν
general with all the infantry both and cavalry
δυνάμεων ἔμπροσθεν πάλιν γενέσθαι, καὶ τὰ ὑψηλότερα
forces in-front again to-get and the heights
τῶν ὀρῶν κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὴν διάβασιν τῆς ὁδοῦ ὁμοίως
of-the mountains to-occupy and the crossing of-the road likewise
ἀσφαλίσασθαι. καὶ ἐπεὶ πᾶσαι, ὡς ἔφημεν, αἱ ὁδοὶ αἱ
to-secure and since all as we-said the roads the(-ones)
πρὸς τὴν πολεμίαν εἰσάγουσαι διὰ τῶν ὅλων ὧν
toward the enemy(-land) leading through the whole which
ἀπηριθμησάμην θεμάτων καὶ οἰκείοις ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐθεασάμην,
I-enumerated themes and with-own eyes I-saw
δύσβατοι τυγχάνουσιν ἐν ὄρεσι τοῖς διορίζουσι τὰς ἄμφω
hard-to-pass are in mountains the(-ones) dividing the both
χώρας, σπεῦδε προκαταλαβεῖν τὴν διάβασιν αὐτῶν, καὶ
lands hasten to-occupy-first the crossing their and
τὸν κατὰ πρόσωπον αὐτῶν ἀδιστάκτως διατίθει πόλεμον.
the to face them unhesitatingly arrange war
καὶ χάριτι Χριστοῦ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἡμῶν ὑπερισχύσεις αὐτῶν,
and by-grace of-Christ — of-God our you-will-overpower them
καὶ τούτους καταβαλὼν τελείῳ παραδώσεις ἀφανισμῷ.
and them having-cast-down to-complete you-will-hand-over destruction
Περὶ ἑτέρας κατασχέσεως ὁδοῦ, τῆς εἰς τὴν κατάβασιν 25
about another occupation of-road the(-one) into the descent
δυσχωρίαν ἀποτελούσης.
rough-place forming
Εἰ δέ γε ἡ ὁδός, ἣν ὑποστρέφουσιν, εὑρεθῇ φέρουσα
if but at-least the road which they-return be-found leading
τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐκ τῶν ἄνωθεν, καὶ ἐφόμαλός ἐστι, μὴ
for-the enemies from the higher(-places) and level is not

ἔχουσα δυσχωρίας, τοῦ κατὰ πρόσωπον αὐτῶν ἀντιστῆναι·
having rough-places for-the to face them to-resist
ἀλλ᾽ ἡνίκα πρὸς τὸ καταφερὲς ἐπικλίνει, τότε στενὴ
but when toward the downward-slope it-inclines then narrow
καὶ δύσβατός ἐστι, συγχέουσα τὰς παρατάξεις αὐτῶν,
and impassable it-is confusing the battle-lines their
καὶ ὀλίγους διέρχεσθαι ἀναγκάζουσα, καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
and few to-pass forcing and the others
ὁμοίως παρασκευάζει ἐπακολουθεῖν, καὶ διέρχεσθαι· ἐν
likewise it-causes to-follow and to-pass in
ἐκείνοις τοῖς στενωποῖς δέον πεζικὰς τάξεις καταστῆσαι
those the narrow-lanes it-is-needful infantry ranks to-set
ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν τῶν πολεμίων, δύο μὲν κατὰ τὸ δεξιόν,
on-this-side and-that of-the enemies two indeed at the right
δύο δὲ κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον, ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων διακεκριμένας.
two and at the left from one-another separated
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν εἰς λόχον καταστῆσαι πεζικοῦ
but also from the rear into ambush to-set of-infantry
λαοῦ δύναμιν, μεθ᾽ ἱππέων καὶ ἄρχοντος ἀνδρείου καὶ
troops force with horsemen and officer brave and
ἐμπειροτάτου (εἴπερ τὸ λεγόμενον σάκα αὐτῶν ἄνωθεν
most-experienced if-indeed the called saka their above
κατέλιπον, ἵστασθαι καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν φυλάττειν)· ἀλλὰ
they-left to-stand and the road to-guard but
μὴ σύνεγγυς, πρὸς τὸ μὴ διαγνωσθῆναι. καὶ εἰ μὲν
not close-by for the not to-be-recognized and if indeed
οἱ εἰς τὸν λόχον ἱστάμενοι ἄνωθεν πρόθυμοί εἰσι
the(-men) in the ambush standing above eager are
παρασυνάψαι πόλεμον, ἡνίκα αἱ κάτωθεν παρατάξεις ἡμῶν
to-join-in war when the below battle-lines our
ἱστάμεναι κατὰ τῶν ἔμπροσθεν διερχομένων πολεμίων τὴν
standing against the in-front passing enemies the

προσβολὴν ποιήσωνται, ἐξερχέσθωσαν καὶ οἱ εἰς τὸν
attack make let-them-come-out also the(-men) in the
λόχον ἱστάμενοι πεζοί τε καὶ ἱππεῖς, καὶ συναπτέτωσαν
ambush standing foot-soldiers both and horsemen and let-them-join
πόλεμον μετ᾽ αὐτοὺς κατὰ τῶν πολεμίων. εἰ δὲ οὐ
war after them against the enemies if but not
θαῤῥήσουσιν οἱ εἰς τὸν λόχον ἱστάμενοι κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
will-dare the(-men) in the ambush standing against it
ἐπελθεῖν κάτωθεν, σάκα εἰς ἐφόμαλον τόπον ἱσταμένου,
to-advance below saka on level place standing
καρτερήσωσιν εἰς τὸν λόχον. καὶ ἐπεὶ αὐτὸ διελθεῖν
let-them-hold-out in the ambush and when it to-pass-through
κατεπείγεται καὶ τοὺς ἰδίους καταλαβεῖν (οὐ γάρ ἐστι τῶν
presses and the own to-reach not for it-is of-the
ἐνδεχομένων, ἐκεῖσε ἐπὶ πολὺ ἵστασθαι), ἡνίκα τῆς εἰς
possible(-things) there for long to-stand when the into
κατάβασιν φερούσης ὁδοῦ ἐπιλάβηται, καὶ ἐξερχέσθωσαν
descent leading road it-take-hold-of also let-them-come-out
οἱ ἐν τῷ λόχῳ· καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν κατασχόντες καὶ ἐκ
the(-men) in the ambush and the road having-occupied and from
τῶν ἄνωθεν αὐτῶν γενόμενοι, κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ὁρμησάτωσαν.
the above them having-got against them let-them-rush
καὶ οὐ δυνήσονται ἀντιστῆναι καὶ ἀμύνασθαι, παρ᾽
and not will-be-able to-resist and to-ward-off by
αὐτῶν βαλλόμενοι, τοῦ τόπου αὐτοῖς ἐναντιουμένου·
them being-struck the place to-them opposing
ἀλλὰ σπεύσουσι τοὺς ἰδίους καταλαβεῖν, πολεμούμενοι
but will-hasten the own to-reach being-warred-on
ἐν τοῖς στενώμασι παρὰ τῶν κάτωθεν ἡμῶν ἱσταμένων
in the narrow-passes by the below our standing
παρατάξεων, ἐπ᾽ ἐλπίδι διελθεῖν, καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν καταλαβεῖν.
battle-lines in hope to-pass-through and the own to-reach

ἀλλ᾽ οὐδαμῶς τούτου ἐπιτύχωσιν, εἴπερ δὴ ὡς ἐξεθέμεθα
but in-no-way this they-attain if indeed as we-set-out
ὁ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν παρασκευασθῇ πόλεμος, μᾶλλον δὲ κατὰ
the against them be-prepared war rather but by
κράτος ἡττηθήσονται, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἀληθινοῦ Θεοῦ ἡμῶν· ᾧ
force they-will-be-defeated in the true God our to-whom
ἡ δόξα καὶ τὸ κράτος, σὺν αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ ἁγίῳ πνεύματι,
the glory and the might with him and the holy spirit
νῦν, καὶ ἀεί, καὶ εἰς τοὺς αἰῶνας τῶν αἰώνων. ἀμήν.
now and always and to the ages of-the ages amen
Τέλος σὺν Θεῷ τοῦ τακτικοῦ.
end with God of-the tactical(-treatise)